OMC942723178

H8/3001

Hardware Manual

Preface

The H8/3001 is a high-performance microcontroller that integrates system supporting functions together with an H8/300H CPU core.
This manual describes the H8/3001 CPU architecture, supporting functions, electrical characteristics, and package dimensions. For details of the instruction set, refer to the *H8/300H Programming Manual* (ADE-602-053).

Contents

Section 1 Overview 1
1.1 Overview 1
1.2 Block Diagram 4
1.3 Pin Description 5
1.3.1 Pin Arrangement 5
1.3.2 Pin Functions 6
1.4 Pin Functions 9

Section 2 CPU 13
2.1 Overview 13
2.1.1 Features 13
2.1.2 Differences from H8/300 CPU 14
2.2 CPU Operating Modes 15
2.3 Address Space 16
2.4 Register Configuration 17
2.4.1 Overview 17
2.4.2 General Registers 18
2.4.3 Control Registers 19
2.4.4 Initial CPU Register Values 20
2.5 Data Formats 21
2.5.1 General Register Data Formats 21
2.5.2 Memory Data Formats 22
2.6 Instruction Set 24
2.6.1 Instruction Set Overview 24
2.6.2 Instructions and Addressing Modes 25
2.6.3 Tables of Instructions Classified by Function 26
2.6.4 Basic Instruction Formats 36
2.6.5 Notes on Use of Bit Manipulation Instructions 37
2.7 Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation 37
2.7.1 Addressing Modes 37
2.7.2 Effective Address Calculation 40
2.8 Processing States 44
2.8.1 Overview 44
2.8.2 Program Execution State 45
2.8.3 Exception-Handling State 45
2.8.4 Exception-Handling Sequences 47
2.8.5 Bus-Released State 48
2.8.6 Reset State 48
2.8.7 Power-Down State 48

2.9 Basic Operational Timing 49
2.9.1 Overview 49
2.9.2 On-Chip Memory Access Timing 49
2.9.3 On-Chip Supporting Module Access Timing 51
2.9.4 Access to External Address Space 52

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes 53
3.1 Overview 53
3.1.1 Operating Mode Selection 53
3.1.2 Register Configuration 54
3.2 Mode Control Register (MDCR) 55
3.3 System Control Register (SYSCR) 56
3.4 Operating Mode Descriptions 58
3.4.1 Mode 1 58
3.4.2 Mode 2 58
3.4.3 Mode 3 58
3.4.4 Mode 4 58
3.5 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode 59
3.6 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode 59

Section 4 Exception Handling 61
4.1 Overview 61
4.1.1 Exception Handling Types and Priority 61
4.1.2 Exception Handling Operation 61
4.1.3 Exception Vector Table 62
4.2 Reset 63
4.2.1 Overview 63
4.2.2 Reset Sequence 63
4.2.3 Interrupts after Reset 65
4.3 Interrupts 66
4.4 Trap Instruction 67
4.5 Stack Status after Exception Handling 67
4.6 Notes on Stack Usage 68

Section 5 Interrupt Controller 69
5.1 Overview 69
5.1.1 Features 69
5.1.2 Block Diagram 70
5.1.3 Pin Configuration 71
5.1.4 Register Configuration 71

5.2 Register Descriptions ... 72
5.2.1 System Control Register (SYSCR) ... 72
5.2.2 Interrupt Priority Registers A and B (IPRA, IPRB) ... 73
5.2.3 IRQ Status Register (ISR) ... 79
5.2.4 IRQ Enable Register (IER) ... 80
5.2.5 IRQ Sense Control Register (ISCR) ... 81
5.3 Interrupt Sources ... 82
5.3.1 External Interrupts ... 82
5.3.2 Internal Interrupts ... 83
5.3.3 Interrupt Vector Table ... 83
5.4 Interrupt Operation ... 86
5.4.1 Interrupt Handling Process ... 86
5.4.2 Interrupt Sequence ... 91
5.4.3 Interrupt Response Time ... 92
5.5 Usage Notes ... 93
5.5.1 Contention between Interrupt and Interrupt-Disabling Instruction ... 93
5.5.2 Instructions that Inhibit Interrupts ... 94
5.5.3 Interrupts during EEPMOV Instruction Execution ... 94

Section 6 Bus Controller ... 95
6.1 Overview ... 95
6.1.1 Features ... 95
6.1.2 Block Diagram ... 96
6.1.3 Input/Output Pins ... 97
6.1.4 Register Configuration ... 97
6.2 Register Descriptions ... 98
6.2.1 Bus Width Control Register (ABWCR) ... 98
6.2.2 Access State Control Register (ASTCR) ... 99
6.2.3 Wait Control Register (WCR) ... 100
6.2.4 Wait State Controller Enable Register (WCER) ... 101
6.2.5 Bus Release Control Register (BRCR) ... 102
6.3 Operation ... 103
6.3.1 Area Division ... 103
6.3.2 Data Bus ... 105
6.3.3 Bus Control Signal Timing ... 106
6.3.4 Wait Modes ... 114
6.3.5 Bus Arbiter Operation ... 120
6.4 Usage Notes ... 123
6.4.1 ABWCR, ASTCR, and WCER Write Timing ... 123
6.4.2 $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ Input Timing ... 123

Section 7 I/O Ports 125
7.1 Overview 125
7.2 Port 4 127
7.2.1 Overview 127
7.2.2 Register Descriptions 128
7.2.3 Pin Functions in Each Mode 130
7.2.4 Input Pull-Up Transistors 131
7.3 Port 6 132
7.3.1 Overview 132
7.3.2 Register Descriptions 132
7.3.3 Pin Functions 134
7.4 Port 7 134
7.4.1 Overview 134
7.4.2 Register Description 135
7.5 Port 8 136
7.5.1 Overview 136
7.5.2 Register Descriptions 136
7.5.3 Pin Functions 138
7.6 Port 9 139
7.6.1 Overview 139
7.6.2 Register Descriptions 139
7.6.3 Pin Functions 141
7.7 Port A 142
7.7.1 Overview 142
7.7.2 Register Descriptions 143
7.7.3 Pin Functions 145
7.8 Port B 152
7.8.1 Overview 152
7.8.2 Register Descriptions 152
7.8.3 Pin Functions 154

Section 8 16-Bit Integrated Timer Unit (ITU) 159
8.1 Overview 159
8.1.1 Features 159
8.1.2 Block Diagrams 162
8.1.3 Input/Output Pins 166
8.1.4 Register Configuration 167
8.2 Register Descriptions 170
8.2.1 Timer Start Register (TSTR) 170
8.2.2 Timer Synchro Register (TSNC) 171
8.2.3 Timer Mode Register (TMDR) 173

8.2.4 Timer Function Control Register (TFCR) 176
8.2.5 Timer Output Master Enable Register (TOER) 178
8.2.6 Timer Counters (TCNT) 180
8.2.7 General Registers (GRA, GRB) 181
8.2.8 Buffer Registers (BRA, BRB) 182
8.2.9 Timer Control Registers (TCR) 183
8.2.10 Timer I/O Control Register (TIOR) 185
8.2.11 Timer Status Register (TSR) 187
8.2.12 Timer Interrupt Enable Register (TIER) 190
8.3 CPU Interface 192
8.3.1 16-Bit Accessible Registers 192
8.3.2 8-Bit Accessible Registers 194
8.4 Operation 196
8.4.1 Overview 196
8.4.2 Basic Functions 196
8.4.3 Synchronization 206
8.4.4 PWM Mode 208
8.4.5 Phase Counting Mode 212
8.4.6 Buffering 214
8.4.7 ITU Output Timing 220
8.5 Interrupts 221
8.5.1 Setting of Status Flags 221
8.5.2 Clearing of Status Flags 223
8.5.3 Interrupt Sources 224
8.6 Usage Notes 225

Section 9 Programmable Timing Pattern Controller 241
9.1 Overview 241
9.1.1 Features 241
9.1.2 Block Diagram 242
9.1.3 TPC Pins 243
9.1.4 Registers 244
9.2 Register Descriptions 245
9.2.1 Port A Data Direction Register (PADDR) 245
9.2.2 Port A Data Register (PADR) 245
9.2.3 Port B Data Direction Register (PBDDR) 246
9.2.4 Port B Data Register (PBDR) 246
9.2.5 Next Data Register A (NDRA) 247
9.2.6 Next Data Register B (NDRB) 249
9.2.7 Next Data Enable Register A (NDERA) 251
9.2.8 Next Data Enable Register B (NDERB) 252

9.2.9 TPC Output Control Register (TPCR) ... 253
9.2.10 TPC Output Mode Register (TPMR) ... 256
9.3 Operation ... 258
9.3.1 Overview ... 258
9.3.2 Output Timing ... 259
9.3.3 Normal TPC Output ... 260
9.3.4 Non-Overlapping TPC Output ... 262
9.3.5 TPC Output Triggering by Input Capture ... 264
9.4 Usage Notes ... 265
9.4.1 Operation of TPC Output Pins ... 265
9.4.2 Note on Non-Overlapping Output ... 265

Section 10 Serial Communication Interface ... 267
10.1 Overview ... 267
10.1.1 Features ... 267
10.1.2 Block Diagram ... 269
10.1.3 Input/Output Pins ... 270
10.1.4 Register Configuration ... 270
10.2 Register Descriptions ... 271
10.2.1 Receive Shift Register (RSR) ... 271
10.2.2 Receive Data Register (RDR) ... 271
10.2.3 Transmit Shift Register (TSR) ... 272
10.2.4 Transmit Data Register (TDR) ... 272
10.2.5 Serial Mode Register (SMR) ... 273
10.2.6 Serial Control Register (SCR) ... 277
10.2.7 Serial Status Register (SSR) ... 281
10.2.8 Bit Rate Register (BRR) ... 285
10.3 Operation ... 294
10.3.1 Overview ... 294
10.3.2 Operation in Asynchronous Mode ... 296
10.3.3 Multiprocessor Communication ... 305
10.3.4 Synchronous Operation ... 312
10.4 SCI Interrupts ... 321
10.5 Usage Notes ... 322

Section 11 A/D Converter ... 327
11.1 Overview ... 327
11.1.1 Features ... 327
11.1.2 Block Diagram ... 328
11.1.3 Input Pins ... 329
11.1.4 Register Configuration ... 329

11.2 Register Descriptions 330
11.2.1 A/D Data Registers A to D (ADDRA to ADDRD) 330
11.2.2 A/D Control/Status Register (ADCSR) 331
11.2.3 A/D Control Register (ADCR) 334
11.3 CPU Interface 335
11.4 Operation 336
11.4.1 Single Mode (SCAN = 0) 336
11.4.2 Scan Mode (SCAN = 1) 338
11.4.3 Input Sampling and A/D Conversion Time 340
11.5 Interrupts 341
11.6 Usage Notes 341

Section 12 RAM 343
12.1 Overview 343
12.1.1 Block Diagram 343
12.1.2 Register Configuration 344
12.2 System Control Register (SYSCR) 345
12.3 Operation 346

Section 13 Clock Pulse Generator 347
13.1 Overview 347
13.1.1 Block Diagram 347
13.2 Oscillator Circuit 348
13.2.1 Connecting a Crystal Resonator 348
13.2.2 External Clock Input 350
13.3 Duty Adjustment Circuit 352
13.4 Prescalers 352

Section 14 Power-Down State 353
14.1 Overview 353
14.2 Register Configuration 354
14.2.1 System Control Register (SYSCR) 354
14.3 Sleep Mode 356
14.3.1 Transition to Sleep Mode 356
14.3.2 Exit from Sleep Mode 356
14.4 Software Standby Mode 357
14.4.1 Transition to Software Standby Mode 357
14.4.2 Exit from Software Standby Mode 357
14.4.3 Selection of Waiting Time for Exit from Software Standby Mode 358
14.4.4 Sample Application of Software Standby Mode 359
14.4.5 Note 359

14.5 Hardware Standby Mode 360
14.5.1 Transition to Hardware Standby Mode 360
14.5.2 Exit from Hardware Standby Mode 360
14.5.3 Timing for Hardware Standby Mode 360

Section 15 Electrical Characteristics 361
15.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings 361
15.2 Electrical Characteristics 362
15.2.1 DC Characteristics 362
15.2.2 AC Characteristics 370
15.2.3 A/D Conversion Characteristics 376
15.3 Operational Timing 377
15.3.1 Bus Timing 377
15.3.2 Control Signal Timing 381
15.3.3 Clock Timing 383
15.3.4 TPC and I/O Port Timing 383
15.3.5 ITU Timing 384
15.3.6 SCI Input/Output Timing 385

Appendix A Instruction Set 387
A.1 Instruction List 387
A.2 Operation Code Map 402
A.3 Number of States Required for Execution 405

Appendix B Register Field 414
B.1 Register Addresses and Bit Names 414
B.2 Register Descriptions 422

Appendix C I/O Port Block Diagrams 467
C.1 Port 4 Block Diagram 467
C.2 Port 6 Block Diagrams 468
C.3 Port 7 Block Diagram 471
C.4 Port 8 Block Diagrams 472
C.5 Port 9 Block Diagrams 474
C.6 Port A Block Diagrams 477
C.7 Port B Block Diagrams 480

Appendix D Pin States 481
D.1 Port States in Each Mode 481
D.2 Pin States at Reset 483

Appendix E Timing of Transition to and Recovery from Hardware Standby Mode 486

Appendix F Package Dimensions 487

Appendix G Register Index 489

Section 1 Overview

1.1 Overview

The H8/3001 is a microcontroller (MCU) that integrates system supporting functions together with an H8/300H CPU core having an original Hitachi architecture.

The H8/300H CPU has a 32-bit internal architecture with sixteen 16-bit general registers, and a concise, optimized instruction set designed for speed. It can address a 16-Mbyte linear address space. Its instruction set is upward-compatible at the object-code level with the H8/300 CPU, enabling easy porting of software from the H8/300 Series.

The on-chip system supporting functions include RAM, a 16-bit integrated timer-pulse unit (ITU), a programmable timing pattern controller (TPC), a serial communication interface (SCI), an A/D converter, I/O ports, and other facilities. Four MCU operating modes offer a choice of data bus width and address space size.

Table 1-1 summarizes the H8/3001 features.

Table 1-1 Features

Feature	Description
CPU	Upward-compatible with the H8/300 CPU at the object-code level
	General-register machine
	• Sixteen 16-bit general registers (also useable as sixteen 8-bit registers or eight 32-bit registers)
	High-speed operation
	• Maximum clock rate: 16 MHz • Add/subtract: 125 ns • Multiply/divide: 875 ns
	Two CPU operating modes
	• Normal mode (64-kbyte address space, not available in the H8/3001) • Advanced mode (16-Mbyte address space)
	Instruction features
	• 8/16/32-bit data transfer, arithmetic, and logic instructions • Signed and unsigned multiply instructions (8 bits × 8 bits, 16 bits × 16 bits) • Signed and unsigned divide instructions (16 bits ÷ 8 bits, 32 bits ÷ 16 bits) • Bit accumulator function • Bit manipulation instructions with register-indirect specification of bit positions

Table 1-1 Features (cont)

Feature	Description
Memory	RAM: 512 bytes
Interrupt controller	• Four external interrupt pins: NMI, $\overline{IRQ_0}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, and $\overline{IRQ_4}$ • 20 internal interrupts • Three selectable interrupt priority levels
Bus controller	• Address space can be partitioned into eight areas, with independent bus specifications in each area • 8-bit access or 16-bit access selectable for each area • Two-state or three-state access selectable for each area • Selection of four wait modes • Bus arbitration function
16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU)	• Five 16-bit timer channels, capable of processing up to 10 pulse outputs or 10 pulse inputs • 16-bit timer counter (channels 0 to 4) • Two multiplexed output compare/input capture pins (channels 0 to 4) • Operation can be synchronized (channels 0 to 4) • PWM mode available (channels 0 to 4) • Phase counting mode available (channel 2) • Buffering available (channels 3 and 4)
Programmable timing pattern controller (TPC)	• Maximum 12-bit pulse output, using ITU as time base • Up to three 4-bit pulse output groups (or one 12-bit group, one 8-bit group, and one 4-bit group) • Non-overlap mode available
Serial communication interface (SCI), 1 channel	• Selection of asynchronous or synchronous mode • Full duplex: can transmit and receive simultaneously • On-chip baud-rate generator
A/D converter	• Resolution: 10 bits • Four channels, with selection of single or scan mode • Variable analog conversion voltage range • Sample-and-hold function
I/O ports	• 28 input/output pins • 4 input-only pins

Table 1-1 Features (cont)

<table>
<tr><th>Feature</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Operating modes</td><td>Four MCU operating modes
<table>
<tr><th>Mode</th><th>Address Space</th><th>Address Pins</th><th>Initial Bus Width</th><th>Max. Bus Width</th></tr>
<tr><td>Mode 1</td><td>1 Mbyte</td><td>A_0 to A_{19}</td><td>8 bits</td><td>16 bits</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode 2</td><td>1 Mbyte</td><td>A_0 to A_{19}</td><td>16 bits</td><td>16 bits</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode 3</td><td>16 Mbyte</td><td>A_0 to A_{23}</td><td>8 bits</td><td>16 bits</td></tr>
<tr><td>Mode 4</td><td>16 Mbyte</td><td>A_0 to A_{23}</td><td>16 bits</td><td>16 bits</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>Power-down state</td><td>• Sleep mode
• Software standby mode
• Hardware standby mode</td></tr>
<tr><td>Other features</td><td>• On-chip clock oscillator</td></tr>
<tr><td>Product lineup</td><td>
<table>
<tr><th>Model</th><th>Package</th><th>Power Supply Voltage</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">HD6413001F
HD6413001VF</td><td rowspan="2">80-pin QFP
(FP-80A)</td><td>5 V ± 10%</td></tr>
<tr><td>2.7 V to 5.5 V</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">HD6413001TF
HD6413001VTF</td><td rowspan="2">80-pin TQFP
(TFP-80C)</td><td>5 V ± 10%</td></tr>
<tr><td>2.7 V to 5.5 V</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

1.2 Block Diagram

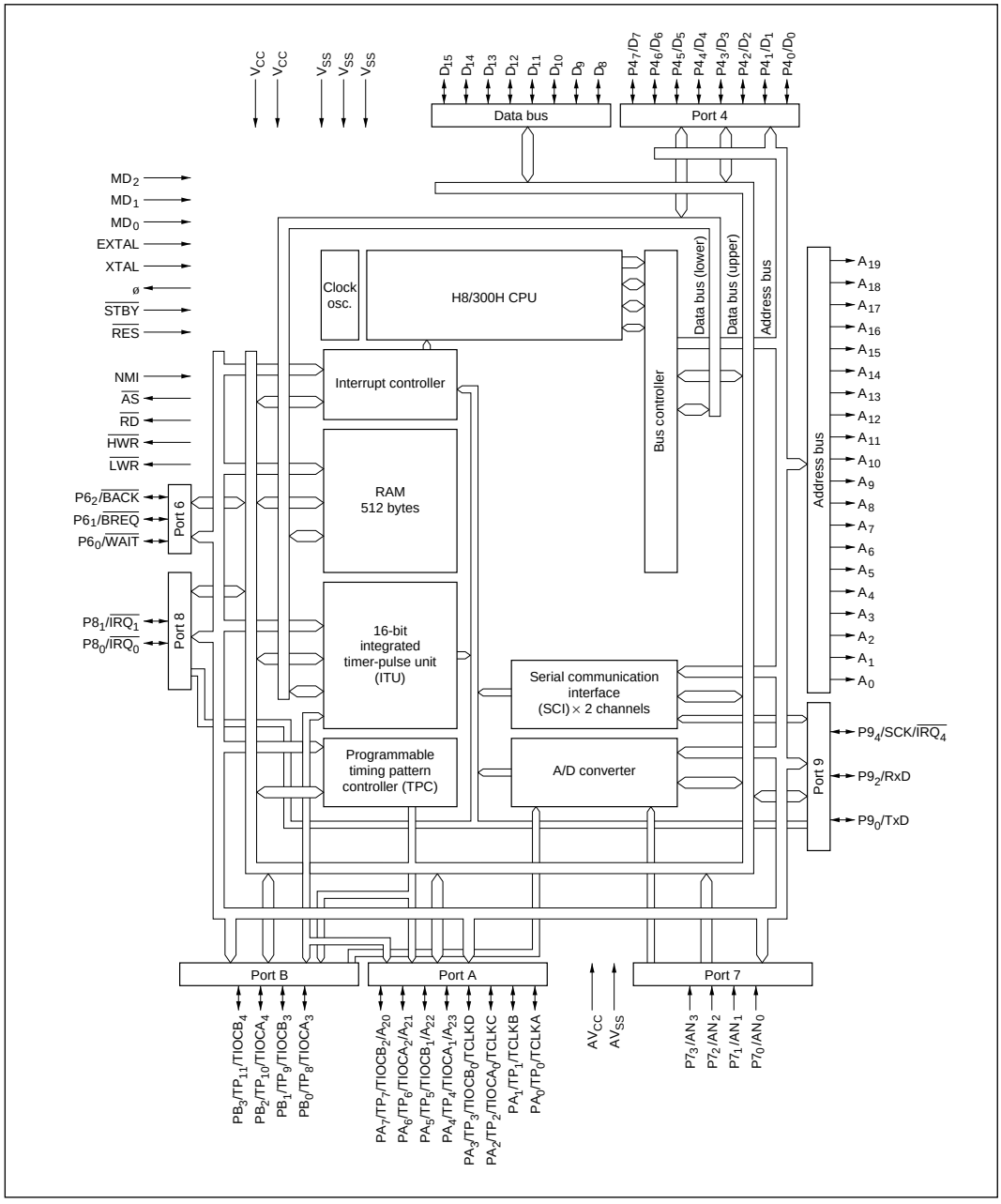


Figure 1-1 Block Diagram of H8/3001

1.3 Pin Description

1.3.1 Pin Arrangement

Figure 1-2 shows the pin arrangement of the H8/3001.

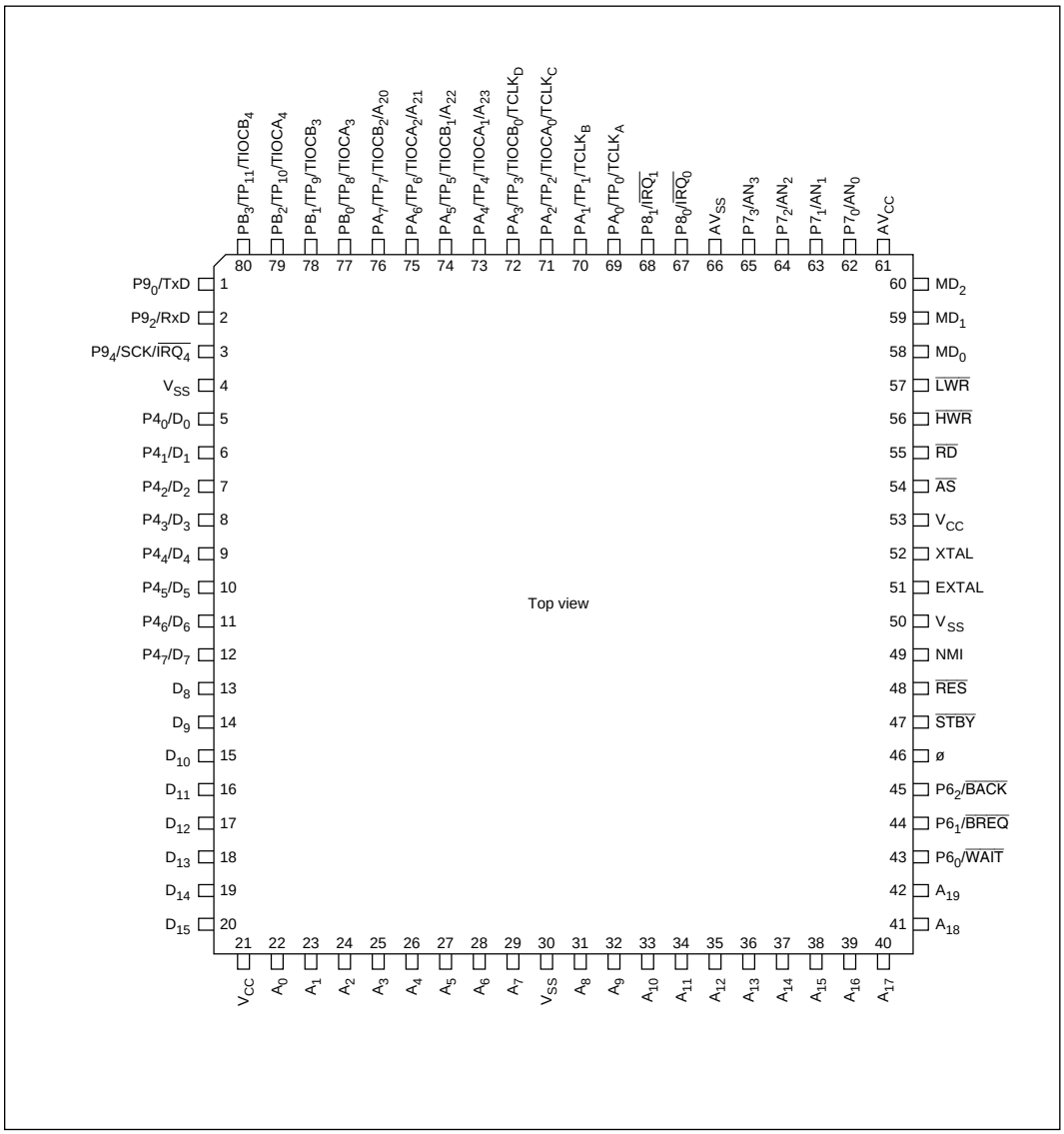


Figure 1-2 Pin Arrangement (FP-80A, TFP-80C Top View)

1.3.2 Pin Functions

Pin Assignments in Each Mode: Table 1-2 lists the pin assignments in each mode.

Table 1-2 H8/3001 Pin Assignments in Each Mode

Pin No.	Pin Name			
	Mode 1	**Mode 2**	**Mode 3**	**Mode 4**
1	$P9_0$/TxD	$P9_0$/TxD	$P9_0$/TxD	$P9_0$/TxD
2	$P9_2$/RxD	$P9_2$/RxD	$P9_2$/RxD	$P9_2$/RxD
3	$P9_4$/SCK/$\overline{IRQ_4}$	$P9_4$/SCK/$\overline{IRQ_4}$	$P9_4$/SCK/$\overline{IRQ_4}$	$P9_4$/SCK/$\overline{IRQ_4}$
4	V_{SS}	V_{SS}	V_{SS}	V_{SS}
5	$P4_0/D_0$*1	$P4_0$*2/D_0	$P4_0/D_0$*1	$P4_0$*2/D_0
6	$P4_1/D_1$*1	$P4_1$*2/D_1	$P4_1/D_1$*1	$P4_1$*2/D_1
7	$P4_2/D_2$*1	$P4_2$*2/D_2	$P4_2/D_2$*1	$P4_2$*2/D_2
8	$P4_3/D_3$*1	$P4_3$*2/D_3	$P4_3/D_3$*1	$P4_3$*2/D_3
9	$P4_4/D_4$*1	$P4_4$*2/D_4	$P4_4/D_4$*1	$P4_4$*2/D_4
10	$P4_5/D_5$*1	$P4_5$*2/D_5	$P4_5/D_5$*1	$P4_5$*2/D_5
11	$P4_6/D_6$*1	$P4_6$*2/D_6	$P4_6/D_6$*1	$P4_6$*2/D_6
12	$P4_7/D_7$*1	$P4_7$*2/D_7	$P4_7/D_7$*1	$P4_7$*2/D_7
13	D_8	D_8	D_8	D_8
14	D_9	D_9	D_9	D_9
15	D_{10}	D_{10}	D_{10}	D_{10}
16	D_{11}	D_{11}	D_{11}	D_{11}
17	D_{12}	D_{12}	D_{12}	D_{12}
18	D_{13}	D_{13}	D_{13}	D_{13}
19	D_{14}	D_{14}	D_{14}	D_{14}
20	D_{15}	D_{15}	D_{15}	D_{15}
21	V_{CC}	V_{CC}	V_{CC}	V_{CC}
22	A_0	A_0	A_0	A_0
23	A_1	A_1	A_1	A_1
24	A_2	A_2	A_2	A_2
25	A_3	A_3	A_3	A_3
26	A_4	A_4	A_4	A_4
27	A_5	A_5	A_5	A_5

Table 1-2 H8/3001 Pin Assignments in Each Mode (cont)

Pin No.	Pin Name			
	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3	Mode 4
28	A_6	A_6	A_6	A_6
29	A_7	A_7	A_7	A_7
30	V_{SS}	V_{SS}	V_{SS}	V_{SS}
31	A_8	A_8	A_8	A_8
32	A_9	A_9	A_9	A_9
33	A_{10}	A_{10}	A_{10}	A_{10}
34	A_{11}	A_{11}	A_{11}	A_{11}
35	A_{12}	A_{12}	A_{12}	A_{12}
36	A_{13}	A_{13}	A_{13}	A_{13}
37	A_{14}	A_{14}	A_{14}	A_{14}
38	A_{15}	A_{15}	A_{15}	A_{15}
39	A_{16}	A_{16}	A_{16}	A_{16}
40	A_{17}	A_{17}	A_{17}	A_{17}
41	A_{18}	A_{18}	A_{18}	A_{18}
42	A_{19}	A_{19}	A_{19}	A_{19}
43	$P6_0/\overline{WAIT}$	$P6_0/\overline{WAIT}$	$P6_0/\overline{WAIT}$	$P6_0/\overline{WAIT}$
44	$P6_1/\overline{BREQ}$	$P6_1/\overline{BREQ}$	$P6_1/\overline{BREQ}$	$P6_1/\overline{BREQ}$
45	$P6_2/\overline{BACK}$	$P6_2/\overline{BACK}$	$P6_2/\overline{BACK}$	$P6_2/\overline{BACK}$
46	ø	ø	ø	ø
47	$\overline{STBY}$	$\overline{STBY}$	$\overline{STBY}$	$\overline{STBY}$
48	$\overline{RES}$	$\overline{RES}$	$\overline{RES}$	$\overline{RES}$
49	NMI	NMI	NMI	NMI
50	V_{SS}	V_{SS}	V_{SS}	V_{SS}
51	EXTAL	EXTAL	EXTAL	EXTAL
52	XTAL	XTAL	XTAL	XTAL
53	V_{CC}	V_{CC}	V_{CC}	V_{CC}
54	$\overline{AS}$	$\overline{AS}$	$\overline{AS}$	$\overline{AS}$
55	$\overline{RD}$	$\overline{RD}$	$\overline{RD}$	$\overline{RD}$
56	$\overline{HWR}$	$\overline{HWR}$	$\overline{HWR}$	$\overline{HWR}$
57	$\overline{LWR}$	$\overline{LWR}$	$\overline{LWR}$	$\overline{LWR}$

Table 1-2 H8/3001 Pin Assignments in Each Mode (cont)

Pin No.	Pin Name			
	Mode 1	**Mode 2**	**Mode 3**	**Mode 4**
58	MD_0	MD_0	MD_0	MD_0
59	MD_1	MD_1	MD_1	MD_1
60	MD_2	MD_2	MD_2	MD_2
61	AV_{CC}	AV_{CC}	AV_{CC}	AV_{CC}
62	$P7_0/AN_0$	$P7_0/AN_0$	$P7_0/AN_0$	$P7_0/AN_0$
63	$P7_1/AN_1$	$P7_1/AN_1$	$P7_1/AN_1$	$P7_1/AN_1$
64	$P7_2/AN_2$	$P7_2/AN_2$	$P7_2/AN_2$	$P7_2/AN_2$
65	$P7_3/AN_3$	$P7_3/AN_3$	$P7_3/AN_3$	$P7_3/AN_3$
66	AV_{SS}	AV_{SS}	AV_{SS}	AV_{SS}
67	$P8_0/\overline{IRQ_0}$	$P8_0/\overline{IRQ_0}$	$P8_0/\overline{IRQ_0}$	$P8_0/\overline{IRQ_0}$
68	$P8_1/\overline{IRQ_1}$	$P8_1/\overline{IRQ_1}$	$P8_1/\overline{IRQ_1}$	$P8_1/\overline{IRQ_1}$
69	PA_0/TP_0/TCLKA	PA_0/TP_0/TCLKA	PA_0/TP_0/TCLKA	PA_0/TP_0/TCLKA
70	PA_1/TP_1/TCKLKB	PA_1/TP_1/TCKLKB	PA_1/TP_1/TCKLKB	PA_1/TP_1/TCKLKB
71	$PA_2/TP_2/TIOCA_0$/ TCLKC	$PA_2/TP_2/TIOCA_0$/ TCLKC	$PA_2/TP_2/TIOCA_0$/ TCLKC	$PA_2/TP_2/TIOCA_0$/ TCLKC
72	$PA_3/TP_3/TIOCB_0$/ TCLKD	$PA_3/TP_3/TIOCB_0$/ TCLKD	$PA_3/TP_3/TIOCB_0$/ TCLKD	$PA_3/TP_3/TIOCB_0$/ TCLKD
73	$PA_4/TP_4/TIOCA_1$	$PA_4/TP_4/TIOCA_1$	A_{23}	A_{23}
74	$PA_5/TP_5/TIOCB_1$	$PA_5/TP_5/TIOCB_1$	A_{22}	A_{22}
75	$PA_6/TP_6/TIOCA_2$	$PA_6/TP_6/TIOCA_2$	A_{21}	A_{21}
76	$PA_7/TP_7/TIOCB_2$	$PA_7/TP_7/TIOCB_2$	A_{20}	A_{20}
77	$PB_0/TP_8/TIOCA_3$	$PB_0/TP_8/TIOCA_3$	$PB_0/TP_8/TIOCA_3$	$PB_0/TP_8/TIOCA_3$
78	$PB_1/TP_9/TIOCB_3$	$PB_1/TP_9/TIOCB_3$	$PB_1/TP_9/TIOCB_3$	$PB_1/TP_9/TIOCB_3$
79	$PB_2/TP_{10}/TIOCA_4$	$PB_2/TP_{10}/TIOCA_4$	$PB_2/TP_{10}/TIOCA_4$	$PB_2/TP_{10}/TIOCA_4$
80	$PB_3/TP_{11}/TIOCB_4$	$PB_3/TP_{11}/TIOCB_4$	$PB_3/TP_{11}/TIOCB_4$	$PB_3/TP_{11}/TIOCB_4$

Notes: 1. In modes 1 and 3 the $P4_0$ to $P4_7$ functions of pins $P4_0/D_0$ to $P4_7/D_7$ are selected after a reset, but they can be changed by software.

2. In modes 2 and 4 the D_0 to D_7 functions of pins $P4_0/D_0$ to $P4_7/D_7$ are selected after a reset, but they can be changed by software.

1.4 Pin Functions

Table 1-3 summarizes the pin functions.

Table 1-3 Pin Functions

Type	Symbol	Pin No. QFP-112	I/O	Name and Function
Power	V_{CC}	21, 53	Input	**Power:** For connection to the power supply (+5 V). Connect all V_{CC} pins to the +5-V system power supply.
	V_{SS}	4, 30, 50	Input	**Ground:** For connection to ground (0 V). Connect all V_{SS} pins to the 0-V system power supply.
Clock	XTAL	52	Input	For connection to a crystal resonator. For examples of crystal resonator and external clock input, see section 13, Clock Pulse Gangerator.
	EXTAL	51	Input	For connection to a crystal resonator or input of an external clock signal. For examples of crystal resonator and external clock input, see section 13, Clock Pulse Generator.
	ø	46	Output	**System clock:** Supplies the system clock to external devices
Operating mode control	MD_2 to MD_0	60 to 58	Input	**Mode 2 to mode 0:** For setting the operating mode, as follows

MD_2	MD_1	MD_0	Operating Mode
0	0	0	—
0	0	1	Mode 1
0	1	0	Mode 2
0	1	1	Mode 3
1	0	0	Mode 4
1	0	1	—
1	1	0	—
1	1	1	—

Table 1-3 Pin Functions (cont)

Type	Symbol	Pin No. QFP-112	I/O	Name and Function
System control	$\overline{RES}$	48	Input	**Reset input:** When driven low, this pin resets the H8/3001
	$\overline{STBY}$	47	Input	**Standby:** When driven low, this pin forces a transition to hardware standby mode
	$\overline{BREQ}$	44	Input	**Bus request:** Used by an external bus master to request the bus right from the H8/3001
	$\overline{BACK}$	45	Output	**Bus request acknowledge:** Indicates that the bus has been granted to an external bus master
Interrupts	NMI	49	Input	**Nonmaskable interrupt:** Requests a nonmaskable interrupt
	$\overline{IRQ_4}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, $\overline{IRQ_0}$	3, 68, 67	Input	**Interrupt request 4, 1, 0:** Maskable interrupt request pins
Address bus	A_{23} to A_0	73 to 76, 42 to 31, 29 to 22	Output	**Address bus:** Outputs address signals
Data bus	D_{15} to D_0	20 to 5	Input/ output	**Data bus:** Bidirectional data bus
Bus control	$\overline{AS}$	54	Output	**Address strobe:** Goes low to indicate valid address output on the address bus
	$\overline{RD}$	55	Output	**Read:** Goes low to indicate reading from the external address space
	$\overline{HWR}$	56	Output	**High write:** Goes low to indicate writing to the external address space; indicates valid data on the upper data bus (D_{15} to D_8).
	$\overline{LWR}$	57	Output	**Low write:** Goes low to indicate writing to the external address space; indicates valid data on the lower data bus (D_7 to D_0).
	$\overline{WAIT}$	43	Input	**Wait:** Requests insertion of wait states in bus cycles during access to the external address space

Table 1-3 Pin Functions (cont)

Type	Symbol	Pin No. QFP-112	I/O	Name and Function
16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU)	TCLKD to TCLKA	72 to 69	Input	**Clock input A to D:** External clock inputs
	$TIOCA_4$ to $TIOCA_0$	79, 77, 75, 73, 71	Input/ output	**Input capture/output compare A4 to A0:** GRA4 to GRA0 output compare or input capture, or PWM output
	$TIOCB_4$ to $TIOCB_0$	80, 78, 76, 74, 72	Input/ output	**Input capture/output compare B4 to B0:** GRB4 to GRB0 output compare or input capture, or PWM output
Programmable timing pattern controller (TPC)	TP_{11} to TP_0	80 to 69	Output	**TPC output 11 to 0:** Pulse output
Serial communication interface (SCI)	TxD	1	Output	**Transmit data:** SCI data output
	RxD	2	Input	**Receive data:** SCI data input
	SCK	3	Input/ output	**Serial clock:** SCI clock input/output
A/D converter	AN_3 to AN_0	65 to 62	Input	**Analog 3 to 0:** Analog input pins
	AV_{CC}	61	Input	Power supply pin for the A/D converter. Connect to the system power supply (+5 V) when not using the A/D converter.
	AV_{SS}	66	Input	Ground pin for the A/D converter. Connect to system ground (0 V) when not using the A/D converter.
I/O ports	$P4_7$ to $P4_0$	12 to 5	Input/ output	**Port 4:** Eight input/output pins. The direction of each pin can be selected in the port 4 data direction register (P4DDR).
	$P6_2$ to $P6_0$	45 to 43	Input/ output	**Port 6:** Three input/output pins. The direction of each pin can be selected in the port 6 data direction register (P6DDR).
	$P7_3$ to $P7_0$	65 to 62	Input	**Port 7:** Four input pins
	$P8_1$	68	Input	**Port 8:** Two input/output pins. The direction of each pin can be selected in the port 8 data direction register (P8DDR).
	$P8_0$	67	Input/ output	

Table 1-3 Pin Functions (cont)

Type	Symbol	Pin No. QFP-112	I/O	Name and Function
I/O ports	$P9_4$, $P9_2$, $P9_0$	3 to 1	Input/ output	**Port 9:** Three input/output pins. The direction of each pin can be selected in the port 9 data direction register (P9DDR).
	PA_7 to PA_0	76 to 69	Input/ output	**Port A:** Eight input/output pins. The direction of each pin can be selected in the port A data direction register (PADDR).
	PB_3 to PB_0	80 to 77	Input/ output	**Port B:** Four input/output pins. The direction of each pin can be selected in the port B data direction register (PBDDR).

Section 2 CPU

2.1 Overview

The H8/300H CPU is a high-speed central processing unit with an internal 32-bit architecture that is upward-compatible with the H8/300 CPU. The H8/300H CPU has sixteen 16-bit general registers, can address a 16-Mbyte linear address space, and is ideal for realtime control.

2.1.1 Features

The H8/300H CPU has the following features.

- Upward compatibility with H8/300 CPU

  Can execute H8/300 series object programs without alteration

- General-register architecture

  Sixteen 16-bit general registers (also usable as sixteen 8-bit registers or eight 32-bit registers)

- Sixty-two basic instructions

  — 8/16/32-bit arithmetic and logic instructions
  — Multiply and divide instructions
  — Powerful bit-manipulation instructions

- Eight addressing modes

  — Register direct [Rn]
  — Register indirect [@ERn]
  — Register indirect with displacement [@(d:16, ERn) or @(d:24, ERn)]
  — Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement [@ERn+ or @–ERn]
  — Absolute address [@aa:8, @aa:16, or @aa:24]
  — Immediate [#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32]
  — Program-counter relative [@(d:8, PC) or @(d:16, PC)]
  — Memory indirect [@@aa:8]

- 16-Mbyte linear address space

- High-speed operation

  — All frequently-used instructions execute in two to four states
  — Maximum clock frequency: 16 MHz
  — 8/16/32-bit register-register add/subtract: 125 ns
  — 8 × 8-bit register-register multiply: 875 ns
  — 16 ÷ 8-bit register-register divide: 875 ns
  — 16 × 16-bit register-register multiply: 1.375 µs
  — 32 ÷ 16-bit register-register divide: 1.375 µs

- Two CPU operating modes

  — Normal mode (not available in H8/3001)
  — Advanced mode

- Low-power mode

  Transition to power-down state by SLEEP instruction

2.1.2 Differences from H8/300 CPU

In comparison to the H8/300 CPU, the H8/300H has the following enhancements.

- More general registers

  Eight 16-bit registers have been added.

- Expanded address space

  — Advanced mode supports a maximum 16-Mbyte address space.
  — Normal mode supports the same 64-kbyte address space as the H8/300 CPU.

- Enhanced addressing

  The addressing modes have been enhanced to make effective use of the 16-Mbyte address space.

- Enhanced instructions

  — Data transfer, arithmetic, and logic instructions can operate on 32-bit data.
  — Signed multiply/divide instructions and other instructions have been added.

2.2 CPU Operating Modes

The H8/300H CPU has two operating modes: normal and advanced. Normal mode supports a maximum 64-kbyte address space. Advanced mode supports up to 16 Mbytes. See figure 2-1. The H8/3001 uses only advanced mode.

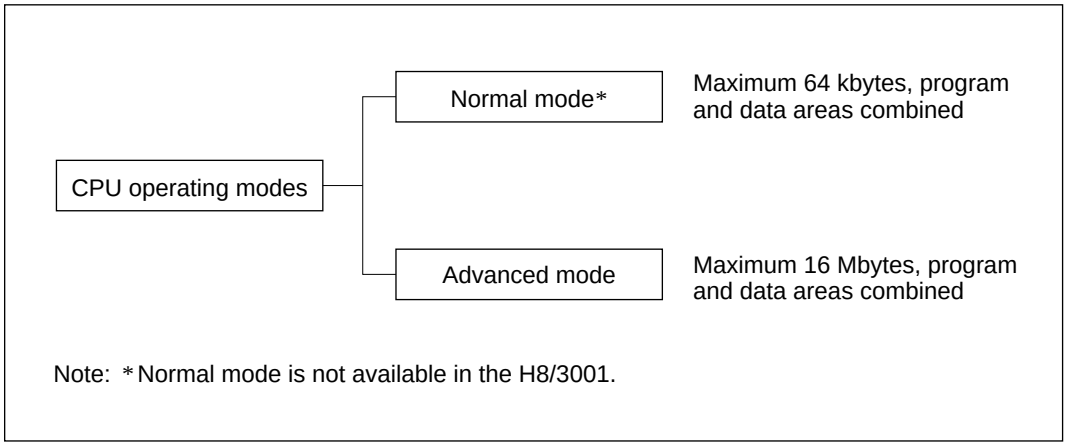


Figure 2-1 CPU Operating Modes

2.3 Address Space

The maximum address space of the H8/300H CPU is 16 Mbytes. The H8/3001 has two operating modes (MCU modes), one providing a 1-Mbyte address space, the other supporting the full 16 Mbytes.

Figure 2-2 shows the H8/3001's address ranges. For further details see section 3.6, Memory Map in Each Operating Mode.

The 1-Mbyte operating mode uses 20-bit addressing. The upper 4 bits of effective addresses are ignored.

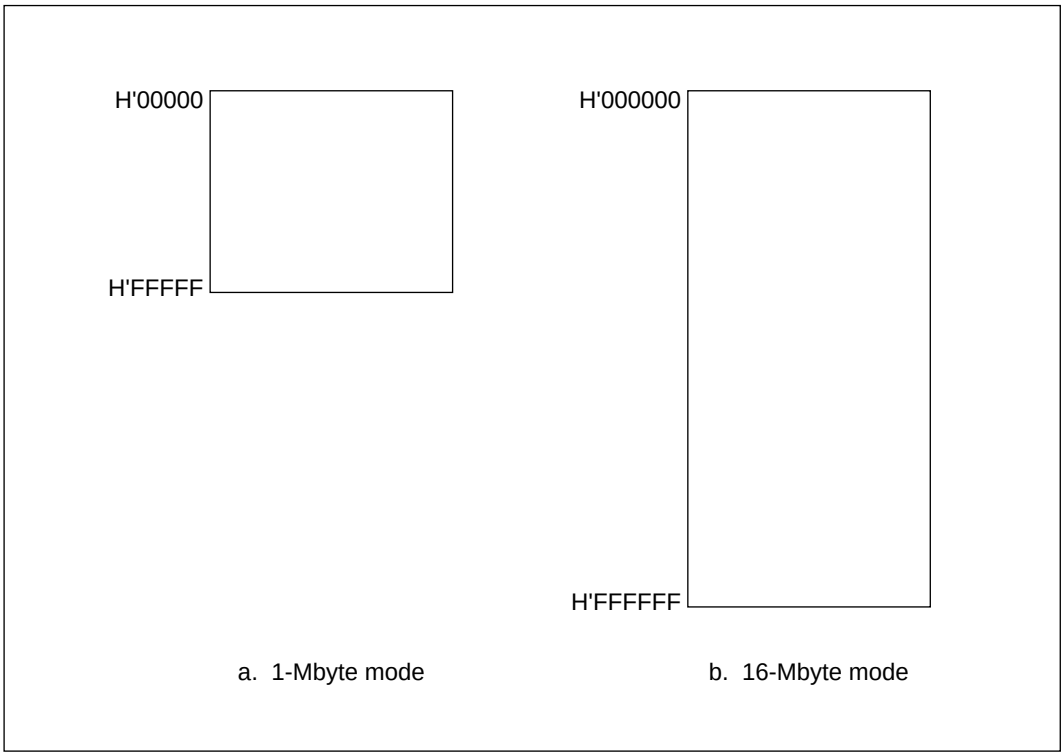


Figure 2-2 Memory Map

2.4 Register Configuration

2.4.1 Overview

The H8/300H CPU has the internal registers shown in figure 2-3. There are two types of registers: general registers and control registers.

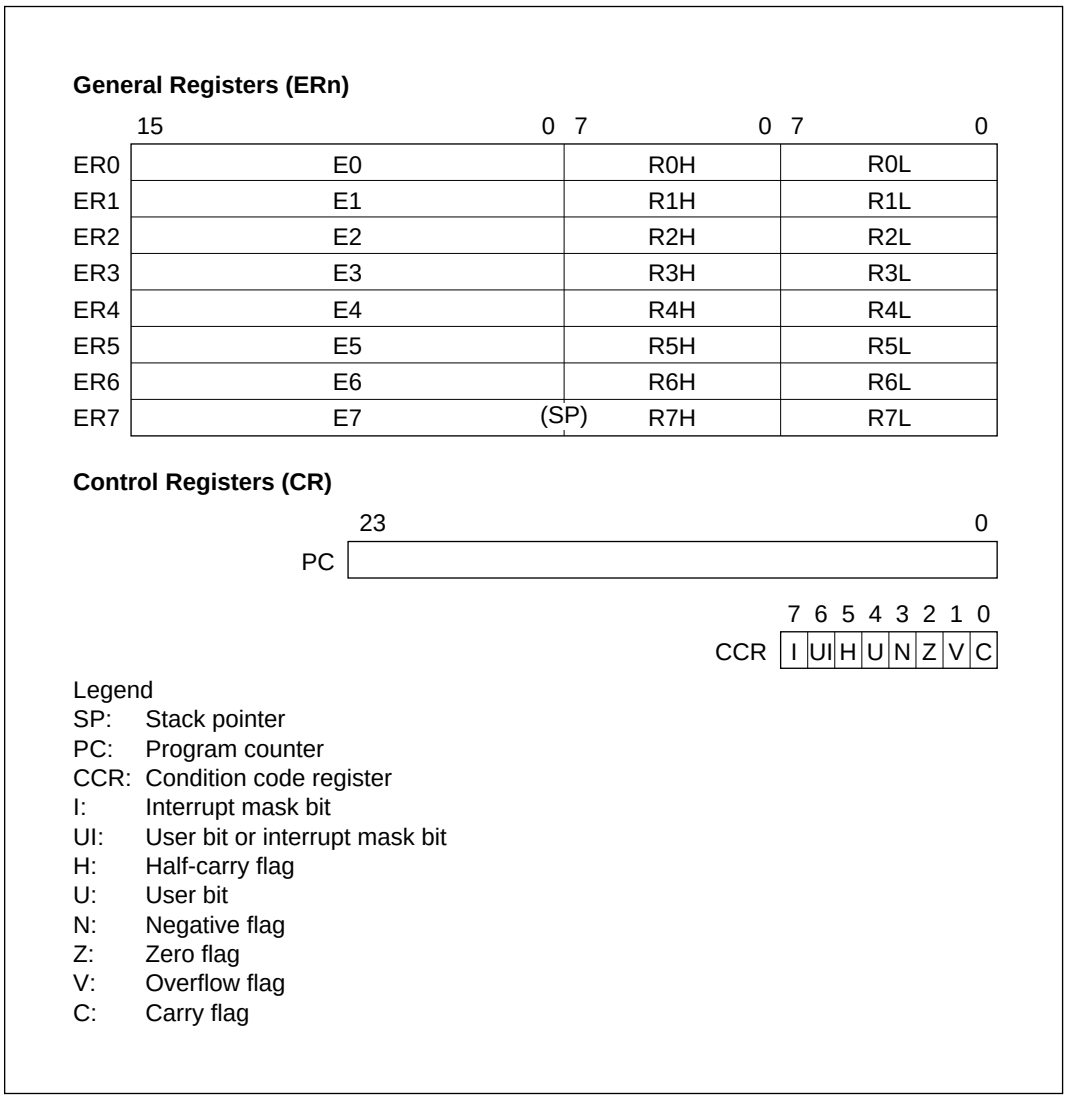


Figure 2-3 CPU Registers

2.4.2 General Registers

The H8/300H CPU has eight 32-bit general registers. These general registers are all functionally alike and can be used without distinction between data registers and address registers. When a general register is used as a data register, it can be accessed as a 32-bit, 16-bit, or 8-bit register. When the general registers are used as 32-bit registers or as address registers, they are designated by the letters ER (ER0 to ER7).

The ER registers divide into 16-bit general registers designated by the letters E (E0 to E7) and R (R0 to R7). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 16-bit registers. The E registers (E0 to E7) are also referred to as extended registers.

The R registers divide into 8-bit general registers designated by the letters RH (R0H to R7H) and RL (R0L to R7L). These registers are functionally equivalent, providing a maximum sixteen 8-bit registers.

Figure 2-4 illustrates the usage of the general registers. The usage of each register can be selected independently.

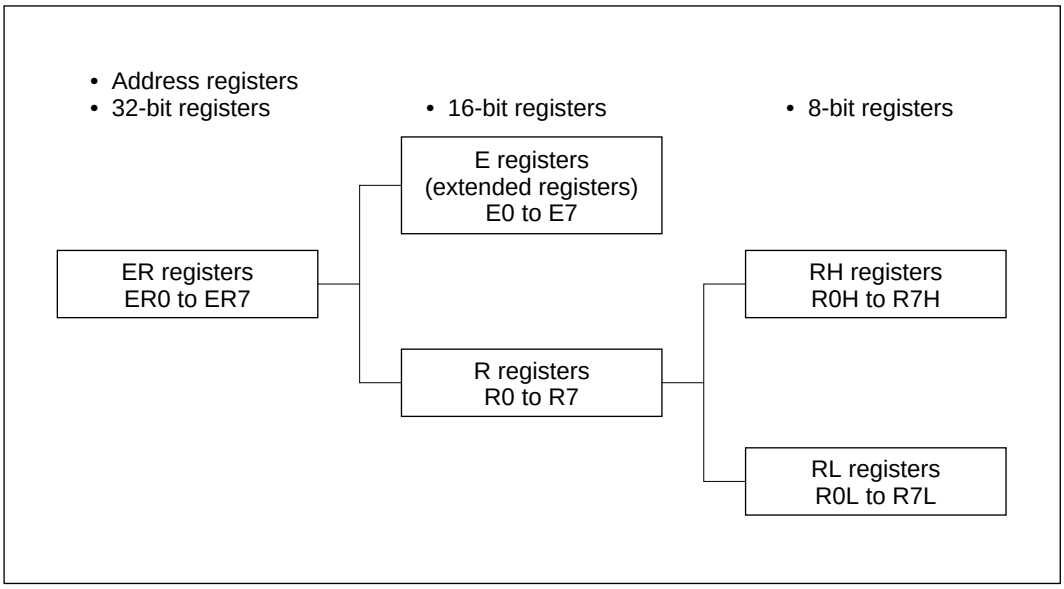


Figure 2-4 Usage of General Registers

General register ER7 has the function of stack pointer (SP) in addition to its general-register function, and is used implicitly in exception handling and subroutine calls. Figure 2-5 shows the stack.

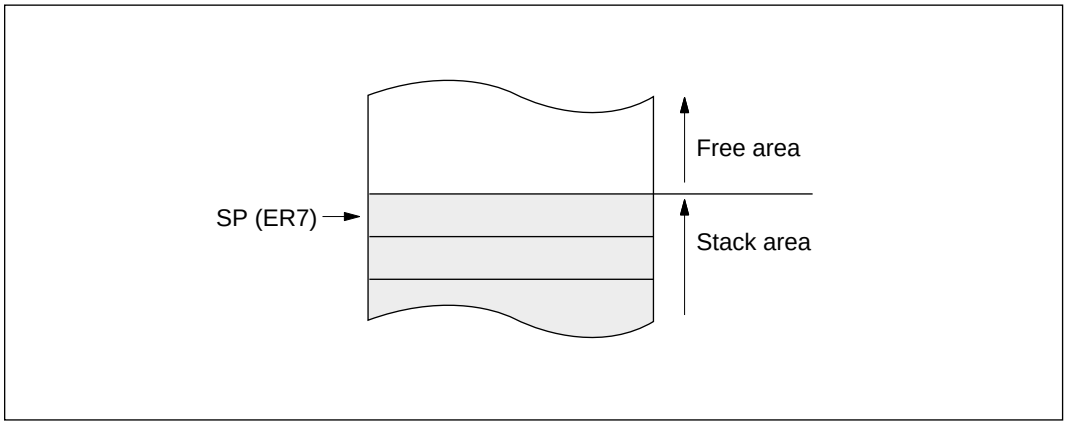


Figure 2-5 Stack

2.4.3 Control Registers

The control registers are the 24-bit program counter (PC) and the 8-bit condition code register (CCR).

Program Counter (PC): This 24-bit counter indicates the address of the next instruction the CPU will execute. The length of all CPU instructions is 2 bytes (one word) or a multiple of 2 bytes, so the least significant PC bit is ignored. When an instruction is fetched, the least significant PC bit is regarded as 0.

Condition Code Register (CCR): This 8-bit register contains internal CPU status information, including the interrupt mask bit (I) and half-carry (H), negative (N), zero (Z), overflow (V), and carry (C) flags.

Bit 7—Interrupt Mask Bit (I): Masks interrupts other than NMI when set to 1. NMI is accepted regardless of the I bit setting. The I bit is set to 1 at the start of an exception-handling sequence.

Bit 6—User Bit or Interrupt Mask Bit (UI): Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. This bit can also be used as an interrupt mask bit. For details see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

Bit 5—Half-Carry Flag (H): When the ADD.B, ADDX.B, SUB.B, SUBX.B, CMP.B, or NEG.B instruction is executed, this flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 3, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.W, SUB.W, CMP.W, or NEG.W instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 11, and cleared to 0 otherwise. When the ADD.L, SUB.L, CMP.L, or NEG.L instruction is executed, the H flag is set to 1 if there is a carry or borrow at bit 27, and cleared to 0 otherwise.

Bit 4—User Bit (U): Can be written and read by software using the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions.

Bit 3—Negative Flag (N): Indicates the most significant bit (sign bit) of data.

Bit 2—Zero Flag (Z): Set to 1 to indicate zero data, and cleared to 0 to indicate non-zero data.

Bit 1—Overflow Flag (V): Set to 1 when an arithmetic overflow occurs, and cleared to 0 at other times.

Bit 0—Carry Flag (C): Set to 1 when a carry occurs, and cleared to 0 otherwise. Used by:

- Add instructions, to indicate a carry
- Subtract instructions, to indicate a borrow
- Shift and rotate instructions, to store the value shifted out of the end bit

The carry flag is also used as a bit accumulator by bit manipulation instructions.

Some instructions leave flag bits unchanged. Operations can be performed on CCR by the LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions. The N, Z, V, and C flags are used by conditional branch (Bcc) instructions.

For the action of each instruction on the flag bits, see appendix A.1, Instruction List. For the I and UI bits, see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

2.4.4 Initial CPU Register Values

In reset exception handling, PC is initialized to a value loaded from the vector table, and the I bit in CCR is set to 1. The other CCR bits and the general registers are not initialized. In particular, the stack pointer (ER7) is not initialized. The stack pointer must therefore be initialized by an MOV.L instruction executed immediately after a reset.

2.5 Data Formats

The H8/300H CPU can process 1-bit, 4-bit (BCD), 8-bit (byte), 16-bit (word), and 32-bit (longword) data. Bit-manipulation instructions operate on 1-bit data by accessing bit n (n = 0, 1, 2, …, 7) of byte operand data. The DAA and DAS decimal-adjust instructions treat byte data as two digits of 4-bit BCD data.

2.5.1 General Register Data Formats

Figures 2-6 and 2-7 show the data formats in general registers.

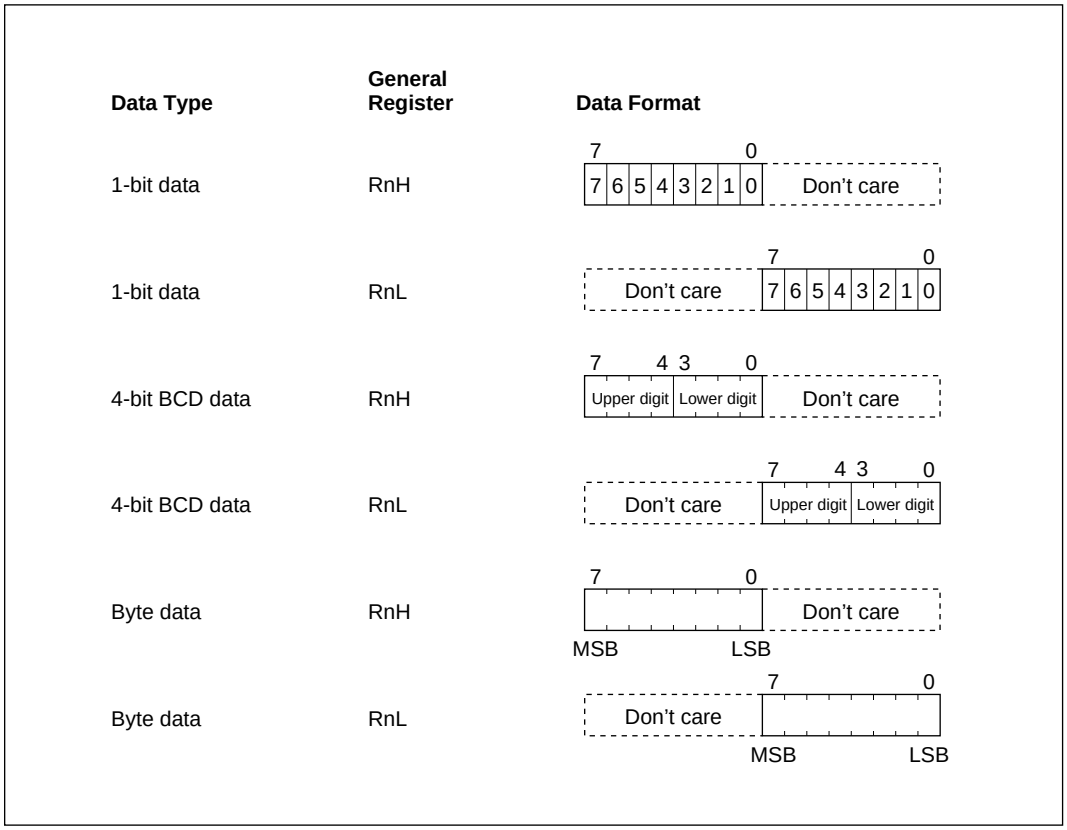


Figure 2-6 General Register Data Formats (1)

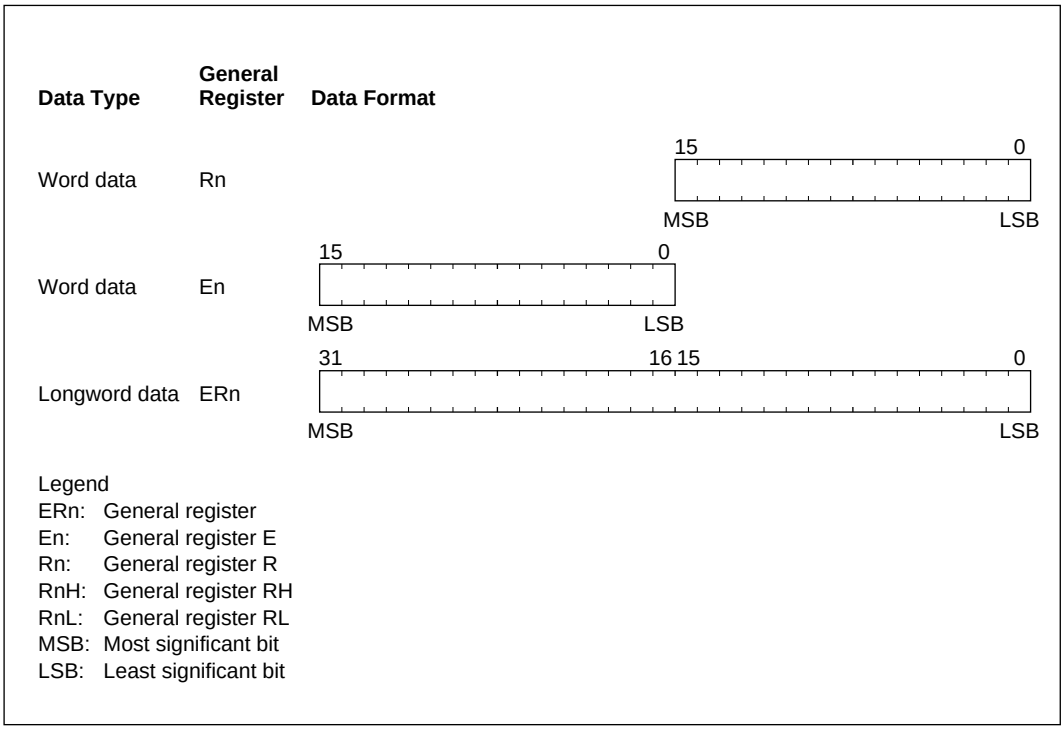


Figure 2-7 General Register Data Formats (2)

2.5.2 Memory Data Formats

Figure 2-8 shows the data formats on memory. The H8/300H CPU can access word data and longword data on memory, but word or longword data must begin at an even address. If an attempt is made to access word or longword data at an odd address, no address error occurs but the least significant bit of the address is regarded as 0, so the access starts at the preceding address. This also applies to instruction fetches.

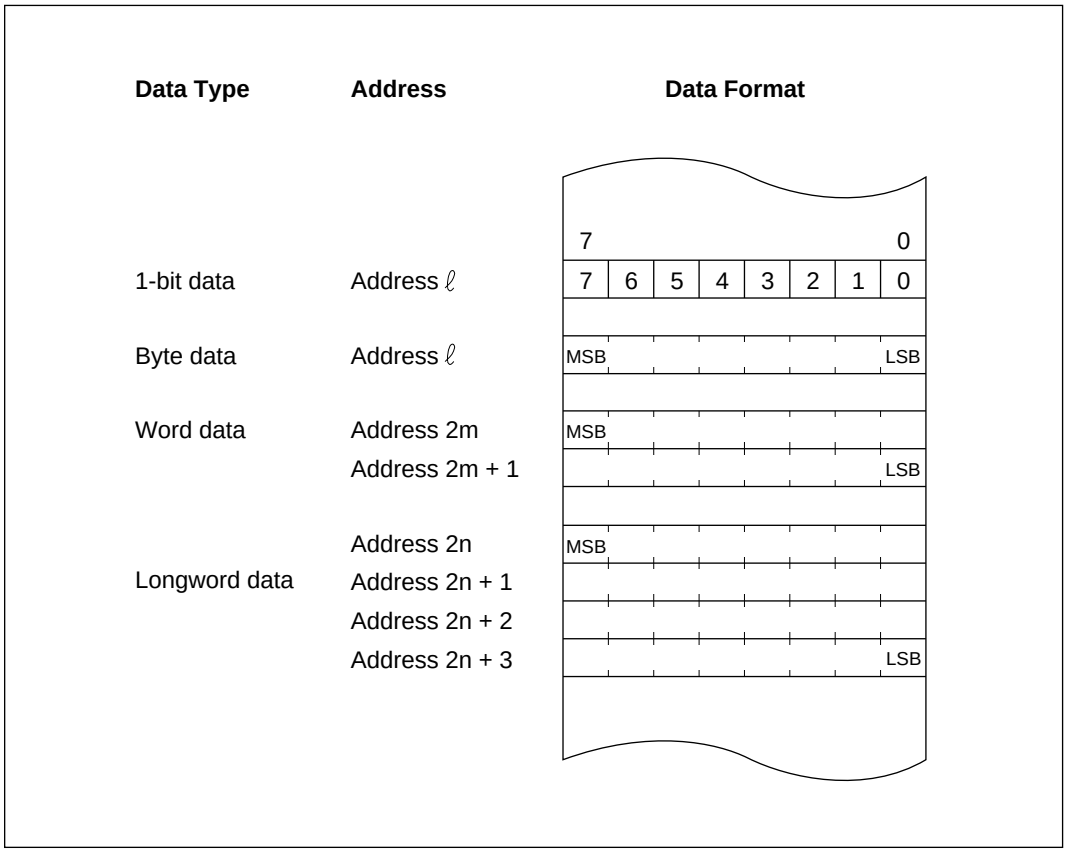


Figure 2-8 Memory Data Formats

When ER7 (SP) is used as an address register to access the stack, the operand size should be word size or longword size.

2.6 Instruction Set

2.6.1 Instruction Set Overview

The H8/300H CPU has 62 types of instructions, which are classified in table 2-1.

Table 2-1 Instruction Classification

Function	Instruction	Types
Data transfer	MOV, PUSH*1, POP*1, MOVTPE*2, MOVFPE*2	3
Arithmetic operations	ADD, SUB, ADDX, SUBX, INC, DEC, ADDS, SUBS, DAA, DAS, MULXU, DIVXU, MULXS, DIVXS, CMP, NEG, EXTS, EXTU	18
Logic operations	AND, OR, XOR, NOT	4
Shift operations	SHAL, SHAR, SHLL, SHLR, ROTL, ROTR, ROTXL, ROTXR	8
Bit manipulation	BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BTST, BAND, BIAND, BOR, BIOR, BXOR, BIXOR, BLD, BILD, BST, BIST	14
Branch	Bcc*3, JMP, BSR, JSR, RTS	5
System control	TRAPA, RTE, SLEEP, LDC, STC, ANDC, ORC, XORC, NOP	9
Block data transfer	EEPMOV	1
Total 62 types		

Notes: 1. POP.W Rn is identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn.
PUSH.W Rn is identical to MOV.W Rn, @–SP.
POP.L ERn is identical to MOV.L @SP+, Rn.
PUSH.L ERn is identical to MOV.L Rn, @–SP.
2. They are not available in the H8/3001.
3. Bcc is a generic branching instruction.

2.6.2 Instructions and Addressing Modes

Table 2-2 indicates the instructions available in the H8/300H CPU.

Table 2-2 Instructions and Addressing Modes

		Addressing Modes												
Function	**Instruction**	**#xx**	**Rn**	**@ERn**	**@ (d:16, ERn)**	**@ (d:24, ERn)**	**@ERn+/ @–ERn**	**@ aa:8**	**@ aa:16**	**@ aa:24**	**@ (d:8, PC)**	**@ (d:16, PC)**	**@@ aa:8**	**Implied**
Data transfer	MOV	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	BWL	B	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—
	POP, PUSH	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	WL
	MOVFPE, MOVTPE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	B	—	—	—	—	—
Arithmetic operations	ADD, CMP	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	SUB	WL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	ADDX, SUBX	B	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	ADDS, SUBS	—	L	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	INC, DEC	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	DAA, DAS	—	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	DIVXU, MULXS, MULXU, DIVXS	—	BW	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NEG	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	EXTU, EXTS	—	WL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Logic operations	AND, OR, XOR	BWL	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NOT	—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Shift instructions		—	BWL	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Bit manipulation		—	B	B	—	—	—	B	—	—	—	—	—	—
Branch	Bcc, BSR	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	o	o	—	—
	JMP, JSR	—	—	o	—	—	—	—	—	o	—	—	o	—
	RTS	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	o
System control	TRAPA	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	o
	RTE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	o
	SLEEP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	o
	LDC	B	B	W	W	W	W	—	W	W	—	—	—	—
	STC	—	B	W	W	W	W	—	W	W	—	—	—	—
	ANDC, ORC, XORC	B	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
	NOP	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	o
Block data transfer		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BW

Legend
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

2.6.3 Tables of Instructions Classified by Function

Tables 2-3 to 2-10 summarize the instructions in each functional category. The operation notation used in these tables is defined next.

Operation Notation

Rd	General register (destination)*
Rs	General register (source)*
Rn	General register*
ERn	General register (32-bit register or address register)
(EAd)	Destination operand
(EAs)	Source operand
CCR	Condition code register
N	N (negative) flag of CCR
Z	Z (zero) flag of CCR
V	V (overflow) flag of CCR
C	C (carry) flag of CCR
PC	Program counter
SP	Stack pointer
#IMM	Immediate data
disp	Displacement
+	Addition
–	Subtraction
×	Multiplication
÷	Division
∧	AND logical
∨	OR logical
⊕	Exclusive OR logical
→	Move
¬	NOT (logical complement)
:3/:8/:16/:24	3-, 8-, 16-, or 24-bit length

Note: * General registers include 8-bit registers (R0H to R7H, R0L to R7L), 16-bit registers (R0 to R7, E0 to E7), and 32-bit data or address registers (ER0 to ER7).

Table 2-3 Data Transfer Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
MOV	B/W/L	(EAs) → Rd, Rs → (EAd) Moves data between two general registers or between a general register and memory, or moves immediate data to a general register.
MOVFPE	B	(EAs) → Rd Cannot be used in the H8/3001.
MOVTPE	B	Rs → (EAs) Cannot be used in the H8/3001.
POP	W/L	@SP+ → Rn Pops a general register from the stack. POP.W Rn is identical to MOV.W @SP+, Rn. Similarly, POP.L ERn is identical to MOV.L @SP+, ERn.
PUSH	W/L	Rn → @–SP Pushes a general register onto the stack. PUSH.W Rn is identical to MOV.W Rn, @–SP. Similarly, PUSH.L ERn is identical to MOV.L ERn, @–SP.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2-4 Arithmetic Operation Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
ADD, SUB	B/W/L	Rd ± Rs → Rd, Rd ± #IMM → Rd Performs addition or subtraction on data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register. (Immediate byte data cannot be subtracted from data in a general register. Use the SUBX or ADD instruction.)
ADDX, SUBX	B	Rd ± Rs ± C → Rd, Rd ± #IMM ± C → Rd Performs addition or subtraction with carry or borrow on data in two general registers, or on immediate data and data in a general register.
INC, DEC	B/W/L	Rd ± 1 → Rd, Rd ± 2 → Rd Increments or decrements a general register by 1 or 2. (Byte operands can be incremented or decremented by 1 only.)
ADDS, SUBS	L	Rd ± 1 → Rd, Rd ± 2 → Rd, Rd ± 4 → Rd Adds or subtracts the value 1, 2, or 4 to or from data in a 32-bit register.
DAA, DAS	B	Rd decimal adjust → Rd Decimal-adjusts an addition or subtraction result in a general register by referring to CCR to produce 4-bit BCD data.
MULXU	B/W	Rd × Rs → Rd Performs unsigned multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits × 8 bits → 16 bits or 16 bits × 16 bits → 32 bits.
MULXS	B/W	Rd × Rs → Rd Performs signed multiplication on data in two general registers: either 8 bits × 8 bits → 16 bits or 16 bits × 16 bits → 32 bits.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2-4 Arithmetic Operation Instructions (cont)

Instruction	Size*	Function
DIVXU	B/W	Rd ÷ Rs → Rd Performs unsigned division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits ÷ 8 bits → 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder or 32 bits ÷ 16 bits → 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder.
DIVXS	B/W	Rd ÷ Rs → Rd Performs signed division on data in two general registers: either 16 bits ÷ 8 bits → 8-bit quotient and 8-bit remainder, or 32 bits ÷ 16 bits → 16-bit quotient and 16-bit remainder.
CMP	B/W/L	Rd – Rs, Rd – #IMM Compares data in a general register with data in another general register or with immediate data, and sets CCR according to the result.
NEG	B/W/L	0 – Rd → Rd Takes the two's complement (arithmetic complement) of data in a general register.
EXTS	W/L	Rd (sign extension) → Rd Extends byte data in the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word data, or extends word data in the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword data, by extending the sign bit.
EXTU	W/L	Rd (zero extension) → Rd Extends byte data in the lower 8 bits of a 16-bit register to word data, or extends word data in the lower 16 bits of a 32-bit register to longword data, by padding with zeros.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2-5 Logic Operation Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
AND	B/W/L	Rd $\wedge$ Rs $\rightarrow$ Rd, Rd $\wedge$ #IMM $\rightarrow$ Rd Performs a logical AND operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
OR	B/W/L	Rd $\vee$ Rs $\rightarrow$ Rd, Rd $\vee$ #IMM $\rightarrow$ Rd Performs a logical OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
XOR	B/W/L	Rd $\oplus$ Rs $\rightarrow$ Rd, Rd $\oplus$ #IMM $\rightarrow$ Rd Performs a logical exclusive OR operation on a general register and another general register or immediate data.
NOT	B/W/L	$\neg$ Rd $\rightarrow$ Rd Takes the one's complement of general register contents.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2-6 Shift Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
SHAL, SHAR	B/W/L	Rd (shift) $\rightarrow$ Rd Performs an arithmetic shift on general register contents.
SHLL, SHLR	B/W/L	Rd (shift) $\rightarrow$ Rd Performs a logical shift on general register contents.
ROTL, ROTR	B/W/L	Rd (rotate) $\rightarrow$ Rd Rotates general register contents.
ROTXL, ROTXR	B/W/L	Rd (rotate) $\rightarrow$ Rd Rotates general register contents through the carry bit.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word
L: Longword

Table 2-7 Bit Manipulation Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
BSET	B	1 → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) Sets a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 1. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower 3 bits of a general register.
BCLR	B	0 → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) Clears a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to 0. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower 3 bits of a general register.
BNOT	B	¬ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) Inverts a specified bit in a general register or memory operand. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower 3 bits of a general register.
BTST	B	¬ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → Z Tests a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and sets or clears the Z flag accordingly. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data or the lower 3 bits of a general register.
BAND	B	C ∧ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C ANDs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
BIAND	B	C ∧ [¬ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>)] → C ANDs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag. The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte

Table 2-7 Bit Manipulation Instructions (cont)

Instruction	Size*	Function
BOR	B	C ∨ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C
		ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
BIOR	B	C ∨ [¬ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>)] → C
		ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
		The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
BXOR	B	C ⊕ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C
		Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
BIXOR	B	C ⊕ [¬ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>)] → C
		Exclusive-ORs the carry flag with the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand and stores the result in the carry flag.
		The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
BLD	B	(<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C
		Transfers a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to the carry flag.
BILD	B	¬ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>) → C
		Transfers the inverse of a specified bit in a general register or memory operand to the carry flag.
		The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.
BST	B	C → (<bit-No.> of <EAd>)
		Transfers the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand.
BIST	B	C → ¬ (<bit-No.> of <EAd>)
		Transfers the inverse of the carry flag value to a specified bit in a general register or memory operand.
		The bit number is specified by 3-bit immediate data.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte

Table 2-8 Branching Instructions

Instruction	Size	Function
Bcc	—	Branches to a specified address if a specified condition is true. The branching conditions are listed below.

Mnemonic	Description	Condition
BRA (BT)	Always (true)	Always
BRN (BF)	Never (false)	Never
BHI	High	$C \vee Z = 0$
BLS	Low or same	$C \vee Z = 1$
Bcc (BHS)	Carry clear (high or same)	$C = 0$
BCS (BLO)	Carry set (low)	$C = 1$
BNE	Not equal	$Z = 0$
BEQ	Equal	$Z = 1$
BVC	Overflow clear	$V = 0$
BVS	Overflow set	$V = 1$
BPL	Plus	$N = 0$
BMI	Minus	$N = 1$
BGE	Greater or equal	$N \oplus V = 0$
BLT	Less than	$N \oplus V = 1$
BGT	Greater than	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 0$
BLE	Less or equal	$Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$

JMP	—	Branches unconditionally to a specified address
BSR	—	Branches to a subroutine at a specified address
JSR	—	Branches to a subroutine at a specified address
RTS	—	Returns from a subroutine

Table 2-9 System Control Instructions

Instruction	Size*	Function
TRAPA	—	Starts trap-instruction exception handling
RTE	—	Returns from an exception-handling routine
SLEEP	—	Causes a transition to the power-down state
LDC	B/W	(EAs) → CCR Moves the source operand contents to the condition code register. The condition code register size is one byte, but in transfer from memory, data is read by word access.
STC	B/W	CCR → (EAd) Transfers the CCR contents to a destination location. The condition code register size is one byte, but in transfer to memory, data is written by word access.
ANDC	B	CCR ∧ #IMM → CCR Logically ANDs the condition code register with immediate data.
ORC	B	CCR ∨ #IMM → CCR Logically ORs the condition code register with immediate data.
XORC	B	CCR ⊕ #IMM → CCR Logically exclusive-ORs the condition code register with immediate data.
NOP	—	PC + 2 → PC Only increments the program counter.

Note: * Size refers to the operand size.
B: Byte
W: Word

Table 2-10 Block Transfer Instruction

Instruction	Size	Function
EEPMOV.B	—	if R4L ≠ 0 then repeat @ER5+ → @ER6+, R4L – 1 → R4L until R4L = 0 else next;
EEPMOV.W	—	if R4 ≠ 0 then repeat @ER5+ → @ER6+, R4 – 1 → R4 until R4 = 0 else next; Transfers a data block according to parameters set in general registers R4L or R4, ER5, and ER6. R4L or R4: Size of block (bytes) ER5: Starting source address ER6: Starting destination address Execution of the next instruction begins as soon as the transfer is completed.

2.6.4 Basic Instruction Formats

The H8/300H instructions consist of 2-byte (1-word) units. An instruction consists of an operation field (OP field), a register field (r field), an effective address extension (EA field), and a condition field (cc).

Operation Field: Indicates the function of the instruction, the addressing mode, and the operation to be carried out on the operand. The operation field always includes the first 4 bits of the instruction. Some instructions have two operation fields.

Register Field: Specifies a general register. Address registers are specified by 3 bits, data registers by 3 bits or 4 bits. Some instructions have two register fields. Some have no register field.

Effective Address Extension: Eight, 16, or 32 bits specifying immediate data, an absolute address, or a displacement. A 24-bit address or displacement is treated as 32-bit data in which the first 8 bits are 0 (H'00).

Condition Field: Specifies the branching condition of Bcc instructions.

Figure 2-9 shows examples of instruction formats.

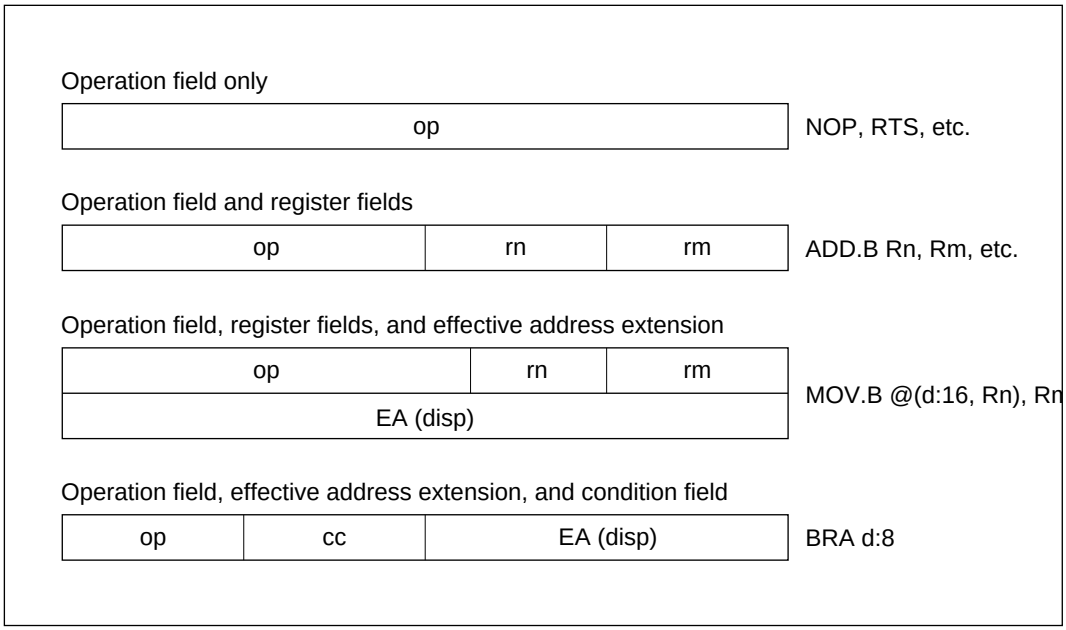


Figure 2-9 Instruction Formats

2.6.5 Notes on Use of Bit Manipulation Instructions

The BSET, BCLR, BNOT, BST, and BIST instructions read a byte of data, modify a bit in the byte, then write the byte back. Care is required when these instructions are used to access registers with write-only bits, or to access ports.

The BCLR instruction can be used to clear flags in the on-chip registers. In an interrupt-handling routine, for example, if it is known that the flag is set to 1, it is not necessary to read the flag ahead of time.

2.7 Addressing Modes and Effective Address Calculation

2.7.1 Addressing Modes

The H8/300H CPU supports the eight addressing modes listed in table 2-11. Each instruction uses a subset of these addressing modes. Arithmetic and logic instructions can use the register direct and immediate modes. Data transfer instructions can use all addressing modes except program-counter relative and memory indirect. Bit manipulation instructions use register direct, register indirect, or absolute (@aa:8) addressing mode to specify an operand, and register direct (BSET, BCLR, BNOT, and BTST instructions) or immediate (3-bit) addressing mode to specify a bit number in the operand.

Table 2-11 Addressing Modes

No.	Addressing Mode	Symbol
1	Register direct	Rn
2	Register indirect	@ERn
3	Register indirect with displacement	@(d:16, ERn)/@d:24, ERn)
4	Register indirect with post-increment Register indirect with pre-decrement	@ERn+ @–ERn
5	Absolute address	@aa:8/@aa:16/@aa:24
6	Immediate	#xx:8/#xx:16/#xx:32
7	Program-counter relative	@(d:8, PC)/@(d:16, PC)
8	Memory indirect	@@aa:8

1 Register Direct—Rn: The register field of the instruction code specifies an 8-, 16-, or 32-bit register containing the operand. R0H to R7H and R0L to R7L can be specified as 8-bit registers. R0 to R7 and E0 to E7 can be specified as 16-bit registers. ER0 to ER7 can be specified as 32-bit registers.

2 Register Indirect—@ERn: The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn), the lower 24 bits of which contain the address of the operand.

3 Register Indirect with Displacement—@(d:16, ERn) or @(d:24, ERn): A 16-bit or 24-bit displacement contained in the instruction code is added to the contents of an address register (ERn) specified by the register field of the instruction, and the lower 24 bits of the sum specify the address of a memory operand. A 16-bit displacement is sign-extended when added.

4 Register Indirect with Post-Increment or Pre-Decrement—@ERn+ or @–ERn:

- Register indirect with post-increment—@ERn+

  The register field of the instruction code specifies an address register (ERn) the lower 24 bits of which contain the address of a memory operand. After the operand is accessed, 1, 2, or 4 is added to the address register contents (32 bits) and the sum is stored in the address register. The value added is 1 for byte access, 2 for word access, or 4 for longword access. For word or longword access, the register value should be even.

- Register indirect with pre-decrement—@–ERn

  The value 1, 2, or 4 is subtracted from an address register (ERn) specified by the register field in the instruction code, and the lower 24 bits of the result become the address of a memory operand. The result is also stored in the address register. The value subtracted is 1 for byte access, 2 for word access, or 4 for longword access. For word or longword access, the resulting register value should be even.

5 Absolute Address—@aa:8, @aa:16, or @aa:24: The instruction code contains the absolute address of a memory operand. The absolute address may be 8 bits long (@aa:8), 16 bits long (@aa:16), or 24 bits long (@aa:24). For an 8-bit absolute address, the upper 16 bits are all assumed to be 1 (H'FFFF). For a 16-bit absolute address the upper 8 bits are a sign extension. A 24-bit absolute address can access the entire address space. Table 2-12 indicates the accessible address ranges.

Table 2-12 Absolute Address Access Ranges

Absolute Address	1-Mbyte Modes	16-Mbyte Modes
8 bits (@aa:8)	H'FFF00 to H'FFFFF (1048320 to 1048575)	H'FFFF00 to H'FFFFFF (16776960 to 16777215)
16 bits (@aa:16)	H'00000 to H'07FFF, H'F8000 to H'FFFFF (0 to 32767, 1015808 to 1048575)	H'000000 to H'007FFF, H'FF8000 to H'FFFFFF (0 to 32767, 16744448 to 16777215)
24 bits (@aa:24)	H'00000 to H'FFFFF (0 to 1048575)	H'000000 to H'FFFFFF (0 to 16777215)

6 Immediate—#xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32: The instruction code contains 8-bit (#xx:8), 16-bit (#xx:16), or 32-bit (#xx:32) immediate data as an operand.

The instruction codes of the ADDS, SUBS, INC, and DEC instructions contain immediate data implicitly. The instruction codes of some bit manipulation instructions contain 3-bit immediate data specifying a bit number. The TRAPA instruction code contains 2-bit immediate data specifying a vector address.

7 Program-Counter Relative—@(d:8, PC) or @(d:16, PC): This mode is used in the Bcc and BSR instructions. An 8-bit or 16-bit displacement contained in the instruction code is sign-extended to 24 bits and added to the 24-bit PC contents to generate a 24-bit branch address. The PC value to which the displacement is added is the address of the first byte of the next instruction, so the possible branching range is –126 to +128 bytes (–63 to +64 words) or –32766 to +32768 bytes (–16383 to +16384 words) from the branch instruction. The resulting value should be an even number.

8 Memory Indirect—@@aa:8: This mode can be used by the JMP and JSR instructions. The instruction code contains an 8-bit absolute address specifying a memory operand. This memory operand contains a branch address. The memory operand is accessed by longword access. The first byte of the memory operand is ignored, generating a 24-bit branch address. See figure 2-10. The upper bits of the 8-bit absolute address are assumed to be 0 (H'0000), so the address range is 0 to 255 (H'000000 to H'0000FF). Note that the first part of this range is also the exception vector area. For further details see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

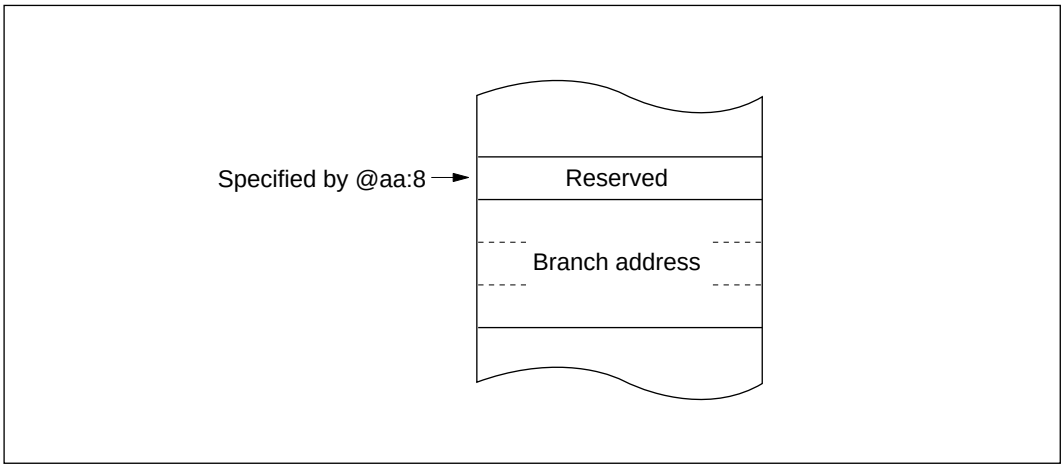


Figure 2-10 Memory-Indirect Branch Address Specification

When a word-size or longword-size memory operand is specified, or when a branch address is specified, if the specified memory address is odd, the least significant bit is regarded as 0. The accessed data or instruction code therefore begins at the preceding address. See section 2.5.2, Memory Data Formats.

2.7.2 Effective Address Calculation

Table 2-13 explains how an effective address is calculated in each addressing mode. In the 1-Mbyte operating modes the upper 4 bits of the calculated address are ignored in order to generate a 20-bit effective address.

Table 2-13 Effective Address Calculation

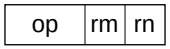
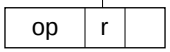
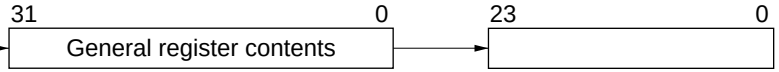
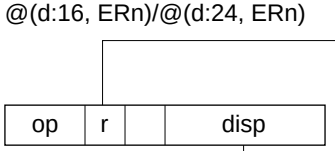
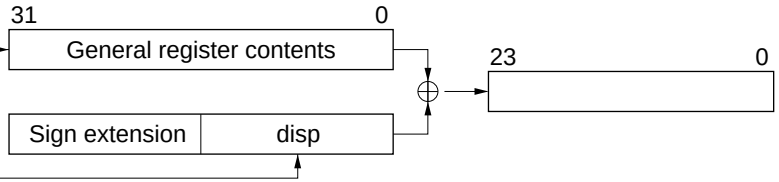
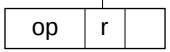
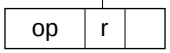
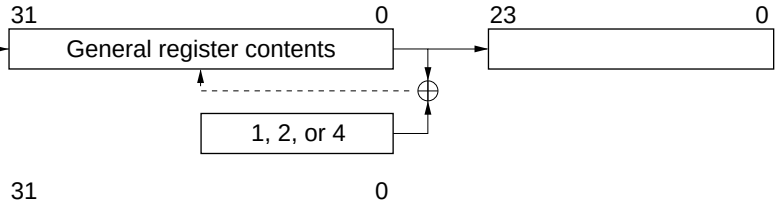
No.	Addressing Mode and Instruction Format	Effective Address Calculation	Effective Address
1	Register direct (Rn) 		Operand is general register contents
2	Register indirect (@ERn) 		
3	Register indirect with displacement @(d:16, ERn)/@(d:24, ERn) 		
4	Register indirect with post-increment or pre-decrement Register indirect with post-increment @ERn+  Register indirect with pre-decrement @–ERn 	 1 for a byte operand, 2 for a word operand, 4 for a longword operand	

Table 2-13 Effective Address Calculation (cont)

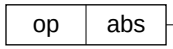
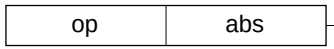
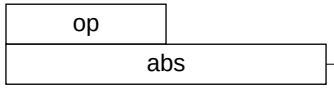
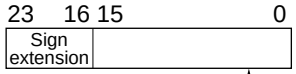
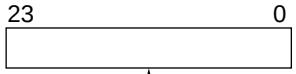
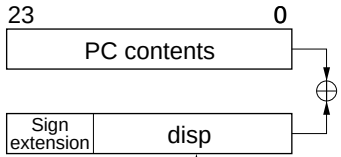
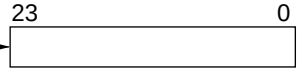
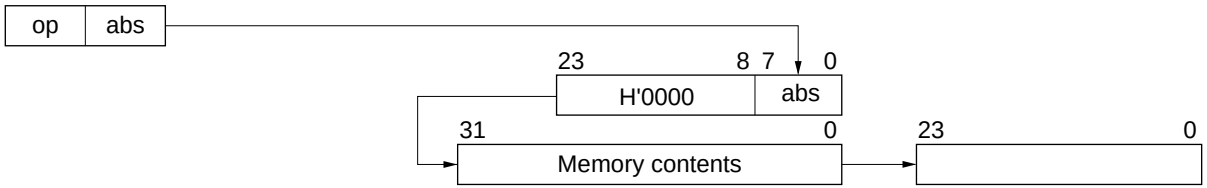
No.	Addressing Mode and Instruction Format	Effective Address Calculation	Effective Address
5	Absolute address @aa:8  @aa:16  @aa:24 		  
6	Immediate #xx:8, #xx:16, or #xx:32 		Operand is immediate data
7	Program-counter relative @(d:8, PC) or @(d:16, PC) 		

Table 2-13 Effective Address Calculation (cont)

No.	Addressing Mode and Instruction Format	Effective Address Calculation	Effective Address
8	Memory indirect @@aa:8		

Legend

r, rm, rn:	Register field
op:	Operation field
disp:	Displacement
IMM:	Immediate data
abs:	Absolute address

2.8 Processing States

2.8.1 Overview

The H8/300H CPU has five processing states: the program execution state, exception-handling state, power-down state, reset state, and bus-released state. The power-down state includes sleep mode, software standby mode, and hardware standby mode. Figure 2-11 classifies the processing states. Figure 2-13 indicates the state transitions.

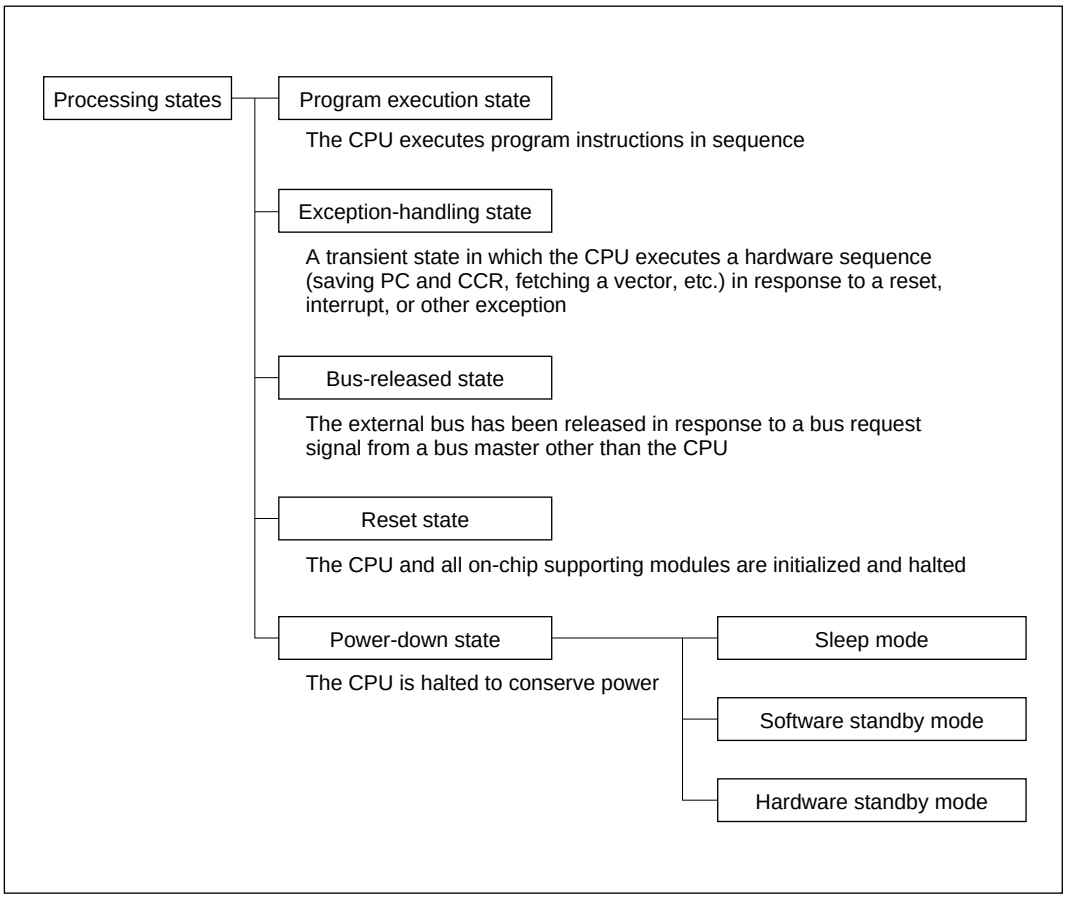


Figure 2-11 Processing States

2.8.2 Program Execution State

In this state the CPU executes program instructions in normal sequence.

2.8.3 Exception-Handling State

The exception-handling state is a transient state that occurs when the CPU alters the normal program flow due to a reset, interrupt, or trap instruction. The CPU fetches a starting address from the exception vector table and branches to that address. In interrupt and trap exception handling the CPU references the stack pointer (ER7) and saves the program counter and condition code register.

Types of Exception Handling and Their Priority: Exception handling is performed for resets, interrupts, and trap instructions. Table 2-14 indicates the types of exception handling and their priority. Trap instruction exceptions are accepted at all times in the program execution state.

Table 2-14 Exception Handling Types and Priority

Priority	Type of Exception	Detection Timing	Start of Exception Handling
High	Reset	Synchronized with clock	Exception handling starts immediately when $\overline{\text{RES}}$ changes from low to high
↑	Interrupt	End of instruction execution or end of exception handling*	When an interrupt is requested, exception handling starts at the end of the current instruction or current exception-handling sequence
	Trap instruction	When TRAPA instruction is executed	Exception handling starts when a trap (TRAPA) instruction is executed
Low			

Note: * Interrupts are not detected at the end of the ANDC, ORC, XORC, and LDC instructions, or immediately after reset exception handling.

Figure 2-12 classifies the exception sources. For further details about exception sources, vector numbers, and vector addresses, see section 4, Exception Handling, and section 5, Interrupt Controller.

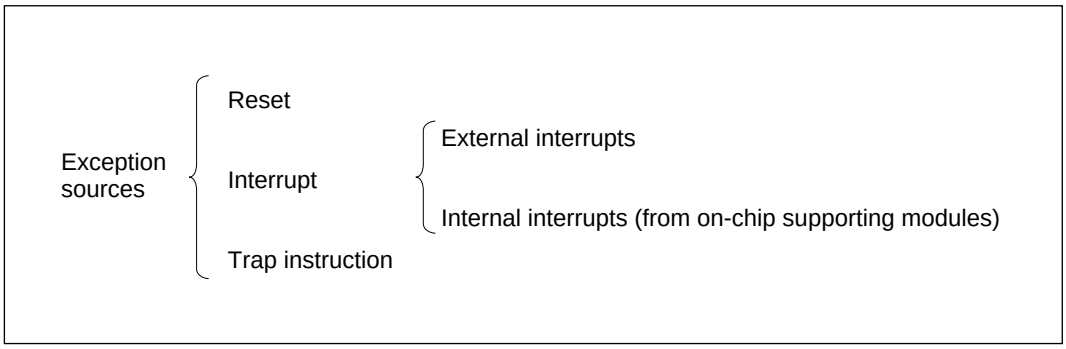
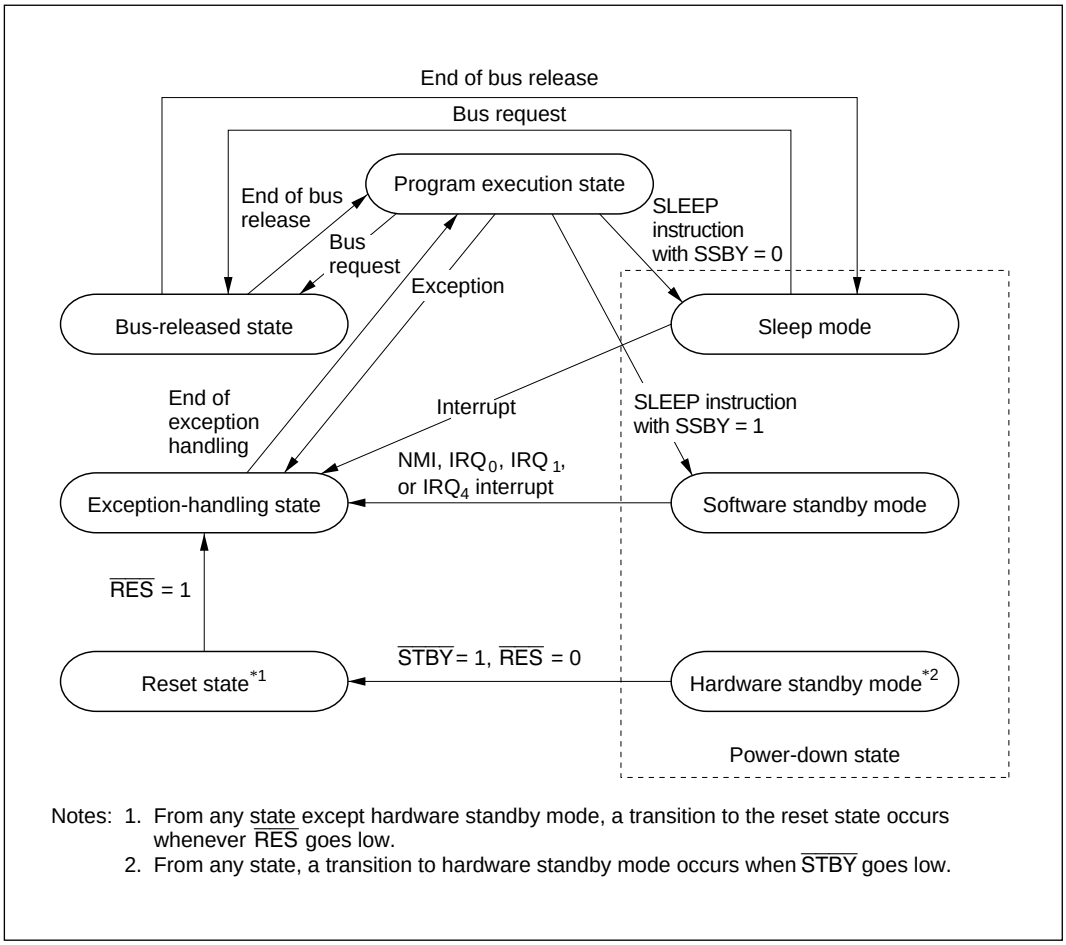


Figure 2-12 Classification of Exception Sources



Notes: 1. From any state except hardware standby mode, a transition to the reset state occurs whenever $\overline{RES}$ goes low.
2. From any state, a transition to hardware standby mode occurs when $\overline{STBY}$ goes low.

Figure 2-13 State Transitions

2.8.4 Exception-Handling Sequences

Reset Exception Handling: Reset exception handling has the highest priority. The reset state is entered when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal goes low. Reset exception handling starts after that, when $\overline{\text{RES}}$ changes from low to high. When reset exception handling starts the CPU fetches a start address from the exception vector table and starts program execution from that address. All interrupts, including NMI, are disabled during the reset exception-handling sequence and immediately after it ends.

Interrupt Exception Handling and Trap Instruction Exception Handling: When these exception-handling sequences begin, the CPU references the stack pointer (ER7) and pushes the program counter and condition code register on the stack. Next, if the UE bit in the system control register (SYSCR) is set to 1, the CPU sets the I bit in the condition code register to 1. If the UE bit is cleared to 0, the CPU sets both the I bit and the UI bit in the condition code register to 1. Then the CPU fetches a start address from the exception vector table and execution branches to that address.

Figure 2-14 shows the stack after the exception-handling sequence.

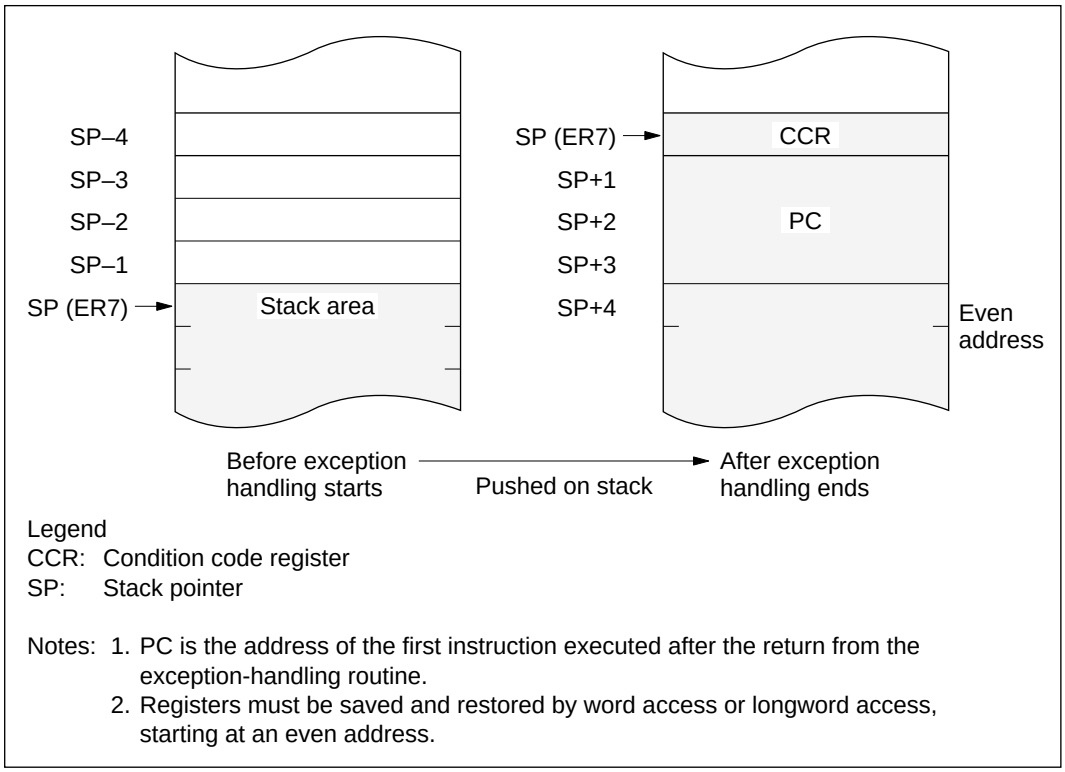


Figure 2-14 Stack Structure after Exception Handling

2.8.5 Bus-Released State

In this state the bus is released to a bus master other than the CPU, in response to a bus request. The bus master other than the CPU is the external bus master. While the bus is released, the CPU halts except for internal operations. Interrupt requests are not accepted. For details see section 6.3.7, Bus Arbiter Operation

2.8.6 Reset State

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ input goes low all current processing stops and the CPU enters the reset state. The I bit in the condition code register is set to 1 by a reset. All interrupts are masked in the reset state. Reset exception handling starts when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal changes from low to high.

2.8.7 Power-Down State

In the power-down state the CPU stops operating to conserve power. There are three modes: sleep mode, software standby mode, and hardware standby mode.

Sleep Mode: A transition to sleep mode is made if the SLEEP instruction is executed while the SSBY bit is cleared to 0 in the system control register (SYSCR). CPU operations stop immediately after execution of the SLEEP instruction, but the contents of CPU registers are retained.

Software Standby Mode: A transition to software standby mode is made if the SLEEP instruction is executed while the SSBY bit is set to 1 in SYSCR. The CPU and clock halt and all on-chip supporting modules stop operating. The on-chip supporting modules are reset, but as long as a specified voltage is supplied the contents of CPU registers and on-chip RAM are retained. The I/O ports also remain in their existing states.

Hardware Standby Mode: A transition to hardware standby mode is made when the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ input goes low. As in software standby mode, the CPU and clock halt and the on-chip supporting modules are reset, but as long as a specified voltage is supplied, on-chip RAM contents are retained.

For further information see section 14, Power-Down State.

2.9 Basic Operational Timing

2.9.1 Overview

The H8/300H CPU operates according to the system clock (ø). The interval from one rise of the system clock to the next rise is referred to as a "state." A memory cycle or bus cycle consists of two or three states. The CPU uses different methods to access on-chip memory, the on-chip supporting modules, and the external address space. Access to the external address space can be controlled by the bus controller.

2.9.2 On-Chip Memory Access Timing

On-chip memory is accessed in two states. The data bus is 16 bits wide, permitting both byte and word access. Figure 2-15 shows the on-chip memory access cycle. Figure 2-16 indicates the pin states.

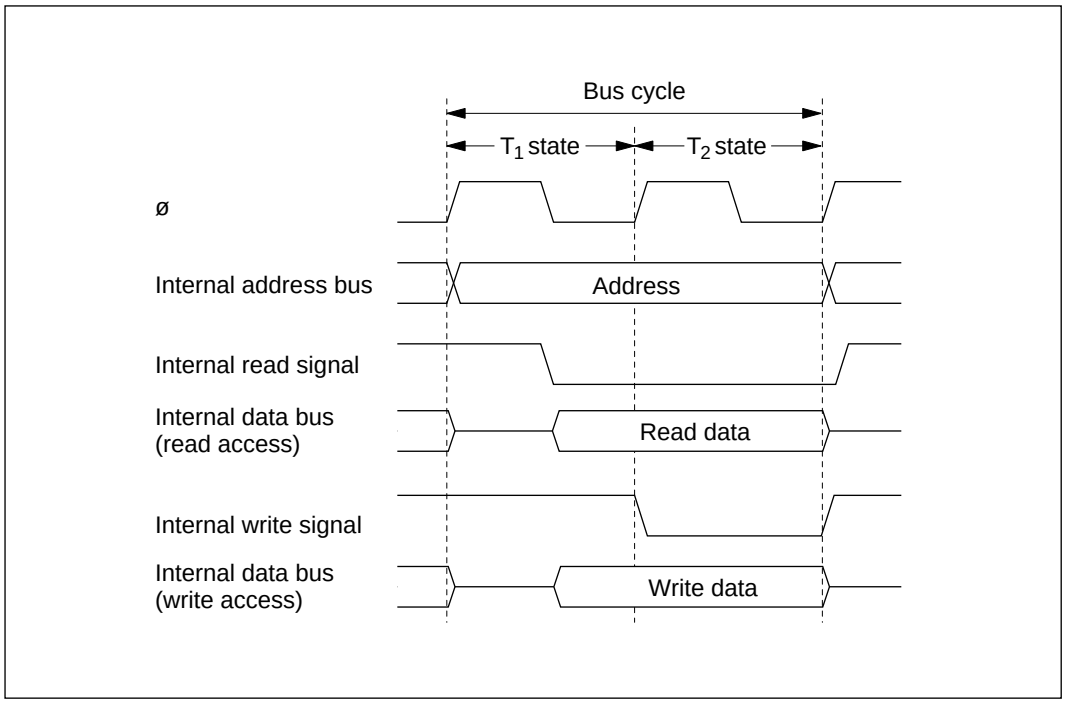


Figure 2-15 On-Chip Memory Access Cycle

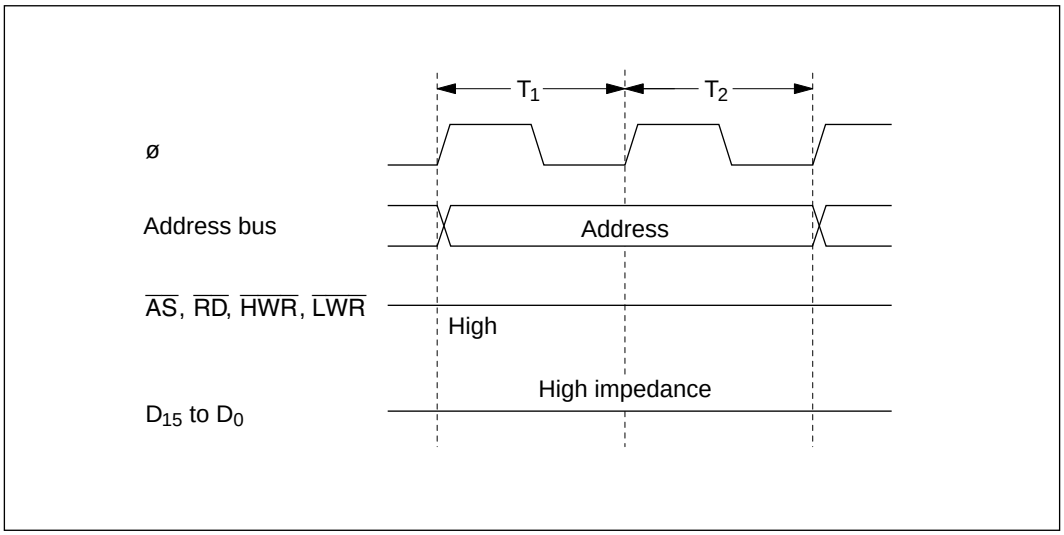


Figure 2-16 Pin States during On-Chip Memory Access

2.9.3 On-Chip Supporting Module Access Timing

The on-chip supporting modules are accessed in three states. The data bus is 8 or 16 bits wide, depending on the register being accessed. Figure 2-17 shows the on-chip supporting module access timing. Figure 2-18 indicates the pin states.

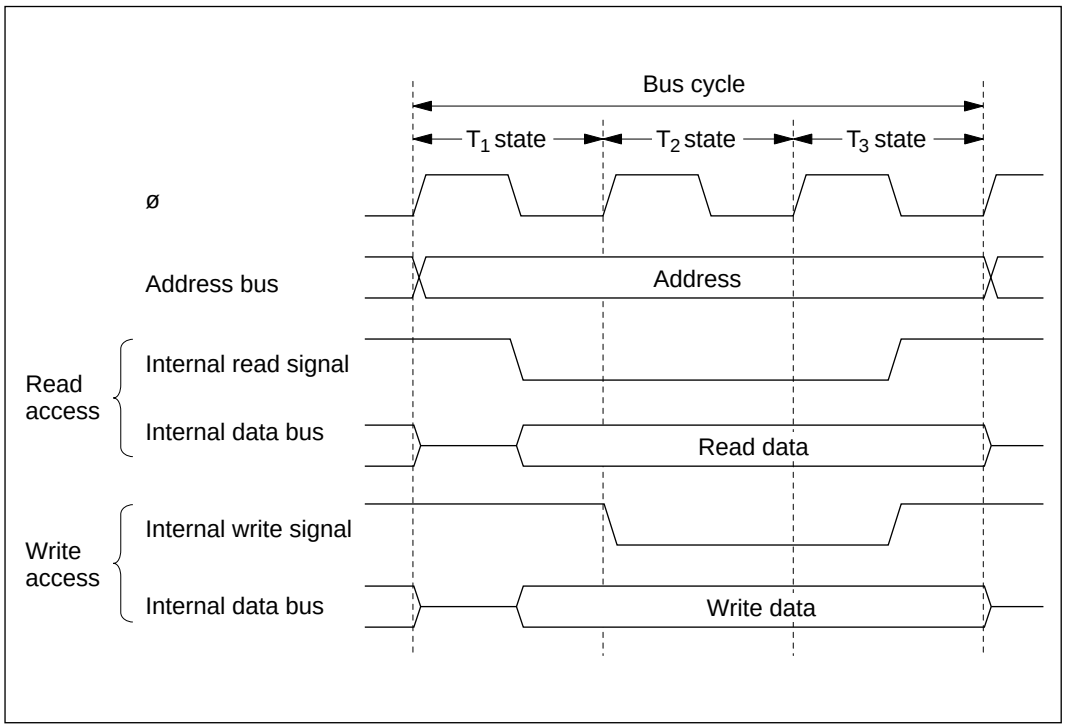


Figure 2-17 Access Cycle for On-Chip Supporting Modules

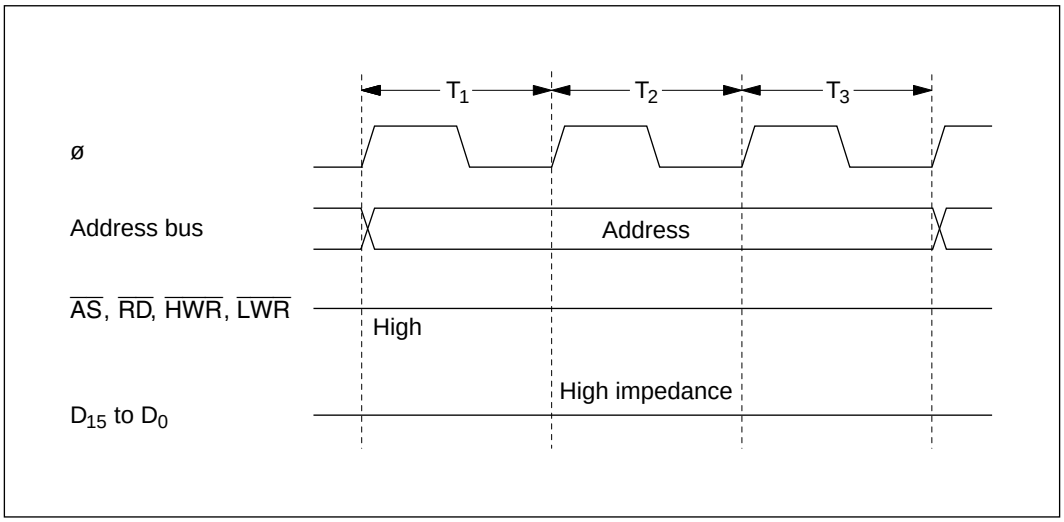


Figure 2-18 Pin States during Access to On-Chip Supporting Modules

2.9.4 Access to External Address Space

The external address space is divided into eight areas (areas 0 to 7). Bus-controller settings determine whether each area is accessed via an 8-bit or 16-bit bus, and whether it is accessed in two or three states. For details see section 6, Bus Controller.

Section 3 MCU Operating Modes

3.1 Overview

3.1.1 Operating Mode Selection

The H8/3001 has four operating modes (modes 1 to 4) that are selected by the mode pins (MD_2 to MD_0) as indicated in table 3-1. The input at these pins determines the size of the address space and the initial bus mode.

Table 3-1 Operating Mode Selection

	Mode Pins			Description		
Operating Mode	**MD_2**	**MD_1**	**MD_0**	**Address Space**	**Initial Bus Mode*1**	**On-Chip RAM**
—	0	0	0	—	—	—
Mode 1	0	0	1	1 Mbyte	8 bits	Enabled*2
Mode 2	0	1	0	1 Mbyte	16 bits	Enabled*2
Mode 3	0	1	1	16 Mbytes	8 bits	Enabled*2
Mode 4	1	0	0	16 Mbytes	16 bits	Enabled*2
—	1	0	1	—	—	—
—	1	1	0	—	—	—
—	1	1	1	—	—	—

Notes: 1. In all modes, an 8-bit or 16-bit data bus can be selected on a per-area basis by settings made in the area bus width control register (ABWCR). For details see section 6, Bus Controller.
2. If the RAM enable bit (RAME) in the system control register (SYSCR) is cleared to 0, these addresses become external addresses.

For the address space size there are two choices: 1 Mbyte or 16 Mbytes. The external data bus is either 8 or 16 bits wide depending on the settings in the area bus width control register (ABWCR). If 8-bit access is selected for all areas, the external data bus is 8 bits wide. For details see section 6, Bus Controller.

Modes 1 to 4 are externally expanded modes that enable access to external memory and peripheral devices. Modes 1 and 2 support a maximum address space of 1 Mbyte. Modes 3 and 4 support a maximum address space of 16 Mbytes.

The H8/3001 can only be used in modes 1 to 4. The inputs at the mode pins must select one of these four modes. The inputs at the mode pins must not be changed during operation.

3.1.2 Register Configuration

The H8/3001 has a mode control register (MDCR) that indicates the inputs at the mode pins (MD_2 to MD_0), and a system control register (SYSCR). Table 3-2 summarizes these registers.

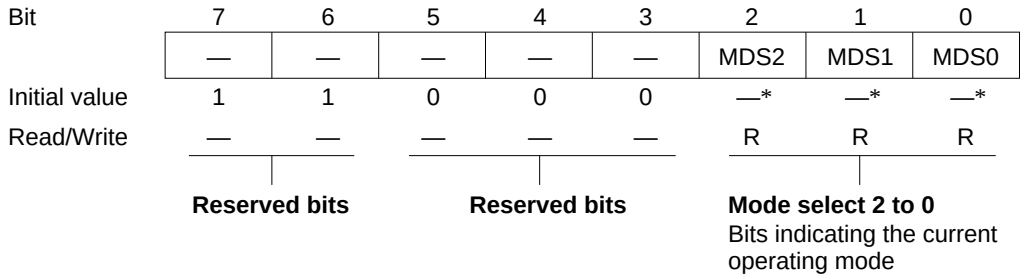
Table 3-2 Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFF1	Mode control register	MDCR	R	Undetermined
H'FFF2	System control register	SYSCR	R/W	H'0B

Note: * The lower 16 bits of the address are indicated.

3.2 Mode Control Register (MDCR)

MDCR is an 8-bit read-only register that indicates the current operating mode of the H8/3001.



Note: * Determined by pins MD_2 to MD_0.

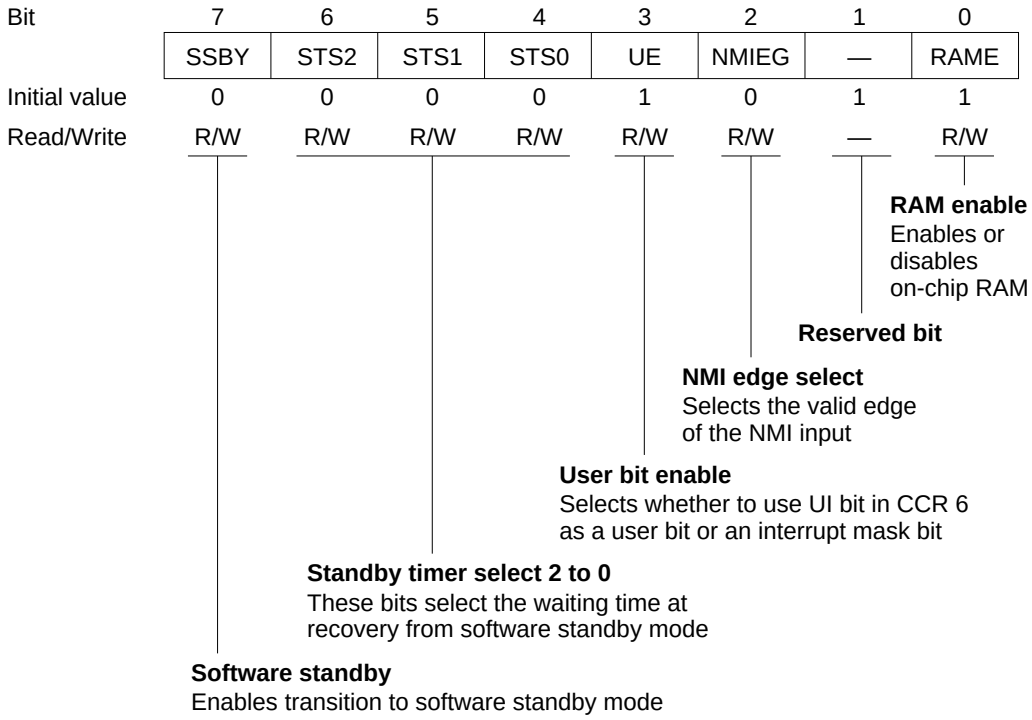
Bits 7 and 6—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bits 5 to 3—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 0.

Bits 2 to 0—Mode Select 2 to 0 (MDS2 to MDS0): These bits indicate the logic levels at pins MD_2 to MD_0 (the current operating mode). MDS2 to MDS0 correspond to MD_2 to MD_0. MDS2 to MDS0 are read-only bits. The mode pin (MD_2 to MD_0) levels are latched when MDCR is read.

3.3 System Control Register (SYSCR)

SYSCR is an 8-bit register that controls the operation of the H8/3001.



Bit 7—Software Standby (SSBY): Enables transition to software standby mode. (For further information about software standby mode see section 14, Power-Down State.)

When software standby mode is exited by an external interrupt, this bit remains set to 1. To clear this bit, write 0.

Bit 7 SSBY	Description	
0	SLEEP instruction causes transition to sleep mode	(Initial value)
1	SLEEP instruction causes transition to software standby mode	

Bits 6 to 4—Standby Timer Select (STS2 to STS0): These bits select the length of time the CPU and on-chip supporting modules wait for the internal clock oscillator to settle when software standby mode is exited by an external interrupt. Set these bits so that the waiting time will be at least 8 ms at the system clock rate. For further information about waiting time selection, see section 14.4.3, Selection of Oscillator Waiting Time after Exit from Software Standby Mode.

Bit 6 STS2	Bit 5 STS1	Bit 4 STS0	Description	
0	0	0	Waiting time = 8192 states	(Initial value)
0	0	1	Waiting time = 16384 states	
0	1	0	Waiting time = 32768 states	
0	1	1	Waiting time = 65536 states	
1	0	—	Waiting time = 131072 states	
1	1	—	Illegal setting	

Bit 3—User Bit Enable (UE): Selects whether to use the UI bit in the condition code register as a user bit or an interrupt mask bit.

Bit 3 UE	Description	
0	UI bit in CCR is used as an interrupt mask bit	
1	UI bit in CCR is used as a user bit	(Initial value)

Bit 2—NMI Edge Select (NMIEG): Selects the valid edge of the NMI input.

Bit 2 NMIEG	Description	
0	An interrupt is requested at the falling edge of NMI	(Initial value)
1	An interrupt is requested at the rising edge of NMI	

Bit 1—Reserved: Read-only bit, always read as 1.

Bit 0—RAM Enable (RAME): Enables or disables the on-chip RAM. The RAME bit is initialized by the rising edge of the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ signal. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bit 0 RAME	Description	
0	On-chip RAM is disabled	
1	On-chip RAM is enabled	(Initial value)

3.4 Operating Mode Descriptions

3.4.1 Mode 1

Address pins A_{19} to A_0 are enabled, permitting access to a maximum 1-Mbyte address space. The initial bus mode after a reset is 8 bits, with 8-bit access to all areas. If at least one area is designated for 16-bit access in ABWCR, the bus mode switches to 16 bits.

3.4.2 Mode 2

Address pins A_{19} to A_0 are enabled, permitting access to a maximum 1-Mbyte address space. The initial bus mode after a reset is 16 bits, with 16-bit access to all areas. If all areas are designated for 8-bit access in ABWCR, the bus mode switches to 8 bits.

3.4.3 Mode 3

Address pins A_{23} to A_0 are enabled, permitting access to a maximum 16-Mbyte address space. The initial bus mode after a reset is 8 bits, with 8-bit access to all areas. If at least one area is designated for 16-bit access in ABWCR, the bus mode switches to 16 bits.

3.4.4 Mode 4

Address pins A_{23} to A_0 are enabled, permitting access to a maximum 16-Mbyte address space. The initial bus mode after a reset is 16 bits, with 16-bit access to all areas. If all areas are designated for 8-bit access in ABWCR, the bus mode switches to 8 bits.

3.5 Pin Functions in Each Operating Mode

The pin functions of ports 4 and A vary depending on the operating mode. Table 3-3 indicates their functions in each operating mode.

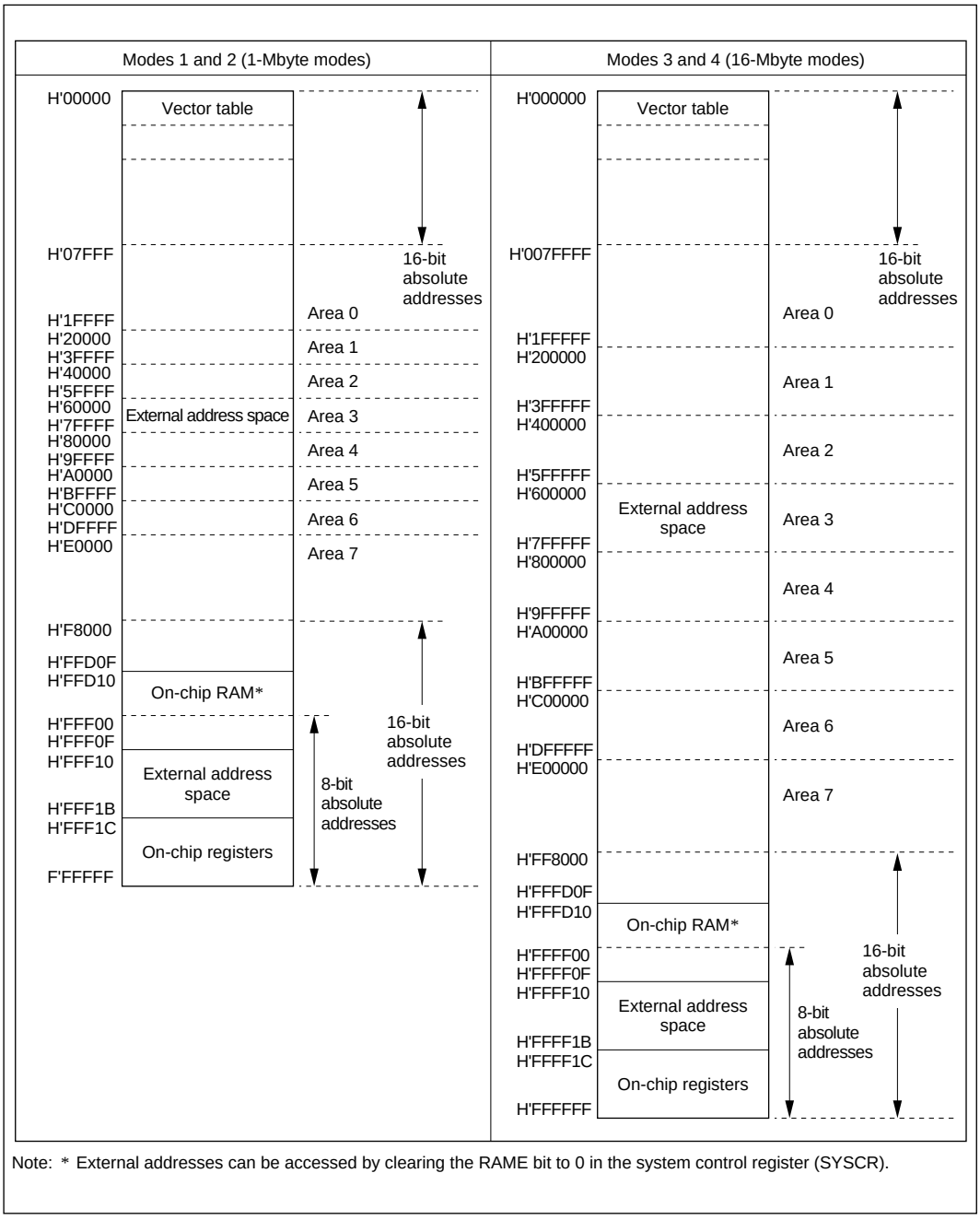
Table 3-3 Pin Functions in Each Mode

Port	Mode 1	Mode 2	Mode 3	Mode 4
Port 4	$P4_7$ to $P4_0$*	D_7 to D_0*	$P4_7$ to $P4_0$*	D_7 to D_0*
Port A	$PA_7/TP_7/TIOCB_2$	$PA_7/TP_7/TIOCB_2$	A_{20}	A_{20}
	$PA_6/TP_6/TIOCA_2$	$PA_6/TP_6/TIOCA_2$	A_{21}	A_{21}
	$PA_5/TP_5/TIOCB_1$	$PA_5/TP_5/TIOCB_1$	A_{22}	A_{22}
	$PA_4/TP_4/TIOCA_1$	$PA_4/TP_4/TIOCA_1$	A_{23}	A_{23}

Note: * Initial state. The bus mode can be switched by settings in ABWCR.
These pins function as $P4_7$ to $P4_0$ in 8-bit bus mode, and as D_7 to D_0 in 16-bit bus mode.

3.6 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode

Figure 3-1 shows a memory map for modes 1 to 4. The address space is divided into eight areas. The initial bus mode differs between modes 1 and 2, and also between modes 3 and 4. The address locations of the on-chip RAM and on-chip registers differ between the 1-Mbyte modes (modes 1 and 2) and 16-Mbyte modes (modes 3 and 4). The address range specifiable by the CPU in its 8- and 16-bit absolute addressing modes (@aa:8 and @aa:16) also differs.



Note: * External addresses can be accessed by clearing the RAME bit to 0 in the system control register (SYSCR).

Figure 3-1 Memory Map in Each Operating Mode

Section 4 Exception Handling

4.1 Overview

4.1.1 Exception Handling Types and Priority

As table 4-1 indicates, exception handling may be caused by a reset, trap instruction, or interrupt. Exception handling is prioritized as shown in table 4-1. If two or more exceptions occur simultaneously, they are accepted and processed in priority order. Trap instruction exceptions are accepted at all times in the program execution state.

Table 4-1 Exception Types and Priority

Priority	Exception Type	Start of Exception Handling
High	Reset	Starts immediately after a low-to-high transition at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin
↑	Interrupt	Interrupt requests are handled when execution of the current instruction or handling of the current exception is completed
Low	Trap instruction (TRAPA)	Started by execution of a trap instruction (TRAPA)

4.1.2 Exception Handling Operation

Exceptions originate from various sources. Trap instructions and interrupts are handled as follows.

1. The program counter (PC) and condition code register (CCR) are pushed onto the stack.
2. The CCR interrupt mask bit is set to 1.
3. A vector address corresponding to the exception source is generated, and program execution starts from that address.

For a reset exception, steps 2 and 3 above are carried out.

4.1.3 Exception Vector Table

The exception sources are classified as shown in figure 4-1. Different vectors are assigned to different exception sources. Table 4-2 lists the exception sources and their vector addresses.

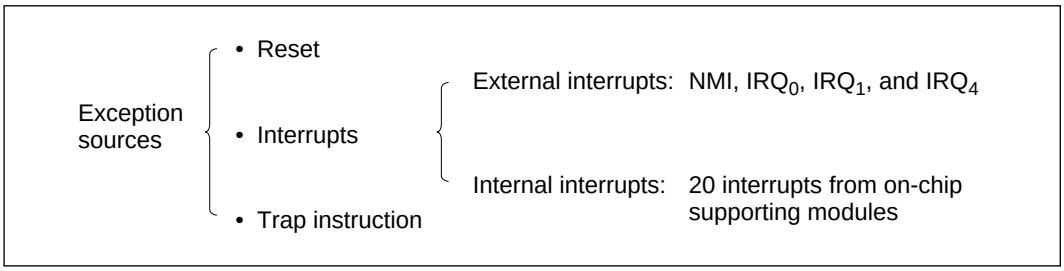


Figure 4-1 Exception Sources

Table 4-2 Exception Vector Table

Exception Source	Vector Number	Vector Address*1
Reset	0	H'0000 to H'0003
Reserved for system use	1	H'0004 to H'0007
	2	H'0008 to H'000B
	3	H'000C to H'000F
	4	H'0010 to H'0013
	5	H'0014 to H'0017
	6	H'0018 to H'001B
External interrupt (NMI)	7	H'001C to H'001F
Trap instruction (4 sources)	8	H'0020 to H'0023
	9	H'0024 to H'0027
	10	H'0028 to H'002B
	11	H'002C to H'002F
External interrupt IRQ_0	12	H'0030 to H'0033
External interrupt IRQ_1	13	H'0034 to H'0037
External interrupt Reserved for system use	14	H'0038 to H'003B
External interrupt Reserved for system use	15	H'003C to H'003F
External interrupt Reserved for system use	16	H'0040 to H'0043
External interrupt Reserved for system use	17	H'0044 to H'0047
External interrupt Reserved for system use	18	H'0048 to H'004B
External interrupt Reserved for system use	19	H'004C to H'004F
Internal interrupts*2	20 to 60	H'0050 to H'0053 to H'00F0 to H'00F3

Notes: 1. Lower 16 bits of the address.
2. For the internal interrupt vectors, see section 5.3.3, Interrupt Vector Table.

4.2 Reset

4.2.1 Overview

A reset is the highest-priority exception. When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin goes low, all processing halts and the H8/3001 enters the reset state. A reset initializes the internal state of the CPU and the registers of the on-chip supporting modules. Reset exception handling begins when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin changes from low to high.

4.2.2 Reset Sequence

The H8/3001 enters the reset state when the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin goes low.

To ensure that the H8/3001 is reset, hold the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin low for at least 20 ms at power-up. To reset the H8/3001 during operation, hold the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin low for at least 10 system clock (ø) cycles. See appendix D.2, Pin States at Reset, for the states of the pins in the reset state.

When the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin goes high after being held low for the necessary time, the H8/3001 starts reset exception handling as follows.

- The internal state of the CPU and the registers of the on-chip supporting modules are initialized, and the I bit is set to 1 in CCR.
- The contents of the reset vector address (H'0000 to H'0003) are read, and program execution starts from the address indicated in the vector address.

Figure 4-2 shows the reset sequence in modes 1 and 3. Figure 4-3 shows the reset sequence in modes 2 and 4.

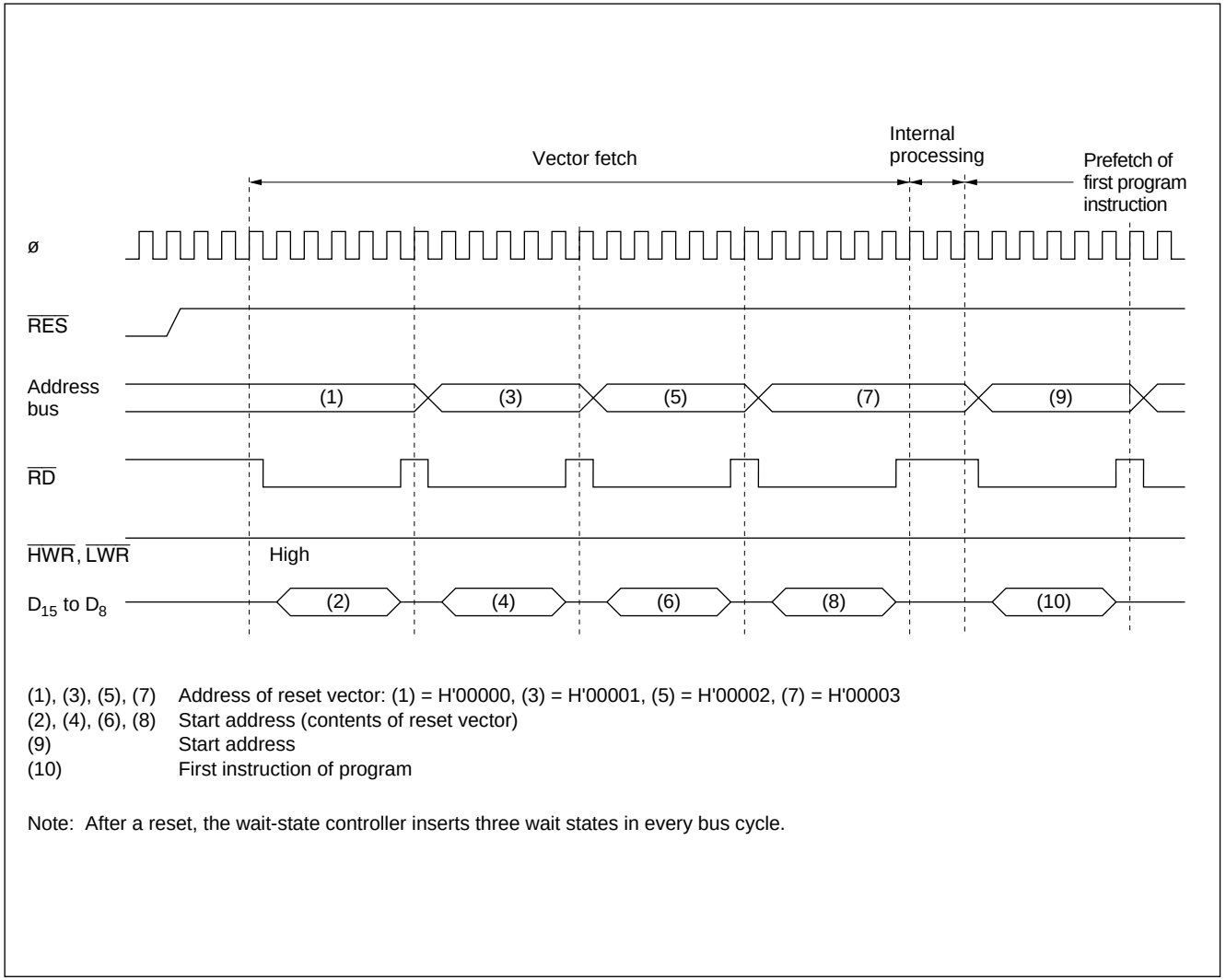
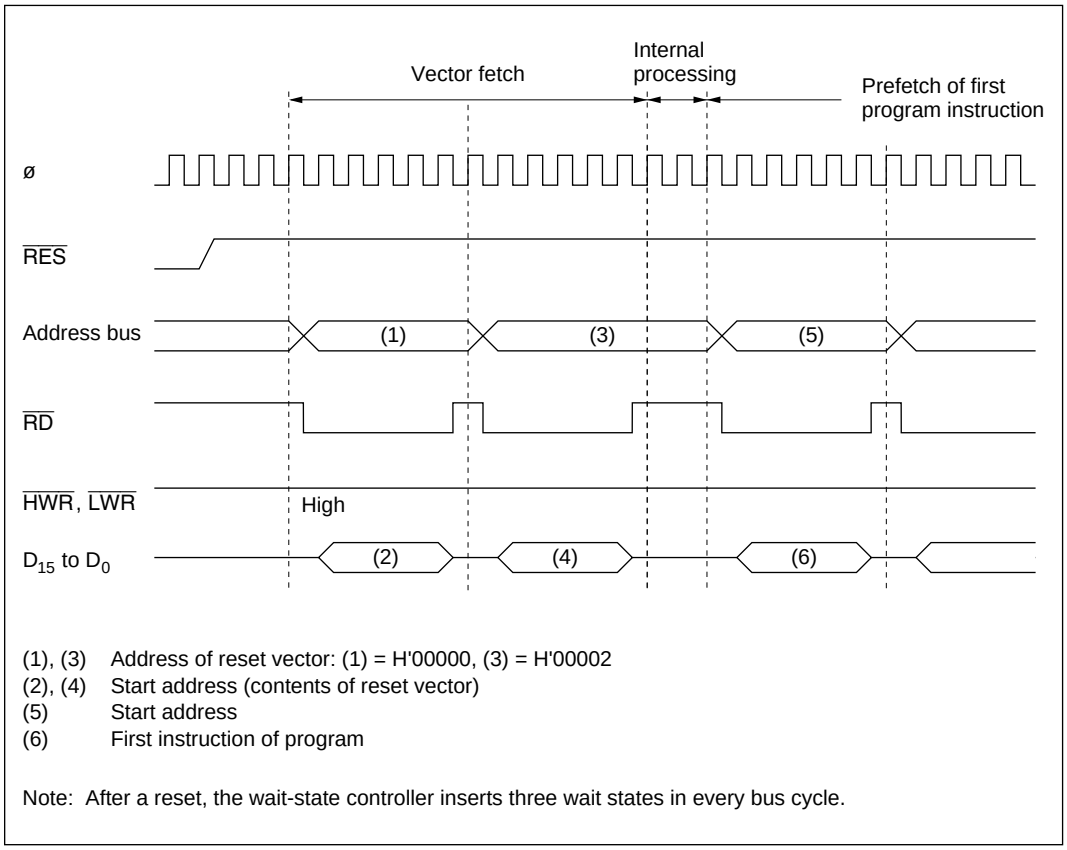


Figure 4-2 Reset Sequence (Modes 1 and 3)

(1), (3), (5), (7) Address of reset vector: (1) = H'00000, (3) = H'00001, (5) = H'00002, (7) = H'00003
(2), (4), (6), (8) Start address (contents of reset vector)
(9) Start address
(10) First instruction of program

Note: After a reset, the wait-state controller inserts three wait states in every bus cycle.



(1), (3) Address of reset vector: (1) = H'00000, (3) = H'00002
(2), (4) Start address (contents of reset vector)
(5) Start address
(6) First instruction of program

Note: After a reset, the wait-state controller inserts three wait states in every bus cycle.

Figure 4-3 Reset Sequence (Modes 2 and 4)

4.2.3 Interrupts after Reset

If an interrupt is accepted after a reset but before the stack pointer (SP) is initialized, PC and CCR will not be saved correctly, leading to a program crash. To prevent this, all interrupt requests, including NMI, are disabled immediately after a reset. The first instruction of the program is always executed immediately after the reset state ends. This instruction should initialize the stack pointer (example: MOV.L #xx:32, SP).

4.3 Interrupts

Interrupt exception handling can be requested by four external sources (NMI, IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4) and 20 internal sources in the on-chip supporting modules. Figure 4-4 classifies the interrupt sources and indicates the number of interrupts of each type.

The on-chip supporting modules that can request interrupts are the 16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU), serial communication interface (SCI), and A/D converter. Each interrupt source has a separate vector address.

NMI is the highest-priority interrupt and is always accepted. Interrupts are controlled by the interrupt controller. The interrupt controller can assign interrupts other than NMI to two priority levels, and arbitrate between simultaneous interrupts. Interrupt priorities are assigned in interrupt priority registers A and B (IPRA and IPRB) in the interrupt controller.

For details on interrupts see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

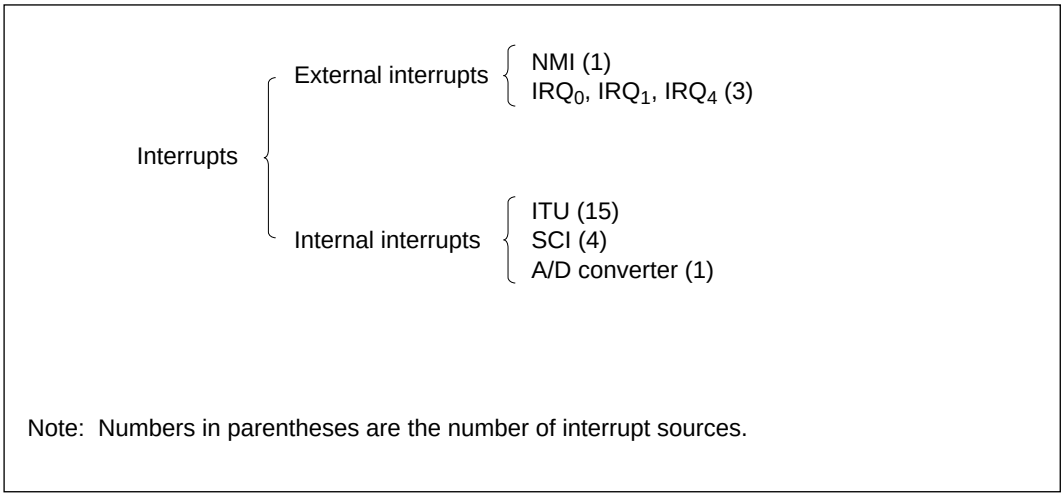


Figure 4-4 Interrupt Sources and Number of Interrupts

4.4 Trap Instruction

Trap instruction exception handling starts when a TRAPA instruction is executed. If the UE bit is set to 1 in the system control register (SYSCR), the exception handling sequence sets the I bit to 1 in CCR. If the UE bit is 0, the I and UI bits are both set to 1. The TRAPA instruction fetches a start address from a vector table entry corresponding to a vector number from 0 to 3, which is specified in the instruction code.

4.5 Stack Status after Exception Handling

Figure 4-5 shows the stack after completion of trap instruction exception handling and interrupt exception handling.

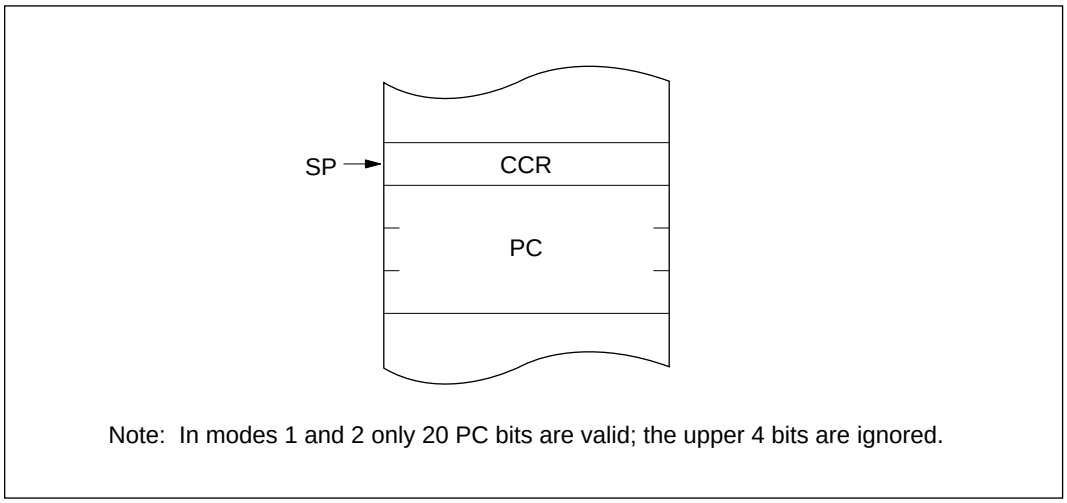


Figure 4-5 Stack after Completion of Exception Handling

4.6 Notes on Stack Usage

When accessing word data or longword data, the H8/3001 regards the lowest address bit as 0. The stack should always be accessed by word access or longword access, and the value of the stack pointer (SP, ER7) should always be kept even. Use the following instructions to save registers:

PUSH.W Rn (or MOV.W Rn, @–SP)
PUSH.L ERn (or MOV.L ERn, @–SP)

Use the following instructions to restore registers:

POP.W Rn (or MOV.W @SP+, Rn)
POP.L ERn (or MOV.L @SP+, ERn)

Setting SP to an odd value may lead to a malfunction. Figure 4-6 shows an example of what happens when the SP value is odd.

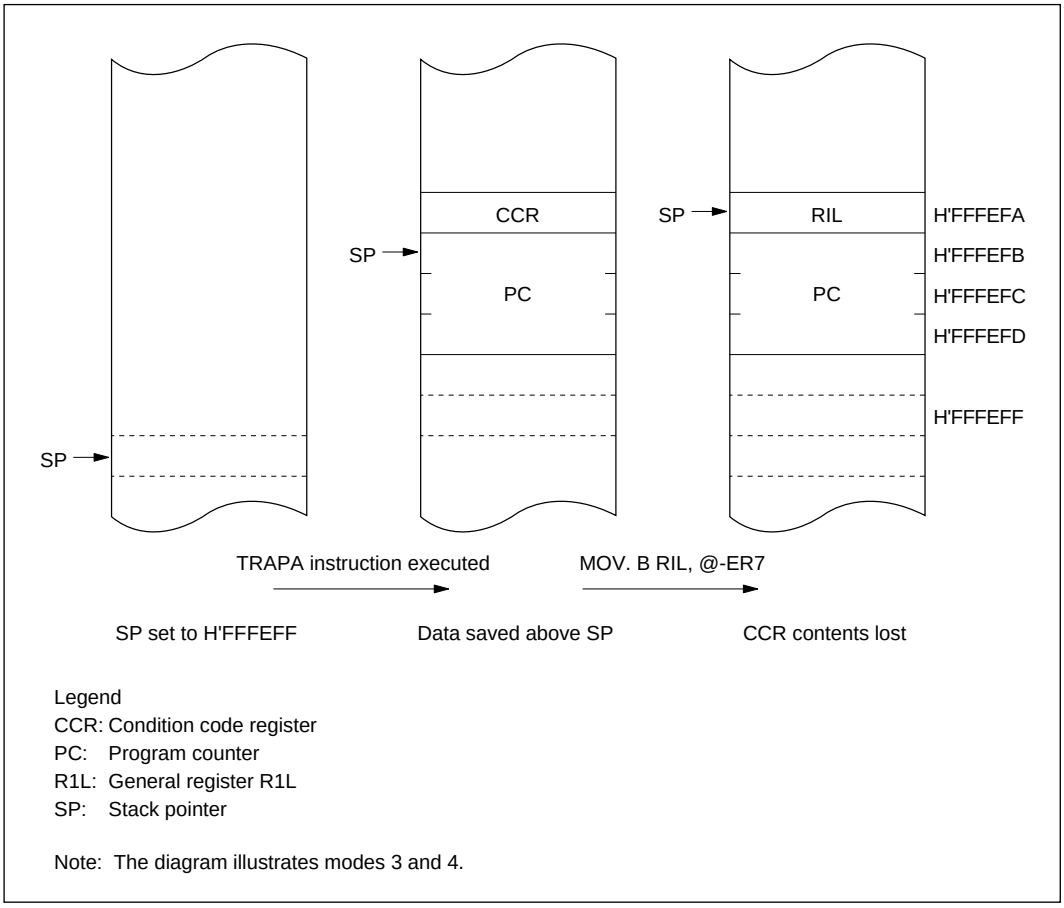


Figure 4-6 Operation when SP Value is Odd

Section 5 Interrupt Controller

5.1 Overview

5.1.1 Features

The interrupt controller has the following features:

- Interrupt priority registers (IPRs) for setting interrupt priorities

  Interrupts other than NMI can be assigned to two priority levels on a module-by-module basis in interrupt priority registers A and B (IPRA and IPRB).

- Three-level masking by the I and UI bits in the CPU condition code register (CCR)

- Independent vector addresses

  All interrupts are independently vectored; the interrupt service routine does not have to identify the interrupt source.

- Four external interrupt pins

  NMI has the highest priority and is always accepted; either the rising or falling edge can be selected. For each of IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4 sensing of the falling edge or level sensing can be selected independently.

5.1.2 Block Diagram

Figure 5-1 shows a block diagram of the interrupt controller.

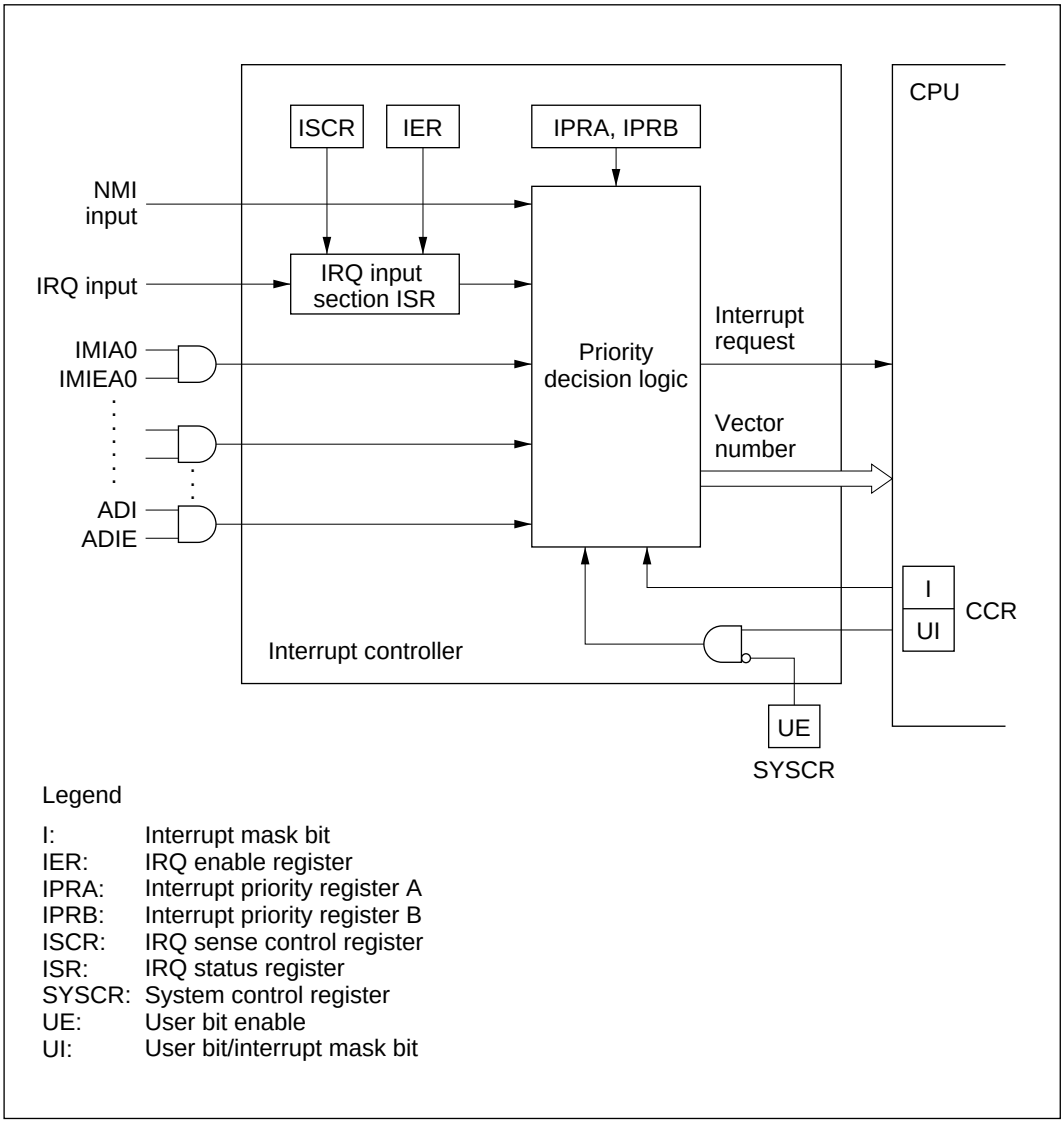


Figure 5-1 Interrupt Controller Block Diagram

5.1.3 Pin Configuration

Table 5-1 lists the interrupt pins.

Table 5-1 Interrupt Pins

Name	Abbreviation	I/O	Function
Nonmaskable interrupt	NMI	Input	Nonmaskable interrupt, rising edge or falling edge selectable
External interrupt request 0, 1, 4	$\overline{IRQ_0}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, $\overline{IRQ_4}$	Input	Maskable interrupts, falling edge or level sensing selectable

5.1.4 Register Configuration

Table 5-2 lists the registers of the interrupt controller.

Table 5-2 Interrupt Controller Registers

Address*1	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFF2	System control register	SYSCR	R/W	H'0B
H'FFF4	IRQ sense control register	ISCR	R/W	H'00
H'FFF5	IRQ enable register	IER	R/W	H'00
H'FFF6	IRQ status register	ISR	R/(W)*2	H'00
H'FFF8	Interrupt priority register A	IPRA	R/W	H'00
H'FFF9	Interrupt priority register B	IPRB	R/W	H'00

Notes: 1. Lower 16 bits of the address.
2. Only 0 can be written, to clear flags.

5.2 Register Descriptions

5.2.1 System Control Register (SYSCR)

SYSCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that controls software standby mode, selects the action of the UI bit in CCR, selects the NMI edge, and enables or disables the on-chip RAM.

Only bits 3 and 2 are described here. For the other bits, see section 3.3, System Control Register (SYSCR).

SYSCR is initialized to H'0B by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SSBY	STS2	STS1	STS0	UE	NMIEG	—	RAME
Initial value	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

RAM enable

Reserved bit

NMI edge select
Selects the NMI input edge

Standby timer select 2 to 0

Software standby

User bit enable
Selects whether to use CCR bit 6 as a user bit or interrupt mask bit

Bit 3—User Bit Enable (UE): Selects whether to use the UI bit in CCR as a user bit or an interrupt mask bit.

Bit 3 UE	Description	
0	UI bit in CCR is used as interrupt mask bit	
1	UI bit in CCR is used as user bit	(Initial value)

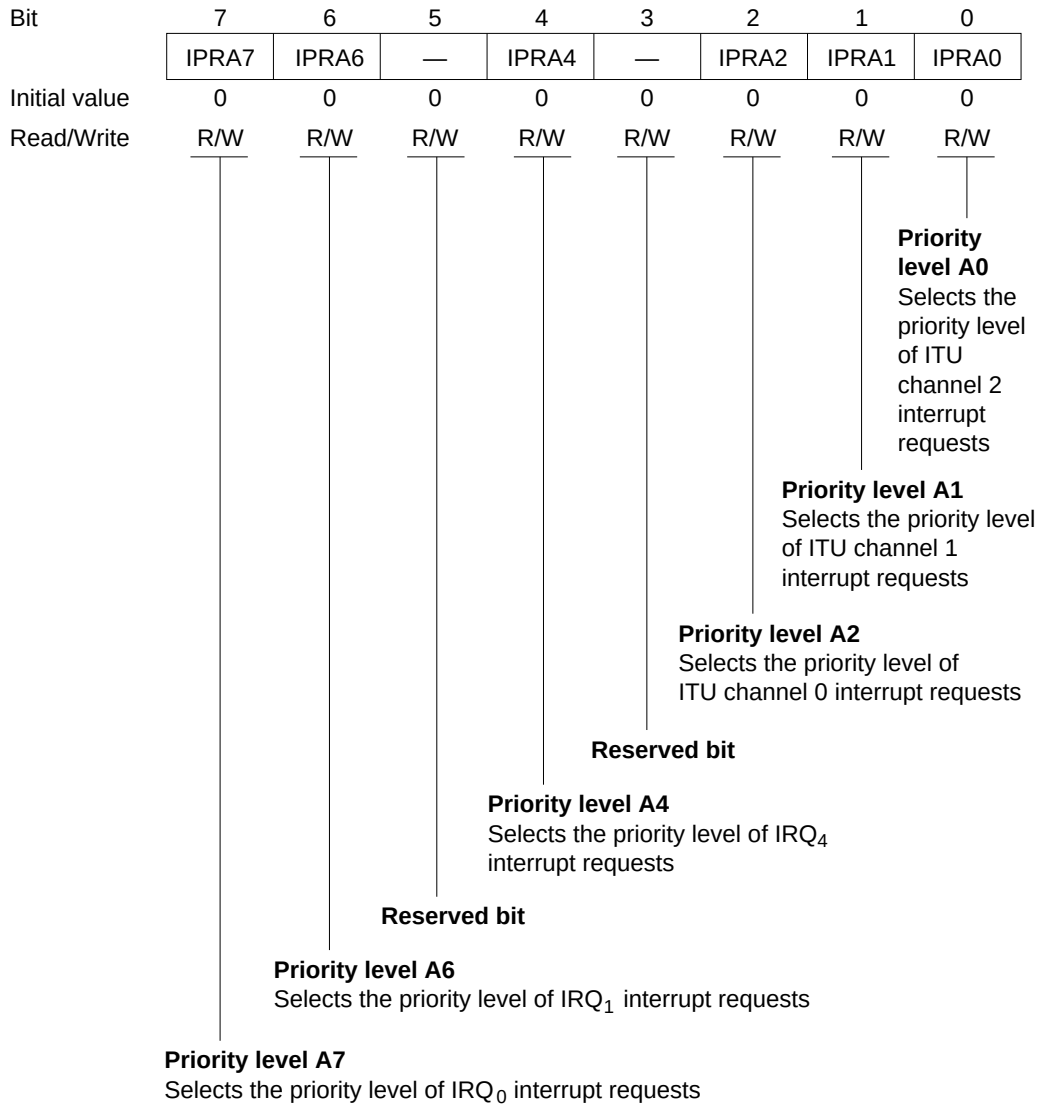
Bit 2—NMI Edge Select (NMIEG): Selects the NMI input edge.

Bit 2 NMIEG	Description	
0	Interrupt is requested at falling edge of NMI input	(Initial value)
1	Interrupt is requested at rising edge of NMI input	

5.2.2 Interrupt Priority Registers A and B (IPRA, IPRB)

IPRA and IPRB are 8-bit readable/writable registers that control interrupt priority.

Interrupt Priority Register A (IPRA): IPRA is an 8-bit readable/writable register in which interrupt priority levels can be set.



IPRA is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode.

Bit 7—Priority Level A7 (IPRA7): Selects the priority level of IRQ_0 interrupt requests.

Bit 7 IPRA7	Description	
0	IRQ_0 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	IRQ_0 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bit 6—Priority Level A6 (IPRA6): Selects the priority level of IRQ_1 interrupt requests.

Bit 6 IPRA6	Description	
0	IRQ_1 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	IRQ_1 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bit 5—Reserved: This bit can be written and read, but it does not affect interrupt priority.

Bit 4—Priority Level A4 (IPRA4): Selects the priority level of IRQ_4 interrupt requests.

Bit 4 IPRA4	Description	
0	IRQ_4 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	IRQ_4 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bit 3—Reserved: This bit can be written and read, but it does not affect interrupt priority.

Bit 2—Priority Level A2 (IPRA2): Selects the priority level of ITU channel 0 interrupt requests.

Bit 2 IPRA2	Description	
0	ITU channel 0 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	ITU channel 0 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

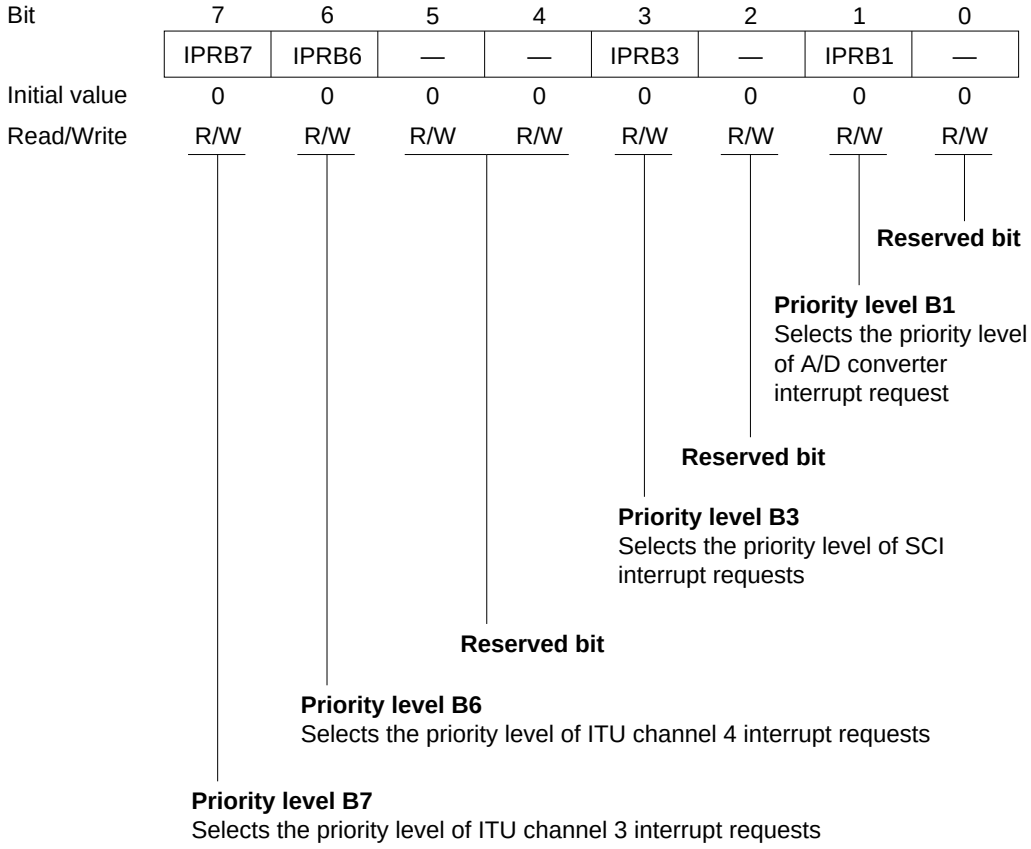
Bit 1—Priority Level A1 (IPRA1): Selects the priority level of ITU channel 1 interrupt requests.

Bit 1 IPRA1	Description	
0	ITU channel 1 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	ITU channel 1 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bit 0—Priority Level A0 (IPRA0): Selects the priority level of ITU channel 2 interrupt requests.

Bit 0 IPRA0	Description	
0	ITU channel 2 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	ITU channel 2 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Interrupt Priority Register B (IPRB): IPRB is an 8-bit readable/writable register in which interrupt priority levels can be set.



IPRB is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode.

Bit 7—Priority Level B7 (IPRB7): Selects the priority level of ITU channel 3 interrupt requests.

Bit 7 IPRB7	Description	
0	ITU channel 3 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	ITU channel 3 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bit 6—Priority Level B6 (IPRB6): Selects the priority level of ITU channel 4 interrupt requests.

Bit 6 IPRB6	Description	
0	ITU channel 4 interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	ITU channel 4 interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bits 5 and 4—Reserved: These bits can be written and read, but they do not affect interrupt priority.

Bit 3—Priority Level B3 (IPRB3): Selects the priority level of SCI interrupt requests.

Bit 3 IPRB3	Description	
0	SCI interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	SCI interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bit 2—Reserved: This bit can be written and read, but it does not affect interrupt priority.

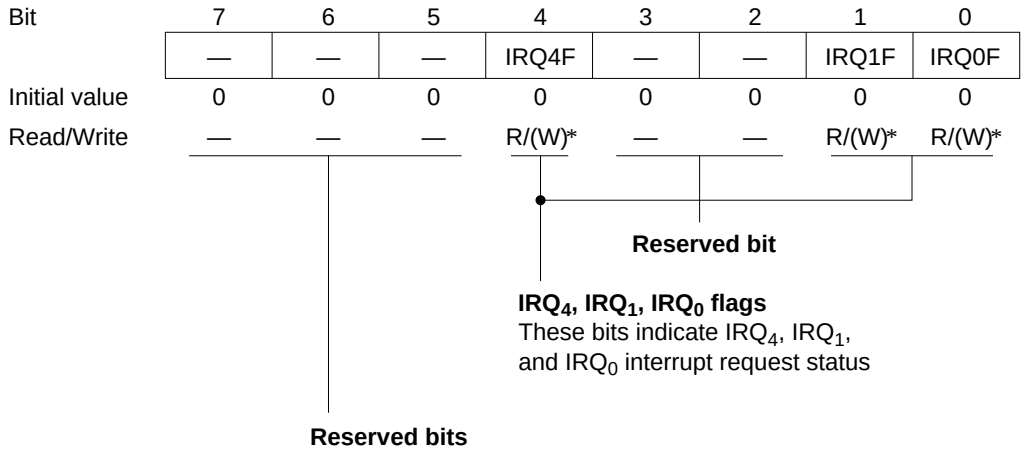
Bit 1—Priority Level B1 (IPRB1): Selects the priority level of A/D converter interrupt requests.

Bit 1 IPRB1	Description	
0	A/D converter interrupt requests have priority level 0 (low priority)	(Initial value)
1	A/D converter interrupt requests have priority level 1 (high priority)	

Bit 0—Reserved: This bit can be written and read, but it does not affect interrupt priority.

5.2.3 IRQ Status Register (ISR)

ISR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that indicates the status of IRQ_4, IRQ_1, and IRQ_0 interrupt requests.



Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear flags.

Bits 7 to 5, 3, 2—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 0.

ISR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode.

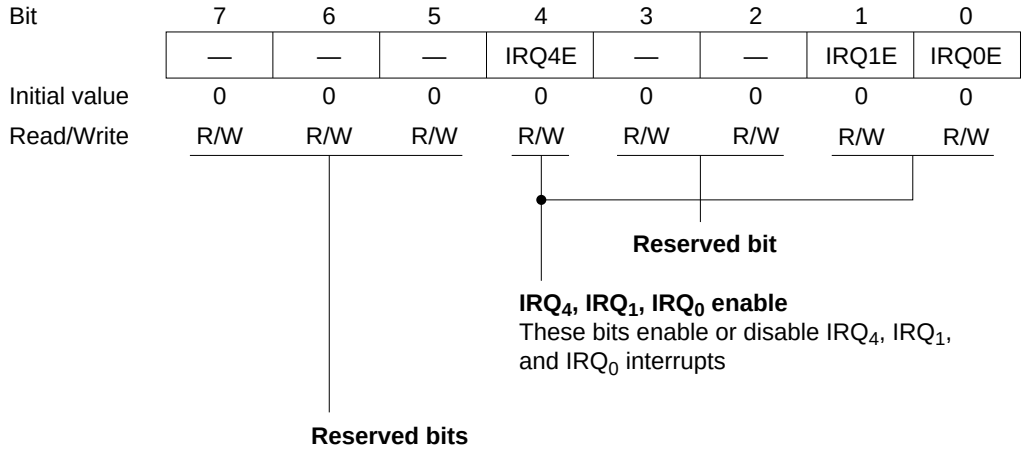
Bits 4, 1, 0—IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 Flags (IRQ4F, IRQ1F, IRQ0F): These bits indicate the status of IRQ_4, IRQ_1, and IRQ_0 interrupt requests.

Bit n IRQnF	Description
0	[Clearing conditions] (Initial value) 0 is written in IRQnF after reading the IRQnF flag when IRQnF = 1. IRQnSC = 0, $\overline{IRQn}$ input is high, and interrupt exception handling is carried out. IRQnSC = 1 and IRQn interrupt exception handling is carried out.
1	[Setting conditions] IRQnSC = 0 and $\overline{IRQn}$ input is low. IRQnSC = 1 and $\overline{IRQn}$ input changes from high to low.

Note: n = 4, 1, 0

5.2.4 IRQ Enable Register (IER)

IER is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables or disables IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 interrupt requests.



IER is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode.

Bits 7 to 5, 3, 2—Reserved: Although reserved, these bits can be written and read.

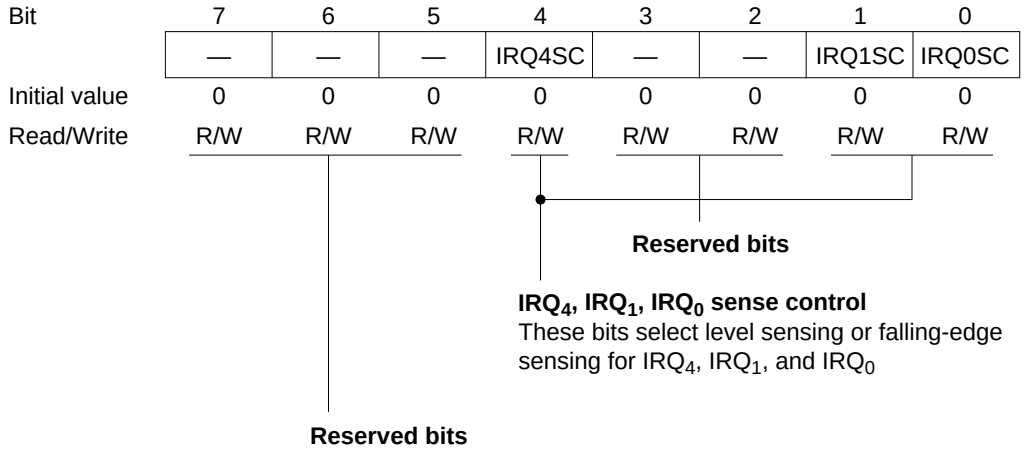
Bits 4, 1, 0—IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 Enable (IRQ4E, IRQ1E, IRQ0E): These bits enable or disable IRQ_4, IRQ_1, and IRQ_0 interrupts.

Bit n IRQnE	Description	
0	IRQ_n interrupts are disabled	(Initial value)
1	IRQ_n interrupts are enabled	

Note: n = 4, 1, 0

5.2.5 IRQ Sense Control Register (ISCR)

ISCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects level sensing or falling-edge sensing of the inputs at pins $\overline{IRQ_4}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, $\overline{IRQ_0}$.



ISCR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode.

Bits 7 to 5, 3, 2—Reserved: Although reserved, these bits can be written and read.

Bits 4, 1, 0—IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 Sense Control (IRQ4SC, IRQ1SC, IRQ0SC): These bits selects whether interrupts IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 are requested by level sensing of pins $\overline{IRQ_4}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, $\overline{IRQ_0}$,or by falling-edge sensing.

Bit n IRQnSC	Description	
0	Interrupts are requested when $\overline{IRQ_n}$ input is low	(Initial value)
1	Interrupts are requested by falling-edge input at $\overline{IRQ_n}$	

Note: n = 4, 1, 0

5.3 Interrupt Sources

The interrupt sources include external interrupts (NMI, IRQ_0, IRQ_1, IRQ_4) and 20 internal interrupts.

5.3.1 External Interrupts

There are four external interrupts: NMI, IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4. Of these, NMI, IRQ_0, and IRQ_1 can be used to exit software standby mode.

NMI: NMI is the highest-priority interrupt and is always accepted, regardless of the states of the I and UI bits in CCR. The NMIEG bit in SYSCR selects whether an interrupt is requested by the rising or falling edge of the input at the NMI pin. NMI interrupt exception handling has vector number 7.

$\overline{IRQ_0}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, and $\overline{IRQ_4}$ Interrupts: These interrupts are requested by input signals at pins $\overline{IRQ_0}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, and $\overline{IRQ_4}$. These interrupts have the following features.

- ISCR settings can select whether an interrupt is requested by the low level of the input at pins $\overline{IRQ_0}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, and $\overline{IRQ_4}$, or by the falling edge.
- IER settings can enable or disable the IRQ_0, IRQ_1, IRQ_4, interrupts. Interrupt priority levels can be assigned by four bits in IPRA (IPRA7, IPRA6, and IPRA4).
- The status of IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4 interrupt requests is indicated in ISR. The ISR flags can be cleared to 0 by software.

Figure 5-2 shows a block diagram of interrupts IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4.

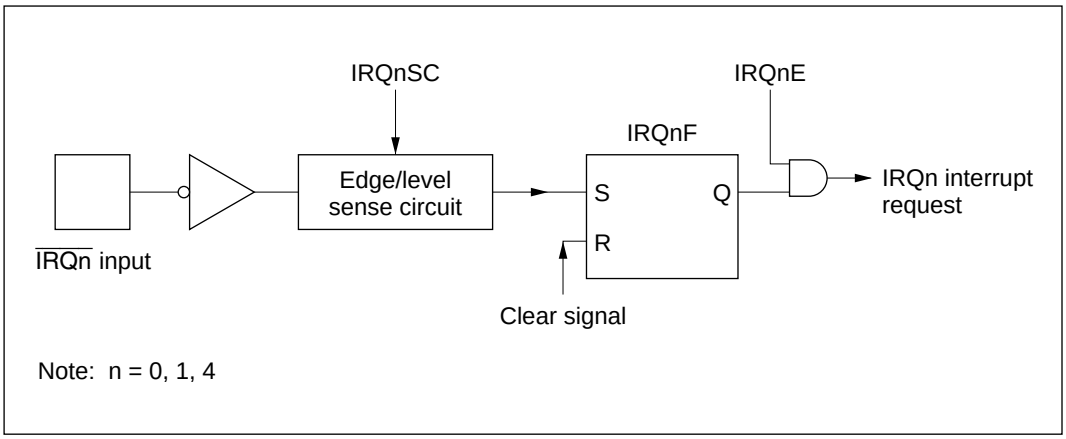


Figure 5-2 Block Diagram of Interrupts IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4

Figure 5-3 shows the timing of the setting of the interrupt flags (IRQnF).

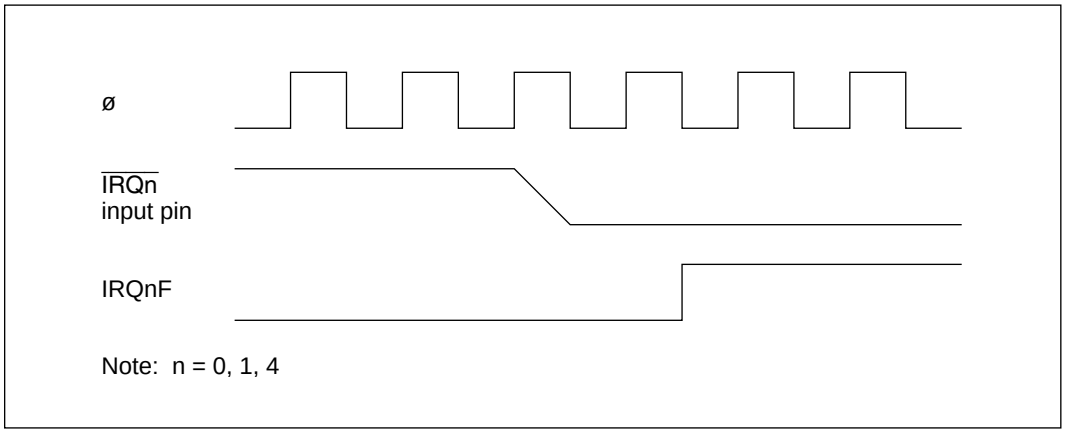


Figure 5-3 Timing of Setting of IRQnF

Interrupts IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4, have vector numbers 12, 13, and 16. These interrupts are detected regardless of whether the corresponding pin is set for input or output. When using a pin for external interrupt input, clear its DDR bit to 0. When using the IRQ_4 interrupt, do not use the $\overline{IRQ_4}$ pin for SCI input or output.

5.3.2 Internal Interrupts

Twenty internal interrupts are requested from the on-chip supporting modules.

- Each on-chip supporting module has status flags for indicating interrupt status, and enable bits for enabling or disabling interrupts.
- Interrupt priority levels can be assigned in IPRA and IPRB.

5.3.3 Interrupt Vector Table

Table 5-3 lists the interrupt sources, their vector addresses, and their default priority order. In the default priority order, smaller vector numbers have higher priority. The priority of interrupts other than NMI can be changed in IPRA and IPRB. The priority order after a reset is the default order shown in table 5-3.

Table 5-3 Interrupt Sources, Vector Addresses, and Priority

Interrupt Source	Origin	Vector Number	Vector Address*	IPR	Priority
NMI	External pins	7	H'001C to H'001F	—	High
IRQ_0		12	H'0030 to H'0033	IPRA7	
IRQ_1		13	H'0034 to H0037	IPRA6	
Reserved	—	14	H'0038 to H'003B	—	
		15	H'003C to H'003F		
IRQ_4	External pin	16	H'0040 to H'0043		
Reserved	—	17	H'0044 to H'0047	—	
		18	H'0048 to H'004B		
		19	H'004C to H'004F		
		20	H'0050 to H'0053		
		21	H'0054 to H'0057		
		22	H'0058 to H'005B		
		23	H'005C to H'005F		
IMIA0 (compare match/input capture A0)	ITU channel 0	24	H'0060 to H'0063	IPRA2	
IMIB0 (compare match/input capture B0)		25	H'0064 to H'0067		
OVI0 (overflow 0)		26	H'0068 to H'006B		
Reserved	—	27	H'006C to H'006F		
IMIA1 (compare match/input capture A1)	ITU channel 1	28	H'0070 to H'0073	IPRA1	
IMIB1 (compare match/input capture B1)		29	H'0074 to H'0077		
OVI1 (overflow 1)		30	H'0078 to H'007B		
Reserved	—	31	H'007C to H'007F		
IMIA2 (compare match/input capture A2)	ITU channel 2	32	H'0080 to H'0083	IPRA0	
IMIB2 (compare match/input capture B2)		33	H'0084 to H'0087		
OVI2 (overflow 2)		34	H'0088 to H'008B		
Reserved	—	35	H'008C to H'008F		Low

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Table 5-3 Interrupt Sources, Vector Addresses, and Priority (cont)

Interrupt Source	Origin	Vector Number	Vector Address*	IPR	Priority
IMIA3 (compare match/input capture A3)	ITU channel 3	36	H'0090 to H'0093	IPRB7	High
IMIB3 (compare match/input capture B3)		37	H'0094 to H'0097		
OVI3 (overflow 3)		38	H'0098 to H'009B		
Reserved	—	39	H'009C to H'009F		
IMIA4 (compare match/input capture A4)	ITU channel 4	40	H'00A0 to H'00A3	IPRB6	
IMIB4 (compare match/input capture B4)		41	H'00A4 to H'00A7		
OVI4 (overflow 4)		42	H'00A8 to H'00AB		
Reserved	—	43	H'00AC to H'00AF		
Reserved	—	44	H'00B0 to H'00B3	—	
		45	H'00B4 to H'00B7		
		46	H'00B8 to H'00BB		
		47	H'00BC to H'00BF		
		48	H'00C0 to H'00C3		
		49	H'00C4 to H'00C7		
		50	H'00C8 to H'00CB		
		51	H'00CC to H'00CF		
ERI (receive error)	SCI	52	H'00D0 to H'00D3	IPRB3	
RXI (receive data full)		53	H'00D4 to H'00D7		
TXI (transmit data empty)		54	H'00D8 to H'00DB		
TEI (transmit end)		55	H'00DC to H'00DF		
Reserved	—	56	H'00E0 to H'00E3	—	
		57	H'00E4 to H'00E7		
		58	H'00E8 to H'00EB		
		59	H'00EC to H'00EF		
ADI (A/D end)	A/D	60	H'00F0 to H'00F3	IPRB1	Low

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

5.4 Interrupt Operation

5.4.1 Interrupt Handling Process

The H8/3001 handles interrupts differently depending on the setting of the UE bit. When UE = 1, interrupts are controlled by the I bit. When UE = 0, interrupts are controlled by the I and UI bits. Table 5-4 indicates how interrupts are handled for all setting combinations of the UE, I, and UI bits.

NMI interrupts are always accepted except in the reset and hardware standby states. IRQ interrupts and interrupts from the on-chip supporting modules have their own enable bits. Interrupt requests are ignored when the enable bits are cleared to 0.

Table 5-4 UE, I, and UI Bit Settings and Interrupt Handling

SYSCR	CCR		
UE	**I**	**UI**	**Description**
1	0	—	All interrupts are accepted. Interrupts with priority level 1 have higher priority.
	1	—	No interrupts are accepted except NMI.
0	0	—	All interrupts are accepted. Interrupts with priority level 1 have higher priority.
	1	0	NMI and interrupts with priority level 1 are accepted.
		1	No interrupts are accepted except NMI.

UE = 1: Interrupts IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4 and interrupts from the on-chip supporting modules can all be masked by the I bit in the CPU's CCR. Interrupts are masked when the I bit is set to 1, and unmasked when the I bit is cleared to 0. Interrupts with priority level 1 have higher priority. Figure 5-4 is a flowchart showing how interrupts are accepted when UE = 1.

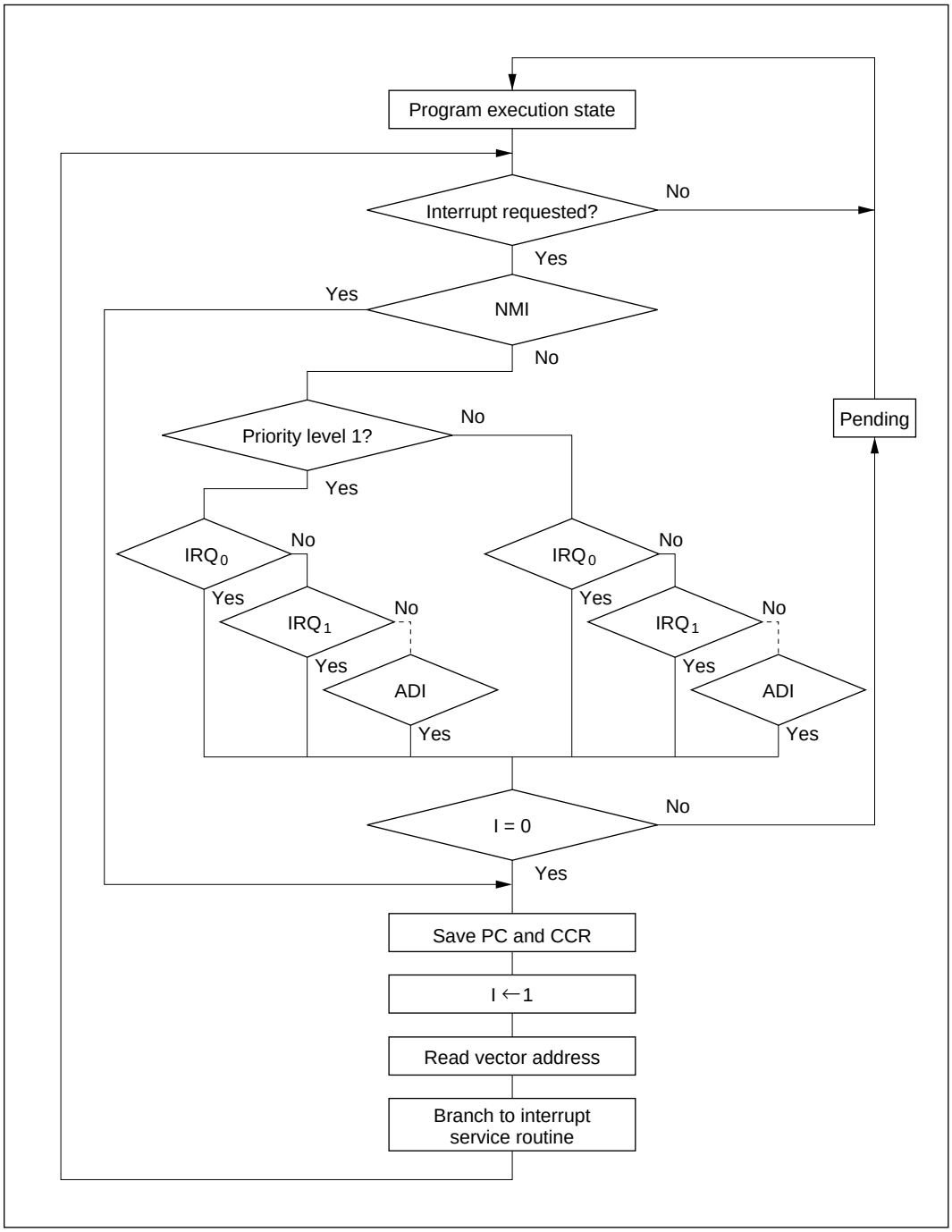


Figure 5-4 Process Up to Interrupt Acceptance when UE = 1

- If an interrupt condition occurs and the corresponding interrupt enable bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is sent to the interrupt controller.
- When the interrupt controller receives one or more interrupt requests, it selects the highest-priority request, following the IPR interrupt priority settings, and holds other requests pending. If two or more interrupts with the same IPR setting are requested simultaneously, the interrupt controller follows the priority order shown in table 5-3.
- The interrupt controller checks the I bit. If the I bit is cleared to 0, the selected interrupt request is accepted. If the I bit is set to 1, only NMI is accepted; other interrupt requests are held pending.
- When an interrupt request is accepted, interrupt exception handling starts after execution of the current instruction has been completed.
- In interrupt exception handling, PC and CCR are saved to the stack area. The PC value that is saved indicates the address of the first instruction that will be executed after the return from the interrupt service routine.
- Next the I bit is set to 1 in CCR, masking all interrupts except NMI.
- The vector address of the accepted interrupt is generated, and the interrupt service routine starts executing from the address indicated by the contents of the vector address.

UE = 0: The I and UI bits in the CPU's CCR and the IPR bits enable three-level masking of IRQ_0, IRQ_1, and IRQ_4 interrupts and interrupts from the on-chip supporting modules.

- Interrupt requests with priority level 0 are masked when the I bit is set to 1, and are unmasked when the I bit is cleared to 0.
- Interrupt requests with priority level 1 are masked when the I and UI bits are both set to 1, and are unmasked when either the I bit or the UI bit is cleared to 0.

  For example, if the interrupt enable bits of all interrupt requests are set to 1, IPRA is set to H'10, and IPRB is set to H'00 (giving IRQ_4 interrupt request priority over other interrupts), interrupts are masked as follows:

  a. If I = 0, all interrupts are unmasked (priority order: NMI > IRQ_4 > IRQ_0 >IRQ_1 …).
  b. If I = 1 and UI = 0, only NMI and IRQ_4 are unmasked.
  c. If I = 1 and UI = 1, all interrupts are masked except NMI.

Figure 5-5 shows the transitions among the above states.

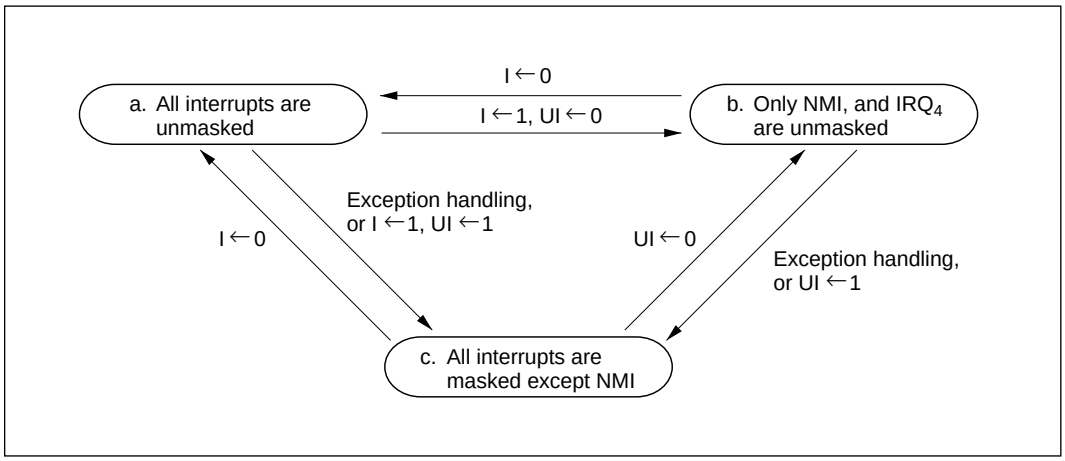


Figure 5-5 Interrupt Masking State Transitions (Example)

Figure 5-6 is a flowchart showing how interrupts are accepted when UE = 0.

- If an interrupt condition occurs and the corresponding interrupt enable bit is set to 1, an interrupt request is sent to the interrupt controller.
- When the interrupt controller receives one or more interrupt requests, it selects the highest-priority request, following the IPR interrupt priority settings, and holds other requests pending. If two or more interrupts with the same IPR setting are requested simultaneously, the interrupt controller follows the priority order shown in table 5-3.
- The interrupt controller checks the I bit. If the I bit is cleared to 0, the selected interrupt request is accepted regardless of its IPR setting, and regardless of the UI bit. If the I bit is set to 1 and the UI bit is cleared to 0, only NMI and interrupts with priority level 1 are accepted; interrupt requests with priority level 0 are held pending. If the I bit and UI bit are both set to 1, only NMI is accepted; all other interrupt requests are held pending.
- When an interrupt request is accepted, interrupt exception handling starts after execution of the current instruction has been completed.
- In interrupt exception handling, PC and CCR are saved to the stack area. The PC value that is saved indicates the address of the first instruction that will be executed after the return from the interrupt service routine.
- The I and UI bits are set to 1 in CCR, masking all interrupts except NMI.
- The vector address of the accepted interrupt is generated, and the interrupt service routine starts executing from the address indicated by the contents of the vector address.

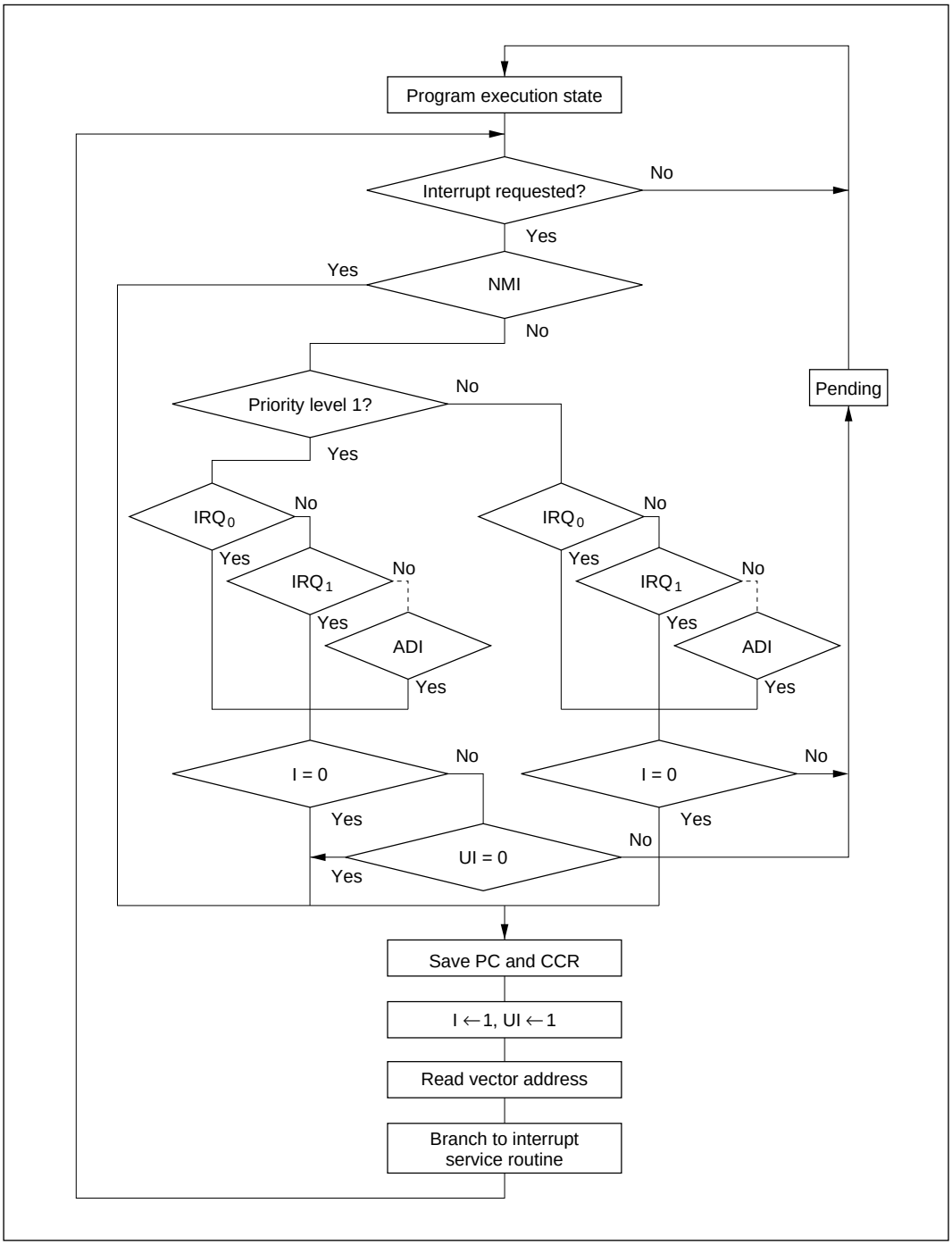


Figure 5-6 Process Up to Interrupt Acceptance when UE = 0

5.4.2 Interrupt Sequence

Figure 5-7 shows the interrupt sequence in mode 2 when the program code and stack are in an external memory area accessed in two states via a 16-bit bus.

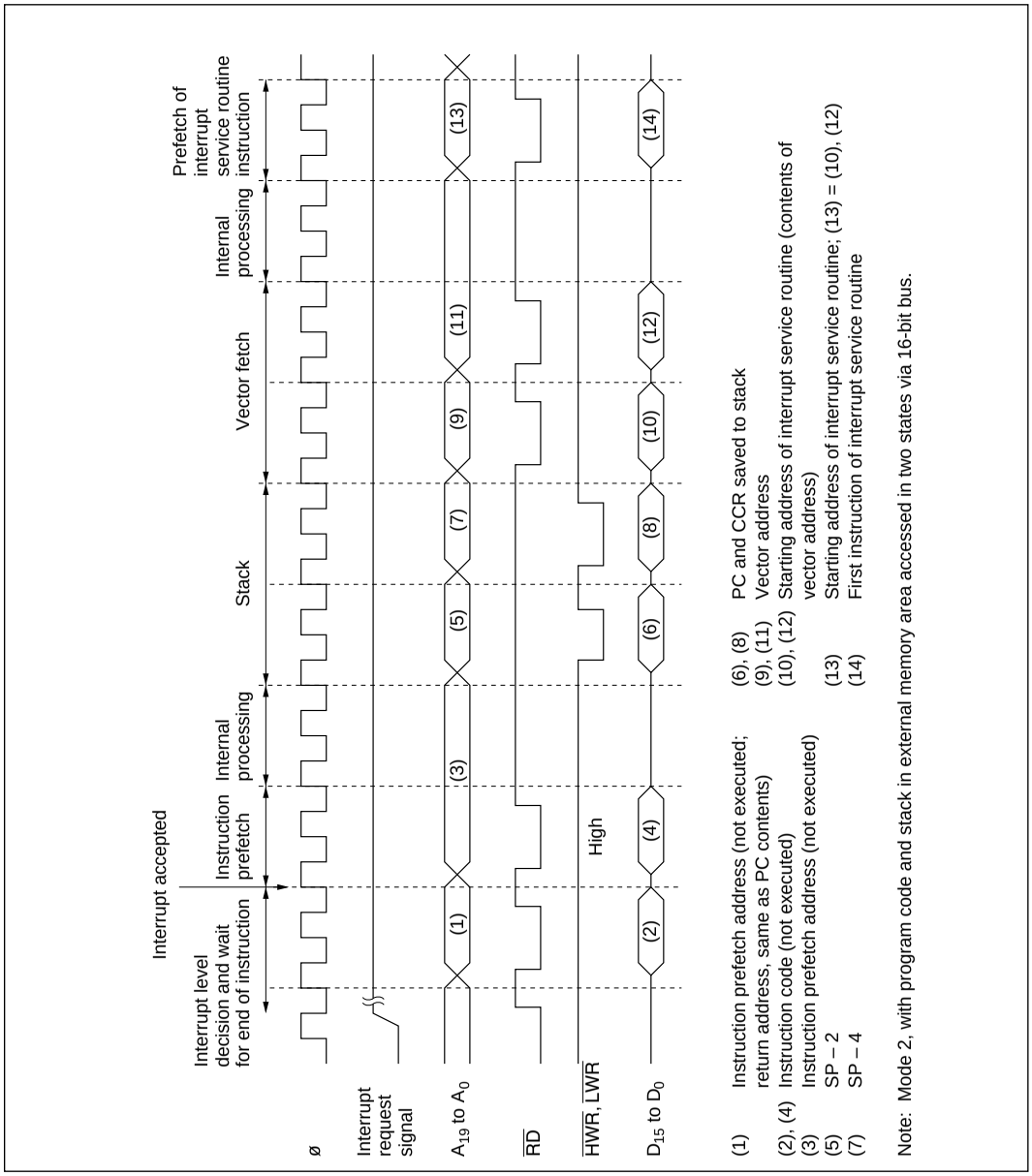


Figure 5-7 Interrupt Sequence (Mode 2, Two-State Access, Stack in External Memory)

5.4.3 Interrupt Response Time

Table 5-5 indicates the interrupt response time from the occurrence of an interrupt request until the first instruction of the interrupt service routine is executed.

Table 5-5 Interrupt Response Time

			External Memory			
			8-Bit Bus		16-Bit Bus	
No.	Item	On-Chip Memory	2 States	3 States	2 States	3 States
1	Interrupt priority decision	2*1	2*1	2*1	2*1	2*1
2	Maximum number of states until end of current instruction	1 to 23	1 to 27	1 to 31*4	1 to 23	1 to 25*4
3	Saving PC and CCR to stack	4	8	12*4	4	6*4
4	Vector fetch	4	8	12*4	4	6*4
5	Instruction prefetch*2	4	8	12*4	4	6*4
6	Internal processing*3	4	4	4	4	4
Total		19 to 41	31 to 57	43 to 73	19 to 41	25 to 49

Notes: 1. 1 state for internal interrupts.
2. Prefetch after the interrupt is accepted and prefetch of the first instruction in the interrupt service routine.
3. Internal processing after the interrupt is accepted and internal processing after prefetch.
4. The number of states increases if wait states are inserted in external memory access.

5.5 Usage Notes

5.5.1 Contention between Interrupt and Interrupt-Disabling Instruction

When an instruction clears an interrupt enable bit to 0 to disable the interrupt, the interrupt is not disabled until after execution of the instruction is completed. If an interrupt occurs while a BCLR, MOV, or other instruction is being executed to clear its interrupt enable bit to 0, at the instant when execution of the instruction ends the interrupt is still enabled, so its interrupt exception handling is carried out. If a higher-priority interrupt is also requested, however, interrupt exception handling for the higher-priority interrupt is carried out, and the lower-priority interrupt is ignored. This also applies to the clearing of an interrupt flag.

Figure 5-8 shows an example in which an IMIEA bit is cleared to 0 in the ITU.

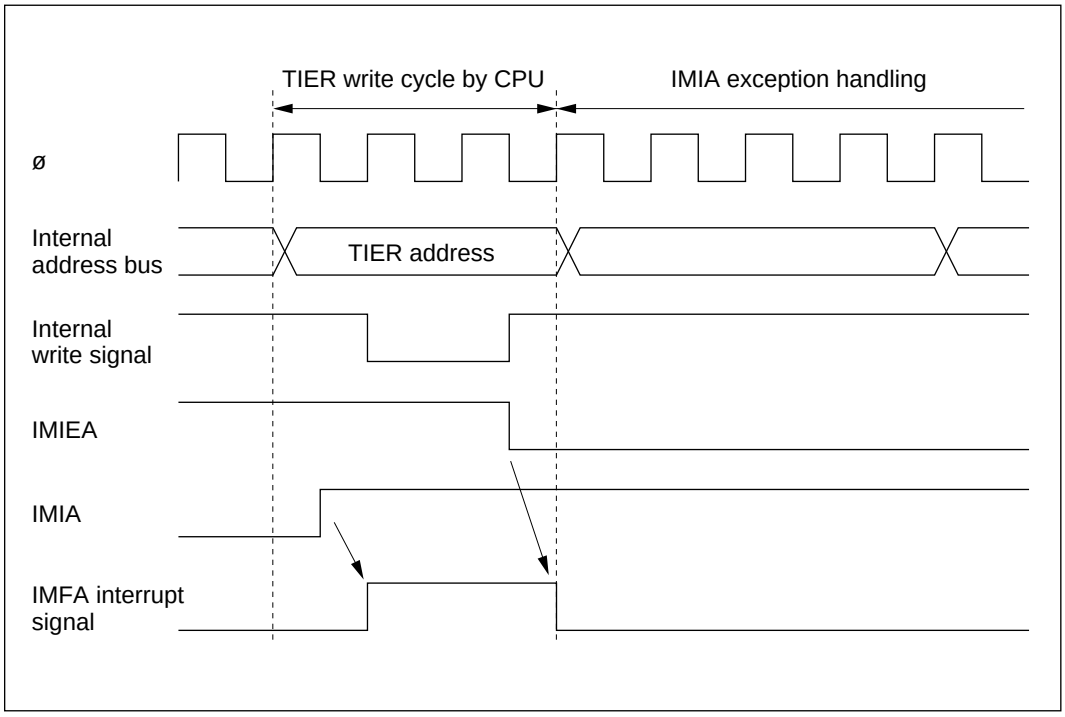


Figure 5-8 Contention between Interrupt and Interrupt-Disabling Instruction

This type of contention will not occur if the interrupt is masked when the interrupt enable bit or flag is cleared to 0.

5.5.2 Instructions that Inhibit Interrupts

The LDC, ANDC, ORC, and XORC instructions inhibit interrupts. When an interrupt occurs, after determining the interrupt priority, the interrupt controller requests a CPU interrupt. If the CPU is currently executing one of these interrupt-inhibiting instructions, however, when the instruction is completed the CPU always continues by executing the next instruction.

5.5.3 Interrupts during EEPMOV Instruction Execution

The EEPMOV.B and EEPMOV.W instructions differ in their reaction to interrupt requests.

When the EEPMOV.B instruction is executing a transfer, no interrupts are accepted until the transfer is completed, not even NMI.

When the EEPMOV.W instruction is executing a transfer, interrupt requests other than NMI are not accepted until the transfer is completed. If NMI is requested, NMI exception handling starts at a transfer cycle boundary. The PC value saved on the stack is the address of the next instruction. Programs should be coded as follows to allow for NMI interrupts during EEPMOV.W execution:

```
L1:  EEPMOV.W
     MOV.W R4,R4
     BNE  L1
```

Section 6 Bus Controller

6.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has an on-chip bus controller that divides the address space into eight areas and can assign different bus specifications to each. This enables different types of memory to be connected easily.

A bus arbitration function of the bus controller can release the bus to an external device.

6.1.1 Features

Features of the bus controller are listed below.

- Independent settings for address areas 0 to 7
  - — 128-kbyte areas in 1-Mbyte modes; 2-Mbyte areas in 16-Mbyte modes.
  - — Areas can be designated for 8-bit or 16-bit access.
  - — Areas can be designated for two-state or three-state access.
- Four wait modes
  - — Programmable wait mode, pin auto-wait mode, and pin wait modes 0 and 1 can be selected.
  - — Zero to three wait states can be inserted automatically.
- Bus arbitration function
  - — A built-in bus arbiter grants the bus right to the CPU or an external bus master.

6.1.2 Block Diagram

Figure 6-1 shows a block diagram of the bus controller.

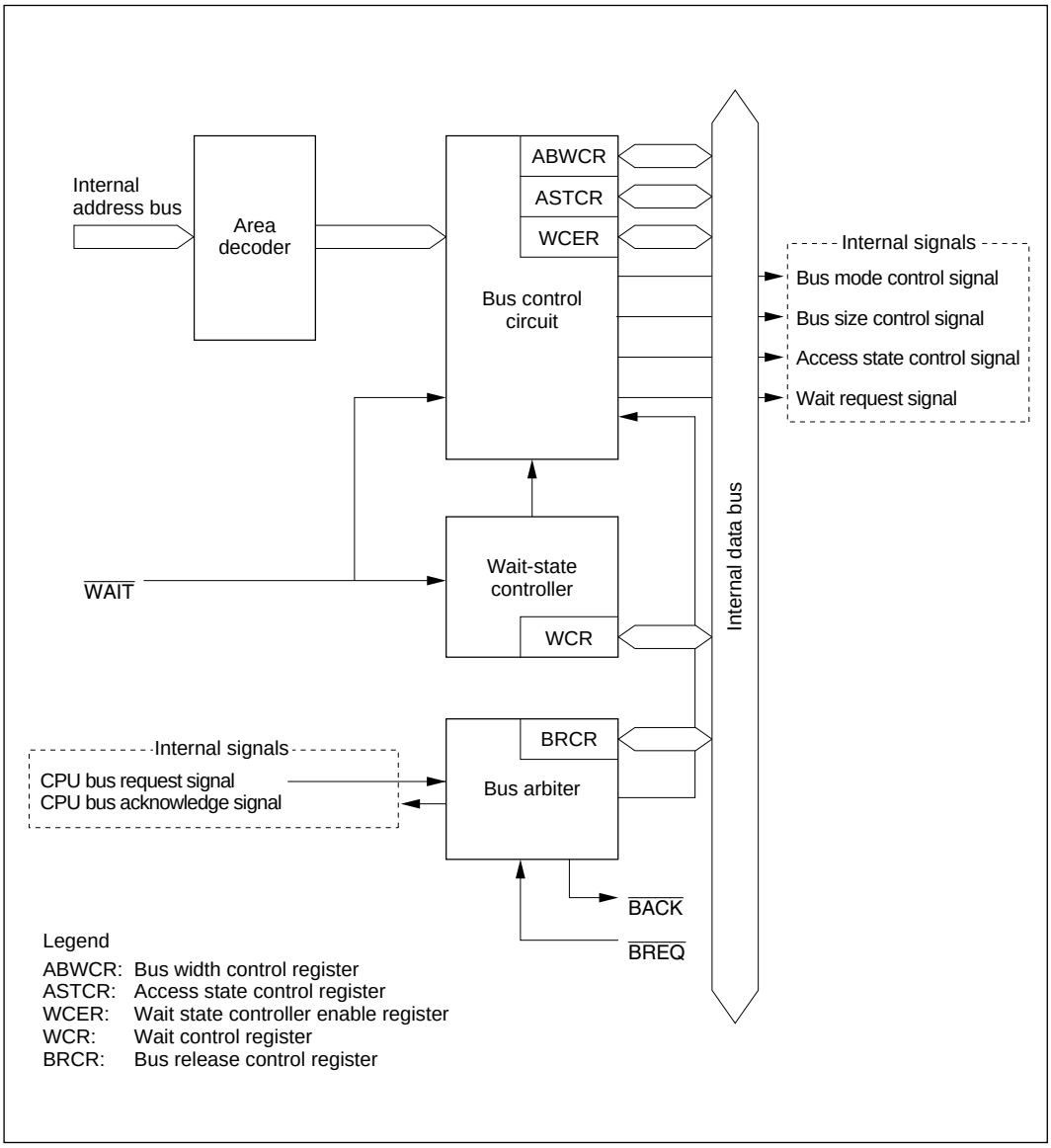


Figure 6-1 Block Diagram of Bus Controller

6.1.3 Input/Output Pins

Table 6-1 summarizes the bus controller's input/output pins.

Table 6-1 Bus Controller Pins

Name	Abbreviation	I/O	Function
Address strobe	$\overline{AS}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating valid address output on the address bus
Read	$\overline{RD}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating reading from the external address space
High write	$\overline{HWR}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating writing to the external address space, with valid data on the upper data bus (D_{15} to D_8)
Low write	$\overline{LWR}$	Output	Strobe signal indicating writing to the external address space, with valid data on the lower data bus (D_7 to D_0)
Wait	$\overline{WAIT}$	Input	Wait request signal for access to external three-state-access areas
Bus request	$\overline{BREQ}$	Input	Request signal for releasing the bus to an external device
Bus acknowledge	$\overline{BACK}$	Output	Acknowledge signal indicating the bus is released to an external device

6.1.4 Register Configuration

Table 6-2 summarizes the bus controller's registers.

Table 6-2 Bus Controller Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value	
				Modes 1 & 3	Modes 2 & 4
H'FFEC	Bus width control register	ABWCR	R/W	H'FF	H'00
H'FFED	Access state control register	ASTCR	R/W	H'FF	H'FF
H'FFEE	Wait control register	WCR	R/W	H'F3	H'F3
H'FFEF	Wait state controller enable register	WCER	R/W	H'FF	H'FF
H'FFF3	Bus release control register	BRCR	R/W	H'FE	H'FE

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

6.2 Register Descriptions

6.2.1 Bus Width Control Register (ABWCR)

ABWCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects 8-bit or 16-bit access for each area.

Bit		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		ABW7	ABW6	ABW5	ABW4	ABW3	ABW2	ABW1	ABW0
Initial value	Modes 1, 3	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	Modes 2, 4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write		R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Bits selecting bus width for each area

When ABWCR contains H'FF (selecting 8-bit access for all areas), the H8/3001 operates in 8-bit bus mode: the upper data bus (D_{15} to D_8) is valid, and port 4 is an input/output port. When at least one bit is cleared to 0 in ABWCR, the H8/3003 operates in 16-bit bus mode with a 16-bit data bus (D_{15} to D_0). In modes 1 and 3, ABWCR is initialized to H'FF by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In modes 2 and 4, ABWCR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. ABWCR is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bits 7 to 0—Area 7 to 0 Bus Width Control (ABW7 to ABW0): These bits select 8-bit access or 16-bit access to the corresponding address areas.

Bits 7 to 0 ABW7 to ABW0	Description
0	Areas 7 to 0 are 16-bit access areas
1	Areas 7 to 0 are 8-bit access areas

ABWCR specifies the bus width of external memory areas. The bus width of on-chip memory and registers is fixed and does not depend on ABWCR settings.

6.2.2 Access State Control Register (ASTCR)

ASTCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects whether each area is accessed in two states or three states.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	AST7	AST6	AST5	AST4	AST3	AST2	AST1	AST0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Bits selecting number of states for access to each area

ASTCR is initialized to H'FF by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

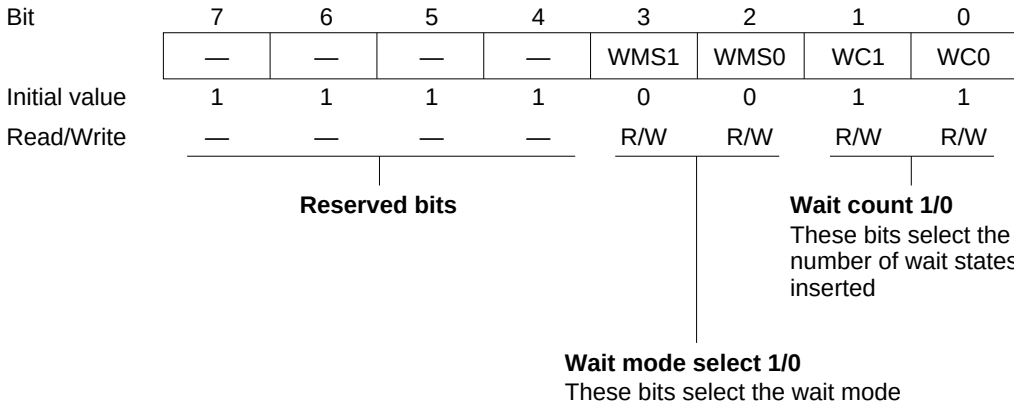
Bits 7 to 0—Area 7 to 0 Access State Control (AST7 to AST0): These bits select whether the corresponding area is accessed in two or three states.

Bits 7 to 0 AST7 to AST0	Description	
0	Areas 7 to 0 are accessed in two states	
1	Areas 7 to 0 are accessed in three states	(Initial value)

ASTCR specifies the number of states in which external areas are accessed. On-chip memory and registers are accessed in a fixed number of states that does not depend on ASTCR settings.

6.2.3 Wait Control Register (WCR)

WCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects the wait mode for the wait-state controller (WSC) and specifies the number of wait states.



WCR is initialized to H'F3 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bits 7 to 4—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bits 3 and 2—Wait Mode Select 1 and 0 (WMS1/0): These bits select the wait mode.

Bit 3 WMS1	Bit 2 WMS0	Description	
0	0	Programmable wait mode	(Initial value)
	1	No wait states inserted by wait-state controller	
1	0	Pin wait mode 1	
	1	Pin auto-wait mode	

Bits 1 and 0—Wait Count 1 and 0 (WC1/0): These bits select the number of wait states inserted in access to external three-state-access areas.

Bit 1 WC1	Bit 0 WC0	Description	
0	0	No wait states inserted by wait-state controller	
	1	1 state inserted	
1	0	2 states inserted	
	1	3 states inserted	(Initial value)

6.2.4 Wait State Controller Enable Register (WCER)

WCER is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables or disables wait-state control of external three-state-access areas by the wait-state controller.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	WCE7	WCE6	WCE5	WCE4	WCE3	WCE2	WCE1	WCE0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Wait state controller enable 7 to 0
These bits enable or disable wait-state control

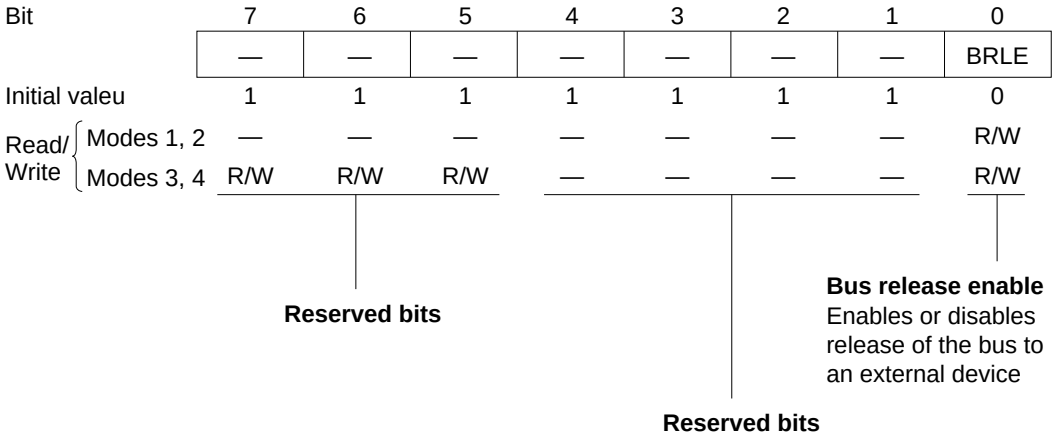
WCER is initialized to H'FF by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bits 7 to 0—Wait-State Controller Enable 7 to 0 (WCE7 to WCE0): These bits enable or disable wait-state control of external three-state-access areas.

Bits 7 to 0 WCE7 to WCE0	Description	
0	Wait-state control disabled (pin wait mode 0)	
1	Wait-state control enabled	(Initial value)

6.2.5 Bus Release Control Register (BRCR)

BRCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables or disables release of the bus to an external device.



BRCR is initialized to H'FE by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bits 7 to 5—Reserved: In modes 1 and 2, these are read-only bits that always read 1. In modes 3 and 4, they can be written and read.

Bits 4 to 1—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

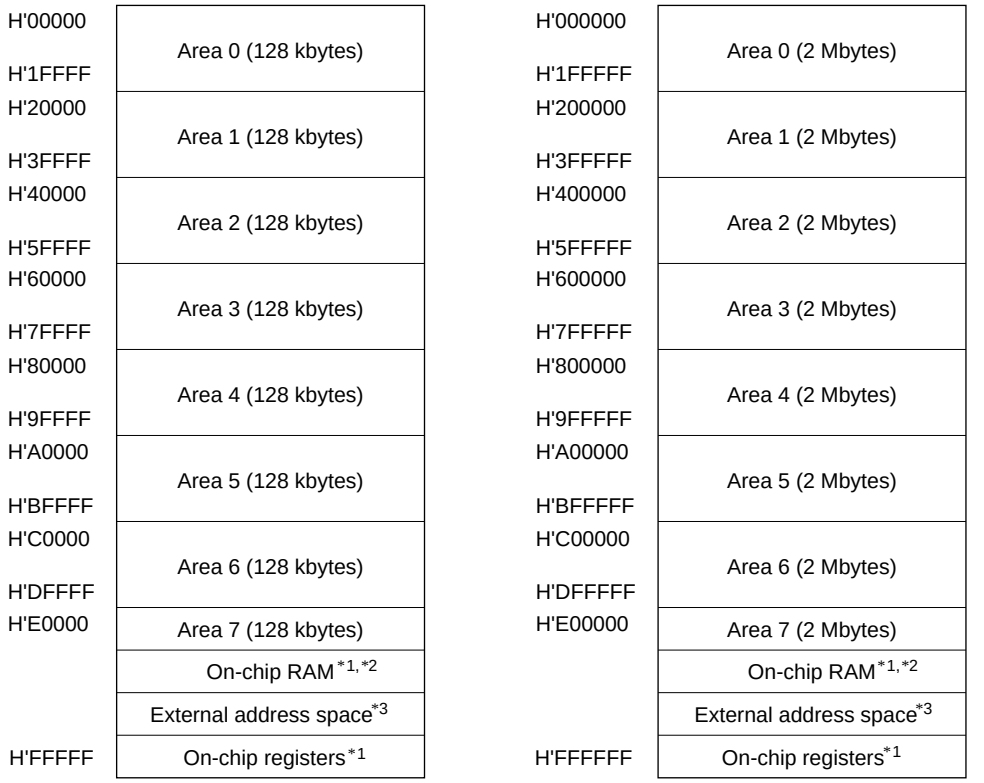
Bit 0—Bus Release Enable (BRLE): Enables or disables release of the bus to an external device.

Bit 0 BRLE	Description	
0	The bus cannot be released to an external device; $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ can be used as input/output pins	(Initial value)
1	The bus can be released to an external device	

6.3 Operation

6.3.1 Area Division

The external address space is divided into areas 0 to 7. Each area has a size of 128 kbytes in the 1-Mbyte modes, or 2 Mbytes in the 16-Mbyte modes. Figure 6-2 shows a general view of the memory map.



a. 1-Mbyte modes (modes 1 and 2)

b. 16-Mbyte modes (modes 3 and 4)

Notes: 1. The on-chip RAM and on-chip registers have a fixed bus width and are accessed in a fixed number of states.
2. When the RAME bit is cleared to 0 in SYSCR, this area conforms to the specifications of area 7.
3. The 12-byte external address space conforms to the specifications of area 7.

Figure 6-2 Access Area Map for Modes 1 to 4

The bus specifications for each area can be selected in ABWCR, ASTCR, WCER, and WCR as shown in table 6-3.

Table 6-3 Bus Specifications

ABWCR	ASTCR	WCER	WCR		Bus Specifications		
ABWn	ASTn	WCEn	WMS1	WMS0	Bus Width	Access States	Wait Mode
0	0	—	—	—	16	2	Disabled
	1	0	—	—	16	3	Pin wait mode 0
		1	0	0	16	3	Programmable wait mode
				1	16	3	Disabled
			1	0	16	3	Pin wait mode 1
				1	16	3	Pin auto-wait mode
1	0	—	—	—	8	2	Disabled
	1	0	—	—	8	3	Pin wait mode 0
		1	0	0	8	3	Programmable wait mode
				1	8	3	Disabled
			1	0	8	3	Pin wait mode 1
				1	8	3	Pin auto-wait mode

Note: n = 0 to 7

6.3.2 Data Bus

The H8/3001 allows either 8-bit access or 16-bit access to be designated for each of areas 0 to 7. An 8-bit-access area uses the upper data bus (D_{15} to D_8). A 16-bit-access area uses both the upper data bus (D_{15} to D_8) and lower data bus (D_7 to D_0).

In read access the $\overline{RD}$ signal applies without distinction to both the upper and lower data bus. In write access the $\overline{HWR}$ signal applies to the upper data bus, and the $\overline{LWR}$ signal applies to the lower data bus.

Table 6-4 indicates how the two parts of the data bus are used under different access conditions.

Table 6-4 Access Conditions and Data Bus Usage

Area	Access Size	Read/ Write	Address	Valid Strobe	Upper Data Bus (D_{15} to D_8)	Lower Data Bus (D_7 to D_0)
8-bit-access area	—	Read	—	$\overline{RD}$	Valid	Invalid
		Write	—	$\overline{HWR}$		Undetermined data
16-bit-access area	Byte	Read	Even	$\overline{RD}$	Valid	Invalid
			Odd		Invalid	Valid
		Write	Even	$\overline{HWR}$	Valid	Undetermined data
			Odd	$\overline{LWR}$	Undetermined data	Valid
	Word	Read	—	$\overline{RD}$	Valid	Valid
		Write	—	$\overline{HWR}$, $\overline{LWR}$	Valid	Valid

Note: Undetermined data means that unpredictable data is output.
Invalid means that the bus is in the input state and the input is ignored.

6.3.3 Bus Control Signal Timing

8-Bit, Three-State-Access Areas: Figure 6-3 shows the timing of bus control signals for an 8-bit, three-state-access area. The upper address bus (D_{15} to D_8) is used to access these areas. The $\overline{LWR}$ pin is always high. Wait states can be inserted.

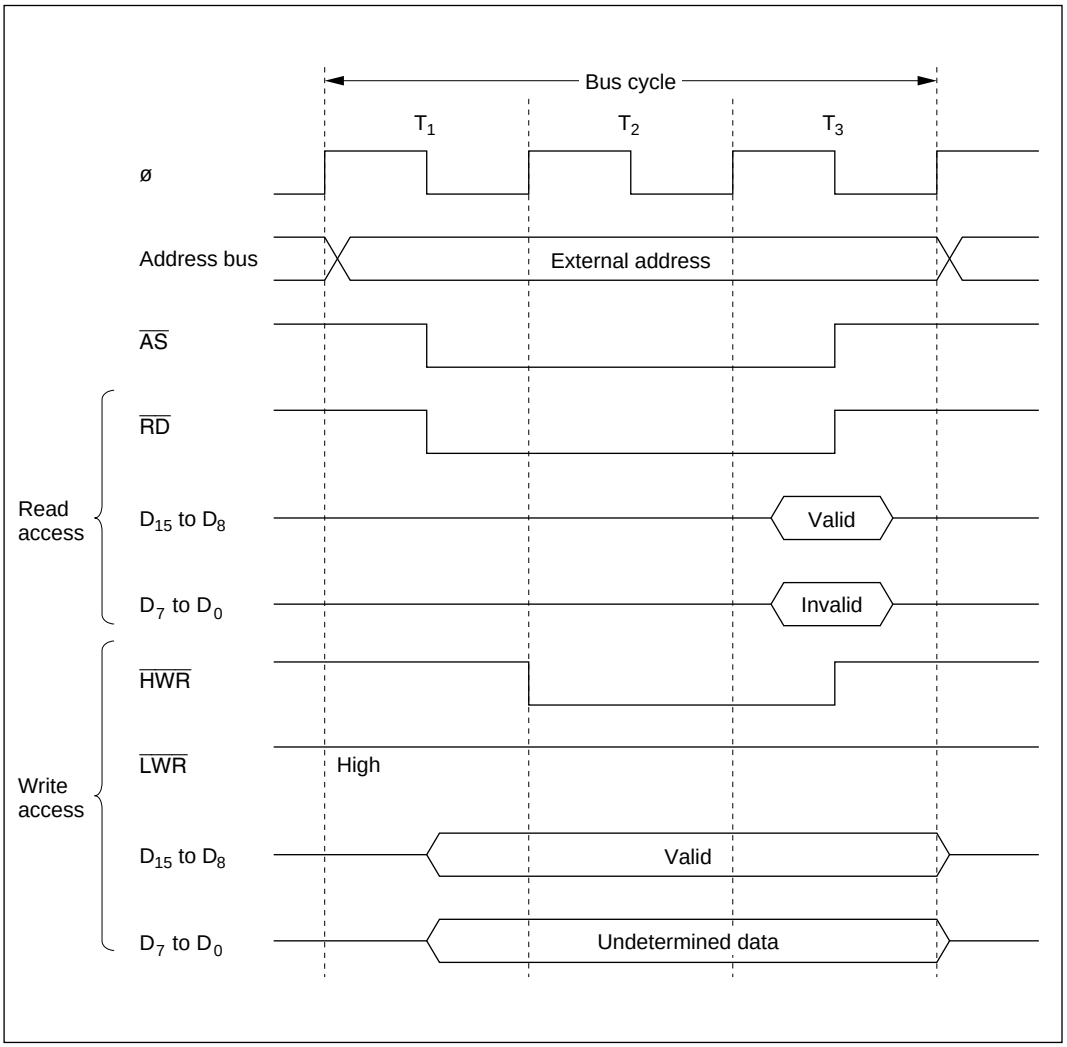


Figure 6-3 Bus Control Signal Timing for 8-Bit, Three-State-Access Area

8-Bit, Two-State-Access Areas: Figure 6-4 shows the timing of bus control signals for an 8-bit, two-state-access area. The upper address bus (D_{15} to D_8) is used to access these areas. The $\overline{LWR}$ pin is always high. Wait states cannot be inserted.

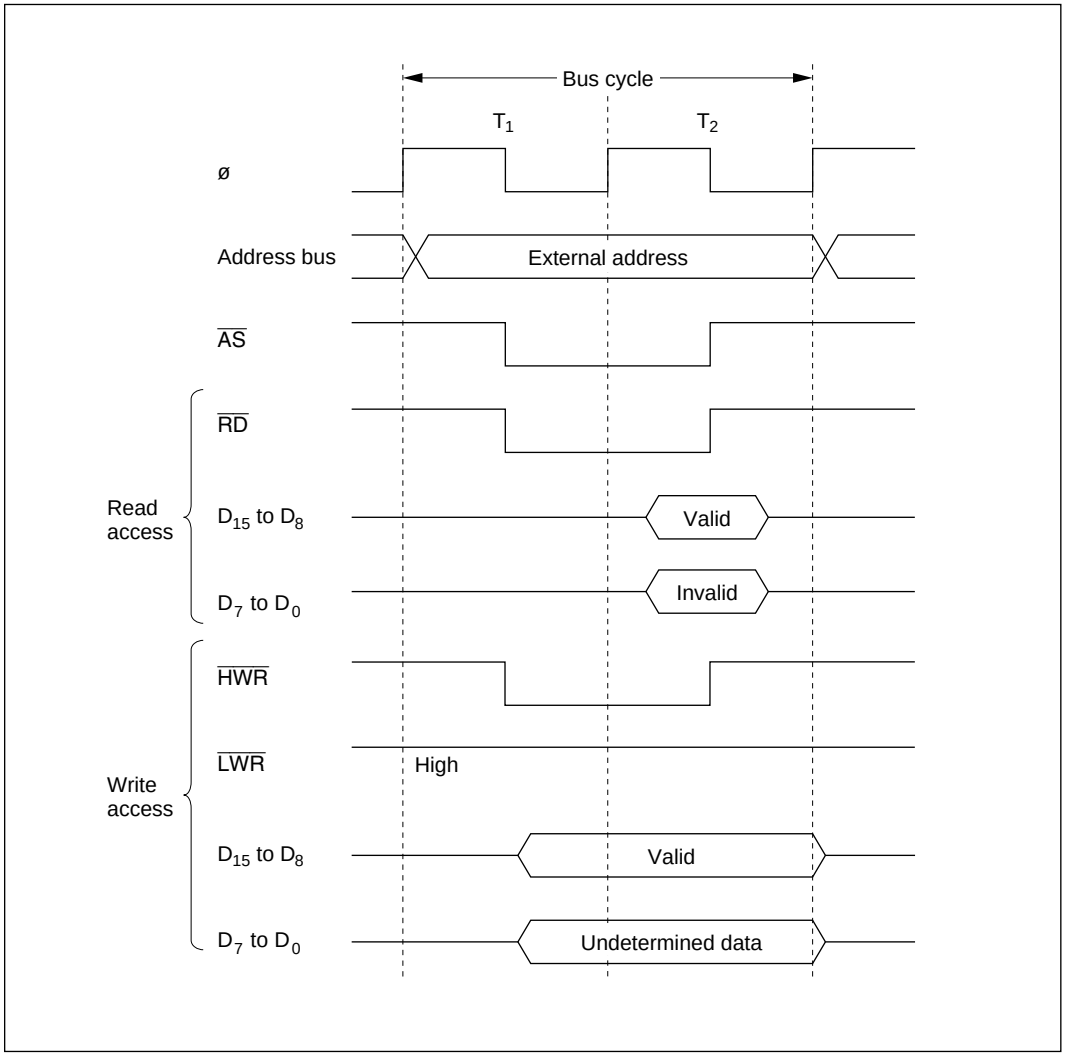


Figure 6-4 Bus Control Signal Timing for 8-Bit, Two-State-Access Area

16-Bit, Three-State-Access Areas: Figures 6-5 to 6-7 show the timing of bus control signals for a 16-bit, three-state-access area. In these areas, the upper address bus (D_{15} to D_8) is used to access even addresses and the lower address bus (D_7 to D_0) is used to access odd addresses. Wait states can be inserted.

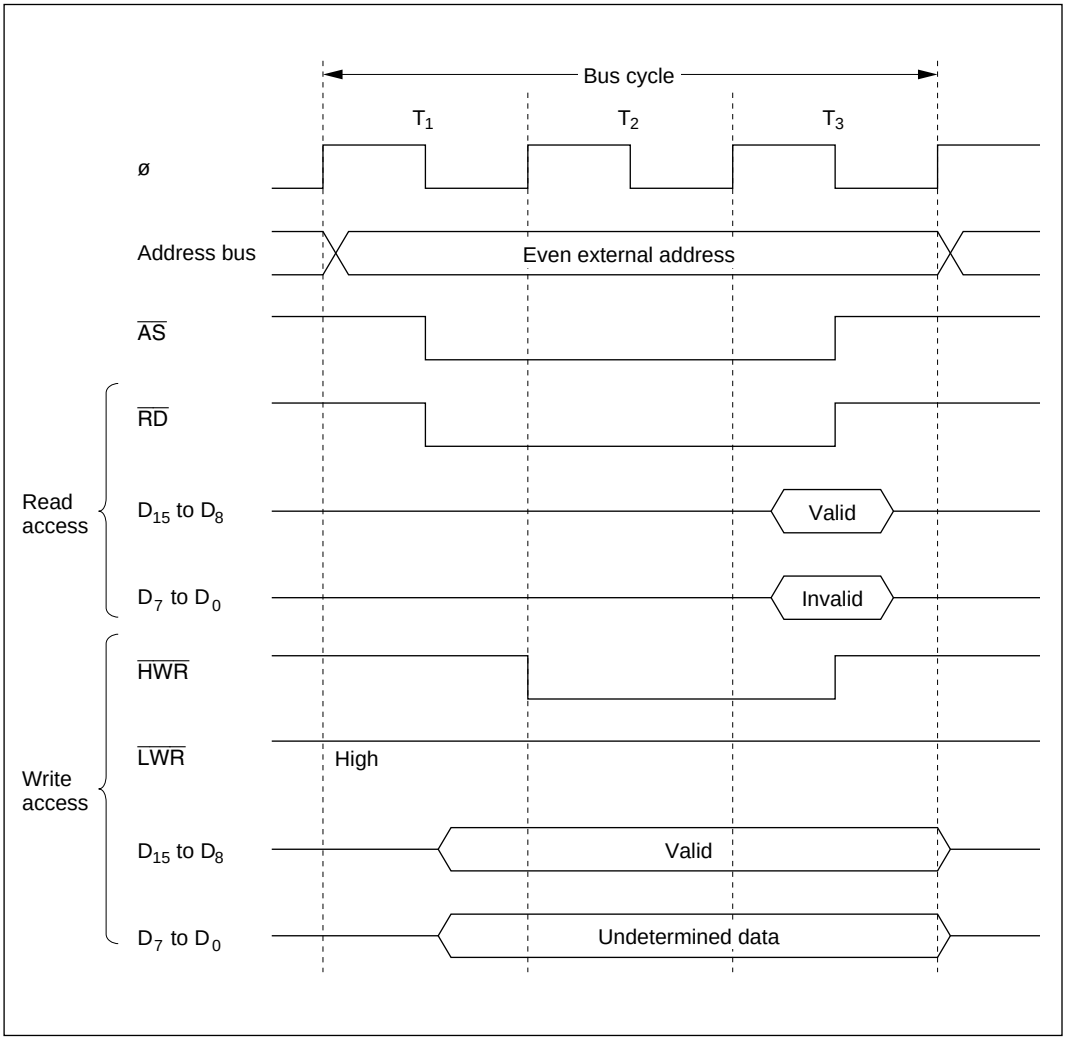


Figure 6-5 Bus Control Signal Timing for 16-Bit, Three-State-Access Area (1) (Byte Access to Even Address)

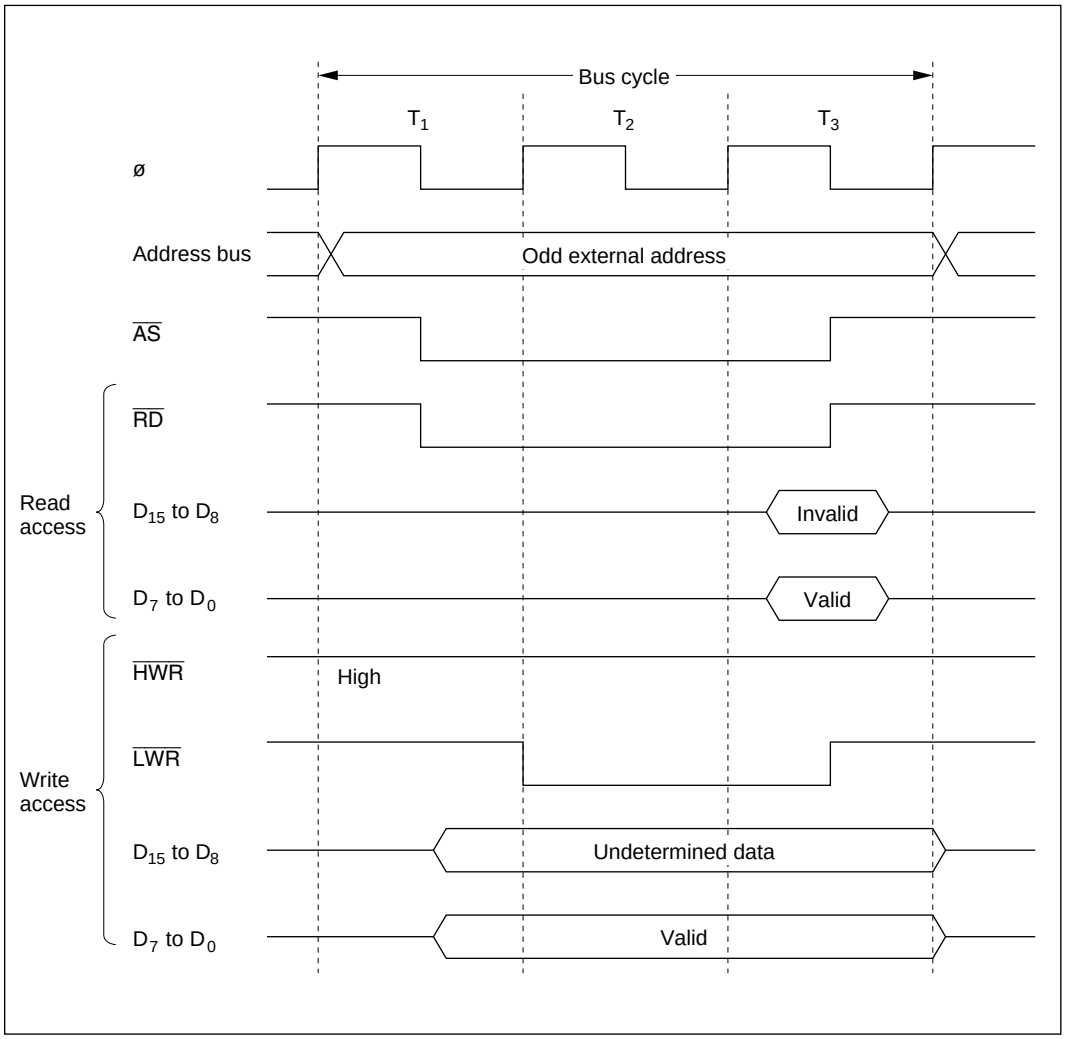


Figure 6-6 Bus Control Signal Timing for 16-Bit, Three-State-Access Area (2) (Byte Access to Odd Address)

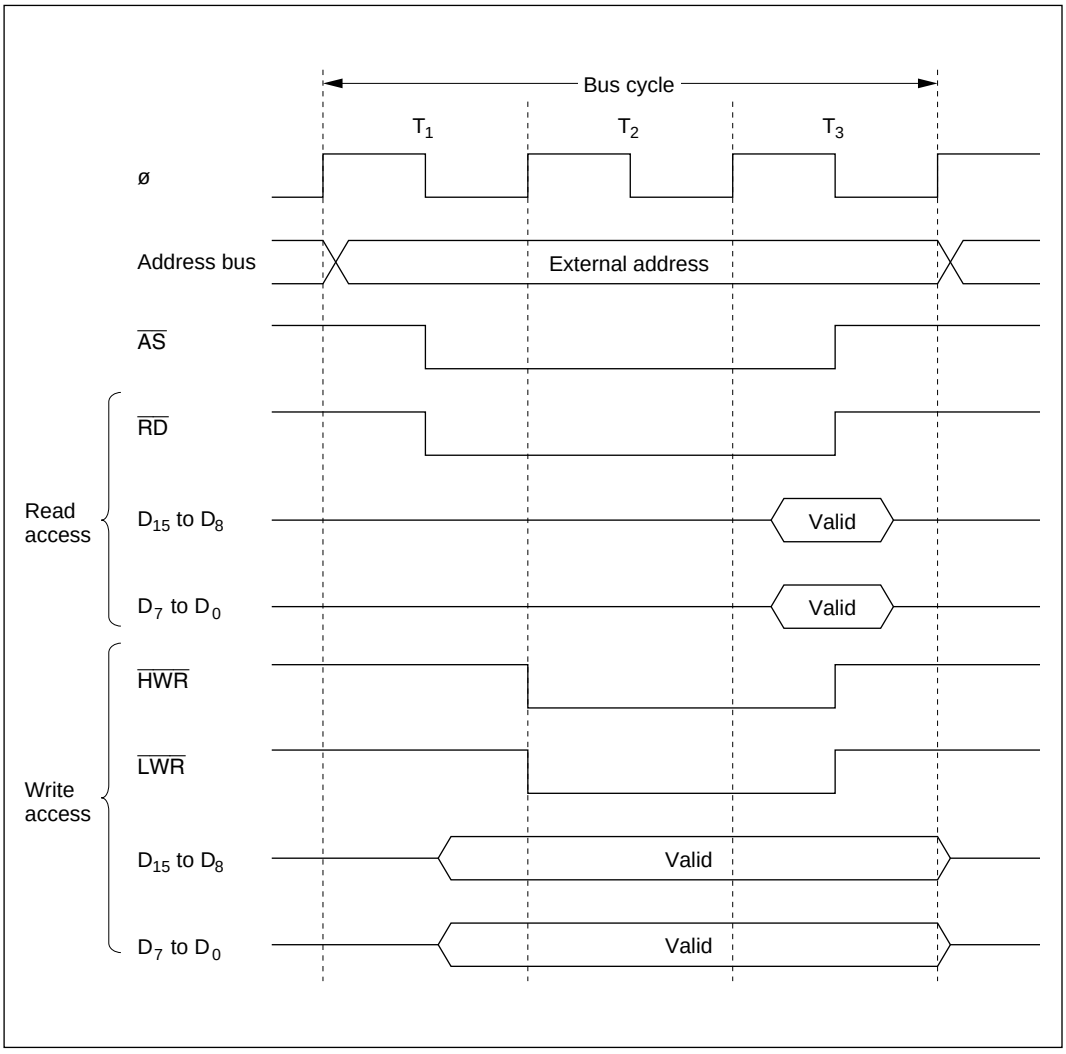


Figure 6-7 Bus Control Signal Timing for 16-Bit, Three-State-Access Area (3) (Word Access)

16-Bit, Two-State-Access Areas: Figures 6-8 to 6-10 show the timing of bus control signals for a 16-bit, two-state-access area. In these areas, the upper address bus (D_{15} to D_8) is used to access even addresses and the lower address bus (D_7 to D_0) is used to access odd addresses. Wait states cannot be inserted.

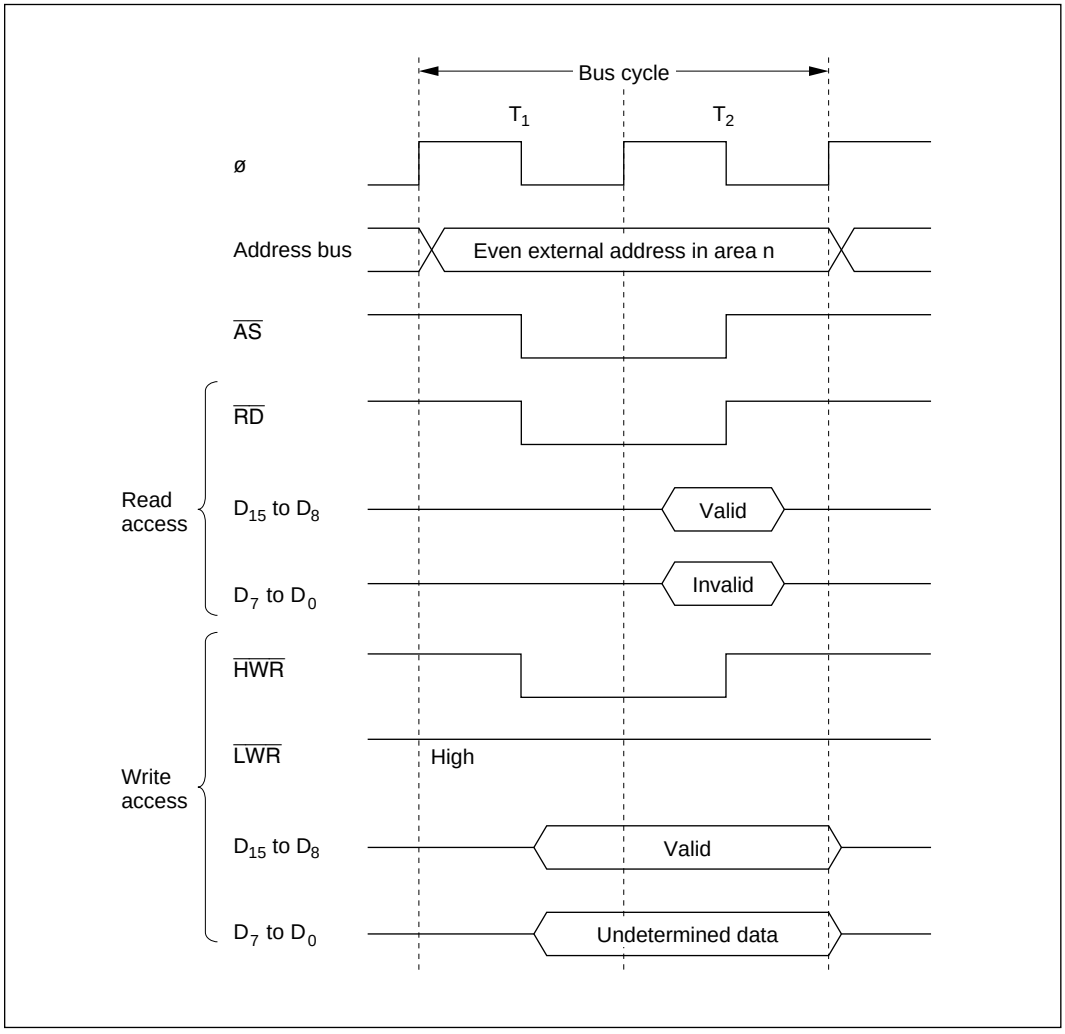


Figure 6-8 Bus Control Signal Timing for 16-Bit, Two-State-Access Area (1) (Byte Access to Even Address)

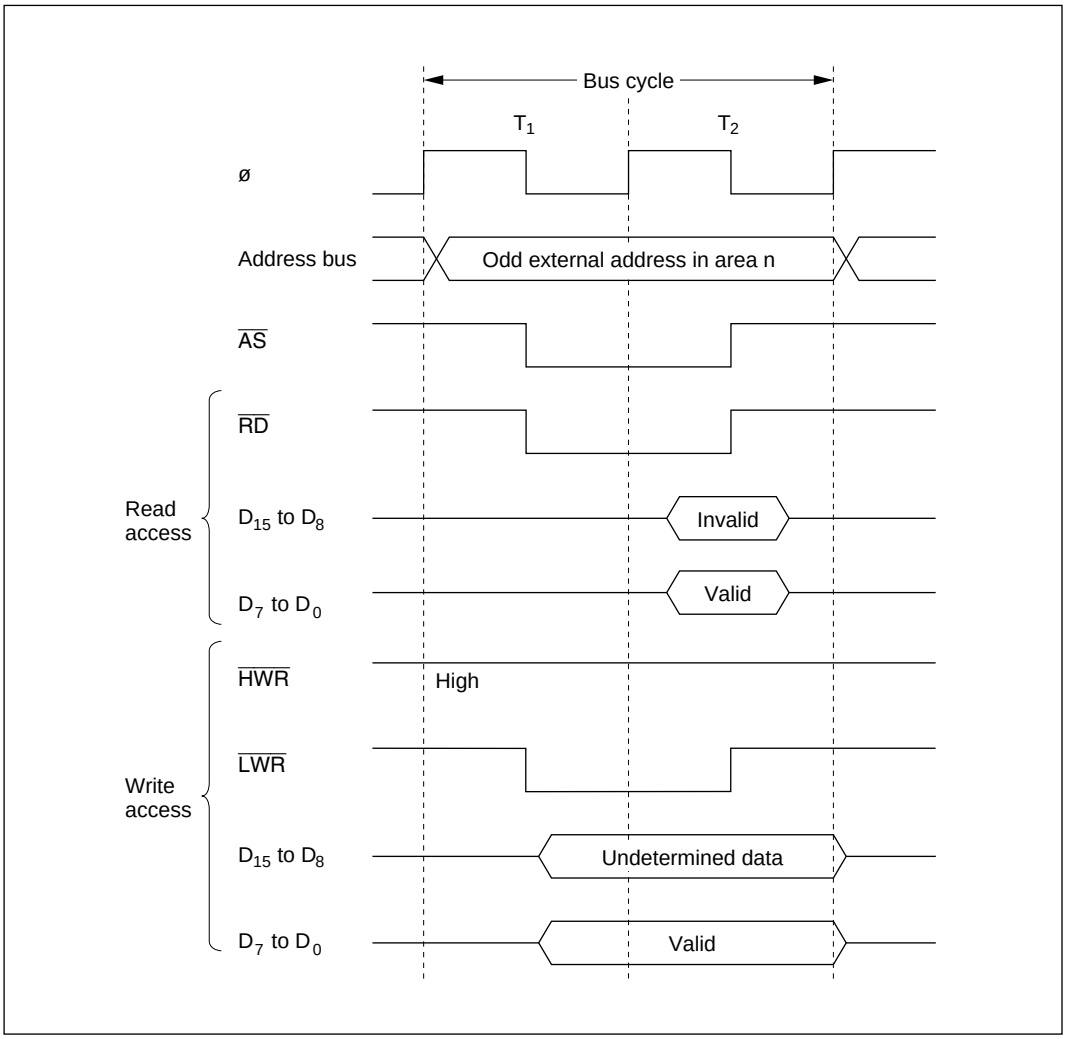


Figure 6-9 Bus Control Signal Timing for 16-Bit, Two-State-Access Area (2) (Byte Access to Odd Address)

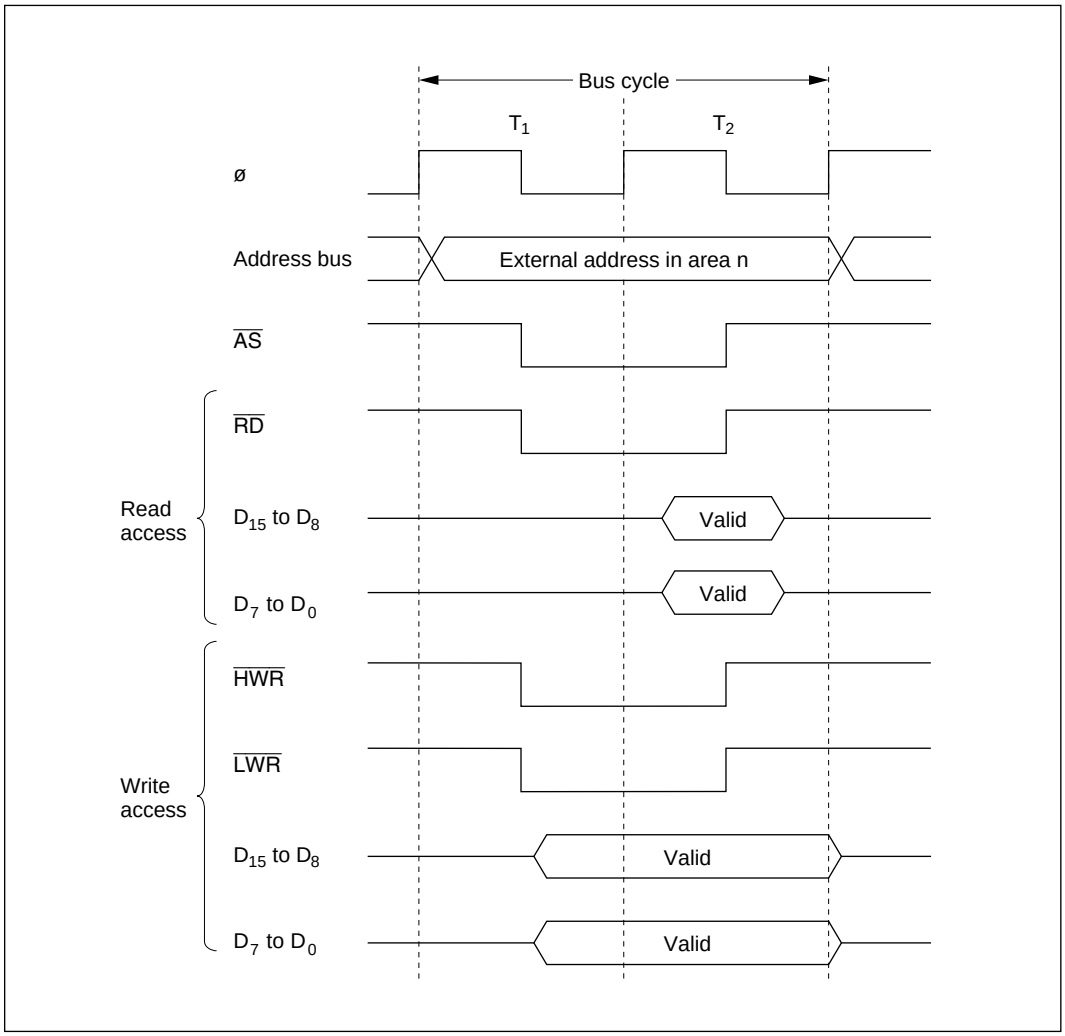


Figure 6-10 Bus Control Signal Timing for 16-Bit, Two-State-Access Area (3) (Word Access)

6.3.4 Wait Modes

Four wait modes can be selected for each area as shown in table 6-5.

Table 6-5 Wait Mode Selection

ASTCR	WCER	WCR			
ASTn Bit	**WCEn Bit**	**WMS1 Bit**	**WMS0 Bit**	**WSC Control**	**Wait Mode**
0	—	—	—	Disabled	No wait states
1	0	—	—	Disabled	Pin wait mode 0
	1	0	0	Enabled	Programmable wait mode
			1	Enabled	No wait states
		1	0	Enabled	Pin wait mode 1
			1	Enabled	Pin auto-wait mode

Note: n = 7 to 0

The AST_n and WCE_n bits can be set independently for each area. Bits WMS1 and WMS0 apply to all areas. All areas for which WSC control is enabled operate in the same wait mode.

Pin Wait Mode 0: The wait state controller is disabled. Wait states can only be inserted by $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin control. During access to an external three-state-access area, if the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is low at the fall of the system clock (ø) in the T_2 state, a wait state (T_W) is inserted. If the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin remains low, wait states continue to be inserted until the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ signal goes high. Figure 6-11 shows the timing.

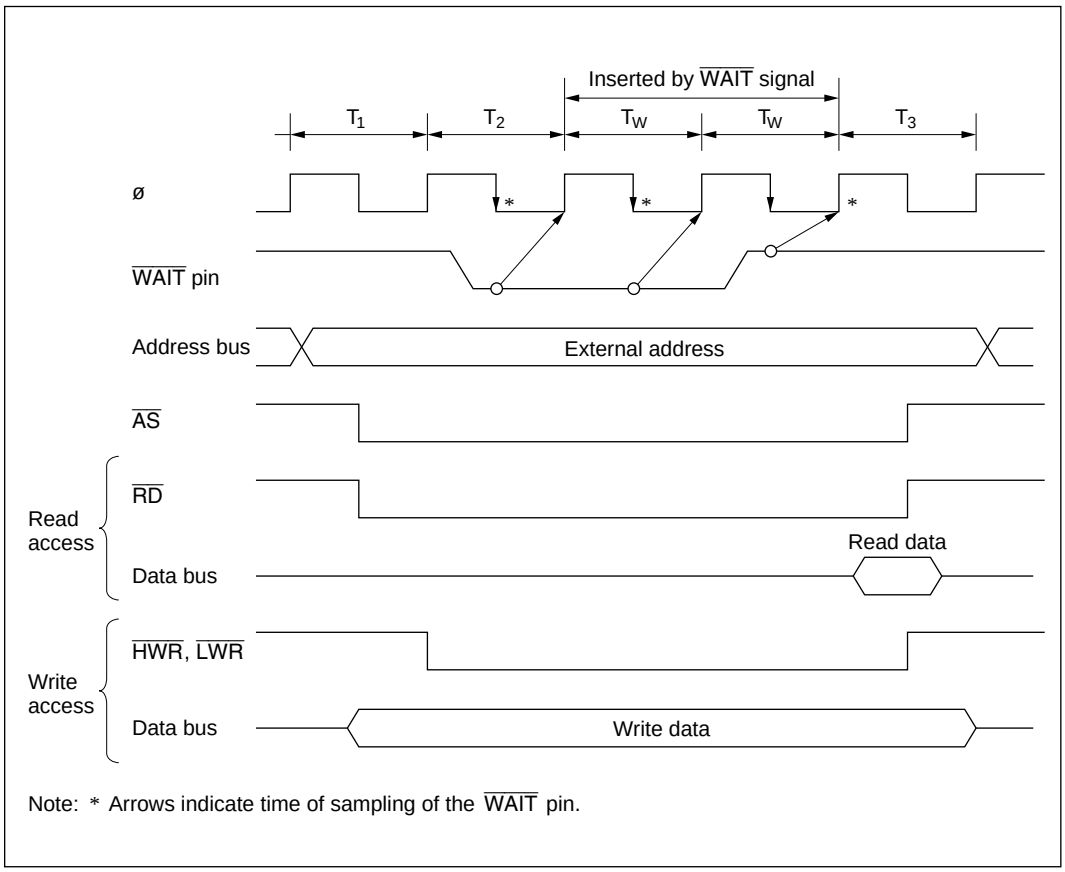


Figure 6-11 Pin Wait Mode 0

Pin Wait Mode 1: In all accesses to external three-state-access areas, the number of wait states (T_W) selected by bits WC1 and WC0 are inserted. If the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is low at the fall of the system clock (ø) in the last of these wait states, an additional wait state is inserted. If the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin remains low, wait states continue to be inserted until the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ signal goes high.

Pin wait mode 1 is useful for inserting four or more wait states, or for inserting different numbers of wait states for different external devices.

If the wait count is 0, this mode operates in the same way as pin wait mode 0.

Figure 6-12 shows the timing when the wait count is 1 (WC1 = 0, WC0 = 1) and one additional wait state is inserted by $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ input.

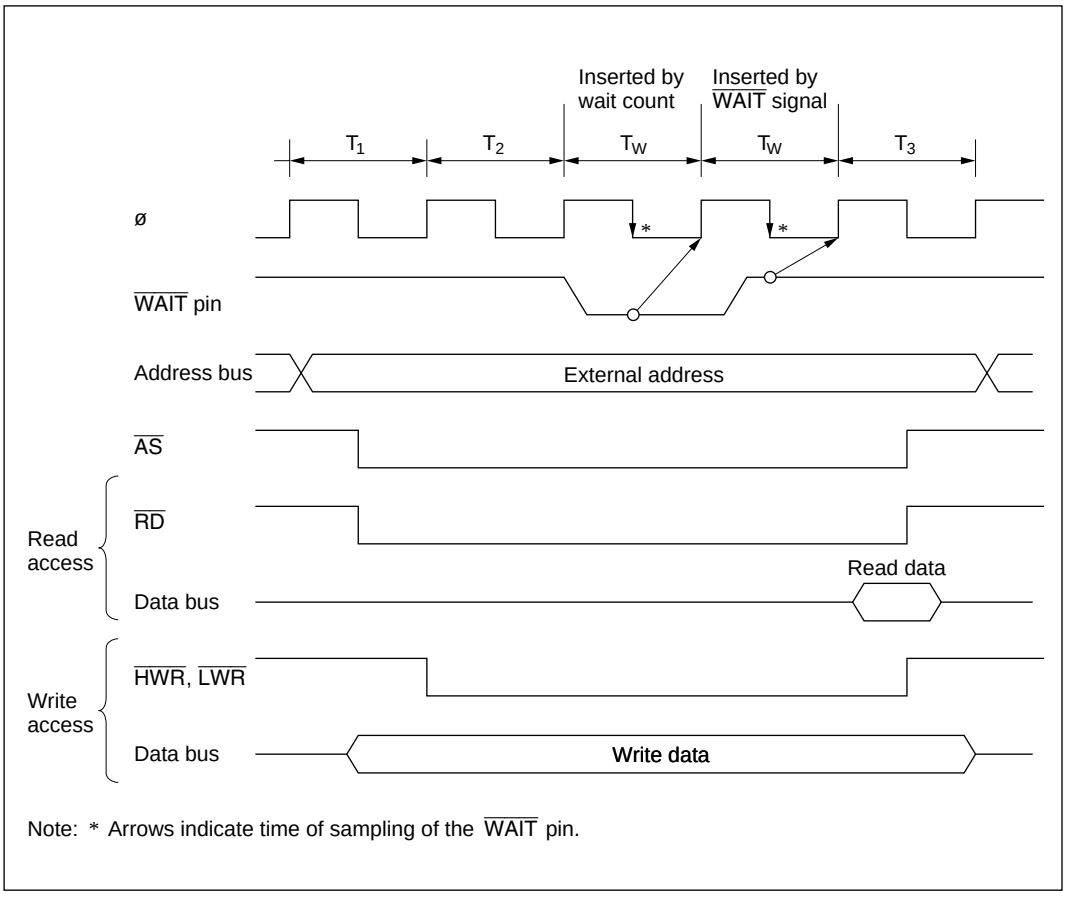


Figure 6-12 Pin Wait Mode 1

Pin Auto-Wait Mode: If the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is low, the number of wait states (T_W) selected by bits WC1 and WC0 are inserted.

In pin auto-wait mode, if the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin is low at the fall of the system clock (ø) in the T_2 state, the number of wait states (T_W) selected by bits WC1 and WC0 are inserted. No additional wait states are inserted even if the $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ pin remains low.

Figure 6-13 shows the timing when the wait count is 1.

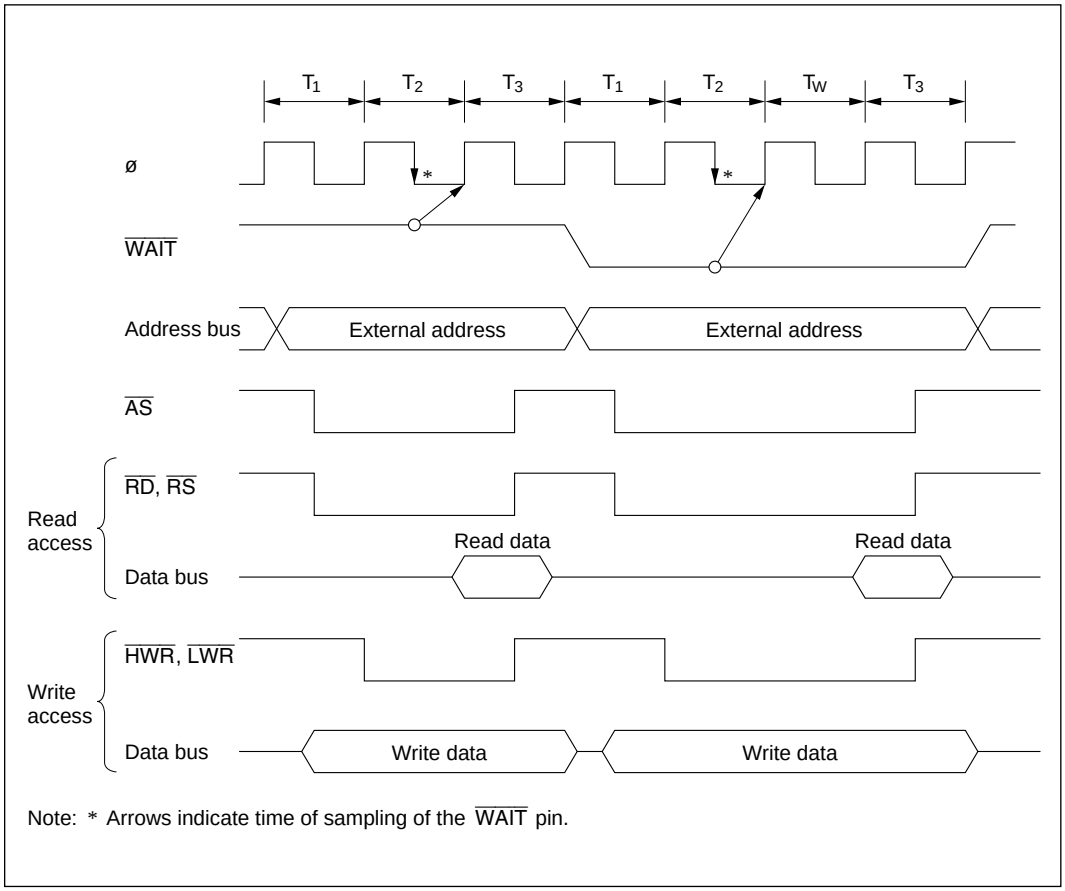


Figure 6-13 Pin Auto-Wait Mode

Programmable Wait Mode: The number of wait states (T_W) selected by bits WC1 and WC0 are inserted in all accesses to external three-state-access areas. Figure 6-14 shows the timing when the wait count is 1 (WC1 = 0, WC0 = 1).

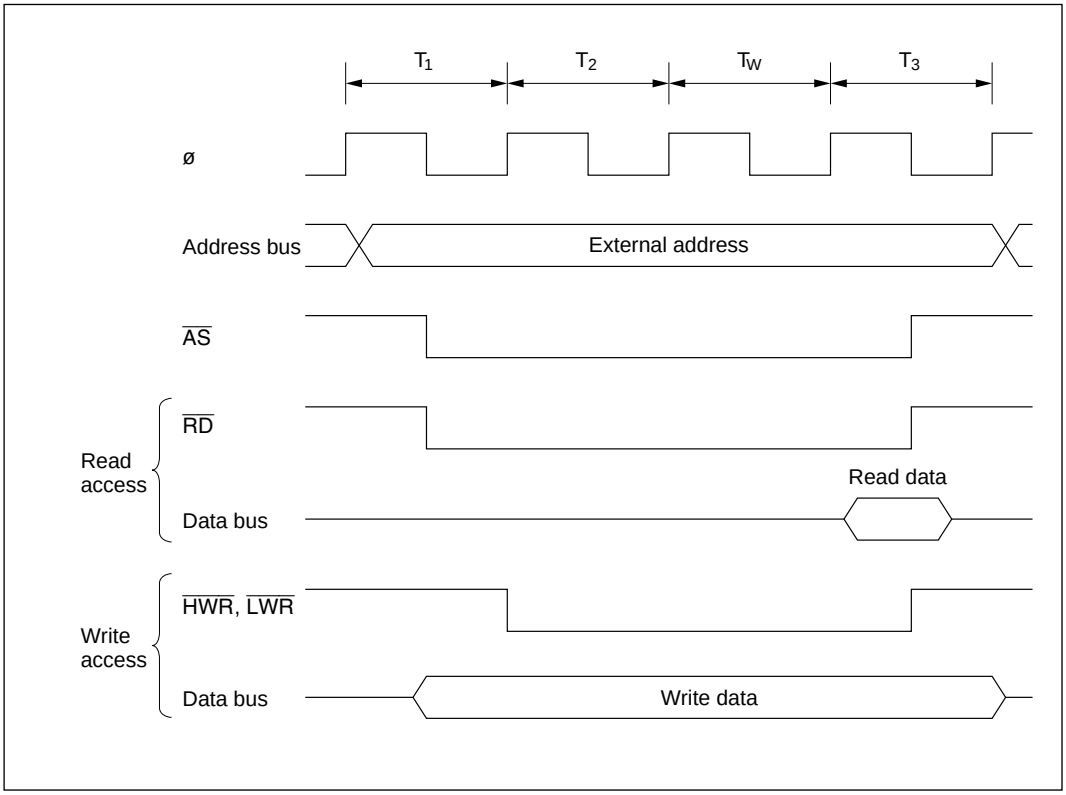
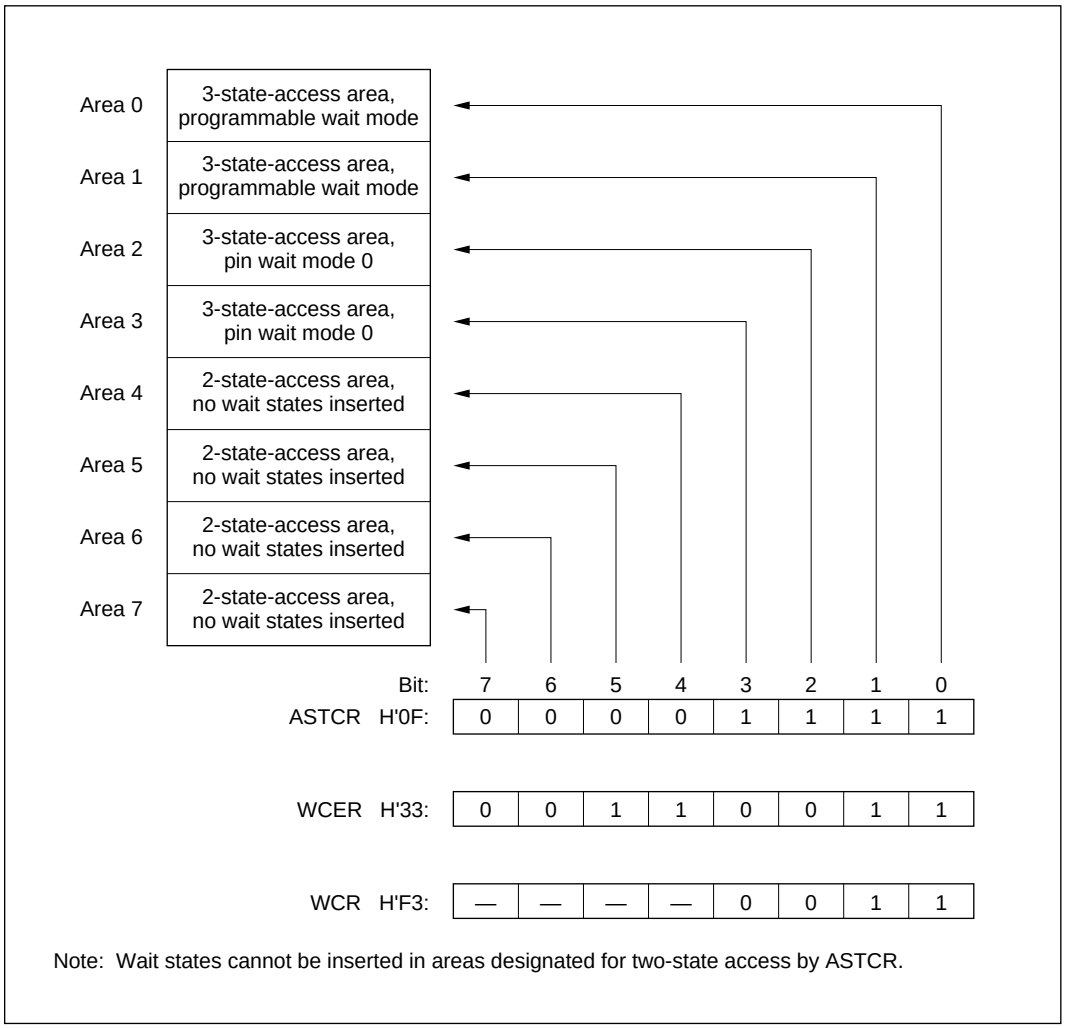


Figure 6-14 Programmable Wait Mode

Example of Wait State Control Settings: A reset initializes ASTCR and WCER to H'FF and WCR to H'F3, selecting programmable wait mode and three wait states for all areas. Software can select other wait modes for individual areas by modifying the ASTCR, WCER, and WCR settings. Figure 6-15 shows an example of wait mode settings.



Note: Wait states cannot be inserted in areas designated for two-state access by ASTCR.

Figure 6-15 Wait Mode Settings (Example)

6.3.5 Bus Arbiter Operation

The bus controller has a built-in bus arbiter that arbitrates between different bus masters. There are two bus masters: the CPU and an external bus master. When a bus master has the bus right it can carry out read or write access. Each bus master uses a bus request signal to request the bus right. At fixed times the bus arbiter determines priority and uses a bus acknowledge signal to grant the bus to a bus master, which can then operate using the bus.

The bus arbiter checks whether the bus request signal from a bus master is active or inactive, and returns an acknowledge signal to the bus master if the bus request signal is active. When two or more bus masters request the bus, the highest-priority bus master receives an acknowledge signal. The bus master that receives an acknowledge signal can continue to use the bus until the acknowledge signal is deactivated.

The bus master priority order is:

(High) External bus master > CPU (Low)

The bus arbiter samples the bus request signals and determines priority at all times, but it does not always grant the bus immediately, even when it receives a bus request from a bus master with higher priority than the current bus master. Each bus master has certain times at which it can release the bus to a higher-priority bus master.

CPU: The CPU is the lowest-priority bus master. If an external bus master requests the bus while the CPU has the bus right, the bus arbiter transfers the bus right to the bus master that requested it. The bus right is transferred at the following times:

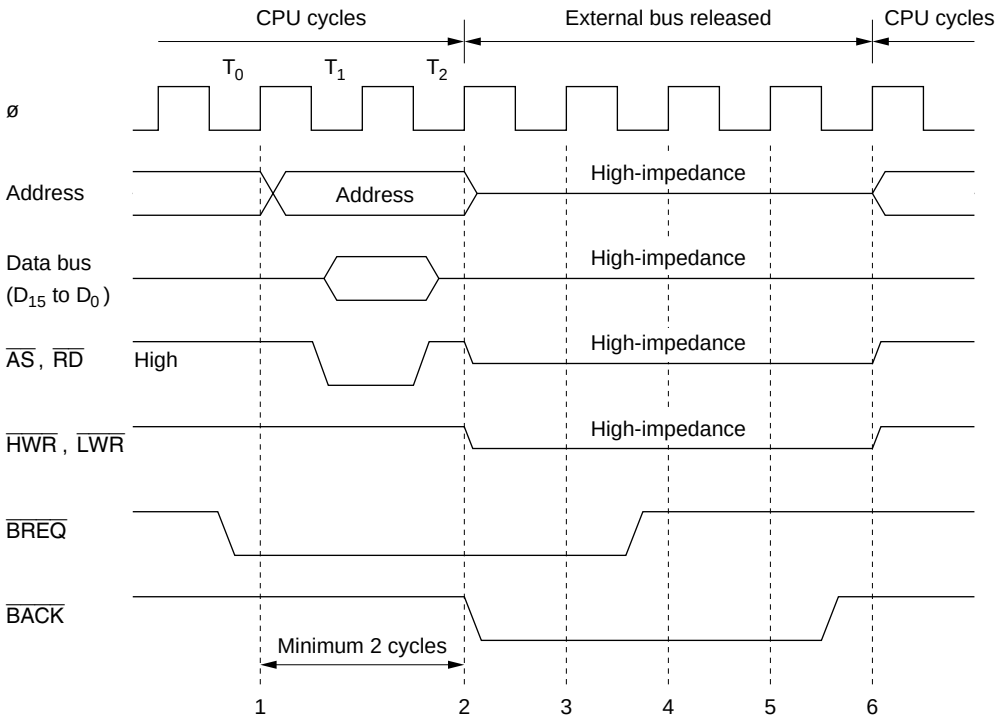
- The bus right is transferred at the boundary of a bus cycle. If word data is accessed by two consecutive byte accesses, however, the bus right is not transferred between the two byte accesses.
- If another bus master requests the bus while the CPU is performing internal operations, such as executing a multiply or divide instruction, the bus right is transferred immediately. The CPU continues its internal operations.
- If another bus master requests the bus while the CPU is in sleep mode, the bus right is transferred immediately.

External Bus Master: When the BRLE bit is set to 1 in BRCR, the bus can be released to an external bus master. The external bus master has highest priority, and requests the bus right from the bus arbiter by driving the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal low. Once the external bus master gets the bus, it keeps the bus right until the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal goes high. While the bus is released to an external bus master, the H8/3001 holds the address bus and data bus control signals ($\overline{\text{AS}}$, $\overline{\text{RD}}$, $\overline{\text{HWR}}$, and $\overline{\text{LWR}}$) in the high-impedance state, and holds the $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ pin in the low output state.

The bus arbiter samples the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin at the rise of the system clock (ø). If $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ is low, the bus is released to the external bus master at the appropriate opportunity. The $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal should be held low until the $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ signal goes low.

When the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin is high in two consecutive samples, the $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ signal is driven high to end the bus-release cycle.

Figure 6-16 shows the timing when the bus right is requested by an external bus master during a read cycle in a two-state-access area. There is a minimum interval of two states from when the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal goes low until the bus is released.



1 Low $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal is sampled at rise of T_0 state.
2 $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ signal goes low at end of CPU read cycle, releasing bus right to external bus master.
3 $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin continues to be sampled while bus is released to external bus master.
4, 5 High $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal is sampled twice consecutively.
6 $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal goes high, ending bus-release cycle.

Figure 6-16 External-Bus-Released State (Two-State-Access Area, During Read Cycle)

6.4 Usage Notes

6.4.1 ABWCR, ASTCR, and WCER Write Timing

Data written to ABWCR, ASTCR, or WCER takes effect starting from the next bus cycle. Figure 6-17 shows the timing when an instruction fetched from area 0 changes area 0 from three-state access to two-state access.

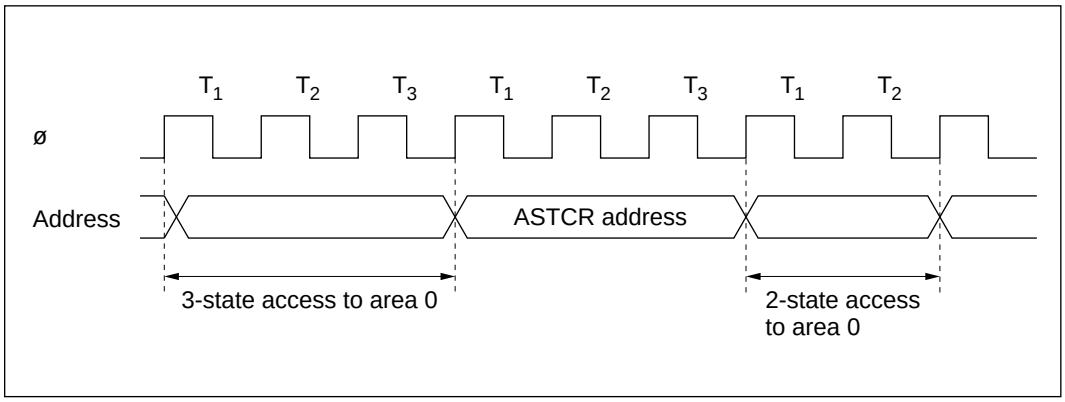


Figure 6-17 ASTCR Write Timing

6.4.2 $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ Input Timing

After driving the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ pin low, hold it low until $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ goes low. If $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ returns to the high level before $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ goes low, the bus arbiter may operate incorrectly.

To terminate the external-bus-released state, hold the $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ signal high for at least three states. If $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ is high for too short an interval, the bus arbiter may operate incorrectly.

Section 7 I/O Ports

7.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has six input/output ports (ports 4, 6, 8, 9, A, and B) and one input port (port 7). Table 7-1 summarizes the port functions. The pins in each port are multiplexed as shown in table 7-1.

Each port has a data direction register (DDR) for selecting input or output, and a data register (DR) for storing output data. In addition to its DDR and DR, port 4 has an input pull-up control register (PCR) for switching input pull-up transistors on and off.

Ports 4, 6, and 8 can drive one TTL load and a 90-pF capacitive load. Ports 9, A, and B can drive one TTL load and a 30-pF capacitive load. Ports 4, 6, 8, 9, A, and B can drive a Darlington pair. Port 5 can drive LEDs (with 10-mA current sink). Ports $P8_1$, $P8_0$, PA_7 to PA_0, and PB_3 to PB_0 have Schmitt-trigger input circuits.

For block diagrams of the ports see appendix C, I/O Port Block Diagrams.

Table 7-1 Port Functions

Port	Description	Pins	Mode 1 Mode 2 Mode 3 Mode 4
Port 4	8-bit I/O port Input pull-up	$P4_7$ to $P4_0$/D_7 to D_0	Data bus (D_7 to D_0) and 8-bit generic input/output 8-bit bus mode: generic input/output 16-bit bus mode: data bus
Port 6	3-bit I/O port	$P6_2$/$\overline{BACK}$ $P6_1$/$\overline{BREQ}$ $P6_0$/$\overline{WAIT}$	Bus control signal input/output ($\overline{BACK}$, $\overline{BREQ}$, $\overline{WAIT}$) and 3-bit generic input/output
Port 7	4-bit input port	$P7_3$ to $P7_0$/AN_3 to AN_0	Analog input (AN_3 to AN_0) to A/D converter, and 4-bit generic input
Port 8	2-bit I/O port Schmitt inputs	$P8_1$/$\overline{IRQ_1}$	$\overline{IRQ_1}$ input and generic input Do not set DDR to 1
		$P8_0$/$\overline{IRQ_0}$	$\overline{IRQ_0}$ input and generic input/output
Port 9	3-bit I/O port	$P9_4$/SCK/$\overline{IRQ_4}$ $P9_2$/RxD $P9_0$/TxD	Input and output (SCK, RxD, TxD) for serial communication interface (SCI), $\overline{IRQ_4}$ input, and 3-bit generic input/output
Port A	8-bit I/O port Schmitt inputs	PA_7/TP_7/$TIOCB_2$/A_{20} PA_6/TP_6/$TIOCA_2$/A_{21} PA_5/TP_5/$TIOCB_1$/A_{22} PA_4/TP_4/$TIOCA_1$/A_{23} PA_3/TP_3/$TIOCB_0$/TCLKD PA_2/TP_2/$TIOCA_0$/TCLKC PA_1/TP_1/TCLKB PA_0/TP_0/TCLKA	Output (TP_7 to TP_0) from programmable timing pattern controller (TPC), Address output pin input and output (TCLKD, TCLKC, TCLKB, TCLKA, $TIOCB_2$, $TIOCA_2$, $TIOCB_1$, $TIOCA_1$, $TIOCB_0$, $TIOCA_0$) for 16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU), and 8-bit generic input/output
Port B	4-bit I/O port Can drive LEDs Schmitt inputs	PB_3/TP_{11}/$TIOCB_4$ PB_2/TP_{10}/$TIOCA_4$ PB_1/TP_9/$TIOCB_3$ PB_0/TP_8/$TIOCB_3$	Output (TP_{11} to TP_8) from TPC, ITU input and output ($TIOCB_4$, $TIOCA_4$, $TIOCB_3$, $TIOCA_3$), and 4-bit generic input/output

7.2 Port 4

7.2.1 Overview

Port 4 is an 8-bit input/output port with the pin configuration shown in figure 7-1. The pin functions differ between the 8-bit and 16-bit bus modes.

When the bus width control register (ABWCR) designates areas 0 to 7 all as 8-bit-access areas, the H8/3001 operates in 8-bit bus mode and port 4 is a generic input/output port. When at least one of areas 0 to 7 is designated as a 16-bit-access area, the H8/3001 operates in 16-bit bus mode and port 4 becomes the lower data bus.

Port 4 has software-programmable built-in pull-up transistors.

Pins in port 4 can drive one TTL load and a 90-pF capacitive load. They can also drive a darlington transistor pair.

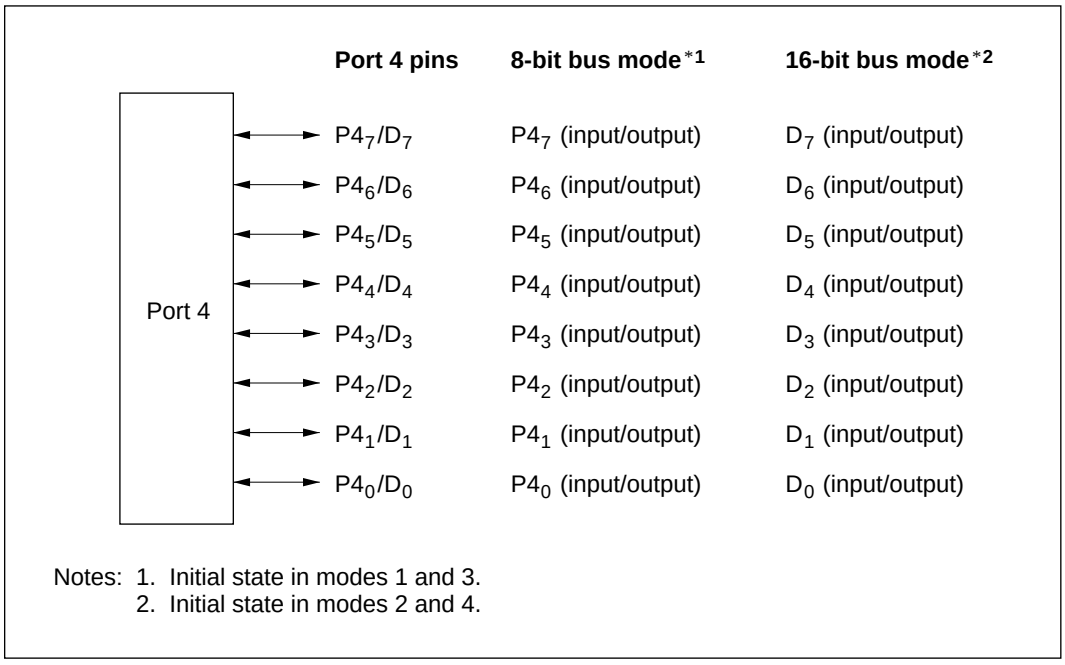


Figure 7-1 Port 4 Pin Configuration

7.2.2 Register Descriptions

Table 7-2 summarizes the registers of port 4.

Table 7-2 Port 4 Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFC5	Port 4 data direction register	P4DDR	W	H'00
H'FFC7	Port 4 data register	P4DR	R/W	H'00
H'FFDA	Port 4 input pull-up control register	P4PCR	R/W	H'00

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Port 4 Data Direction Register (P4DDR): P4DDR is an 8-bit write-only register that can select input or output for each pin in port 4.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	$P4_7DDR$	$P4_6DDR$	$P4_5DDR$	$P4_4DDR$	$P4_3DDR$	$P4_2DDR$	$P4_1DDR$	$P4_0DDR$
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port 4 data direction 7 to 0
These bits select input or output for port 4 pins

8-Bit Bus Mode: When all areas are designated as 8-bit-access areas, selecting 8-bit bus mode, port 4 functions as a generic input/output port. A pin in port 4 becomes an output pin if the corresponding P4DDR bit is set to 1, and an input pin if this bit is cleared to 0.

16-Bit Bus Mode: When at least one area is designated as a 16-bit-access area, selecting 16-bit bus mode, port 4 functions as the lower data bus.

P4DDR is a write-only register. Its value cannot be read. All bits return 1 when read.

P4DDR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

ABWCR and P4DDR are not initialized in software standby mode. When port 4 functions as a generic input/output port, if a P4DDR bit is set to 1, the corresponding pin maintains its output state in software standby mode.

Port 4 Data Register (P4DR): P4DR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores data for pins $P4_7$ to $P4_0$.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	$P4_7$	$P4_6$	$P4_5$	$P4_4$	$P4_3$	$P4_2$	$P4_1$	$P4_0$
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Port 4 data 7 to 0
These bits store data for port 4 pins

When a bit in P4DDR is set to 1, if port 4 is read the value of the corresponding P4DR bit is returned directly, regardless of the actual state of the pin. When a bit in P4DDR is cleared to 0, if port 4 is read the corresponding pin level is read. This applies in both 8-bit and 16-bit bus modes.

P4DR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

Port 4 Input Pull-Up Control Register (P4PCR): P4PCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that controls the MOS input pull-up transistors in port 4.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	$P4_7$PCR	$P4_6$PCR	$P4_5$PCR	$P4_4$PCR	$P4_3$PCR	$P4_2$PCR	$P4_1$PCR	$P4_0$PCR
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Port 4 input pull-up control 7 to 0
These bits control input pull-up transistors built into port 4

In 8-bit bus mode, when a P4DDR bit is cleared to 0 (selecting generic input), if the corresponding P4PCR bit is set to 1, the input pull-up transistor is turned on.

P4PCR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

7.2.3 Pin Functions in Each Mode

The functions of port 4 differ as described below depending on whether 8-bit or 16-bit bus mode is selected by ABWCR settings.

8-Bit Bus Mode: Input or output can be selected separately for each pin in port 4. A pin becomes an output pin if the corresponding P4DDR bit is set to 1 and an input pin if this bit is cleared to 0. The initial state is 8-bit bus mode in modes 1 and 3. Figure 7-2 shows the pin functions in 8-bit bus mode.

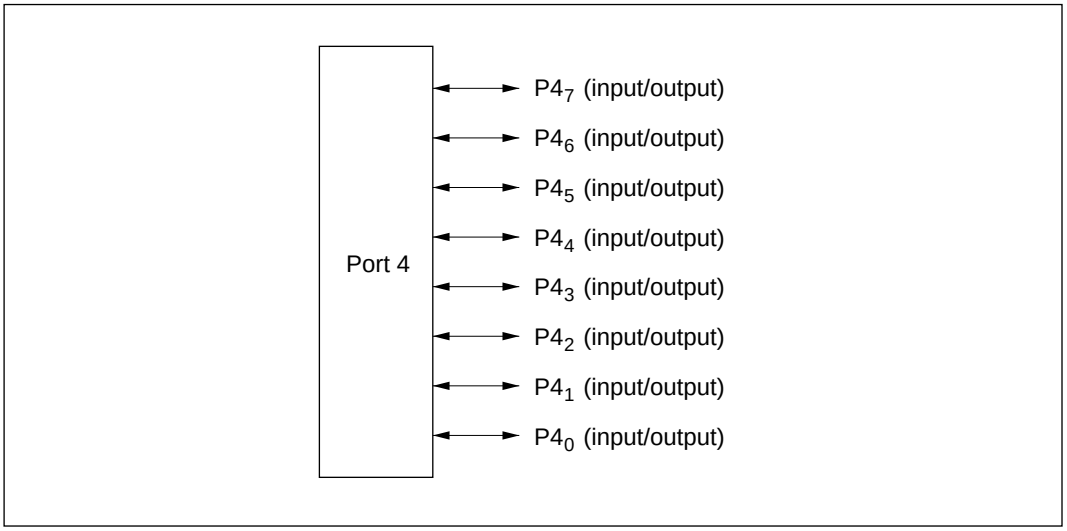


Figure 7-2 Pin Functions in 8-Bit Bus Mode (Port 4)

16-Bit Bus Mode: The input/output settings in P4DDR are ignored. Port 4 automatically becomes a bidirectional data bus. The initial state is 16-bit bus mode in modes 2 and 4. Figure 7-3 shows the pin functions in 16-bit bus mode.

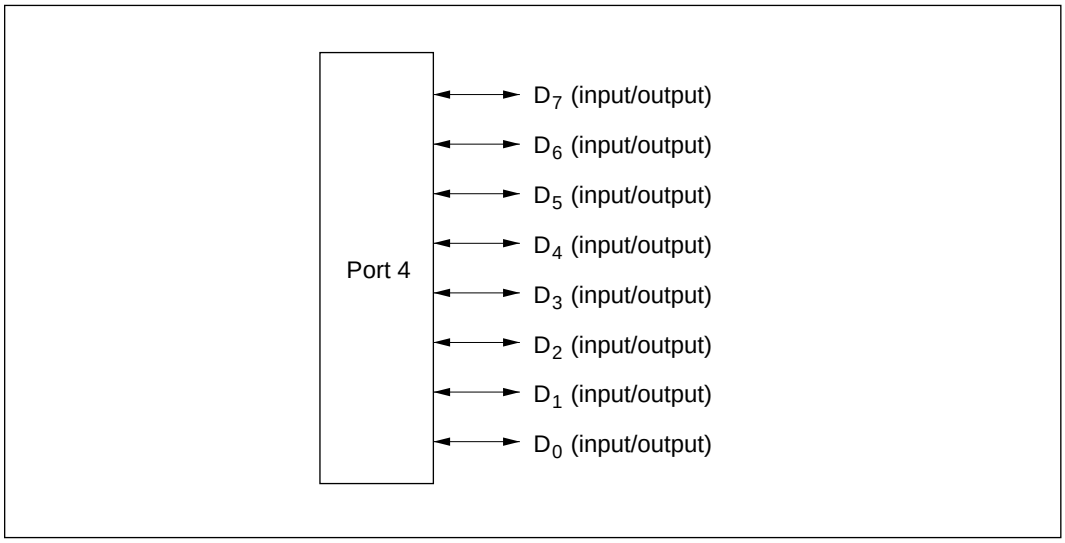


Figure 7-3 Pin Functions in 16-Bit Bus Mode (Port 4)

7.2.4 Input Pull-Up Transistors

Port 4 has built-in MOS input pull-up transistors that can be controlled by software. These input pull-up transistors can be used in 8-bit bus mode. They can be turned on and off individually.

In 8-bit bus mode, when a P4PCR bit is set to 1 and the corresponding P4DDR bit is cleared to 0, the input pull-up transistor is turned on.

The input pull-up transistors are turned off by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode they retain their previous state.

Table 7-3 summarizes the states of the input pull-ups in the 8-bit and 16-bit bus modes.

Table 7-3 Input Pull-Up Transistor States (Port 4)

Mode	Reset	Hardware Standby Mode	Software Standby Mode	Other Modes
8-bit bus mode	Off	Off	On/off	On/off
16-bit bus mode			Off	Off

Legend
Off: The input pull-up transistor is always off.
On/off: The input pull-up transistor is on if P4PCR = 1 and P4DDR = 0. Otherwise, it is off.

7.3 Port 6

7.3.1 Overview

Port 6 is a 3-bit input/output port that is also used for input and output of bus control signals ($\overline{\text{BACK}}$, $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$, and $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$). Port 6 has the same set of pin functions in all operating modes. Figure 7-4 shows the pin configuration of port 6.

Pins in port 6 can drive one TTL load and a 90-pF capacitive load. They can also drive a darlington transistor pair.

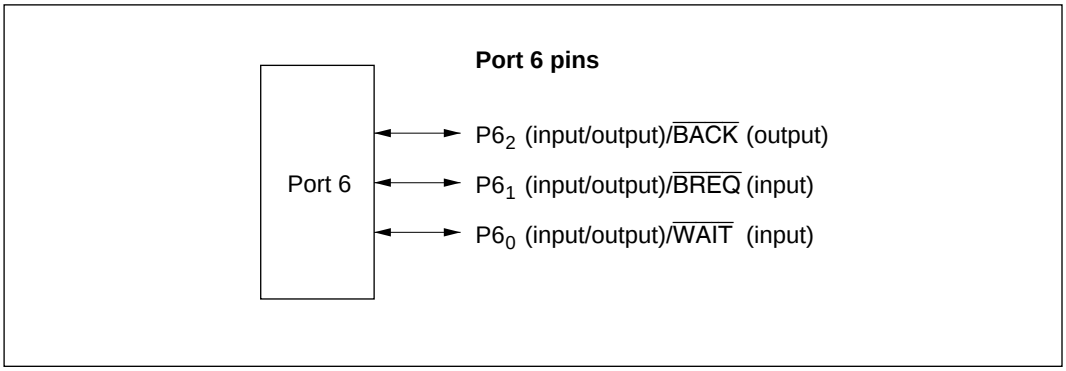


Figure 7-4 Port 6 Pin Configuration

7.3.2 Register Descriptions

Table 7-4 summarizes the registers of port 6.

Table 7-4 Port 6 Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFC9	Port 6 data direction register	P6DDR	W	H'80
H'FFCB	Port 6 data register	P6DR	R/W	H'80

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Port 6 Data Direction Register (P6DDR): P6DDR is an 8-bit write-only register that can select input or output for each pin in port 6.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	$P6_2$DDR	$P6_1$DDR	$P6_0$DDR
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Reserved bits

Port 6 data direction 2 to 0
These bits select input or output for port 6 pins

A pin in port 6 becomes an output pin if the corresponding P6DDR bit is set to 1, and an input pin if this bit is cleared to 0.

P6DDR is a write-only register. Its value cannot be read. All bits return 1 when read.

P6DDR is initialized to H'80 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting, so if a P6DDR bit is set to 1, the corresponding pin maintains its output state in software standby mode.

Port 6 Data Register (P6DR): P6DR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores data for pins $P6_2$ to $P6_0$.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	$P6_2$	$P6_1$	$P6_0$
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Reserved bits

Port 6 data 2 to 0
These bits store data for port 6 pins

When a bit in P6DDR is set to 1, if port 6 is read the value of the corresponding P6DR bit is returned directly. When a bit in P6DDR is cleared to 0, if port 6 is read the corresponding pin level is read. In this case bit 7 reads 1 and bits 6 to 3 have undetermined values. Bits 7 to 3 are reserved. Bits 6 to 3 can be written and read, but they do not have corresponding pins. Bit 7 cannot be modified and always reads 1.

P6DR is initialized to H'80 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

7.3.3 Pin Functions

The port 6 pins are also used for $\overline{\text{BACK}}$ output and $\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ and $\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ input. Table 7-5 describes the selection of pin functions.

Table 7-5 Port 6 Pin Functions

<table>
<tr><th>Pin</th><th>Pin Functions and Selection Method</th></tr>
<tr><td>P6₂/$\overline{\text{BACK}}$</td><td>Bit BRLE in BRCR and bit P6₂DDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td>BRLE</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>P6₂DDR</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pin function</td><td>P6₂ input</td><td>P6₂ output</td><td>$\overline{\text{BACK}}$ output</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>P6₁/$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$</td><td>Bit BRLE in BRCR and bit P6₁DDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td>BRLE</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>P6₁DDR</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pin function</td><td>P6₁ input</td><td>P6₁ output</td><td>$\overline{\text{BREQ}}$ input</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>P6₀/$\overline{\text{WAIT}}$</td><td>Bits WCE7 to WCE0 in WCER, bit WMS1 in WCR, and bit P6₀DDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td>WCER</td><td colspan="2">All 1s</td><td colspan="2">Not all 1s</td></tr>
<tr><td>WMS1</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>P6₀DDR</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0*</td><td>0*</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pin function</td><td>P6₀ input</td><td>P6₀ output</td><td colspan="2">$\overline{\text{WAIT}}$ input</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Note: * Do not set bit P6₀DDR to 1.

7.4 Port 7

7.4.1 Overview

Port 7 is a 4-bit input port that is also used for analog input to the A/D converter. Port 7 has the same set of pin functions in all operating modes. Figure 7-5 shows the pin configuration of port 7.

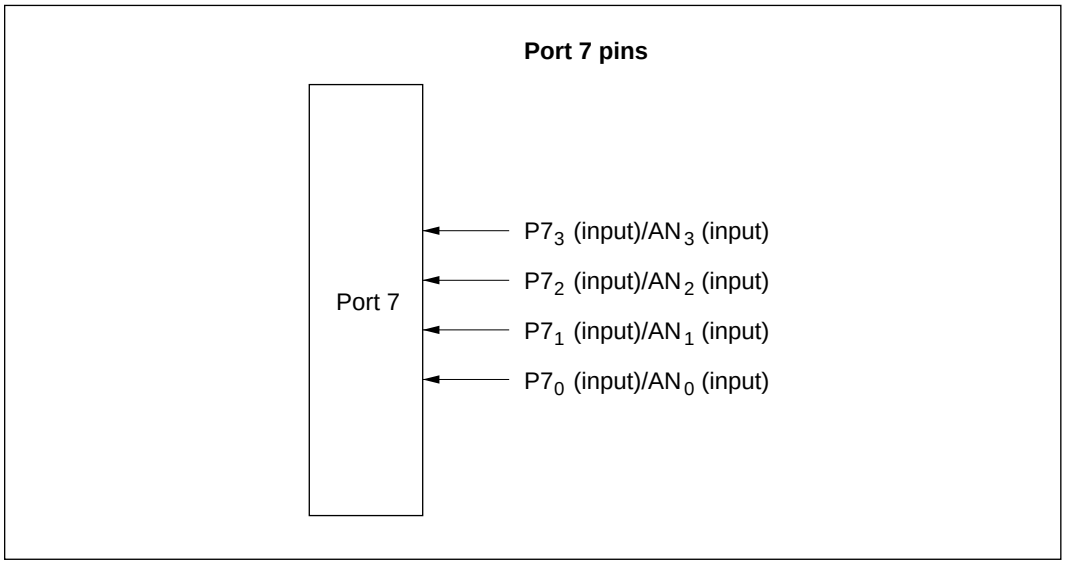


Figure 7-5 Port 7 Pin Configuration

7.4.2 Register Description

Table 7-6 summarizes the port 7 register. Port 7 is an input-only port, so it has no data direction register.

Table 7-6 Port 7 Register

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFCE	Port 7 data register	P7DR	R	Undetermined

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Port 7 Data Register (P7DR)

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	P7$_3$	P7$_2$	P7$_1$	P7$_0$
Initial value	1	1	1	1	—*	—*	—*	—*
Read/Write	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

Note: * Determined by pins P7$_3$ to P7$_0$.

When port 7 is read, the pin levels are always read.

7.5 Port 8

7.5.1 Overview

Port 8 is a 2-bit input/output port that is also used for $\overline{IRQ_1}$ and $\overline{IRQ_0}$ input. Port 8 has the same set of pin functions in all operating modes. Figure 7-6 shows the pin configuration of port 8.

Pins in port 8 can drive one TTL load and a 90-pF capacitive load. They can also drive a darlington transistor pair. Port 8 has Schmitt-trigger inputs.

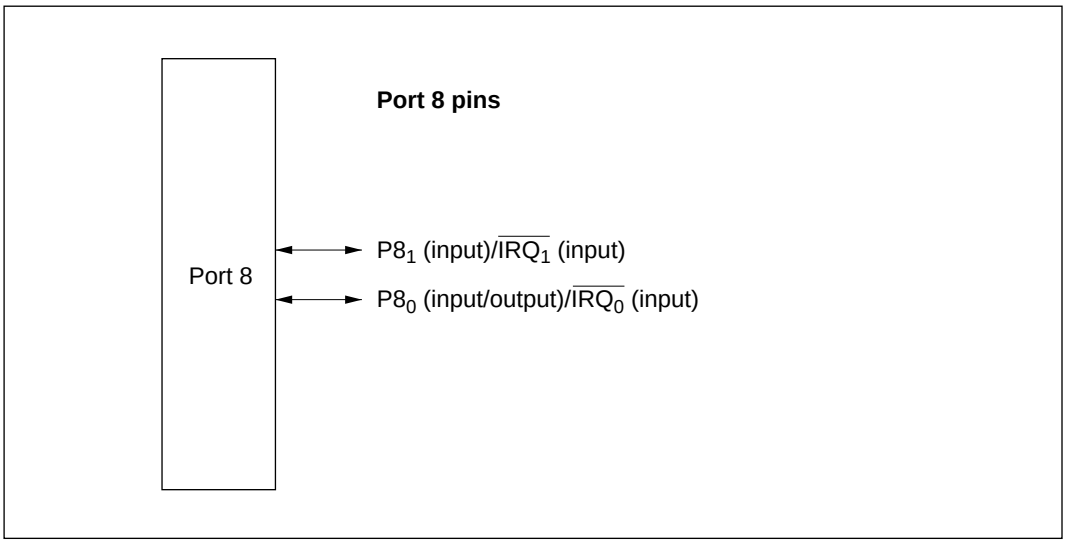


Figure 7-6 Port 8 Pin Configuration

7.5.2 Register Descriptions

Table 7-7 summarizes the registers of port 8.

Table 7-7 Port 8 Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFCD	Port 8 data direction register	P8DDR	W	H'F0
H'FFCF	Port 8 data register	P8DR	R/W	H'E0

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Port 8 Data Direction Register (P8DDR): P8DDR is an 8-bit write-only register that can select input or output for each pin in port 8.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	$P8_1$DDR	$P8_0$DDR
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	W	W	W	W	W

Reserved bits

Port 8 data direction 1 and 0
These bits select input or output for port 8 pins

When $P8_0$DDR is set to 1, $P8_0$ becomes a generic output pin, and when it is cleared to 0, $P8_0$ becomes an input pin. Do not set $P8_1$DDR to 1.

P8DDR is a write-only register. Its value cannot be read. All bits return 1 when read.

P8DDR is initialized to H'F0 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting, so if a P8DDR bit is set to 1, the corresponding pin maintains its output state in software standby mode.

Port 8 Data Register (P8DR): P8DR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores data for pins $P8_1$ and $P8_0$.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	$P8_1$	$P8_0$
Initial value	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Reserved bits

Port 8 data 1 and 0
These bits store data for port 8 pins

When a bit in P8DDR is set to 1, if port 8 is read the value of the corresponding P8DR bit is returned directly. When a bit in P8DDR is cleared to 0, if port 8 is read the corresponding pin level is read.

Bits 7 to 2 are reserved. Bits 7 to 5 cannot be modified and always read 1. Bits 4 to 2 can be written and read, but they do not have corresponding pins.

P8DR is initialized to H'E0 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

7.5.3 Pin Functions

The port 8 pins are also used for $\overline{IRQ_1}$ and $\overline{IRQ_0}$ input. Table 7-8 describes the selection of pin functions.

Table 7-8 Port 8 Pin Functions

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$P8_1/\overline{IRQ_1}$	Bit $P8_1$DDR selects the pin function as follows

$P8_1$DDR	0	1
Pin function	$P8_1$ input	—
	$\overline{IRQ_1}$ input	

$P8_0/\overline{IRQ_0}$	Bit RFSHE $P8_0$DDR select the pin function as follows

$P8_0$DDR	0	1
Pin function	$P8_0$ input	$P8_0$ output
	$\overline{IRQ_0}$ input	

7.6 Port 9

7.6.1 Overview

Port 9 is a 3-bit input/output port that is also used for input and output (TxD, RxD, SCK) by serial communication interface (SCI), and for $\overline{IRQ_4}$ input. Port 9 has the same set of pin functions in all operating modes. Figure 7-7 shows the pin configuration of port 9.

Pins in port 9 can drive one TTL load and a 30-pF capacitive load. They can also drive a darlington transistor pair.

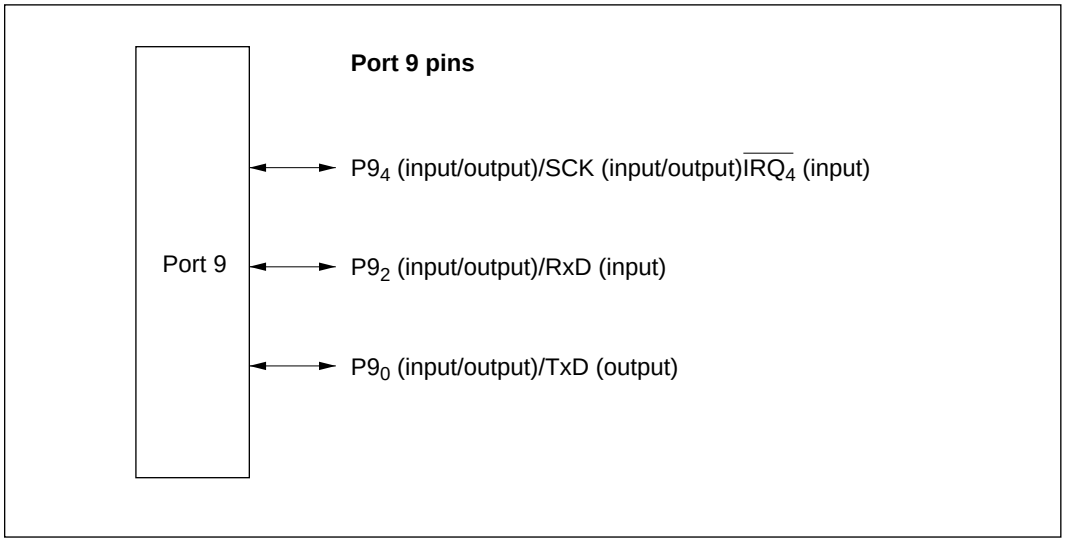


Figure 7-7 Port 9 Pin Configuration

7.6.2 Register Descriptions

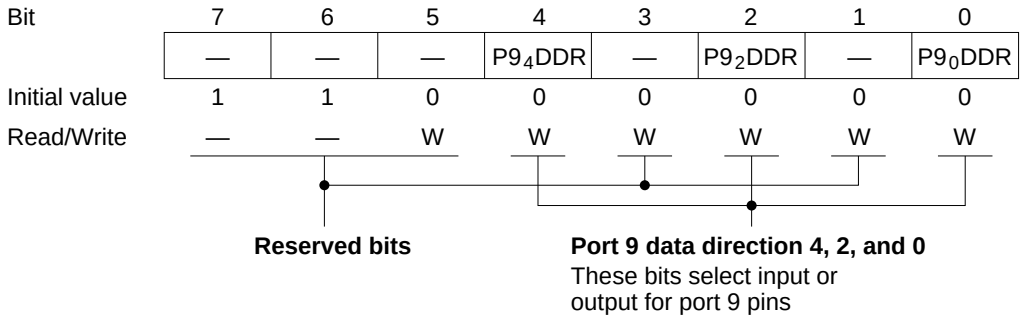
Table 7-9 summarizes the registers of port 9.

Table 7-9 Port 9 Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFD0	Port 9 data direction register	P9DDR	W	H'C0
H'FFD2	Port 9 data register	P9DR	R/W	H'C0

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Port 9 Data Direction Register (P9DDR): P9DDR is an 8-bit write-only register that can select input or output for each pin in port 9.

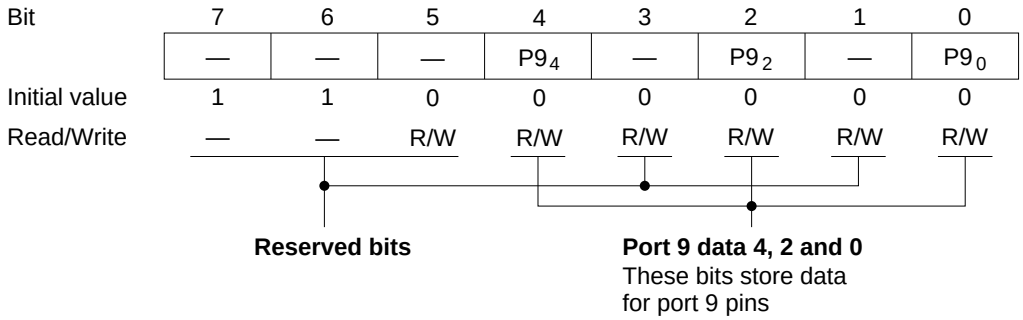


A pin in port 9 becomes an output pin if the corresponding P9DDR bit is set to 1, and an input pin if this bit is cleared to 0.

P9DDR is a write-only register. Its value cannot be read. All bits return 1 when read.

P9DDR is initialized to H'C0 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting, so if a P9DDR bit is set to 1, the corresponding pin maintains its output state in software standby mode.

Port 9 Data Register (P9DR): P9DR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores data for pins $P9_4$, $P9_2$, and $P9_0$.



When a bit in P9DDR is set to 1, if port 9 is read the value of the corresponding P9DR bit is returned directly. When a bit in P9DDR is cleared to 0, if port 9 is read the corresponding pin level is read.

Bits 7 and 6 are reserved. They cannot be modified and are always read as 1. Bits 5, 3, and 1 are also reserved. They can be written and read, but they do not have corresponding pins.

P9DR is initialized to H'C0 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

7.6.3 Pin Functions

The port 9 pins are also used for SCI input and output (TxD, RxD, SCK), and for $\overline{IRQ_4}$ input. Table 7-10 describes the selection of pin functions.

Table 7-10 Port 9 Pin Functions

<table>
<tr><th>Pin</th><th>Pin Functions and Selection Method</th></tr>
<tr><td>P9₄/SCK/$\overline{IRQ_4}$</td><td>Bit C/$\overline{A}$ in SMR of SCI, bits CKE0 and CKE1 in SCR of SCI0, and bit P9₄DDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td>CKE1</td><td colspan="3">0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>C/$\overline{A}$</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>CKE0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>P9₄DDR</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Pin function</td><td>P9₄ input</td><td>P9₄ output</td><td>SCK output</td><td>SCK output</td><td>SCK input</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">$\overline{IRQ_4}$ input</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>P9₂/RxD</td><td>Bit RE in SCR of SCI and bit P9₂DDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td>RE</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>P9₂DDR</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pin function</td><td>P9₂ input</td><td>P9₂ output</td><td>RxD input</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>P9₀/TxD</td><td>Bit TE in SCR of SCI and bit P9₀DDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td>TE</td><td colspan="2">0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>P9₀DDR</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pin function</td><td>P9₀ input</td><td>P9₀ output</td><td>TxD output</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

7.7 Port A

7.7.1 Overview

Port A is an 8-bit input/output port that is also used for address output (A_{23} to A_{20}), output (TP_7 to TP_0) from the programmable timing pattern controller (TPC), and input and output ($TIOCB_2$, $TIOCA_2$, $TIOCB_1$, $TIOCA_1$, $TIOCB_0$, $TIOCA_0$, TCLKD, TCLKC, TCLKB, TCLKA) by the 16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU). Pin functions differ depending on the operating mode. Figure 7-8 shows the pin configuration of port A.

Pins in port A can drive one TTL load and a 30-pF capacitive load. They can also drive a darlington transistor pair. Port A has Schmitt-trigger inputs.

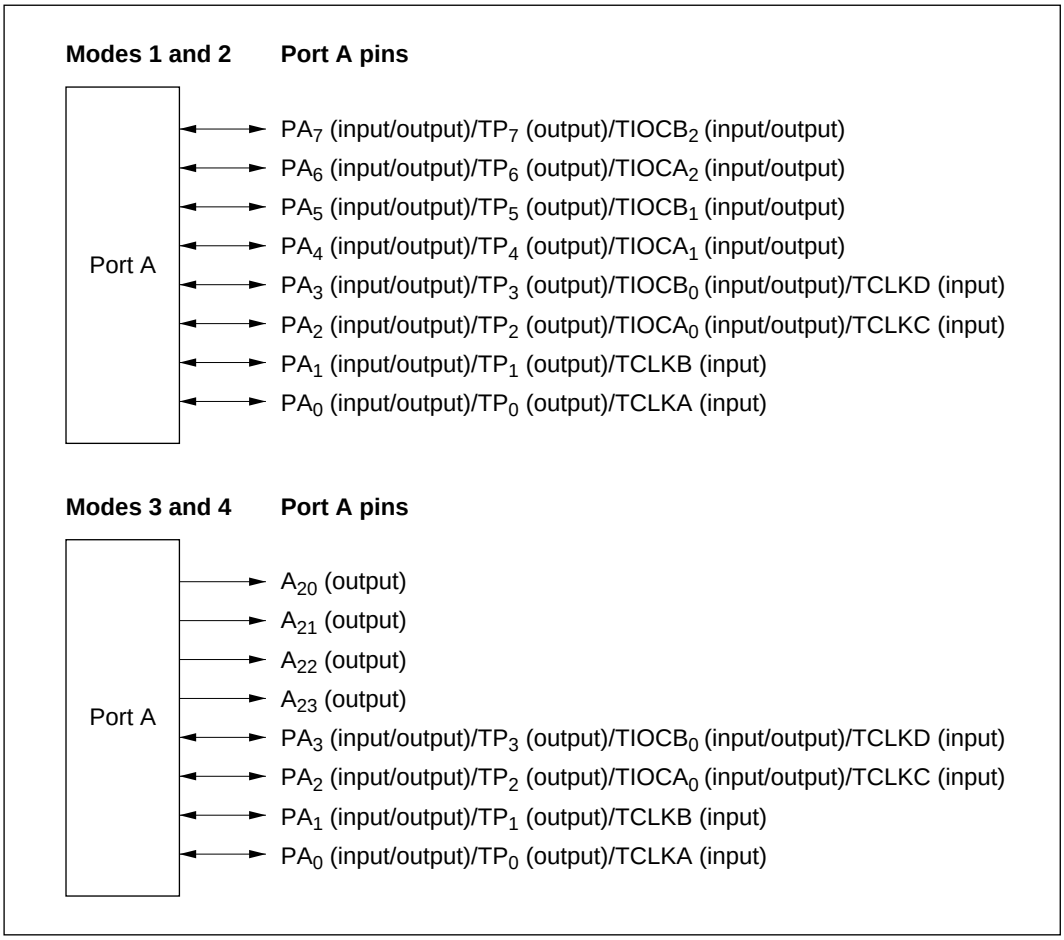


Figure 7-8 Port A Pin Configuration

7.7.2 Register Descriptions

Table 7-11 summarizes the registers of port A.

Table 7-11 Port A Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value	
H'FFD1	Port A data direction register	PADDR	W	Modes 1, 2	H'00
				Modes 3, 4	H'80
H'FFD3	Port A data register	PADR	R/W	H'00	

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Port A Data Direction Register (PADDR): PADDR is an 8-bit write-only register that can select input or output for each pin in port A.

Bit		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		PA_7DDR	PA_6DDR	PA_5DDR	PA_4DDR	PA_3DDR	PA_2DDR	PA_1DDR	PA_0DDR
Modes 1, 2	Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W
Modes 3, 4	Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Read/Write	—	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port A data direction 7 to 0
These bits select input or output for port A pins

A pin in port A becomes an output pin if the corresponding PADDR bit is set to 1, and an input pin if this bit is cleared to 0. In modes 3 and 4, PA_7DDR is fixed at 1 and PA_7 functions as an address output pin.

PADDR is a write-only register. Its value cannot be read. All bits return 1 when read.

PADDR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode in modes 1 and 2. It is initialized to H'80 by a reset and in hardware standby mode in modes 3 and 4. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting, so if a PADDR bit is set to 1, the corresponding pin maintains its output state in software standby mode.

Port A Data Register (PADR): PADR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores data for pins PA_7 to PA_0.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	PA_7	PA_6	PA_5	PA_4	PA_3	PA_2	PA_1	PA_0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Port A data 7 to 0
These bits store data for port A pins

When a bit in PADDR is set to 1, if port A is read the value of the corresponding PADR bit is returned directly. When a bit in PADDR is cleared to 0, if port A is read the corresponding pin level is read.

PADR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

7.7.3 Pin Functions

The port A pins are also used for address output (A_{23} to A_{20}), TPC output (TP_7 to TP_0), ITU input/output ($TIOCB_2$ to $TIOCB_0$, $TIOCA_2$ to $TIOCA_0$), and input (TCLKD, TCLKC, TCLKB, TCLKA). Table 7-12 describes the selection of pin functions.

Table 7-12 Port A Pin Functions

<table>
<tr><th>Pin</th><th>Pin Functions and Selection Method</th></tr>
<tr><td>$PA_7/TP_7/TIOCB_2/A_{20}$</td><td>The mode setting, ITU channel 2 settings (bit PWM2 in TMDR and bits IOB2 to IOB0 in TIOR2), bit NDER7 in NDERA, and bit PA_7DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="4">Modes 1 and 2</td><td>Modes 3 and 4</td></tr>
<tr><td>ITU channel 2 settings</td><td>1 in table below</td><td colspan="3">2 in table below</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>PA_7DDR</td><td>—</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>NDER7</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Pin function</td><td rowspan="2">$TIOCB_2$ output</td><td>PA_7 input</td><td>PA_7 output</td><td>TP_7 output</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">$TIOCB_2$ input*</td><td>A_{20} output</td></tr>
</table>
Note: * $TIOCB_2$ input when IOB2 = 1 and PWM2 = 0.
<table>
<tr><td>ITU channel 2 settings</td><td>2</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>IOB2</td><td colspan="3">0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>IOB1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>IOB0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td><td>—</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Table 7-12 Port A Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PA_6/TP_6/TIOCA_2/A_{21}$	The mode setting, ITU channel 2 settings (bit PWM2 in TMDR and bits IOA2 to IOA0 in TIOR2), bit NDER6 in NDERA, and bit PA_6DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows

	Modes 1 and 2				Modes 3 and 4
ITU channel 2 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below			—
PA_6DDR	—	0	1	1	—
NDER6	—	—	0	1	—
Pin function	$TIOCA_2$ output	PA_6 input	PA_6 output	TP_6 output	—
		$TIOCA_2$ input*			A_{21} output

Note: * $TIOCA_2$ input when IOA2 = 1.

ITU channel 2 settings	2	1		2	1
PWM2	0				1
IOA2	0			1	—
IOA1	0	0	1	—	—
IOA0	0	1	—	—	—

Table 7-12 Port A Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PA_5/TP_5/TIOCB_1/A_{22}$	The mode setting, ITU channel 1 settings (bit A22E in BRCR, bit PWM1 in TMDR and bits IOB2 to IOB0 in TIOR1), bit NDER5 in NDERA, and bit PA_5DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows

	Modes 1 and 2				Modes 3 and 4
ITU channel 1 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below			—
PA_5DDR	—	0	1	1	—
NDER5	—	—	0	1	—
Pin function	$TIOCB_1$ output	PA_5 input	PA_5 output	TP_5 output	—
		$TIOCB_1$ input*			A_{22} output

Note: * $TIOCB_1$ input when IOB2 = 1 and PWM1 = 0.

ITU channel 1 settings	2	1		2
IOB2	0			1
IOB1	0	0	1	—
IOB0	0	1	—	—

Table 7-12 Port A Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PA_4/TP_4/TIOCA_1/A_{23}$	The mode setting, ITU channel 1 settings (bit A23E in BRCR, bit PWM1 in TMDR and bits IOA2 to IOA0 in TIOR1), bit NDER4 in NDERA, and bit PA_4DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows

	Modes 1 and 2				Modes 3 and 4
ITU channel 1 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below			—
PA_4DDR	—	0	1	1	—
NDER4	—	—	0	1	—
Pin function	$TIOCA_1$ output	PA_4 input	PA_4 output	TP_4 output	—
		$TIOCA_1$ input*			A_{23} output

Note: * $TIOCA_1$ input when IOA2 = 1.

ITU channel 1 settings	2	1		2	1
PWM1	0				1
IOA2	0			1	—
IOA1	0	0	1	—	—
IOA0	0	1	—	—	—

Table 7-12 Port A Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PA_3/TP_3/TIOCB_0/$ TCLKD	ITU channel 0 settings (bit PWM0 in TMDR and bits IOB2 to IOB0 in TIOR0), bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in timer control registers 4 to 0 (TCR4 to TCR0), bit NDER3 in NDERA, and bit PA_3DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows

ITU channel 0 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below		
PA_3DDR	—	0	1	1
NDER3	—	—	0	1
Pin function	$TIOCB_0$ output	PA_3 input	PA_3 output	TP_3 output
		$TIOCB_0$ input*1		
	TCLKD input*2			

Notes: 1. $TIOCB_0$ input when IOB2 = 1 and PWM0 = 0.
2. TCLKD input when TPSC2 = TPSC1 = TPSC0 = 1 in any of TCR4 to TCR0.

ITU channel 0 settings	2	1		2
IOB2	0			1
IOB1	0	0	1	—
IOB0	0	1	—	—

Table 7-12 Port A Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PA_2/TP_2/TIOCA_0/$ TCLKC	ITU channel 0 settings (bit PWM0 in TMDR and bits IOA2 to IOA0 in TIOR0), bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in TCR4 to TCR0, bit NDER2 in NDERA, and bit PA_2DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows

ITU channel 0 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below		
PA_2DDR	—	0	1	1
NDER2	—	—	0	1
Pin function	$TIOCA_0$ output	PA_2 input	PA_2 output	TP_2 output
	$TIOCA_0$ input*1 and TCLKC input*2			

Notes: 1. $TIOCA_0$ input when IOA2 = 1.
2. TCLKC input when TPSC2 = TPSC1 = 1 and TPSC0 = 0 in any of TCR4 to TCR0.

ITU channel 0 settings	2	1		2	1
PWM0	0				1
IOA2	0			1	—
IOA1	0	0	1	—	—
IOA0	0	1	—	—	—

Table 7-12 Port A Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PA_1/TP_1/TCLKB$	Bit NDER1 in NDERA and bit PA_1DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows

PA_1DDR	0	1	1
NDER1	—	0	1
Pin function	PA_1 input	PA_1 output	TP_1 output
	TCLKB input*		

Note: * TCLKB input when MDF = 1 in TMDR, or when TPSC2 = 1, TPSC1 = 0, and TPSC0 = 1 in any of TCR4 to TCR0.

$PA_0/TP_0/TCLKA$	Bit NDER0 in NDERA and bit PA_0DDR in PADDR select the pin function as follows

PA_0DDR	0	1	1
NDER0	—	0	1
Pin function	PA_0 input	PA_0 output	TP_0 output
	TCLKA input*		

Note: * TCLKA input when MDF = 1 in TMDR, or when TPSC2 = 1 and TPSC1 = 0 in any of TCR4 to TCR0.

7.8 Port B

7.8.1 Overview

Port B is a 4-bit input/output port that is also used for output (TP_{11} to TP_8) from the programmable timing pattern controller (TPC), and input/output ($TIOCB_4$, $TIOCB_3$, $TIOCA_4$, $TIOCA_3$) by the 16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU). Port B has the same set of pin functions in all operating modes. Figure 7-9 shows the pin configuration of port B.

Pins in port B can drive one TTL load and a 30-pF capacitive load. They can also drive a darlington transistor pair. Port B has Schmitt-trigger inputs.

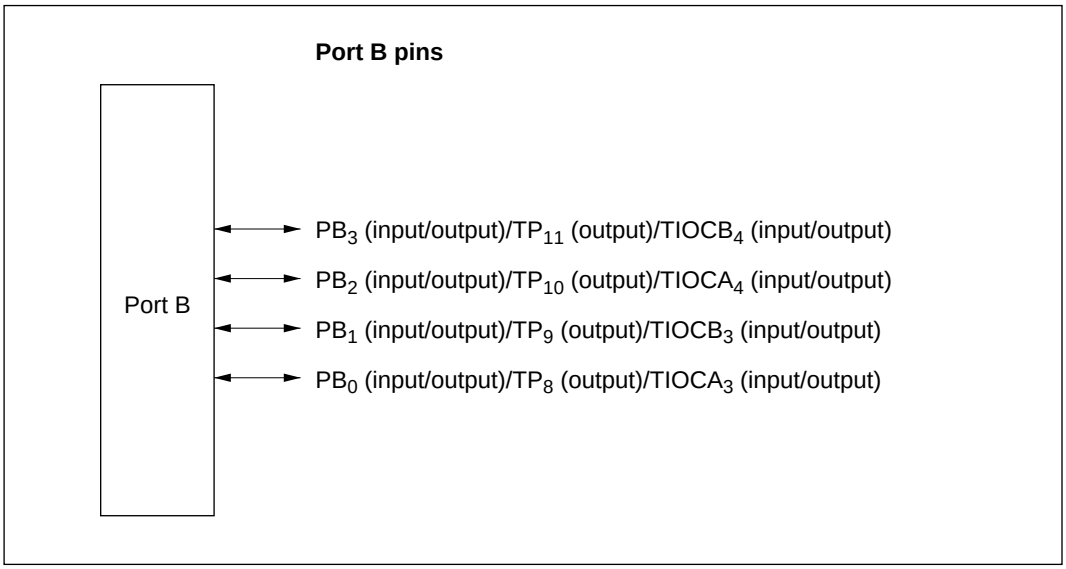


Figure 7-9 Port B Pin Configuration

7.8.2 Register Descriptions

Table 7-13 summarizes the registers of port B.

Table 7-13 Port B Registers

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFD4	Port B data direction register	PBDDR	W	H'00
H'FFD6	Port B data register	PBDR	R/W	H'00

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

Port B Data Direction Register (PBDDR): PBDDR is an 8-bit write-only register that can select input or output for each pin in port B.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	PB_3DDR	PB_2DDR	PB_1DDR	PB_0DDR
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Reserved bits

Port B data direction 3 to 0
These bits select input or output for port B pins

A pin in port B becomes an output pin if the corresponding PBDDR bit is set to 1, and an input pin if this bit is cleared to 0.

PBDDR is a write-only register. Its value cannot be read. All bits return 1 when read.

PBDDR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting, so if a PBDDR bit is set to 1, the corresponding pin maintains its output state in software standby mode.

Port B Data Register (PBDR): PBDR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores data for pins PB_3 to PB_0.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	PB_3	PB_2	PB_1	PB_0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Reserved bits

Port B data 3 to 0
These bits store data for port B pins

When a bit in PBDDR is set to 1, if port B is read the value of the corresponding PBDR bit is returned directly. When a bit in PBDDR is cleared to 0, if port B is read the corresponding pin level is read. Bits 7 to 4 are reserved and can be written and read. When a bit is read with its corresponding DDR bit set to 1, the DR value is read directly. If the DDR bit is 0, it always reads as 1.

PBDR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. In software standby mode it retains its previous setting.

7.8.3 Pin Functions

The port B pins are also used for TPC output (TP_{11} to TP_8) and ITU input/output ($TIOCB_4$, $TIOCB_3$, $TIOCA_4$, $TIOCA_3$). Table 7-14 describes the selection of pin functions.

Table 7-14 Port B Pin Functions

<table>
<tr><th>Pin</th><th>Pin Functions and Selection Method</th></tr>
<tr><td>$PB_3/TP_{11}/TIOCB_4$</td><td>ITU channel 4 settings (bit PWM4 in TMDR, bit EB4 in TOER, and bits IOB2 to IOB0 in TIOR4), bit NDER11 in NDERB, and bit PB_3DDR in PBDDR select the pin function as follows
<table>
<tr><td>ITU channel 4 settings</td><td>1 in table below</td><td colspan="3">2 in table below</td></tr>
<tr><td>PB_3DDR</td><td>—</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>NDER11</td><td>—</td><td>—</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Pin function</td><td rowspan="2">$TIOCB_4$ output</td><td>PB_3 input</td><td>PB_3 output</td><td>TP_{11} output</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">$TIOCB_4$ input*</td></tr>
</table>
Note: * $TIOCB_4$ input when PWM4 = 0 and IOB2 = 1.
<table>
<tr><td>ITU channel 4 settings</td><td>2</td><td>2</td><td colspan="2">1</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>EB4</td><td>0</td><td colspan="4">1</td></tr>
<tr><td>IOB2</td><td>—</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>IOB1</td><td>—</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td></tr>
<tr><td>IOB0</td><td>—</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>—</td><td>—</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

Table 7-14 Port B Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PB_2/TP_{10}/TIOCA_4$	ITU channel 4 settings (bit CMD1 in TFCR, bit EA4 in TOER, bit PWM4 in TMDR, and bits IOA2 to IOA0 in TIOR4), bit NDER10 in NDERB, and bit PB_2DDR in PBDDR select the pin function as follows

ITU channel 4 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below		
PB_2DDR	—	0	1	1
NDER10	—	—	0	1
Pin function	$TIOCA_4$ output	PB_2 input	PB_2 output	TP_{10} output
		$TIOCA_4$ input*		

Note: * $TIOCA_4$ input when PWM4 = 0 and IOA2 = 1.

ITU channel 4 settings	2	2	1		2	1
EA4	0	1				
PWM4	—	0				1
IOA2	—	0	0	0	1	—
IOA1	—	0	0	1	—	—
IOA0	—	0	1	—	—	—

Table 7-14 Port B Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PB_1/TP_9/TIOCB_3$	ITU channel 3 settings (bit PWM3 in TMDR, bit EB3 in TOER, and bits IOB2 to IOB0 in TIOR3), bit NDER9 in NDERB, and bit PB_1DDR in PBDDR select the pin function as follows

ITU channel 3 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below		
PB_1DDR	—	0	1	1
NDER9	—	—	0	1
Pin function	$TIOCB_3$ output	PB_1 input	PB_1 output	TP_9 output
		$TIOCB_3$ input*		

Note: * $TIOCB_3$ input when PWM3 = 0 and IOB2 = 1.

ITU channel 3 settings	2	2	1		2
EB3	0	1			
IOB2	—	0	0	0	1
IOB1	—	0	0	1	—
IOB0	—	0	1	—	—

Table 7-14 Port B Pin Functions (cont)

Pin	Pin Functions and Selection Method
$PB_0/TP_8/TIOCA_3$	ITU channel 3 settings (bit EA3 in TOER, bit PWM3 in TMDR, and bits IOA2 to IOA0 in TIOR3), bit NDER8 in NDERB, and bit PB_0DDR in PBDDR select the pin function as follows

ITU channel 3 settings	1 in table below	2 in table below		
PB_0DDR	—	0	1	1
NDER8	—	—	0	1
Pin function	$TIOCA_3$ output	PB_0 input	PB_0 output	TP_8 output
		$TIOCA_3$ input*		

Note: * $TIOCA_3$ input when PWM3 = 0 and IOA2 = 1.

ITU channel 3 settings	2	2	1	2	1
EA3	0	1			
PWM3	—	0			1
IOA2	—	0	0	0	1	—
IOA1	—	0	0	1	—	—
IOA0	—	0	1	—	—	—

Section 8 16-Bit Integrated Timer Unit (ITU)

8.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has a built-in 16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU) with five 16-bit timer channels.

8.1.1 Features

ITU features are listed below.

- Capability to process up to 10 pulse outputs or 10 pulse inputs
- Ten general registers (GRs, two per channel) with independently-assignable output compare or input capture functions
- Selection of eight counter clock sources for each channel:

  Internal clocks: ø, ø/2, ø/4, ø/8
  External clocks: TCLKA, TCLKB, TCLKC, TCLKD
- Five operating modes selectable in all channels:
  - — Waveform output by compare match

    Selection of 0 output, 1 output, or toggle output (only 0 or 1 output in channel 2)
  - — Input capture function

    Rising edge, falling edge, or both edges (selectable)
  - — Counter clearing function

    Counters can be cleared by compare match or input capture
  - — Synchronization

    Two or more timer counters (TCNTs) can be preset simultaneously, or cleared simultaneously by compare match or input capture. Counter synchronization enables synchronous register input and output.

— PWM mode

PWM output can be provided with an arbitrary duty cycle. With synchronization, up to five-phase PWM output is possible

- Phase counting mode selectable in channel 2

  Two-phase encoder output can be counted automatically.

- One additional mode selectable in channels 3 and 4

  — Buffering

  Input capture registers can be double-buffered. Output compare registers can be updated automatically.

- High-speed access via internal 16-bit bus

  The 16-bit timer counters, general registers, and buffer registers can be accessed at high speed via a 16-bit bus.

- Fifteen interrupt sources

  Each channel has two compare match/input capture interrupts and an overflow interrupt. All interrupts can be requested independently.

- Output triggering of programmable pattern controller (TPC)

  Compare match/input capture signals from channels 0 to 3 can be used as TPC output triggers.

Table 8-1 summarizes the ITU functions.

Table 8-1 ITU Functions

Item		Channel 0	Channel 1	Channel 2	Channel 3	Channel 4
Clock sources		Internal clocks: ø, ø/2, ø/4, ø/8 External clocks: TCLKA, TCLKB, TCLKC, TCLKD, selectable independently				
General registers (output compare/input capture registers)		GRA0, GRB0	GRA1, GRB1	GRA2, GRB2	GRA3, GRB3	GRA4, GRB4
Buffer registers		—	—	—	BRA3, BRB3	BRA4, BRB4
Input/output pins		TIOCA0, TIOCB0	TIOCA1, TIOCB1	TIOCA2, TIOCB2	TIOCA3, TIOCB3	TIOCA4, TIOCB4
Counter clearing function		GRA0/GRB0 compare match or input capture	GRA1/GRB1 compare match or input capture	GRA2/GRB2 compare match or input capture	GRA3/GRB3 compare match or input capture	GRA4/GRB4 compare match or input capture
Compare match output	0	o o	o o	o		
	1	o o	o o	o		
	Toggle	o o	—	o o		
Input capture function		o o	o o	o		
Synchronization		o o	o o	o		
PWM mode		o o	o o	o		
Phase counting mode		—	—	o—	—	
Buffering		—	—	—	o o	
Interrupt sources		Three sources • Compare match/input capture A0 • Compare match/input capture B0 • Overflow	Three sources • Compare match/input capture A1 • Compare match/input capture B1 • Overflow	Three sources • Compare match/input capture A2 • Compare match/input capture B2 • Overflow	Three sources • Compare match/input capture A3 • Compare match/input capture B3 • Overflow	Three sources • Compare match/input capture A4 • Compare match/input capture B4 • Overflow

Legend
o: Available
—: Not available

8.1.2 Block Diagrams

ITU Block Diagram (overall): Figure 8-1 is a block diagram of the ITU.

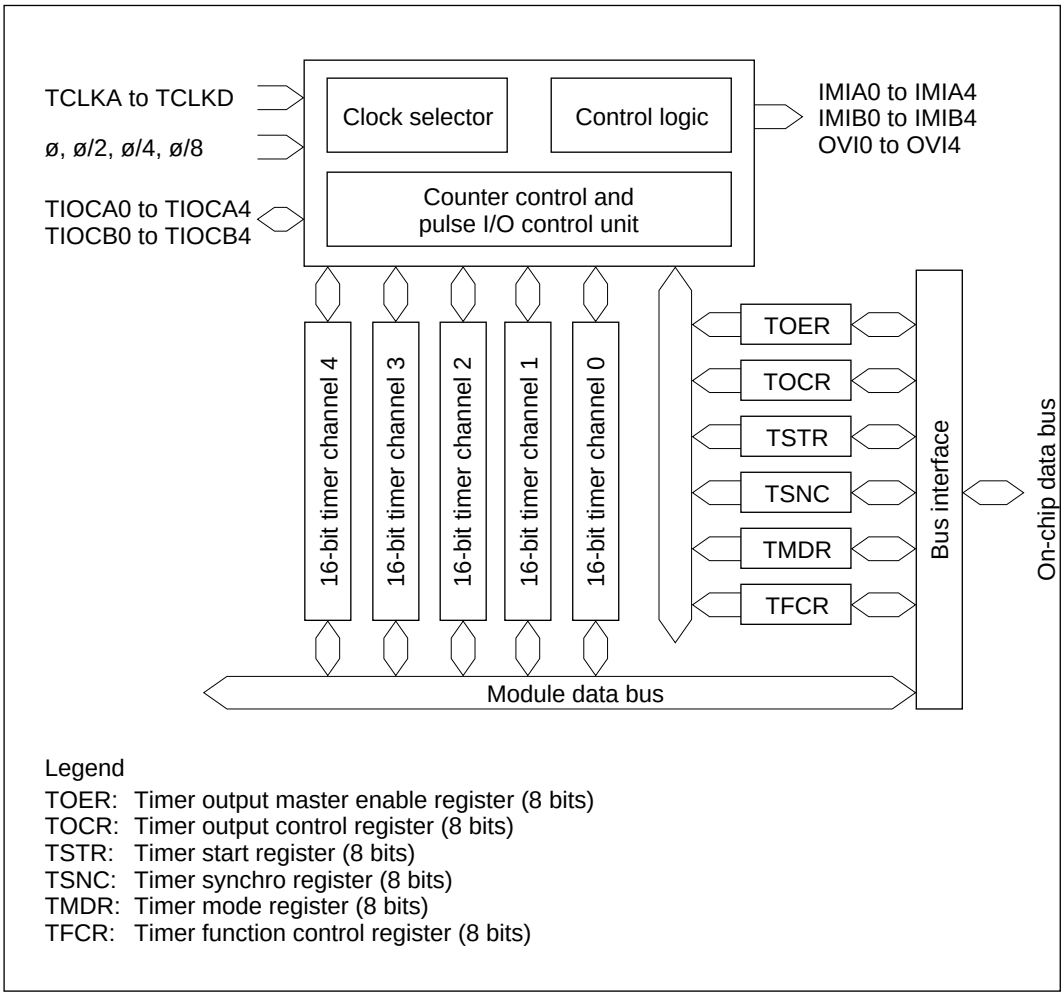
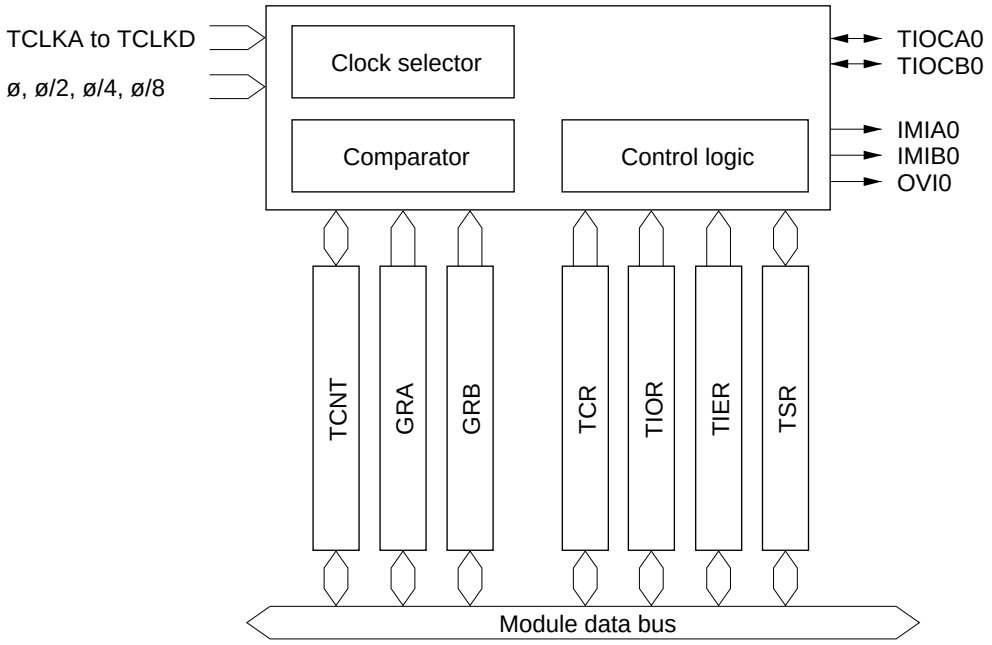


Figure 8-1 ITU Block Diagram (Overall)

Block Diagram of Channels 0 and 1: ITU channels 0 and 1 are functionally identical. Both have the structure shown in figure 8-2.



Legend

TCNT:	Timer counter (16 bits)
GRA, GRB:	General registers A and B (input capture/output compare registers) (16 bits × 2)
TCR:	Timer control register (8 bits)
TIOR:	Timer I/O control register (8 bits)
TIER:	Timer interrupt enable register (8 bits)
TSR:	Timer status register (8 bits)

Figure 8-2 Block Diagram of Channels 0 and 1 (for Channel 0)

Block Diagram of Channel 2: Figure 8-3 is a block diagram of channel 2. This is the channel that provides only 0 output and 1 output.

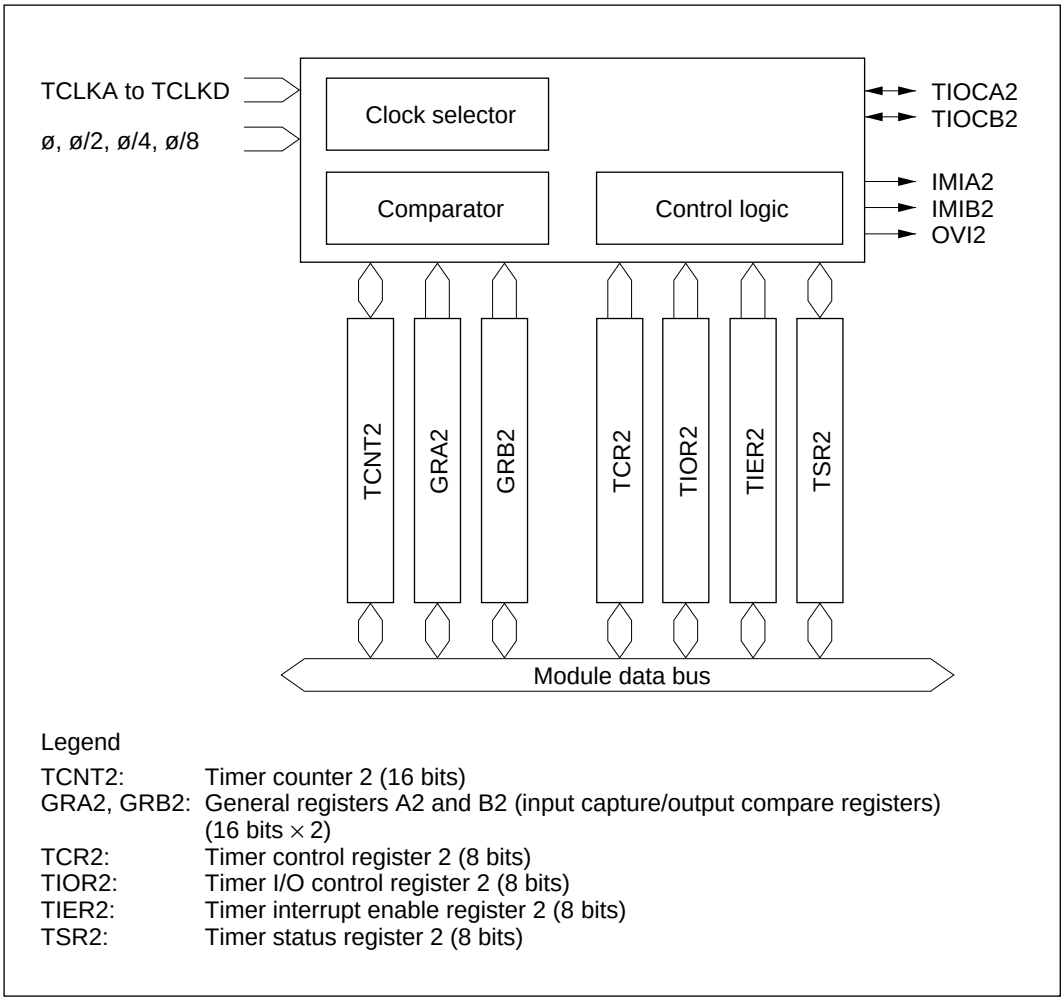


Figure 8-3 Block Diagram of Channel 2

Block Diagrams of Channels 3 and 4: ITU channels 3 and 4 have identical functions. Figure 8-4 is a block diagram of channel 3. A block diagram of channel 4 is similar.

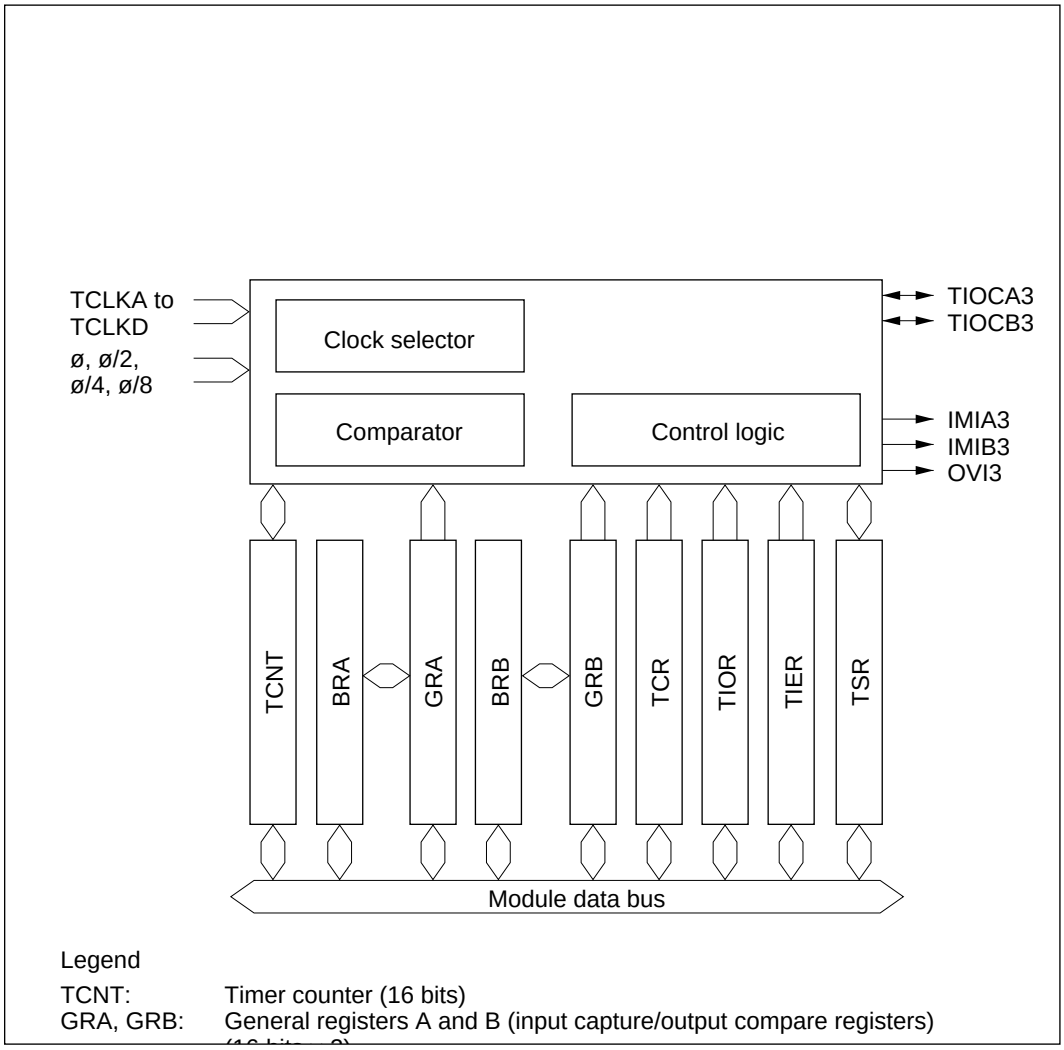


Figure 8-4 Block Diagram of Channel 3

8.1.3 Input/Output Pins

Table 8-2 summarizes the ITU pins.

Table 8-2 ITU Pins

Channel	Name	Abbre-viation	Input/ Output	Function
Common	Clock input A	TCLKA	Input	External clock A input pin (phase-A input pin in phase counting mode)
	Clock input B	TCLKB	Input	External clock B input pin (phase-B input pin in phase counting mode)
	Clock input C	TCLKC	Input	External clock C input pin
	Clock input D	TCLKD	Input	External clock D input pin
0	Input capture/output compare A0	TIOCA0	Input/ output	GRA0 output compare or input capture pin PWM output pin in PWM mode
	Input capture/output compare B0	TIOCB0	Input/ output	GRB0 output compare or input capture pin
1	Input capture/output compare A1	TIOCA1	Input/ output	GRA1 output compare or input capture pin PWM output pin in PWM mode
	Input capture/output compare B1	TIOCB1	Input/ output	GRB1 output compare or input capture pin
2	Input capture/output compare A2	TIOCA2	Input/ output	GRA2 output compare or input capture pin PWM output pin in PWM mode
	Input capture/output compare B2	TIOCB2	Input/ output	GRB2 output compare or input capture pin
3	Input capture/output compare A3	TIOCA3	Input/ output	GRA3 output compare or input capture pin PWM output pin in PWM mode
	Input capture/output compare B3	TIOCB3	Input/ output	GRB3 output compare or input capture pin
4	Input capture/output compare A4	TIOCA4	Input/ output	GRA4 output compare or input capture pin PWM output pin in PWM mode
	Input capture/output compare B4	TIOCB4	Input/ output	GRB4 output compare or input capture pin

8.1.4 Register Configuration

Table 8-3 summarizes the ITU registers.

Table 8-3 ITU Registers

Channel	Address*1	Name	Abbre-viation	R/W	Initial Value
Common	H'FF60	Timer start register	TSTR	R/W	H'E0
	H'FF61	Timer synchro register	TSNC	R/W	H'E0
	H'FF62	Timer mode register	TMDR	R/W	H'80
	H'FF63	Timer function control register	TFCR	R/W	H'C0
	H'FF90	Timer output master enable register	TOER	R/W	H'FF
0	H'FF64	Timer control register 0	TCR0	R/W	H'80
	H'FF65	Timer I/O control register 0	TIOR0	R/W	H'88
	H'FF66	Timer interrupt enable register 0	TIER0	R/W	H'F8
	H'FF67	Timer status register 0	TSR0	R/(W)*2	H'F8
	H'FF68	Timer counter 0 (high)	TCNT0H	R/W	H'00
	H'FF69	Timer counter 0 (low)	TCNT0L	R/W	H'00
	H'FF6A	General register A0 (high)	GRA0H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF6B	General register A0 (low)	GRA0L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF6C	General register B0 (high)	GRB0H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF6D	General register B0 (low)	GRB0L	R/W	H'FF
1	H'FF6E	Timer control register 1	TCR1	R/W	H'80
	H'FF6F	Timer I/O control register 1	TIOR1	R/W	H'88
	H'FF70	Timer interrupt enable register 1	TIER1	R/W	H'F8
	H'FF71	Timer status register 1	TSR1	R/(W)*2	H'F8
	H'FF72	Timer counter 1 (high)	TCNT1H	R/W	H'00
	H'FF73	Timer counter 1 (low)	TCNT1L	R/W	H'00
	H'FF74	General register A1 (high)	GRA1H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF75	General register A1 (low)	GRA1L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF76	General register B1 (high)	GRB1H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF77	General register B1 (low)	GRB1L	R/W	H'FF

Notes: 1. The lower 16 bits of the address are indicated.
2. Only 0 can be written, to clear flags.

Table 8-3 ITU Registers (cont)

Channel	Address*1	Name	Abbre-viation	R/W	Initial Value
2	H'FF78	Timer control register 2	TCR2	R/W	H'80
	H'FF79	Timer I/O control register 2	TIOR2	R/W	H'88
	H'FF7A	Timer interrupt enable register 2	TIER2	R/W	H'F8
	H'FF7B	Timer status register 2	TSR2	R/(W)*2	H'F8
	H'FF7C	Timer counter 2 (high)	TCNT2H	R/W	H'00
	H'FF7D	Timer counter 2 (low)	TCNT2L	R/W	H'00
	H'FF7E	General register A2 (high)	GRA2H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF7F	General register A2 (low)	GRA2L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF80	General register B2 (high)	GRB2H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF81	General register B2 (low)	GRB2L	R/W	H'FF
3	H'FF82	Timer control register 3	TCR3	R/W	H'80
	H'FF83	Timer I/O control register 3	TIOR3	R/W	H'88
	H'FF84	Timer interrupt enable register 3	TIER3	R/W	H'F8
	H'FF85	Timer status register 3	TSR3	R/(W)*2	H'F8
	H'FF86	Timer counter 3 (high)	TCNT3H	R/W	H'00
	H'FF87	Timer counter 3 (low)	TCNT3L	R/W	H'00
	H'FF88	General register A3 (high)	GRA3H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF89	General register A3 (low)	GRA3L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF8A	General register B3 (high)	GRB3H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF8B	General register B3 (low)	GRB3L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF8C	Buffer register A3 (high)	BRA3H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF8D	Buffer register A3 (low)	BRA3L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF8E	Buffer register B3 (high)	BRB3H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF8F	Buffer register B3 (low)	BRB3L	R/W	H'FF

Notes: 1. The lower 16 bits of the address are indicated.
2. Only 0 can be written, to clear flags.

Table 8-3 ITU Registers (cont)

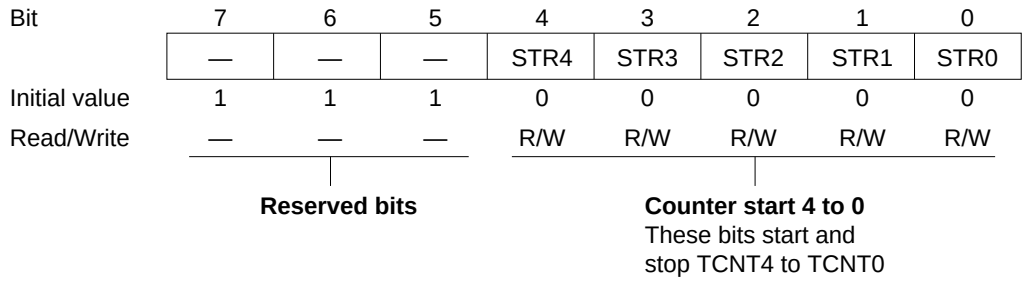
Channel	Address*1	Name	Abbre-viation	R/W	Initial Value
4	H'FF92	Timer control register 4	TCR4	R/W	H'80
	H'FF93	Timer I/O control register 4	TIOR4	R/W	H'88
	H'FF94	Timer interrupt enable register 4	TIER4	R/W	H'F8
	H'FF95	Timer status register 4	TSR4	R/(W)*2	H'F8
	H'FF96	Timer counter 4 (high)	TCNT4H	R/W	H'00
	H'FF97	Timer counter 4 (low)	TCNT4L	R/W	H'00
	H'FF98	General register A4 (high)	GRA4H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF99	General register A4 (low)	GRA4L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF9A	General register B4 (high)	GRB4H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF9B	General register B4 (low)	GRB4L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF9C	Buffer register A4 (high)	BRA4H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF9D	Buffer register A4 (low)	BRA4L	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF9E	Buffer register B4 (high)	BRB4H	R/W	H'FF
	H'FF9F	Buffer register B4 (low)	BRB4L	R/W	H'FF

Notes: 1. The lower 16 bits of the address are indicated.
2. Only 0 can be written, to clear flags.

8.2 Register Descriptions

8.2.1 Timer Start Register (TSTR)

TSTR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that starts and stops the timer counter (TCNT) in channels 0 to 4.



TSTR is initialized to H'E0 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bits 7 to 5—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bit 4—Counter Start 4 (STR4): Starts and stops timer counter 4 (TCNT4).

Bit 4 STR4	Description	
0	TCNT4 is halted	(Initial value)
1	TCNT4 is counting	

Bit 3—Counter Start 3 (STR3): Starts and stops timer counter 3 (TCNT3).

Bit 3 STR3	Description	
0	TCNT3 is halted	(Initial value)
1	TCNT3 is counting	

Bit 2—Counter Start 2 (STR2): Starts and stops timer counter 2 (TCNT2).

Bit 2 STR2	Description	
0	TCNT2 is halted	(Initial value)
1	TCNT2 is counting	

Bit 1—Counter Start 1 (STR1): Starts and stops timer counter 1 (TCNT1).

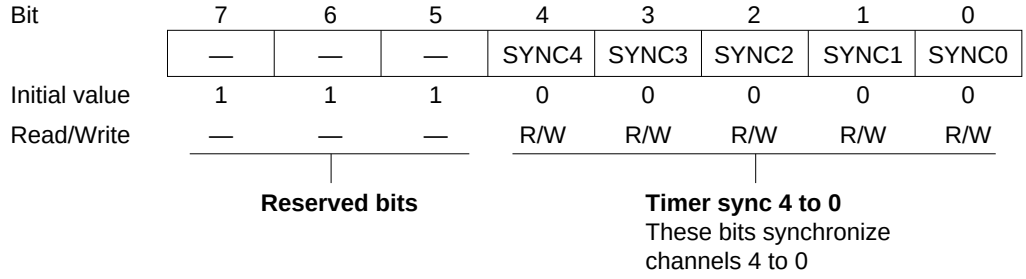
Bit 1 STR1	Description	
0	TCNT1 is halted	(Initial value)
1	TCNT1 is counting	

Bit 0—Counter Start 0 (STR0): Starts and stops timer counter 0 (TCNT0).

Bit 0 STR0	Description	
0	TCNT0 is halted	(Initial value)
1	TCNT0 is counting	

8.2.2 Timer Synchro Register (TSNC)

TSNC is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects whether channels 0 to 4 operate independently or synchronously. Channels are synchronized by setting the corresponding bits to 1.



TSNC is initialized to H'E0 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bits 7 to 5—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bit 4—Timer Sync 4 (SYNC4): Selects whether channel 4 operates independently or synchronously.

Bit 4 SYNC4	Description	
0	Channel 4's timer counter (TCNT4) operates independently TCNT4 is preset and cleared independently of other channels	(Initial value)
1	Channel 4 operates synchronously TCNT4 can be synchronously preset and cleared	

Bit 3—Timer Sync 3 (SYNC3): Selects whether channel 3 operates independently or synchronously.

Bit 3 SYNC3	Description	
0	Channel 3's timer counter (TCNT3) operates independently TCNT3 is preset and cleared independently of other channels	(Initial value)
1	Channel 3 operates synchronously TCNT3 can be synchronously preset and cleared	

Bit 2—Timer Sync 2 (SYNC2): Selects whether channel 2 operates independently or synchronously.

Bit 2 SYNC2	Description	
0	Channel 2's timer counter (TCNT2) operates independently TCNT2 is preset and cleared independently of other channels	(Initial value)
1	Channel 2 operates synchronously TCNT2 can be synchronously preset and cleared	

Bit 1—Timer Sync 1 (SYNC1): Selects whether channel 1 operates independently or synchronously.

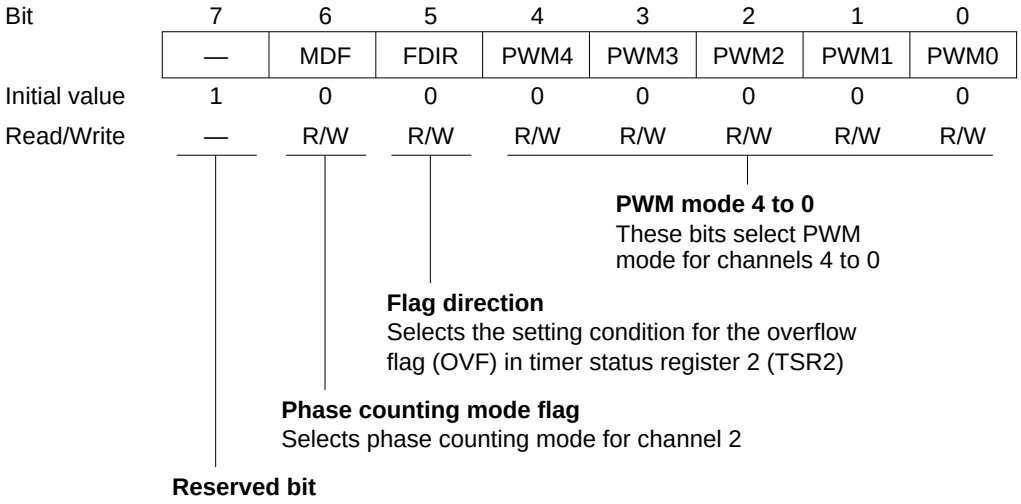
Bit 1 SYNC1	Description	
0	Channel 1's timer counter (TCNT1) operates independently TCNT1 is preset and cleared independently of other channels	(Initial value)
1	Channel 1 operates synchronously TCNT1 can be synchronously preset and cleared	

Bit 0—Timer Sync 0 (SYNC0): Selects whether channel 0 operates independently or synchronously.

Bit 0 SYNC0	Description	
0	Channel 0's timer counter (TCNT0) operates independently TCNT0 is preset and cleared independently of other channels	(Initial value)
1	Channel 0 operates synchronously TCNT0 can be synchronously preset and cleared	

8.2.3 Timer Mode Register (TMDR)

TMDR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects PWM mode for channels 0 to 4. It also selects phase counting mode and the overflow flag (OVF) setting conditions for channel 2.



TMDR is initialized to H'80 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—Reserved: Read-only bit, always read as 1.

Bit 6—Phase Counting Mode Flag (MDF): Selects whether channel 2 operates normally or in phase counting mode.

Bit 6 MDF	Description	
0	Channel 2 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	Channel 2 operates in phase counting mode	

When MDF is set to 1 to select phase counting mode, timer counter 2 (TCNT2) operates as an up/down-counter and pins TCLKA and TCLKB become counter clock input pins. TCNT2 counts both rising and falling edges of TCLKA and TCLKB, and counts up or down as follows.

Counting Direction	Down-Counting				Up-Counting			
TCLKA pin	↑	High	↓	Low	↑	Low	↓	High
TCLKB pin	Low	↑	High	↓	High	↑	Low	↓

In phase counting mode channel 2 operates as above regardless of the external clock edges selected by bits CKEG1 and CKEG0 and the clock source selected by bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in timer control register 2 (TCR2). Phase counting mode takes precedence over these settings.

The counter clearing condition selected by the CCLR1 and CCLR0 bits in TCR2 and the compare match/input capture settings and interrupt functions of timer I/O control register 2 (TIOR2), timer interrupt enable register 2 (TIER2), and timer status register 2 (TSR2) remain effective in phase counting mode.

Bit 5—Flag Direction (FDIR): Designates the setting condition for the overflow flag (OVF) in timer status register 2 (TSR2). The FDIR designation is valid in all modes in channel 2.

Bit 5 FDIR	Description	
0	OVF is set to 1 in TSR2 when TCNT2 overflows or underflows	(Initial value)
1	OVF is set to 1 in TSR2 when TCNT2 overflows	

Bit 4—PWM Mode 4 (PWM4): Selects whether channel 4 operates normally or in PWM mode.

Bit 4 PWM4	Description	
0	Channel 4 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	Channel 4 operates in PWM mode	

When bit PWM4 is set to 1 to select PWM mode, pin TIOCA4 becomes a PWM output pin. The output goes to 1 at compare match with general register A4 (GRA4), and to 0 at compare match with general register B4 (GRB4).

Bit 3—PWM Mode 3 (PWM3): Selects whether channel 3 operates normally or in PWM mode.

Bit 3 PWM3	Description	
0	Channel 3 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	Channel 3 operates in PWM mode	

When bit PWM3 is set to 1 to select PWM mode, pin TIOCA3 becomes a PWM output pin. The output goes to 1 at compare match with general register A3 (GRA3), and to 0 at compare match with general register B3 (GRB3).

Bit 2—PWM Mode 2 (PWM2): Selects whether channel 2 operates normally or in PWM mode.

Bit 2 PWM2	Description	
0	Channel 2 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	Channel 2 operates in PWM mode	

When bit PWM2 is set to 1 to select PWM mode, pin TIOCA2 becomes a PWM output pin. The output goes to 1 at compare match with general register A2 (GRA2), and to 0 at compare match with general register B2 (GRB2).

Bit 1—PWM Mode 1 (PWM1): Selects whether channel 1 operates normally or in PWM mode.

Bit 1 PWM1	Description	
0	Channel 1 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	Channel 1 operates in PWM mode	

When bit PWM1 is set to 1 to select PWM mode, pin TIOCA1 becomes a PWM output pin. The output goes to 1 at compare match with general register A1 (GRA1), and to 0 at compare match with general register B1 (GRB1).

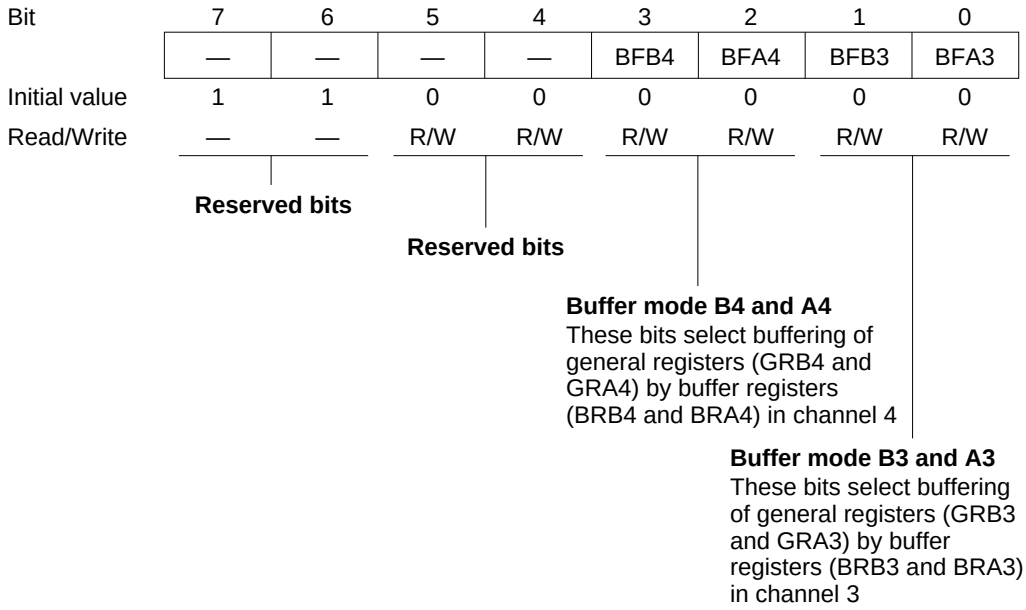
Bit 0—PWM Mode 0 (PWM0): Selects whether channel 0 operates normally or in PWM mode.

Bit 0 PWM0	Description	
0	Channel 0 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	Channel 0 operates in PWM mode	

When bit PWM0 is set to 1 to select PWM mode, pin TIOCA0 becomes a PWM output pin. The output goes to 1 at compare match with general register A0 (GRA0), and to 0 at compare match with general register B0 (GRB0).

8.2.4 Timer Function Control Register (TFCR)

TFCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects buffering for channels 3 and 4.



TFCR is initialized to H'C0 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bits 7 and 6—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bits 5 and 4—Reserved: These bits can be written and read, but do not set them to 1.

Bit 3—Buffer Mode B4 (BFB4): Selects whether GRB4 operates normally in channel 4, or whether GRB4 is buffered by BRB4.

Bit 3 BFB4	Description	
0	GRB4 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	GRB4 is buffered by BRB4	

Bit 2—Buffer Mode A4 (BFA4): Selects whether GRA4 operates normally in channel 4, or whether GRA4 is buffered by BRA4.

Bit 2 BFA4	Description	
0	GRA4 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	GRA4 is buffered by BRA4	

Bit 1—Buffer Mode B3 (BFB3): Selects whether GRB3 operates normally in channel 3, or whether GRB3 is buffered by BRB3.

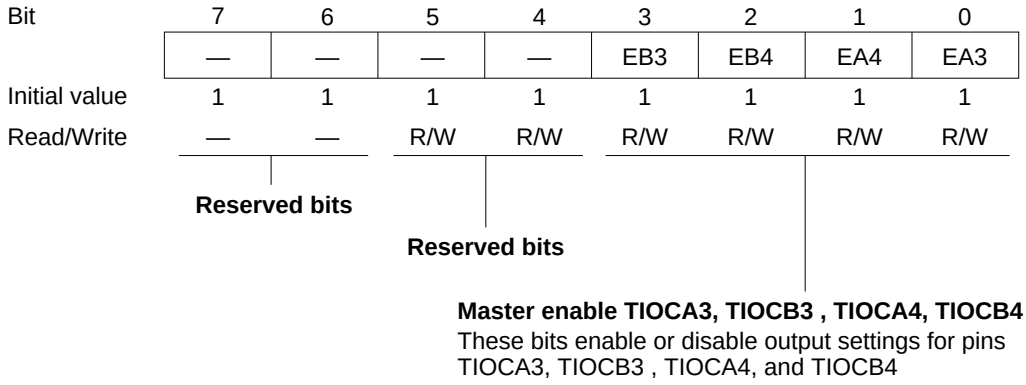
Bit 1 BFB3	Description	
0	GRB3 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	GRB3 is buffered by BRB3	

Bit 0—Buffer Mode A3 (BFA3): Selects whether GRA3 operates normally in channel 3, or whether GRA3 is buffered by BRA3.

Bit 0 BFA3	Description	
0	GRA3 operates normally	(Initial value)
1	GRA3 is buffered by BRA3	

8.2.5 Timer Output Master Enable Register (TOER)

TOER is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables or disables output settings for channels 3 and 4.



TOER is initialized to H'FF by a reset and in standby mode.

Bits 7 and 6—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bits 5 and 4—Reserved: Although reserved, these bits can be written and read.

Bit 3—Master Enable TIOCB3 (EB3): Enables or disables ITU output at pin TIOCB3.

Bit 3 EB3	Description	
0	TIOCB3 output is disabled regardless of TIOR3 and TFCR settings (TIOCB3 operates as a generic input/output pin).	
1	TIOCB3 is enabled for output according to TIOR3 and TFCR settings	(Initial value)

Bit 2—Master Enable TIOCB4 (EB4): Enables or disables ITU output at pin TIOCB4.

Bit 2 EB4	Description	
0	TIOCB4 output is disabled regardless of TIOR4 and TFCR settings (TIOCB4 operates as a generic input/output pin).	
1	TIOCB4 is enabled for output according to TIOR4 and TFCR settings	(Initial value)

Bit 1—Master Enable TIOCA4 (EA4): Enables or disables ITU output at pin TIOCA4.

Bit 1 EA4	Description	
0	TIOCA4 output is disabled regardless of TIOR4, TMDR, and TFCR settings (TIOCA4 operates as a generic input/output pin).	
1	TIOCA4 is enabled for output according to TIOR4, TMDR, and TFCR settings	(Initial value)

Bit 0—Master Enable TIOCA3 (EA3): Enables or disables ITU output at pin TIOCA3.

Bit 0 EA3	Description	
0	TIOCA3 output is disabled regardless of TIOR3, TMDR, and TFCR settings (TIOCA3 operates as a generic input/output pin).	
1	TIOCA3 is enabled for output according to TIOR3, TMDR, and TFCR settings	(Initial value)

8.2.6 Timer Counters (TCNT)

TCNT is a 16-bit counter. The ITU has five TCNTs, one for each channel.

Channel	Abbreviation	Function
0	TCNT0	Up-counter
1	TCNT1	
2	TCNT2	Phase counting mode: up/down-counter Other modes: up-counter
3	TCNT3	Up/down-counter
4	TCNT4	

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Each TCNT is a 16-bit readable/writable register that counts pulse inputs from a clock source. The clock source is selected by bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in the timer control register (TCR).

TCNT0 and TCNT1 are up-counters. TCNT2 is an up/down-counter in phase counting mode and an up-counter in other modes. TCNT3 and TCNT4 are up/down-counters.

TCNT can be cleared to H'0000 by compare match with general register A or B (GRA or GRB) or by input capture to GRA or GRB (counter clearing function) in the same channel.

When TCNT overflows (changes from H'FFFF to H'0000), the overflow flag (OVF) is set to 1 in the timer status register (TSR) of the corresponding channel.

When TCNT underflows (changes from H'0000 to H'FFFF), the overflow flag (OVF) is set to 1 in TSR of the corresponding channel.

The TCNTs are linked to the CPU by an internal 16-bit bus and can be written or read by either word access or byte access.

Each TCNT is initialized to H'0000 by a reset and in standby mode.

8.2.7 General Registers (GRA, GRB)

The general registers are 16-bit registers. The ITU has 10 general registers, two in each channel.

Channel	Abbreviation	Function
0	GRA0, GRB0	Output compare/input capture register
1	GRA1, GRB1	
2	GRA2, GRB2	
3	GRA3, GRB3	Output compare/input capture register; can be buffered by buffer registers BRA and BRB
4	GRA4, GRB4	

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

A general register is a 16-bit readable/writable register that can function as either an output compare register or an input capture register. The function is selected by settings in the timer I/O control register (TIOR).

When a general register is used as an output compare register, its value is constantly compared with the TCNT value. When the two values match (compare match), the IMFA or IMFB flag is set to 1 in the timer status register (TSR). Compare match output can be selected in TIOR.

When a general register is used as an input capture register, rising edges, falling edges, or both edges of an external input capture signal are detected and the current TCNT value is stored in the general register. The corresponding IMFA or IMFB flag in TSR is set to 1 at the same time. The valid edge or edges of the input capture signal are selected in TIOR.

TIOR settings are ignored in PWM mode.

General registers are linked to the CPU by an internal 16-bit bus and can be written or read by either word access or byte access.

General registers are initialized to the output compare function (with no output signal) by a reset and in standby mode. The initial value is H'FFFF.

8.2.8 Buffer Registers (BRA, BRB)

The buffer registers are 16-bit registers. The ITU has four buffer registers, two each in channels 3 and 4.

Channel	Abbreviation	Function
3	BRA3, BRB3	Used for buffering
4	BRA4, BRB4	• When the corresponding GRA or GRB functions as an output compare register, BRA or BRB can function as an output compare buffer register: the BRA or BRB value is automatically transferred to GRA or GRB at compare match • When the corresponding GRA or GRB functions as an input capture register, BRA or BRB can function as an input capture buffer register: the GRA or GRB value is automatically transferred to BRA or BRB at input capture

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

A buffer register is a 16-bit readable/writable register that is used when buffering is selected. Buffering can be selected independently by bits BFB4, BFA4, BFB3, and BFA3 in TFCR.

The buffer register and general register operate as a pair. When the general register functions as an output compare register, the buffer register functions as an output compare buffer register. When the general register functions as an input capture register, the buffer register functions as an input capture buffer register.

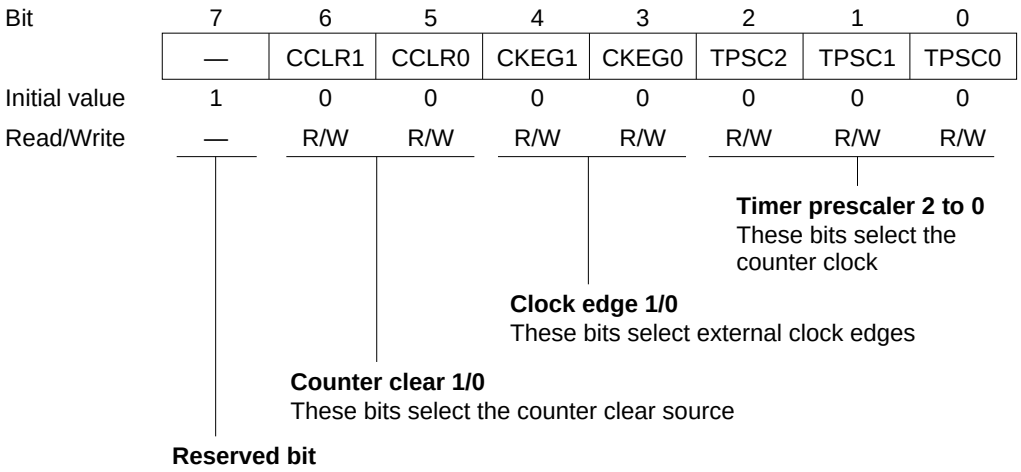
The buffer registers are linked to the CPU by an internal 16-bit bus and can be written or read by either word or byte access.

Buffer registers are initialized to H'FFFF by a reset and in standby mode.

8.2.9 Timer Control Registers (TCR)

TCR is an 8-bit register. The ITU has five TCRs, one in each channel.

Channel	Abbreviation	Function
0	TCR0	TCR controls the timer counter. The TCRs in all channels are functionally identical. When phase counting mode is selected in channel 2, the settings of bits CKEG1 and CKEG0 and TPSC2 to TPSC0 in TCR2 are ignored.
1	TCR1	
2	TCR2	
3	TCR3	
4	TCR4	



Each TCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects the timer counter clock source, selects the edge or edges of external clock sources, and selects how the counter is cleared.

TCR is initialized to H'80 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—Reserved: Read-only bit, always read as 1.

Bits 6 and 5—Counter Clear 1/0 (CCLR1, CCLR0): These bits select how TCNT is cleared.

Bit 6 CCLR1	Bit 5 CCLR0	Description	
0	0	TCNT is not cleared	(Initial value)
	1	TCNT is cleared by GRA compare match or input capture*1	
1	0	TCNT is cleared by GRB compare match or input capture*1	
	1	Synchronous clear: TCNT is cleared in synchronization with other synchronized timers*2	

Notes: 1. TCNT is cleared by compare match when the general register functions as a compare match register, and by input capture when the general register functions as an input capture register.
2. Selected in the timer synchro register (TSNC).

Bits 4 and 3—Clock Edge 1/0 (CKEG1, CKEG0): These bits select external clock input edges when an external clock source is used.

Bit 4 CKEG1	Bit 3 CKEG0	Description	
0	0	Count rising edges	(Initial value)
	1	Count falling edges	
1	—	Count both edges	

When channel 2 is set to phase counting mode, bits CKEG1 and CKEG0 in TCR2 are ignored. Phase counting takes precedence.

Bits 2 to 0—Timer Prescaler 2 to 0 (TPSC2 to TPSC0): These bits select the counter clock source.

Bit 2 TPSC2	Bit 1 TPSC1	Bit 0 TPSC0	Function	
0	0	0	Internal clock: ø	(Initial value)
		1	Internal clock: ø/2	
	1	0	Internal clock: ø/4	
		1	Internal clock: ø/8	
1	0	0	External clock A: TCLKA input	
		1	External clock B: TCLKB input	
	1	0	External clock C: TCLKC input	
		1	External clock D: TCLKD input	

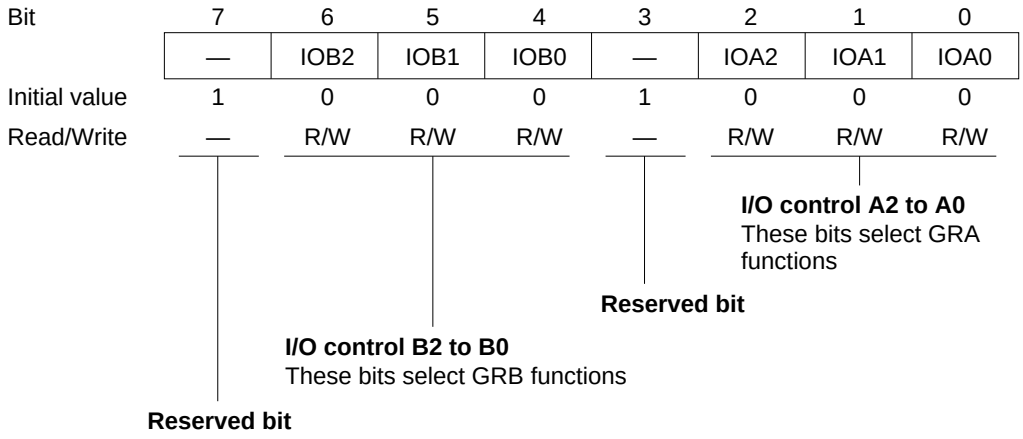
When bit TPSC2 is cleared to 0 an internal clock source is selected, and the timer counts only falling edges. When bit TPSC2 is set to 1 an external clock source is selected, and the timer counts the edge or edges selected by bits CKEG1 and CKEG0.

When channel 2 is set to phase counting mode (MDF = 1 in TMDR), the settings of bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in TCR2 are ignored. Phase counting takes precedence.

8.2.10 Timer I/O Control Register (TIOR)

TIOR is an 8-bit register. The ITU has five TIORs, one in each channel.

Channel	Abbreviation	Function
0	TIOR0	TIOR controls the general registers. Some functions differ in PWM mode.
1	TIOR1	
2	TIOR2	
3	TIOR3	
4	TIOR4	



Each TIOR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects the output compare or input capture function for GRA and GRB, and specifies the functions of the TIOCA and TIOCB pins. If the output compare function is selected, TIOR also selects the type of output. If input capture is selected, TIOR also selects the edge or edges of the input capture signal.

TIOR is initialized to H'88 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—Reserved: Read-only bit, always read as 1.

Bits 6 to 4—I/O Control B2 to B0 (IOB2 to IOB0): These bits select the GRB function.

Bit 6 IOB2	Bit 5 IOB1	Bit 4 IOB0	Function	
0	0	0	GRB is an output compare register	No output at compare match (Initial value)
		1		0 output at GRB compare match*1
	1	0		1 output at GRB compare match*1
		1		Output toggles at GRB compare match (1 output in channel 2)*1, *2
1	0	0	GRB is an input capture register	GRB captures rising edge of input
		1		GRB captures falling edge of input
	1	0		GRB captures both edges of input
		1		

Notes: 1. After a reset, the output is 0 until the first compare match.
2. Channel 2 output cannot be toggled by compare match. This setting selects 1 output instead.

Bit 3—Reserved: Read-only bit, always read as 1.

Bits 2 to 0—I/O Control A2 to A0 (IOA2 to IOA0): These bits select the GRA function.

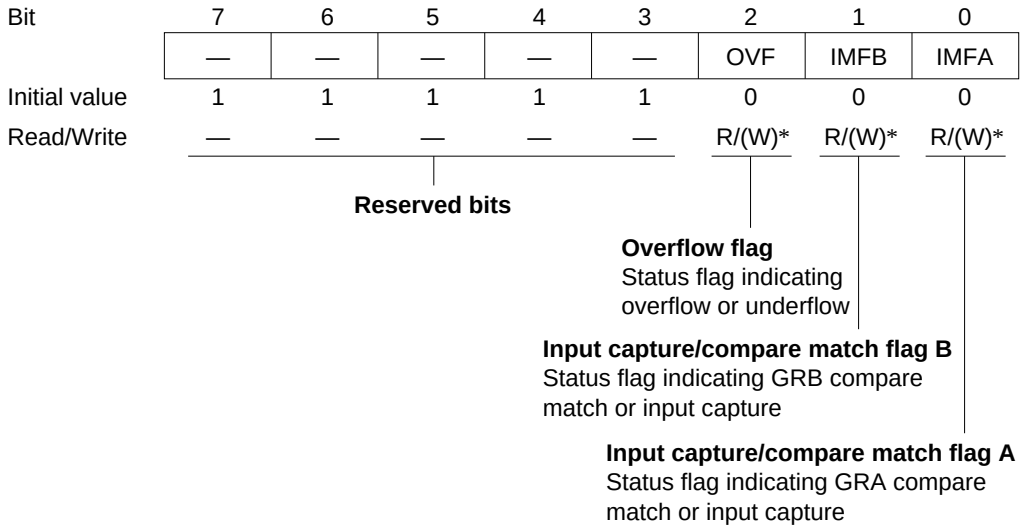
Bit 2 IOA2	Bit 1 IOA1	Bit 0 IOA0	Function		
0	0	0	GRA is an output compare register	No output at compare match	(Initial value)
		1		0 output at GRA compare match*1	
	1	0		1 output at GRA compare match*1	
		1		Output toggles at GRA compare match (1 output in channel 2)*1, *2	
1	0	0	GRA is an input capture register	GRA captures rising edge of input	
		1		GRA captures falling edge of input	
	1	0		GRA captures both edges of input	
		1			

Notes: 1. After a reset, the output is 0 until the first compare match.
2. Channel 2 output cannot be toggled by compare match. This setting selects 1 output instead.

8.2.11 Timer Status Register (TSR)

TSR is an 8-bit register. The ITU has five TSRs, one in each channel.

Channel	Abbreviation	Function
0	TSR0	Indicates input capture, compare match, and overflow status
1	TSR1	
2	TSR2	
3	TSR3	
4	TSR4	



Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

Each TSR is an 8-bit readable/writable register containing flags that indicate TCNT overflow or underflow and GRA or GRB compare match or input capture. These flags are interrupt sources and generate CPU interrupts if enabled by corresponding bits in the timer interrupt enable register (TIER).

TSR is initialized to H'F8 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bits 7 to 3—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bit 2—Overflow Flag (OVF): This status flag indicates TCNT overflow or underflow.

Bit 2 OVF	**Description**
0	[Clearing condition] (Initial value) Read OVF when OVF = 1, then write 0 in OVF
1	[Setting condition] TCNT overflowed from H'FFFF to H'0000, or underflowed from H'0000 to H'FFFF*

Note: * TCNT underflow occurs when TCNT operates as an up/down-counter. Underflow can only occur when channel 2 operates in phase counting mode (MDF = 1 in TMDR).

Bit 1—Input Capture/Compare Match Flag B (IMFB): This status flag indicates GRB compare match or input capture events.

Bit 1 IMFB	Description	
0	[Clearing condition] Read IMFB when IMFB = 1, then write 0 in IMFB	(Initial value)
1	[Setting conditions] TCNT = GRB when GRB functions as a compare match register. TCNT value is transferred to GRB by an input capture signal, when GRB functions as an input capture register.	

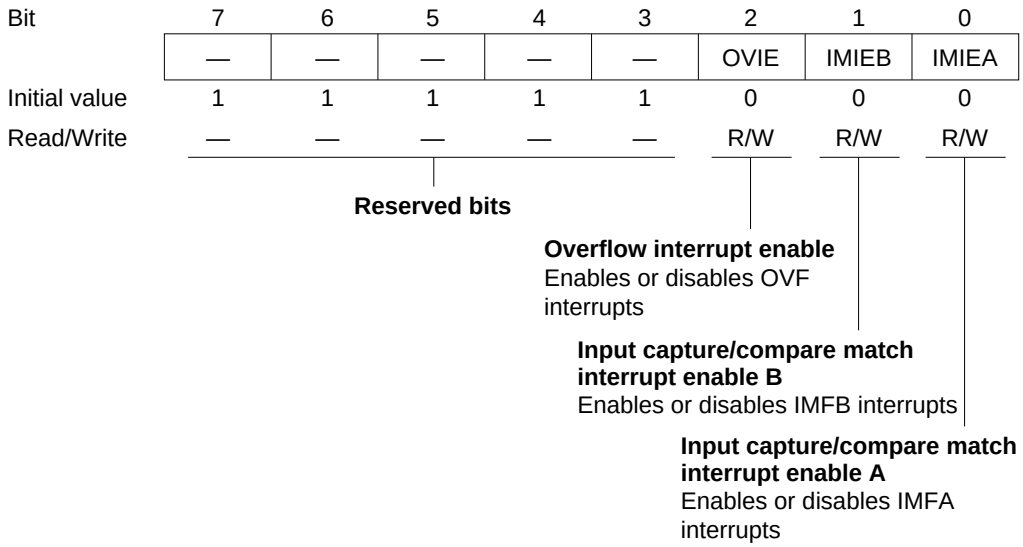
Bit 0—Input Capture/Compare Match Flag A (IMFA): This status flag indicates GRA compare match or input capture events.

Bit 0 IMFA	Description	
0	[Clearing condition] Read IMFA when IMFA = 1, then write 0 in IMFA.	(Initial value)
1	[Setting conditions] TCNT = GRA when GRA functions as a compare match register. TCNT value is transferred to GRA by an input capture signal, when GRA functions as an input capture register.	

8.2.12 Timer Interrupt Enable Register (TIER)

TIER is an 8-bit register. The ITU has five TIERs, one in each channel.

Channel	Abbreviation	Function
0	TIER0	Enables or disables interrupt requests.
1	TIER1	
2	TIER2	
3	TIER3	
4	TIER4	



Each TIER is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables and disables overflow interrupt requests and general register compare match and input capture interrupt requests.

TIER is initialized to H'F8 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bits 7 to 3—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bit 2—Overflow Interrupt Enable (OVIE): Enables or disables the interrupt requested by the overflow flag (OVF) in TSR when OVF is set to 1.

Bit 2 OVIE	Description	
0	OVI interrupt requested by OVF is disabled	(Initial value)
1	OVI interrupt requested by OVF is enabled	

Bit 1—Input Capture/Compare Match Interrupt Enable B (IMIEB): Enables or disables the interrupt requested by the IMFB flag in TSR when IMFB is set to 1.

Bit 1 IMIEB	Description	
0	IMIB interrupt requested by IMFB is disabled	(Initial value)
1	IMIB interrupt requested by IMFB is enabled	

Bit 0—Input Capture/Compare Match Interrupt Enable A (IMIEA): Enables or disables the interrupt requested by the IMFA flag in TSR when IMFA is set to 1.

Bit 0 IMIEA	Description	
0	IMIA interrupt requested by IMFA is disabled	(Initial value)
1	IMIA interrupt requested by IMFA is enabled	

8.3 CPU Interface

8.3.1 16-Bit Accessible Registers

The timer counters (TCNTs), general registers A and B (GRAs and GRBs), and buffer registers A and B (BRAs and BRBs) are 16-bit registers, and are linked to the CPU by an internal 16-bit data bus. These registers can be written or read a word at a time, or a byte at a time.

Figures 8-5 and 8-6 show examples of word access to a timer counter (TCNT). Figures 8-7, 8-8, 8-9, and 8-10 show examples of byte access to TCNTH and TCNTL.

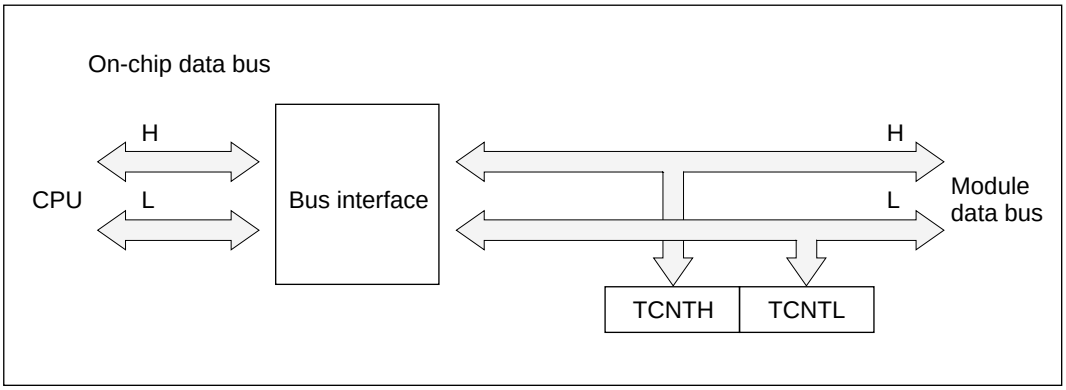


Figure 8-5 Access to Timer Counter (CPU Writes to TCNT, Word)

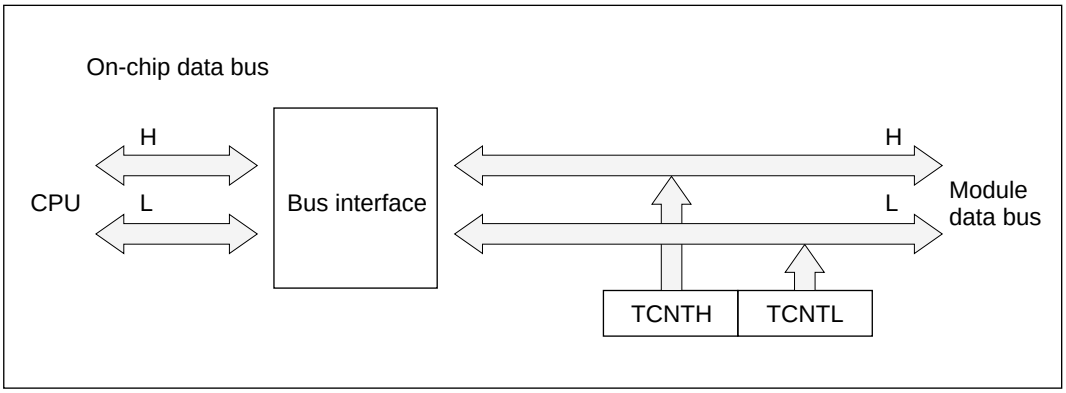


Figure 8-6 Access to Timer Counter (CPU Reads TCNT, Word)

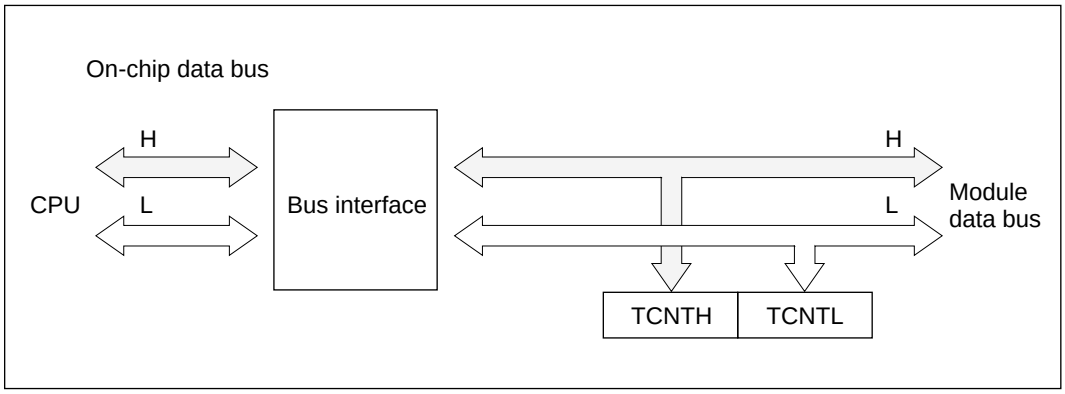


Figure 8-7 Access to Timer Counter (CPU Writes to TCNT, Upper Byte)

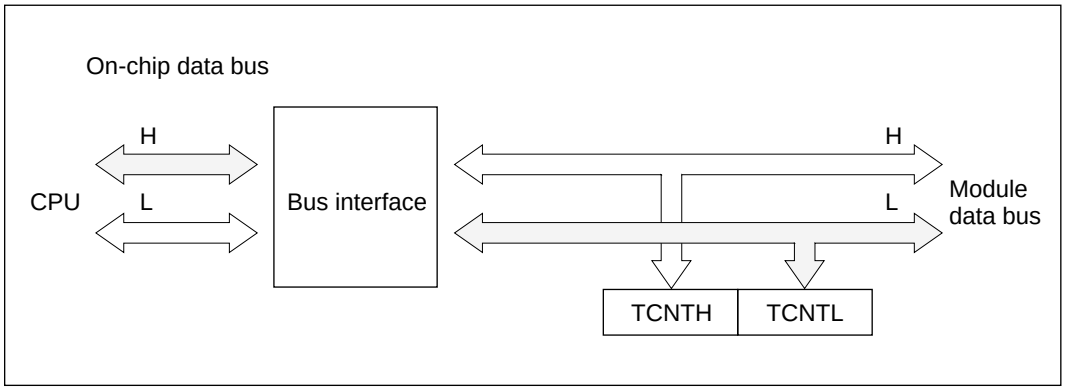


Figure 8-8 Access to Timer Counter (CPU Writes to TCNT, Lower Byte)

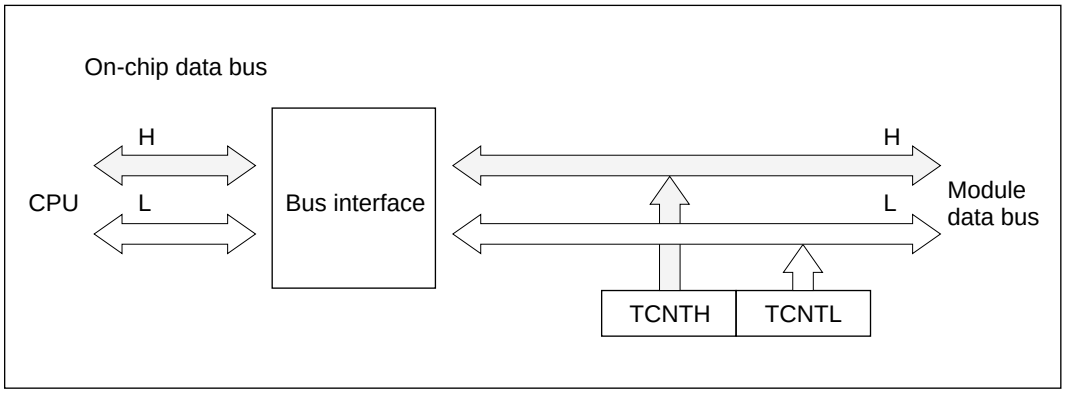


Figure 8-9 Access to Timer Counter (CPU Reads TCNT, Upper Byte)

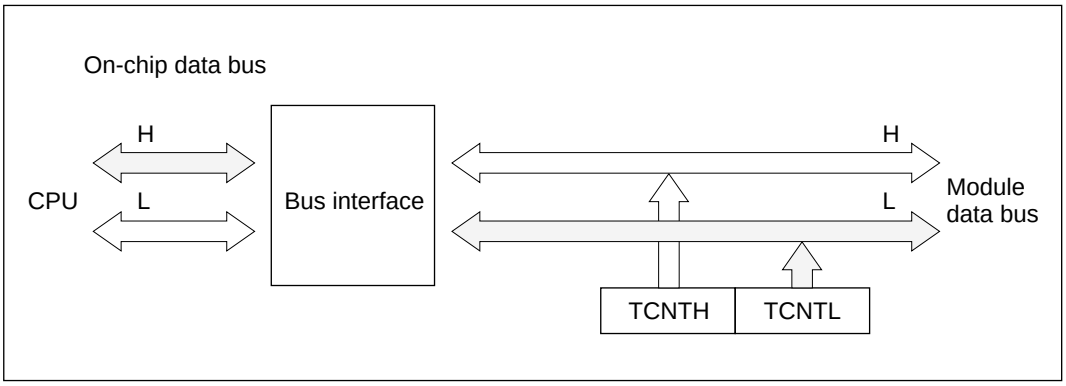


Figure 8-10 Access to Timer Counter (CPU Reads TCNT, Lower Byte)

8.3.2 8-Bit Accessible Registers

The registers other than the timer counters, general registers, and buffer registers are 8-bit registers. These registers are linked to the CPU by an internal 8-bit data bus.

Figures 8-11 and 8-12 show examples of byte read and write access to a TCR.

If a word-size data transfer instruction is executed, two byte transfers are performed.

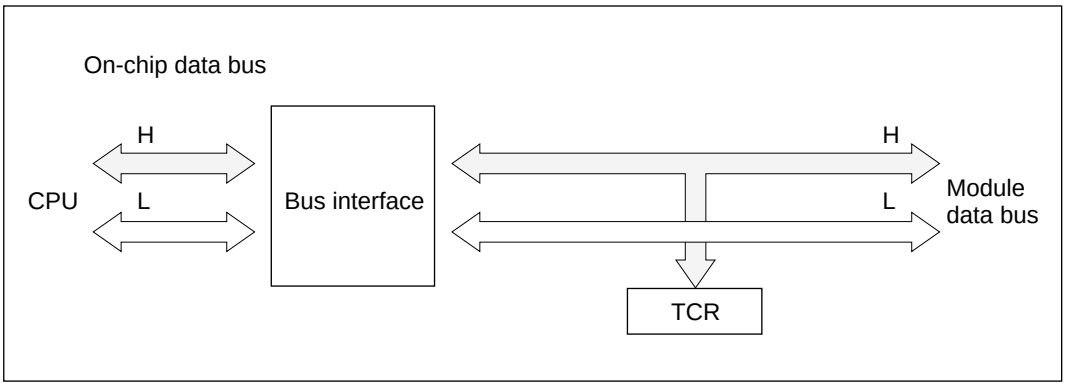


Figure 8-11 TCR Access (CPU Writes to TCR)

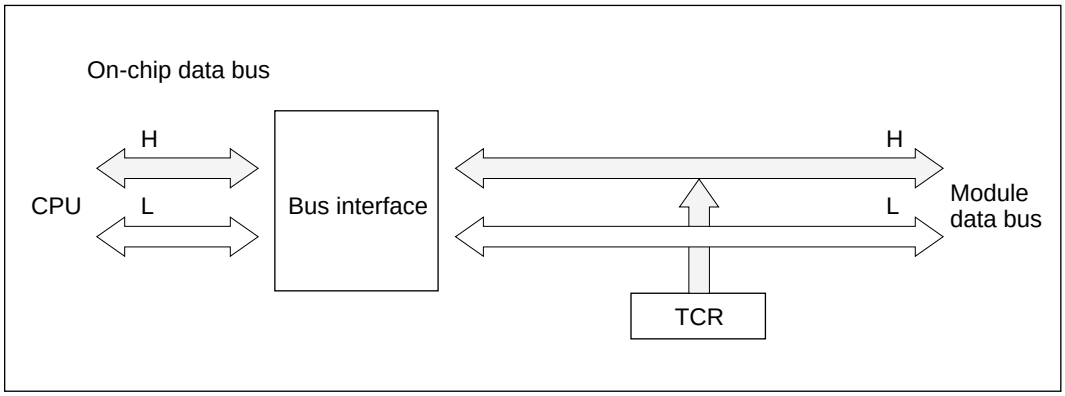


Figure 8-12 TCR Access (CPU Reads TCR)

8.4 Operation

8.4.1 Overview

A summary of operations in the various modes is given below.

Normal Operation: Each channel has a timer counter and general registers. The timer counter counts up, and can operate as a free-running counter, periodic counter, or external event counter. General registers A and B can be used for input capture or output compare.

Synchronous Operation: The timer counters in designated channels are preset synchronously. Data written to the timer counter in any one of these channels is simultaneously written to the timer counters in the other channels as well. The timer counters can also be cleared synchronously if so designated by the CCLR1 and CCLR0 bits in the TCRs.

PWM Mode: A PWM waveform is output from the TIOCA pin. The output goes to 1 at compare match A and to 0 at compare match B. The duty cycle can be varied from 0% to 100% depending on the settings of GRA and GRB. When a channel is set to PWM mode, its GRA and GRB automatically become output compare registers.

Phase Counting Mode: The phase relationship between two clock signals input at TCLKA and TCLKB is detected and TCNT2 counts up or down accordingly. When phase counting mode is selected TCLKA and TCLKB become clock input pins and TCNT2 operates as an up/down-counter.

Buffering

- If the general register is an output compare register

  When compare match occurs the buffer register value is transferred to the general register.

- If the general register is an input capture register

  When input capture occurs the TCNT value is transferred to the general register, and the previous general register value is transferred to the buffer register.

8.4.2 Basic Functions

Counter Operation: When one of bits STR0 to STR4 is set to 1 in the timer start register (TSTR), the timer counter (TCNT) in the corresponding channel starts counting. The counting can be free-running or periodic.

- Sample setup procedure for counter

  Figure 8-13 shows a sample procedure for setting up a counter.

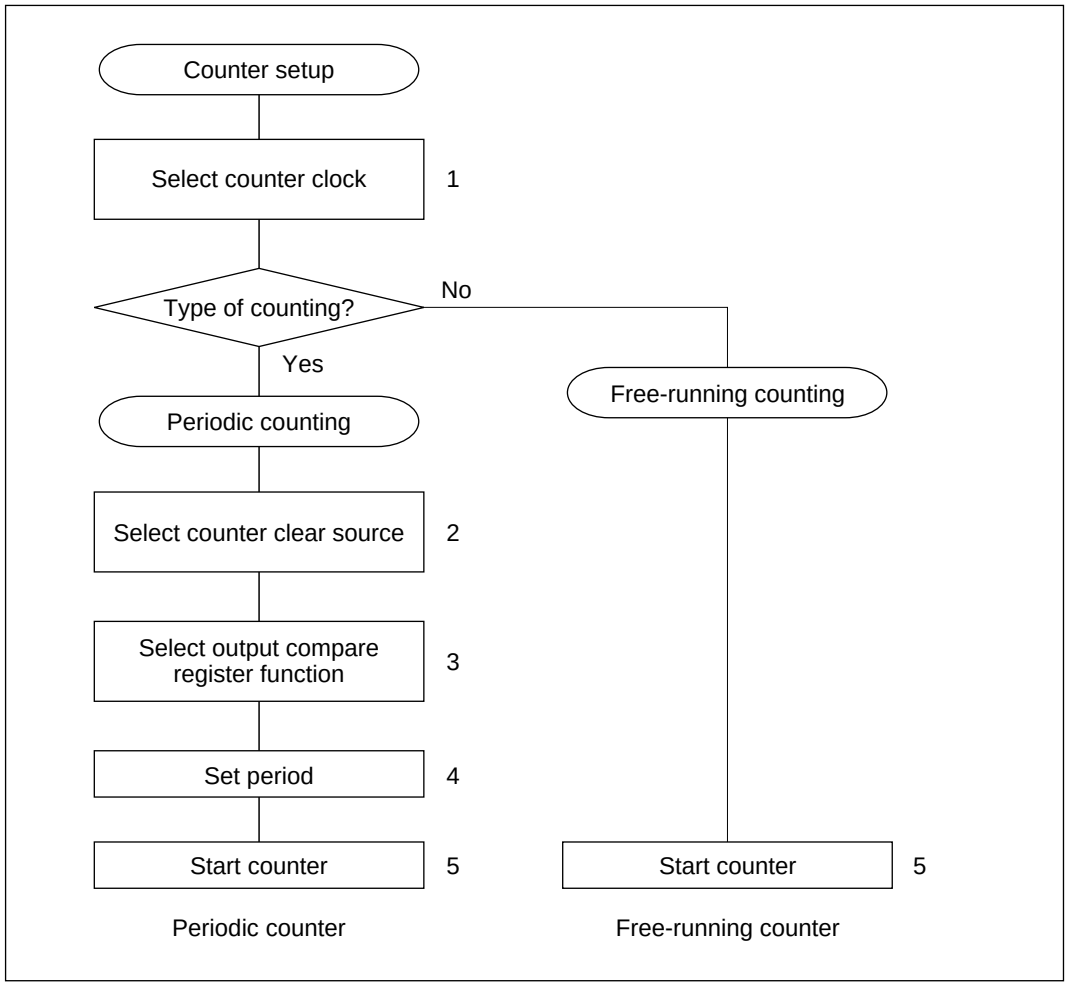


Figure 8-13 Counter Setup Procedure (Example)

1. Set bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in TCR to select the counter clock source. If an external clock source is selected, set bits CKEG1 and CKEG0 in TCR to select the desired edge(s) of the external clock signal.
2. For periodic counting, set CCLR1 and CCLR0 in TCR to have TCNT cleared at GRA compare match or GRB compare match.
3. Set TIOR to select the output compare function of GRA or GRB, whichever was selected in step 2.
4. Write the count period in GRA or GRB, whichever was selected in step 2.
5. Set the STR bit to 1 in TSTR to start the timer counter.

- Free-running and periodic counter operation

  A reset leaves the counters (TCNTs) in ITU channels 0 to 4 all set as free-running counters. A free-running counter starts counting up when the corresponding bit in TSTR is set to 1. When the count overflows from H'FFFF to H'0000, the overflow flag (OVF) is set to 1 in the timer status register (TSR). If the corresponding OVIE bit is set to 1 in the timer interrupt enable register, a CPU interrupt is requested. After the overflow, the counter continues counting up from H'0000. Figure 8-14 illustrates free-running counting.

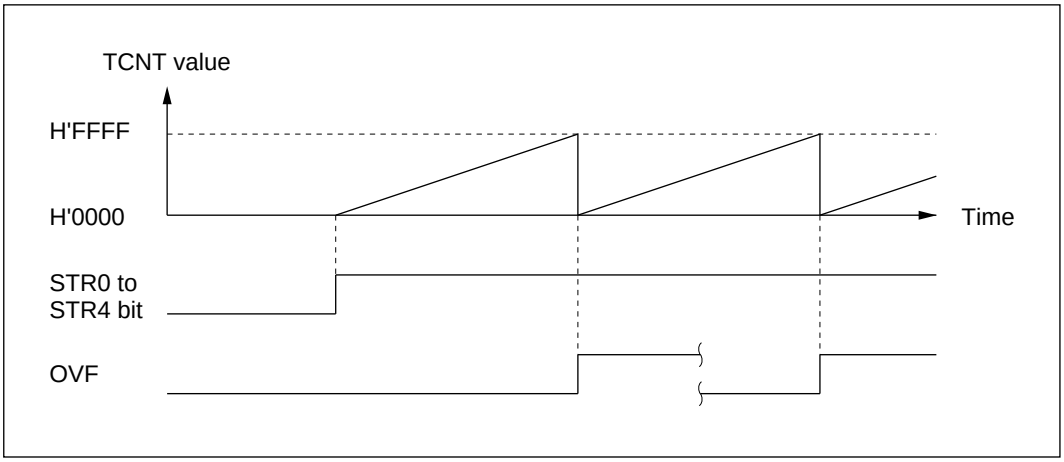


Figure 8-14 Free-Running Counter Operation

When a channel is set to have its counter cleared by compare match, in that channel TCNT operates as a periodic counter. Select the output compare function of GRA or GRB, set bit CCLR1 or CCLR0 in the timer control register (TCR) to have the counter cleared by compare match, and set the count period in GRA or GRB. After these settings, the counter starts counting up as a periodic counter when the corresponding bit is set to 1 in TSTR. When the count matches GRA or GRB, the IMFA or IMFB flag is set to 1 in TSR and the counter is cleared to H'0000. If the corresponding IMIEA or IMIEB bit is set to 1 in TIER, a CPU interrupt is requested at this time. After the compare match, TCNT continues counting up from H'0000. Figure 8-15 illustrates periodic counting.

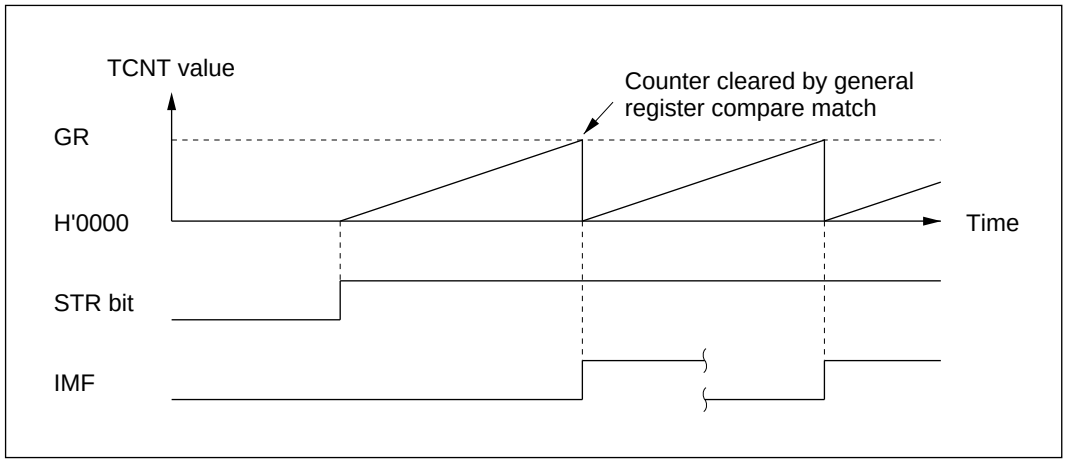


Figure 8-15 Periodic Counter Operation

- Count timing

  — Internal clock source

  Bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in TCR select the system clock (ø) or one of three internal clock sources obtained by prescaling the system clock (ø/2, ø/4, ø/8).
  Figure 8-16 shows the timing.

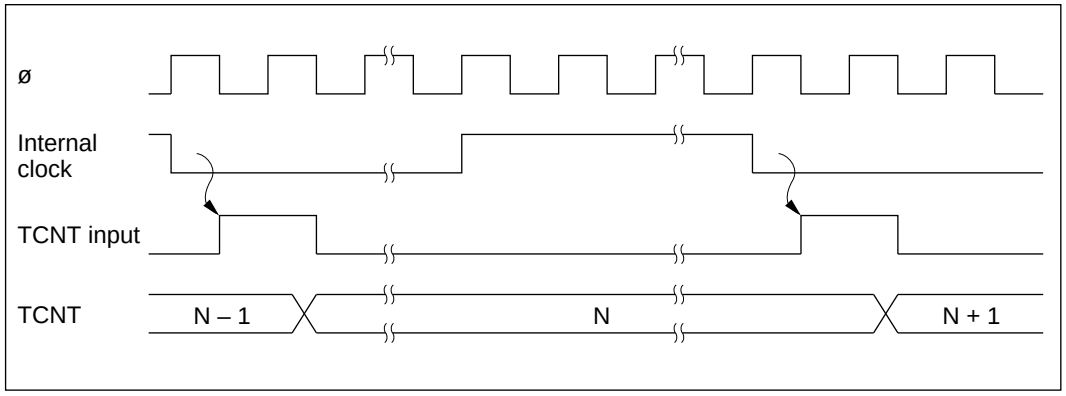


Figure 8-16 Count Timing for Internal Clock Sources

— External clock source

Bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 in TCR select an external clock input pin (TCLKA to TCLKD), and its valid edge or edges are selected by bits CKEG1 and CKEG0. The rising edge, falling edge, or both edges can be selected.

The pulse width of the external clock signal must be at least 1.5 system clocks when a single edge is selected, and at least 2.5 system clocks when both edges are selected. Shorter pulses will not be counted correctly.

Figure 8-17 shows the timing when both edges are detected.

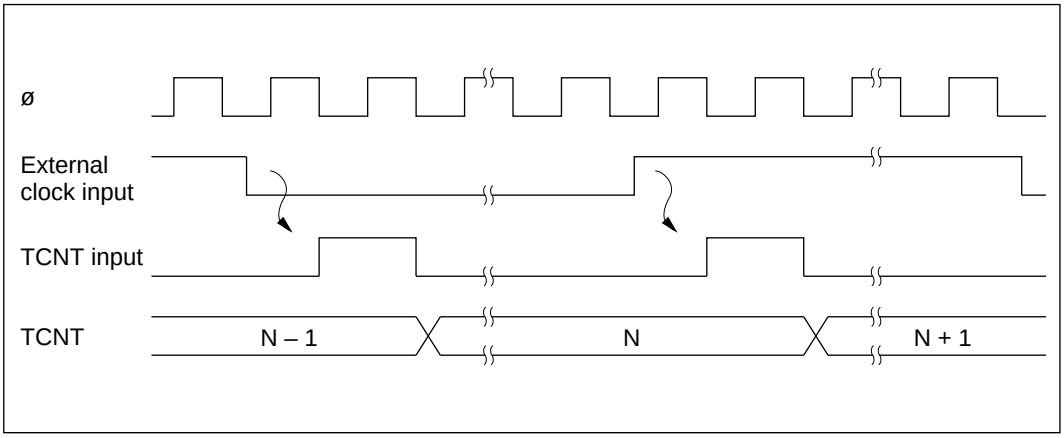


Figure 8-17 Count Timing for External Clock Sources (when Both Edges are Detected)

Waveform Output by Compare Match: In ITU channels 0, 1, 3, and 4, compare match A or B can cause the output at the TIOCA or TIOCB pin to go to 0, go to 1, or toggle. In channel 2 the output can only go to 0 or go to 1.

- Sample setup procedure for waveform output by compare match

  Figure 8-18 shows a sample procedure for setting up waveform output by compare match.

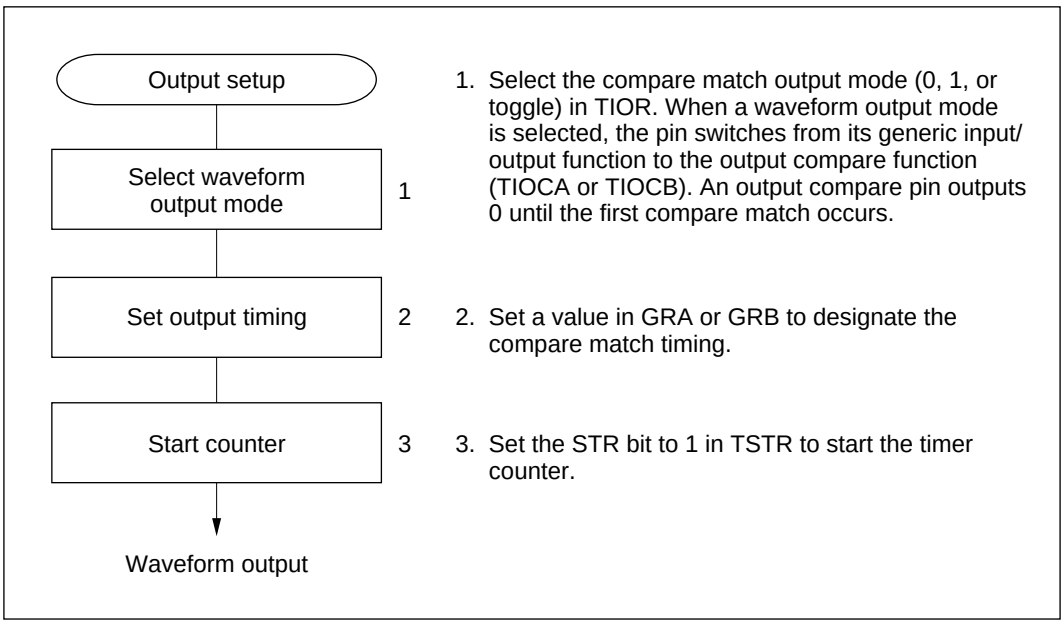


Figure 8-18 Setup Procedure for Waveform Output by Compare Match (Example)

- Examples of waveform output

  Figure 8-19 shows examples of 0 and 1 output. TCNT operates as a free-running counter, 0 output is selected for compare match A, and 1 output is selected for compare match B. When the pin is already at the selected output level, the pin level does not change.

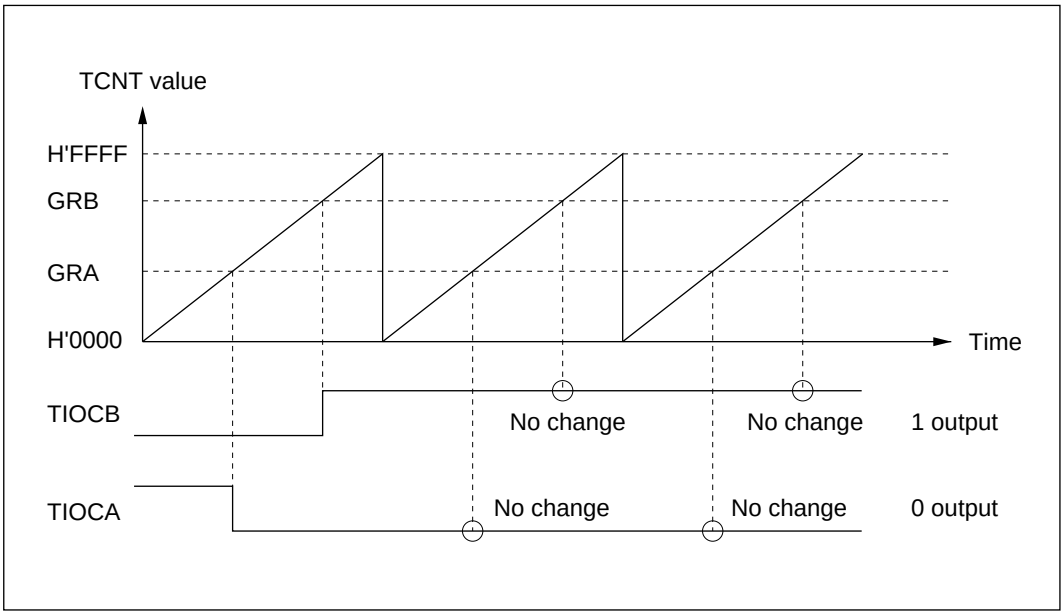


Figure 8-19 0 and 1 Output (Examples)

Figure 8-20 shows examples of toggle output. TCNT operates as a periodic counter, cleared by compare match B. Toggle output is selected for both compare match A and B.

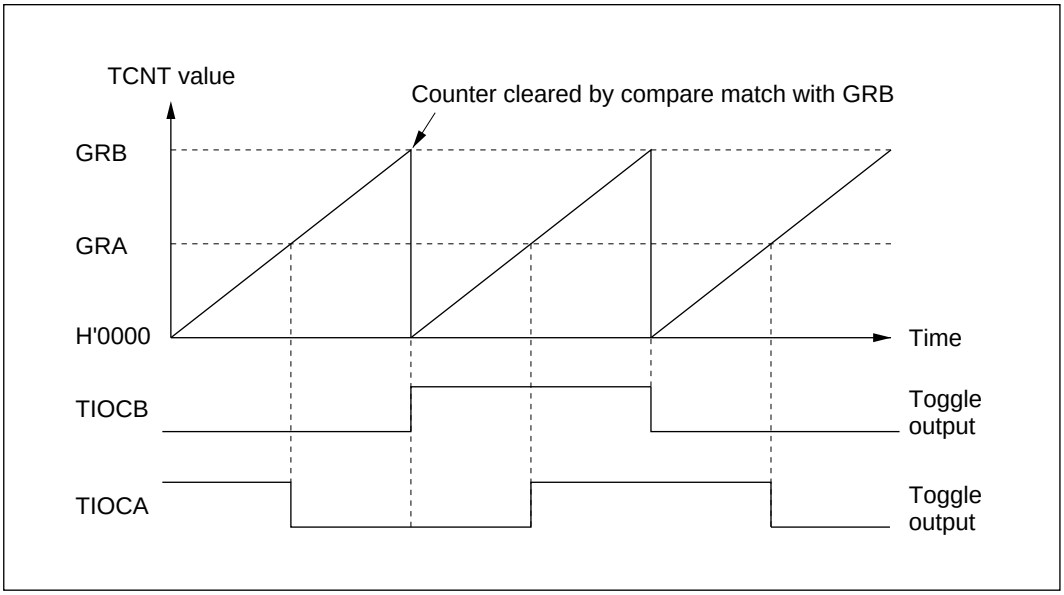


Figure 8-20 Toggle Output (Example)

- Output compare timing

  The compare match signal is generated in the last state in which TCNT and the general register match (when TCNT changes from the matching value to the next value). When the compare match signal is generated, the output value selected in TIOR is output at the output compare pin (TIOCA or TIOCB). When TCNT matches a general register, the compare match signal is not generated until the next counter clock pulse.
  Figure 8-21 shows the output compare timing.

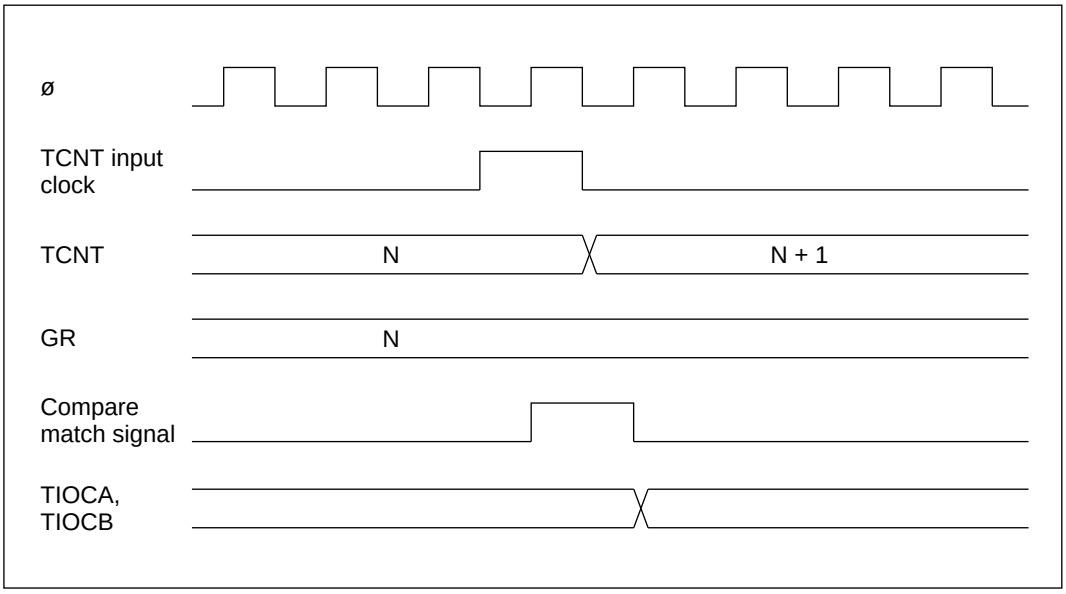


Figure 8-21 Output Compare Timing

Input Capture Function: The TCNT value can be captured into a general register when a transition occurs at an input capture/output compare pin (TIOCA or TIOCB). Capture can take place on the rising edge, falling edge, or both edges. The input capture function can be used to measure pulse width or period.

- Sample setup procedure for input capture

  Figure 8-22 shows a sample procedure for setting up input capture.

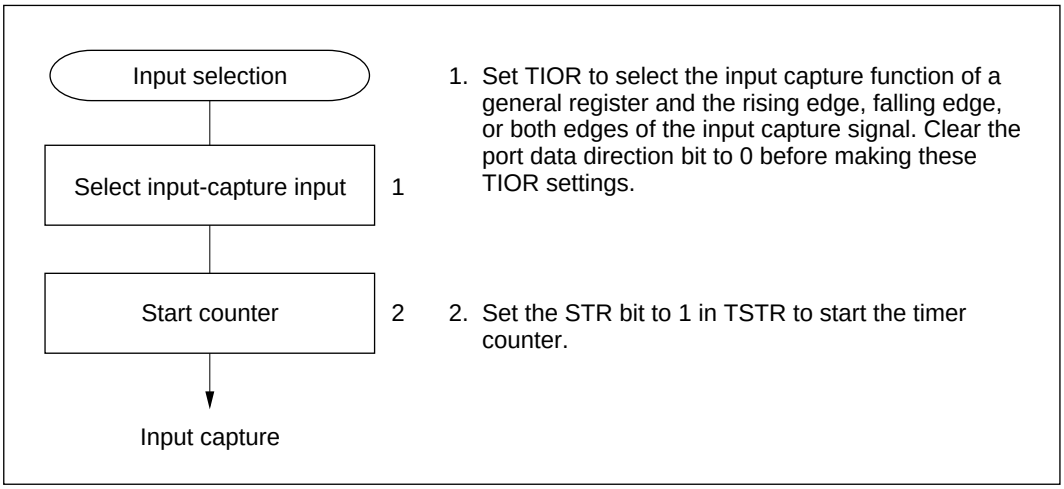


Figure 8-22 Setup Procedure for Input Capture (Example)

- Examples of input capture

  Figure 8-23 illustrates input capture when the falling edge of TIOCB and both edges of TIOCA are selected as capture edges. TCNT is cleared by input capture into GRB.

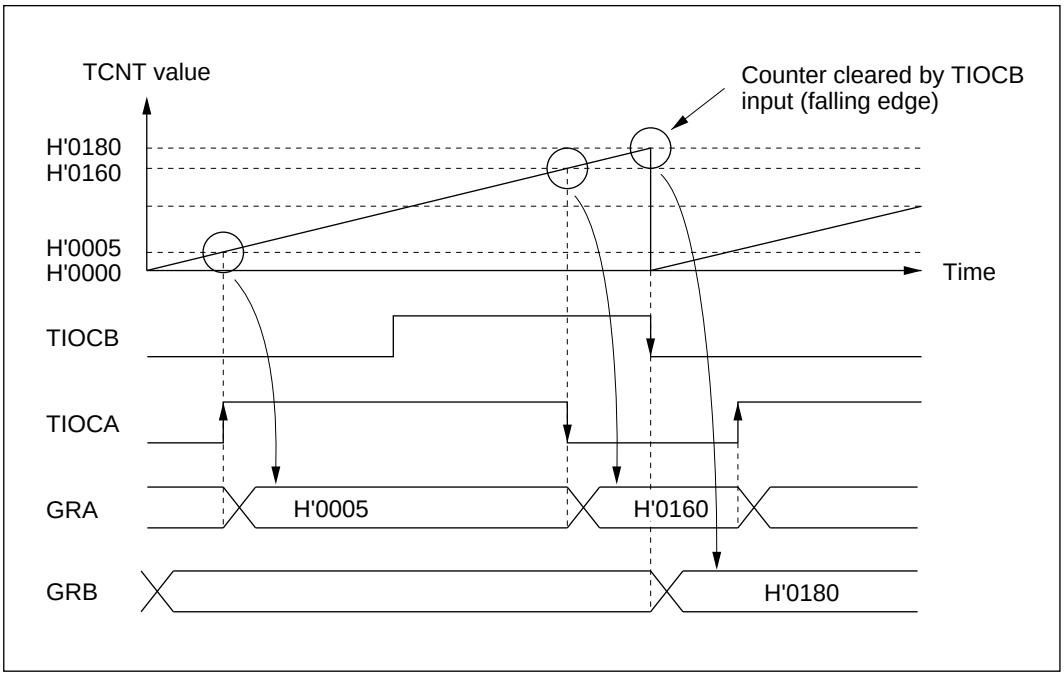


Figure 8-23 Input Capture (Example)

- Input capture signal timing

  Input capture on the rising edge, falling edge, or both edges can be selected by settings in TIOR. Figure 8-24 shows the timing when the rising edge is selected. The pulse width of the input capture signal must be at least 1.5 system clocks for single-edge capture, and 2.5 system clocks for capture of both edges.

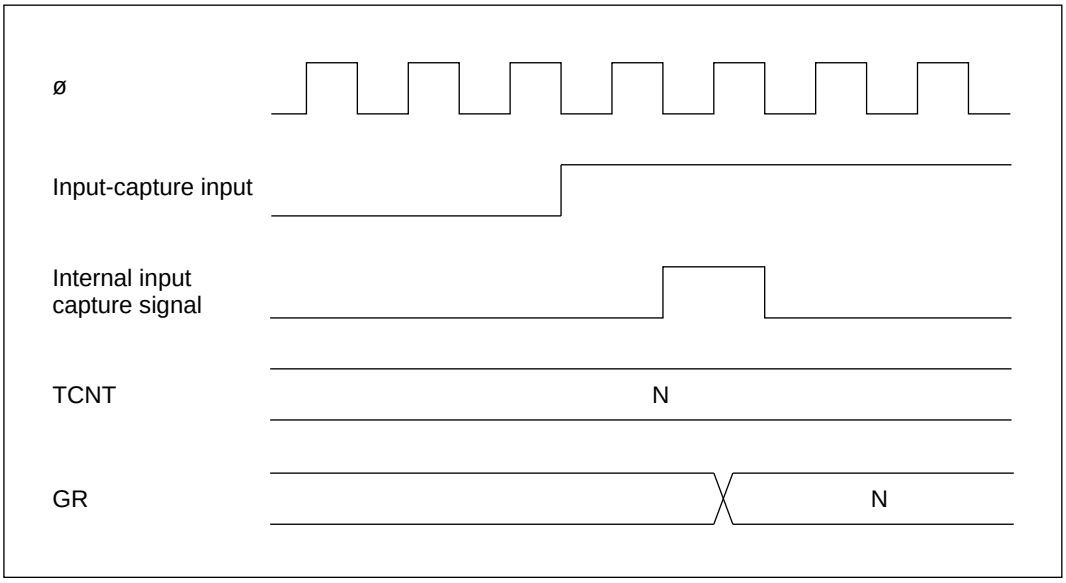
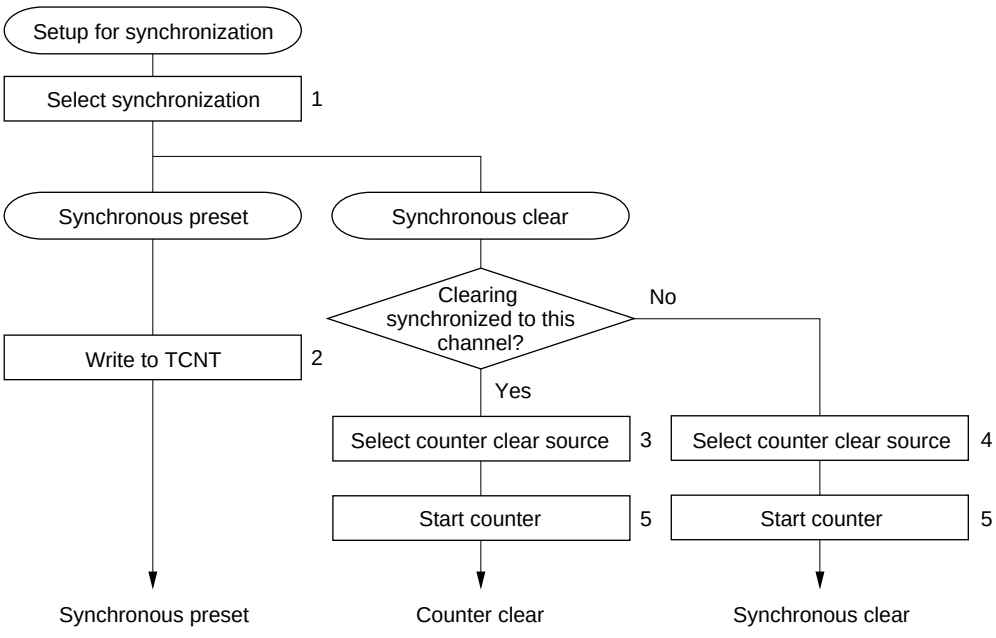


Figure 8-24 Input Capture Signal Timing

8.4.3 Synchronization

The synchronization function enables two or more timer counters to be synchronized by writing the same data to them simultaneously (synchronous preset). With appropriate TCR settings, two or more timer counters can also be cleared simultaneously (synchronous clear). Synchronization enables additional general registers to be associated with a single time base. Synchronization can be selected for all channels (0 to 4).

Sample Setup Procedure for Synchronization: Figure 8-25 shows a sample procedure for setting up synchronization.



1. Set the SYNC bits to 1 in TSNC for the channels to be synchronized.
2. When a value is written in TCNT in one of the synchronized channels, the same value is simultaneously written in TCNT in the other channels (synchronized preset).
3. Set the CCLR1 or CCLR0 bit in TCR to have the counter cleared by compare match or input capture.
4. Set the CCLR1 and CCLR0 bits in TCR to have the counter cleared synchronously.
5. Set the STR bits in TSTR to 1 to start the synchronized counters.

Figure 8-25 Setup Procedure for Synchronization (Example)

Example of Synchronization: Figure 8-26 shows an example of synchronization. Channels 0, 1, and 2 are synchronized, and are set to operate in PWM mode. Channel 0 is set for counter clearing by compare match with GRB0. Channels 1 and 2 are set for synchronous counter clearing. The timer counters in channels 0, 1, and 2 are synchronously preset, and are synchronously cleared by compare match with GRB0. A three-phase PWM waveform is output from pins TIOCA0, TIOCA1, and TIOCA2. For further information on PWM mode, see section 8.4.4, PWM Mode.

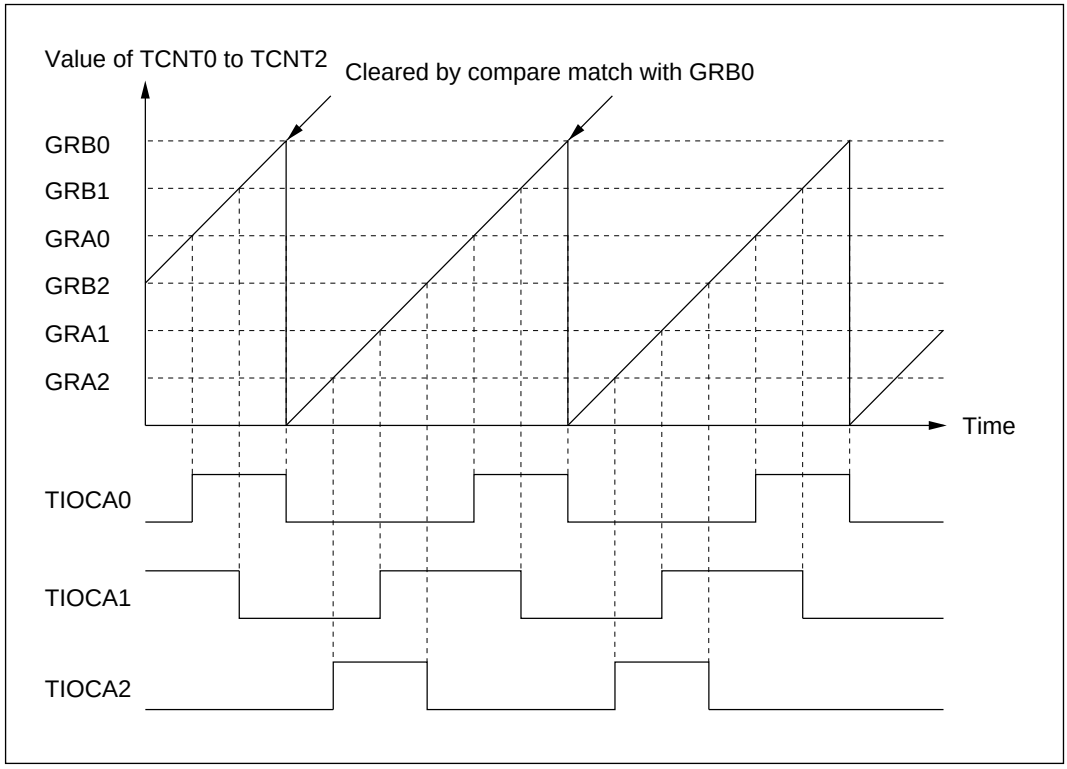


Figure 8-26 Synchronization (Example)

8.4.4 PWM Mode

In PWM mode GRA and GRB are paired and a PWM waveform is output from the TIOCA pin. GRA specifies the time at which the PWM output changes to 1. GRB specifies the time at which the PWM output changes to 0. If either GRA or GRB is selected as the counter clear source, a PWM waveform with a duty cycle from 0% to 100% is output at the TIOCA pin. PWM mode can be selected in all channels (0 to 4).

Table 8-4 summarizes the PWM output pins and corresponding registers. If the same value is set in GRA and GRB, the output does not change when compare match occurs.

Table 8-4 PWM Output Pins and Registers

Channel	Output Pin	1 Output	0 Output
0	TIOCA0	GRA0	GRB0
1	TIOCA1	GRA1	GRB1
2	TIOCA2	GRA2	GRB2
3	TIOCA3	GRA3	GRB3
4	TIOCA4	GRA4	GRB4

Sample Setup Procedure for PWM Mode: Figure 8-27 shows a sample procedure for setting up PWM mode.

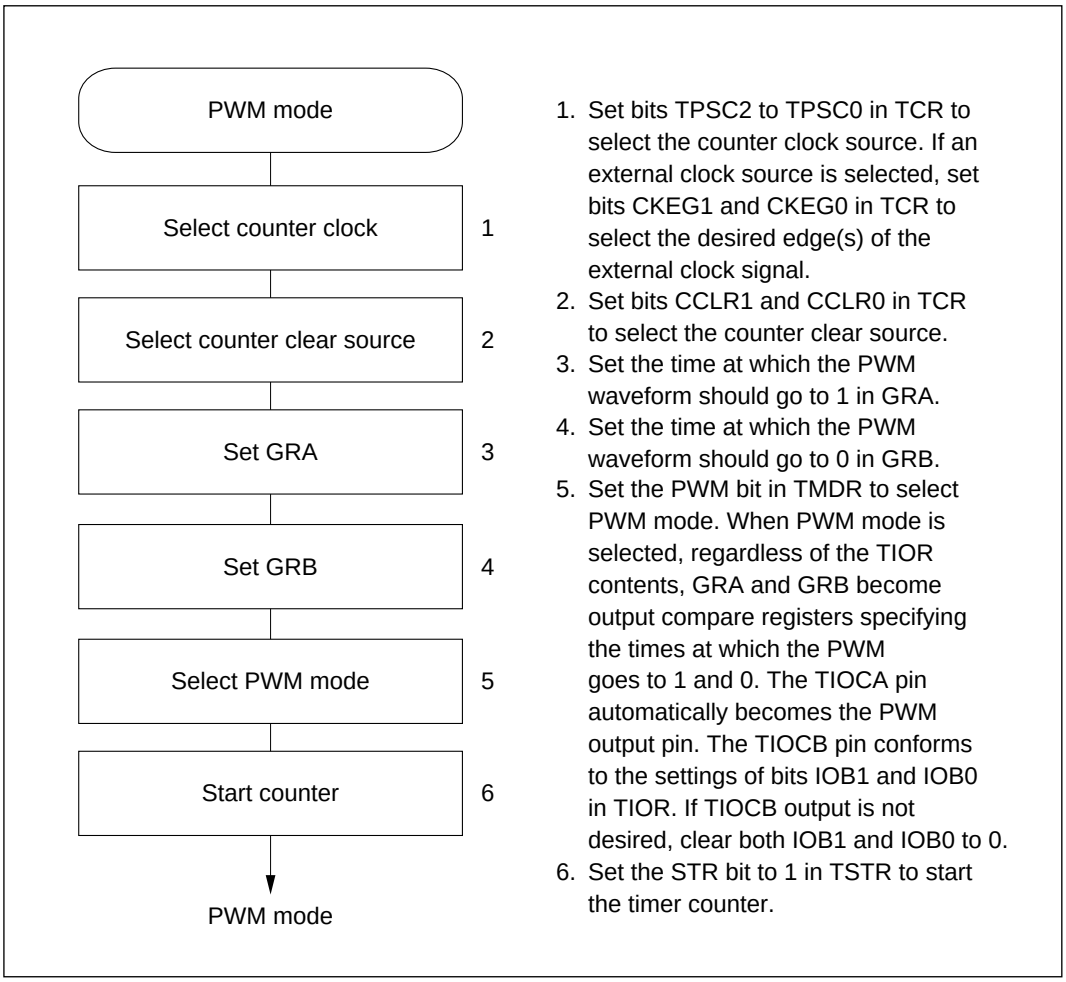


Figure 8-27 Setup Procedure for PWM Mode (Example)

Examples of PWM Mode: Figure 8-28 shows examples of operation in PWM mode. The PWM waveform is output from the TIOCA pin. The output goes to 1 at compare match with GRA, and to 0 at compare match with GRB.

In the examples shown, TCNT is cleared by compare match with GRA or GRB. Synchronized operation and free-running counting are also possible.

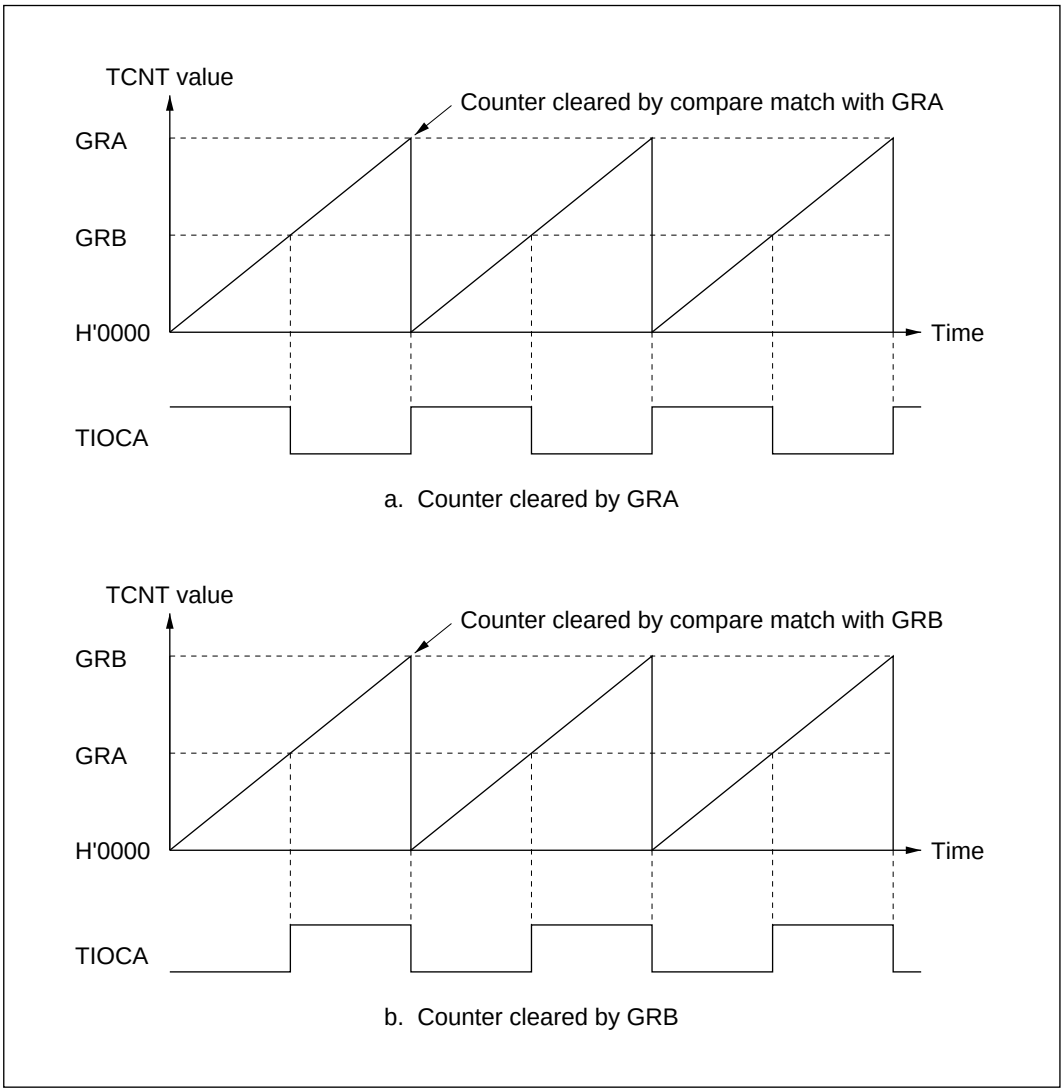


Figure 8-28 PWM Mode (Example 1)

Figure 8-29 shows examples of the output of PWM waveforms with duty cycles of 0% and 100%. If the counter is cleared by compare match with GRB, and GRA is set to a higher value than GRB, the duty cycle is 0%. If the counter is cleared by compare match with GRA, and GRB is set to a higher value than GRA, the duty cycle is 100%.

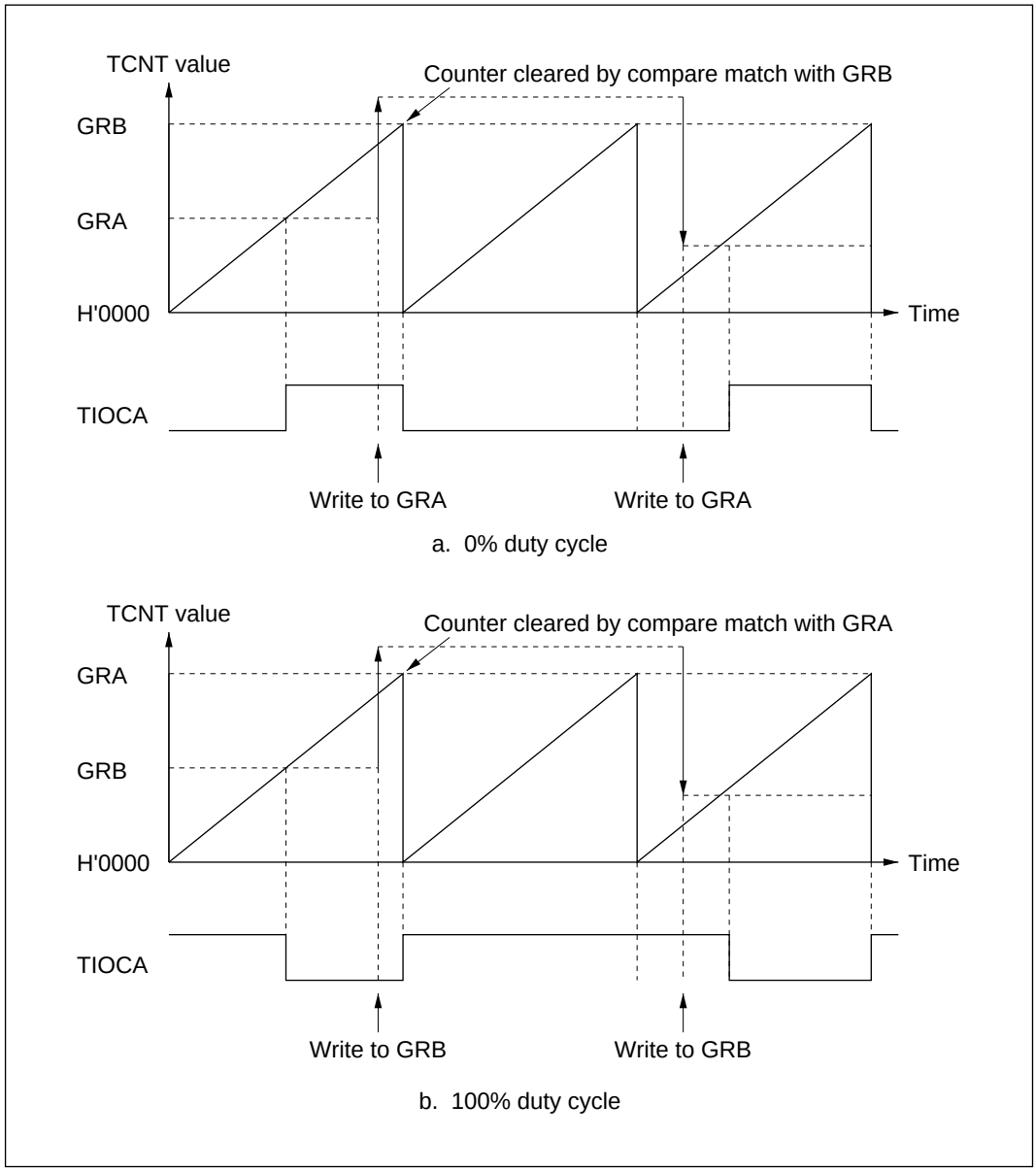


Figure 8-29 PWM Mode (Example 2)

8.4.5 Phase Counting Mode

In phase counting mode the phase difference between two external clock inputs (at the TCLKA and TCLKB pins) is detected, and TCNT2 counts up or down accordingly.

In phase counting mode, the TCLKA and TCLKB pins automatically function as external clock input pins and TCNT2 becomes an up/down-counter, regardless of the settings of bits TPSC2 to TPSC0, CKEG1, and CKEG0 in TCR2. Settings of bits CCLR1, CCLR0 in TCR2, and settings in TIOR2, TIER2, TSR2, GRA2, and GRB2 are valid. The input capture and output compare functions can be used, and interrupts can be generated.

Phase counting is available only in channel 2.

Sample Setup Procedure for Phase Counting Mode: Figure 8-30 shows a sample procedure for setting up phase counting mode.

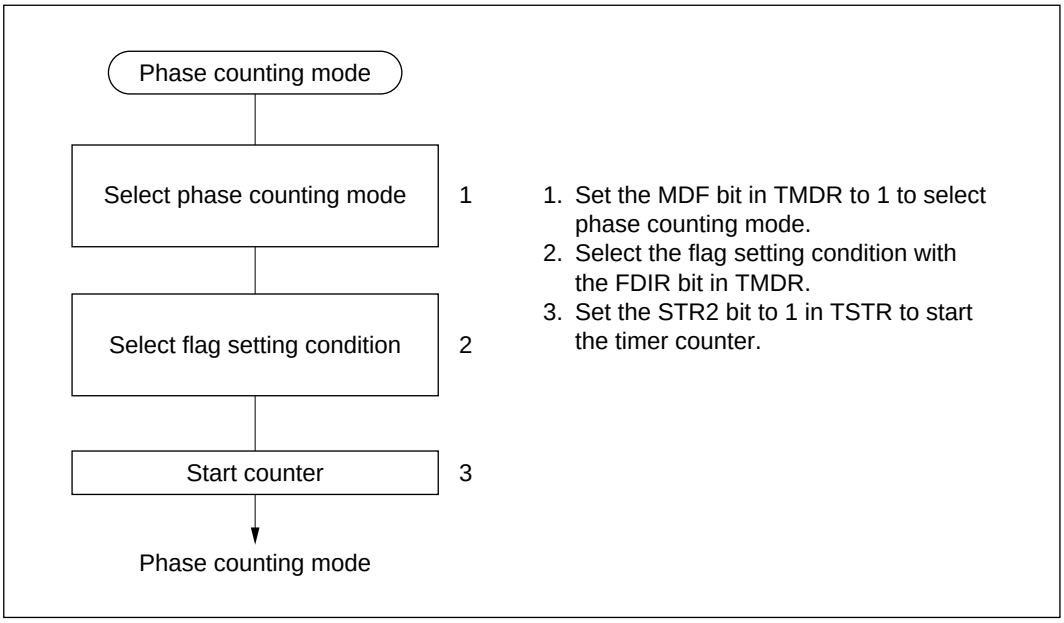


Figure 8-30 Setup Procedure for Phase Counting Mode (Example)

Example of Phase Counting Mode: Figure 8-31 shows an example of operations in phase counting mode. Table 8-5 lists the up-counting and down-counting conditions for TCNT2.

In phase counting mode both the rising and falling edges of TCLKA and TCLKB are counted. The phase difference between TCLKA and TCLKB must be at least 1.5 states, the phase overlap must also be at least 1.5 states, and the pulse width must be at least 2.5 states. See figure 8-32.

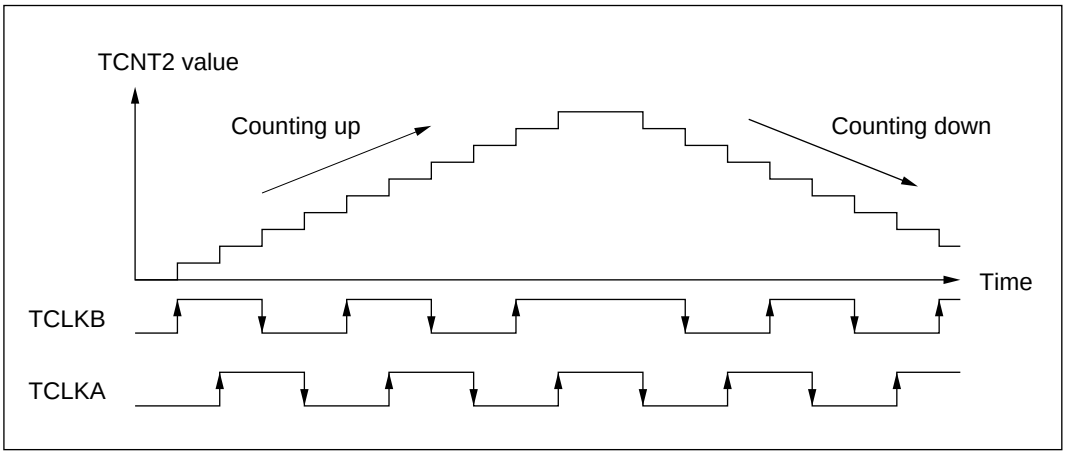


Figure 8-31 Operation in Phase Counting Mode (Example)

Table 8-5 Up/Down Counting Conditions

Counting Direction	Up-Counting				Down-Counting			
TCLKB	↑	High	↓	Low	High	↓	Low	↑
TCLKA	Low	↑	High	↓	↓	Low	↑	High

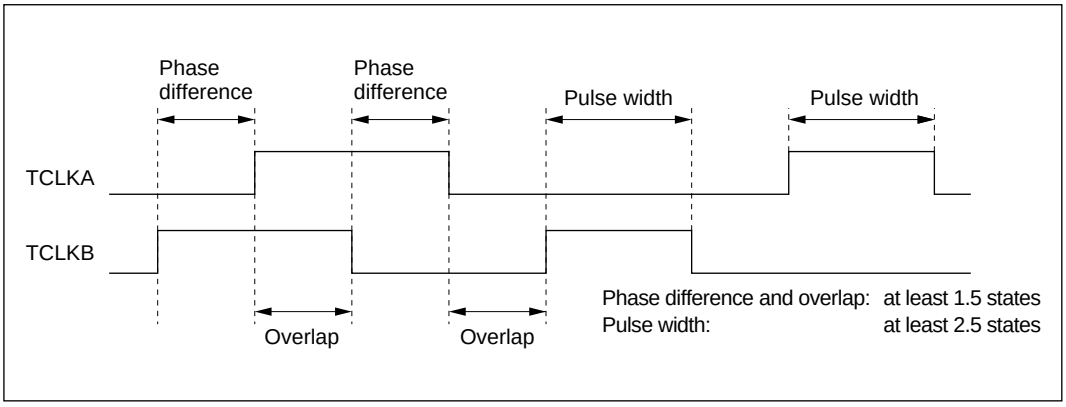


Figure 8-32 Phase Difference, Overlap, and Pulse Width in Phase Counting Mode

8.4.6 Buffering

Buffering operates differently depending on whether a general register is an output compare register or an input capture register. Buffering is available only in channels 3 and 4. Buffering operations under the conditions mentioned above are described next.

- General register used for output compare

  The buffer register value is transferred to the general register at compare match. See figure 8-33.

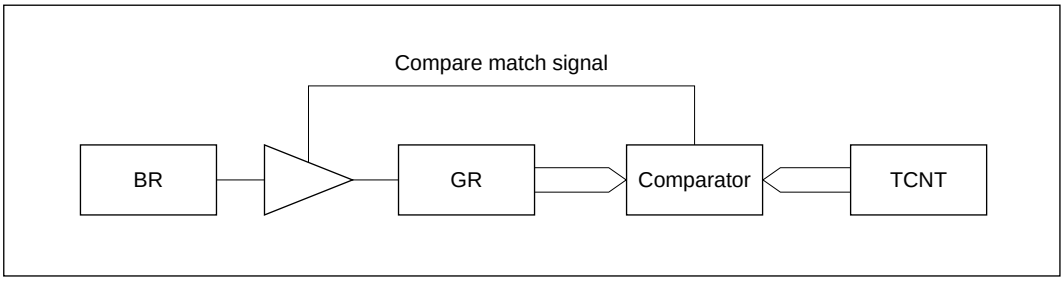


Figure 8-33 Compare Match Buffering

- General register used for input capture

  The TCNT value is transferred to the general register at input capture. The previous general register value is transferred to the buffer register.
  See figure 8-34.

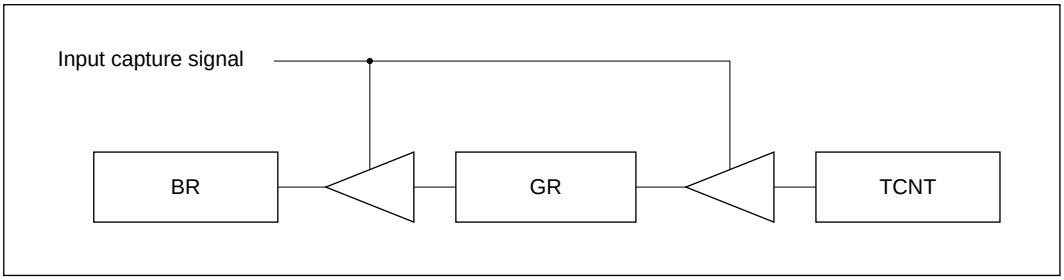


Figure 8-34 Input Capture Buffering

Sample Buffering Setup Procedure: Figure 8-35 shows a sample buffering setup procedure.

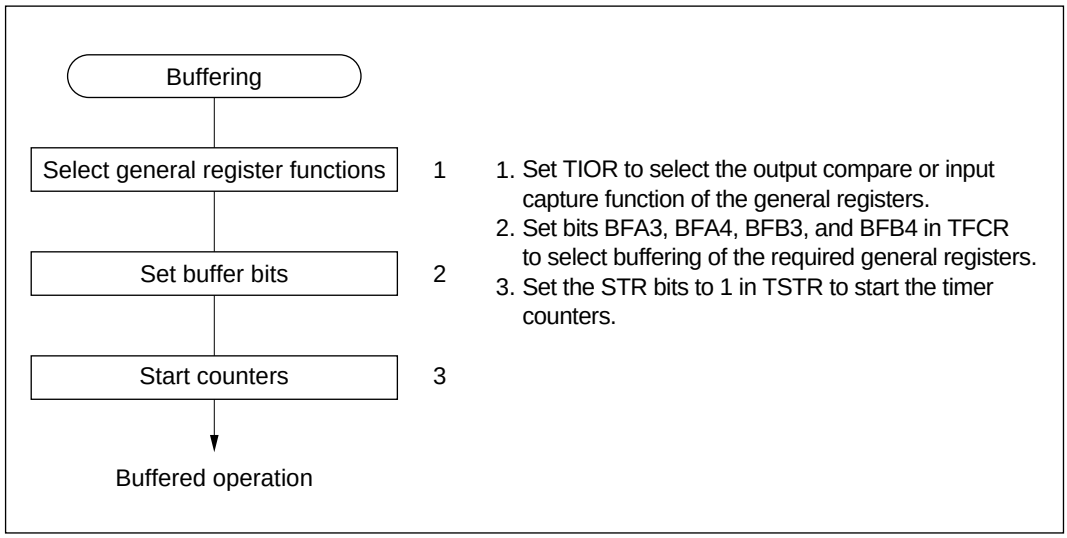


Figure 8-35 Buffering Setup Procedure (Example)

Examples of Buffering: Figure 8-36 shows an example in which GRA is set to function as an output compare register buffered by BRA, TCNT is set to operate as a periodic counter cleared by GRB compare match, and TIOCA and TIOCB are set to toggle at compare match A and B. Because of the buffer setting, when TIOCA toggles at compare match A, the BRA value is simultaneously transferred to GRA. This operation is repeated each time compare match A occurs. Figure 8-37 shows the transfer timing.

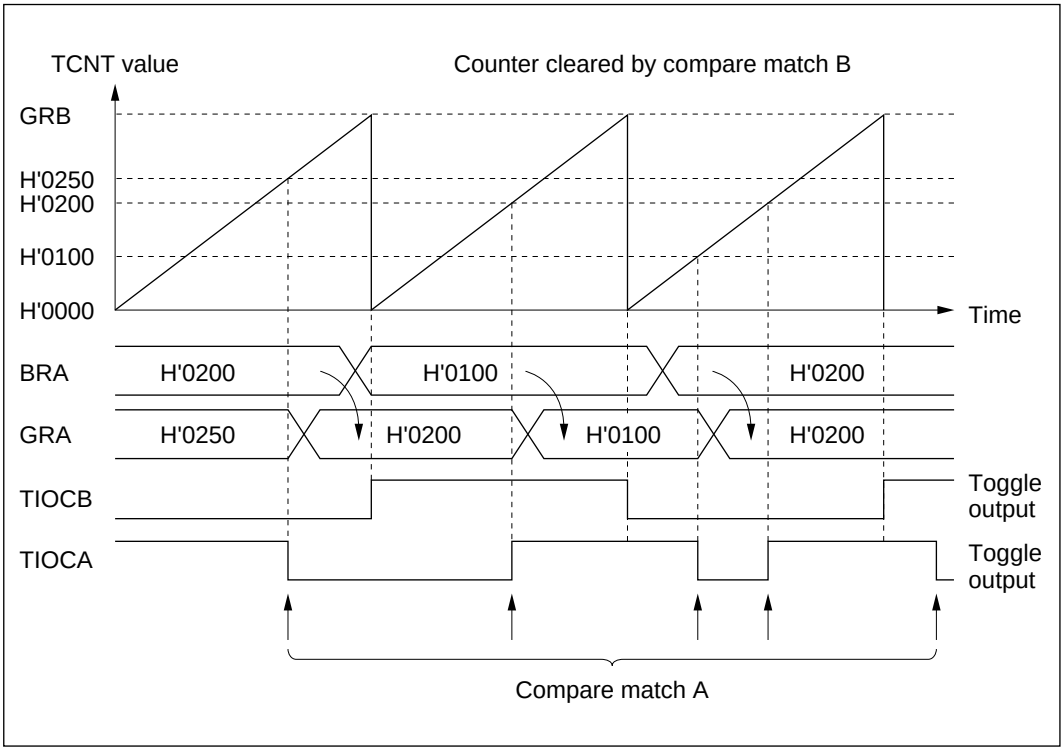


Figure 8-36 Register Buffering (Example 1: Buffering of Output Compare Register)

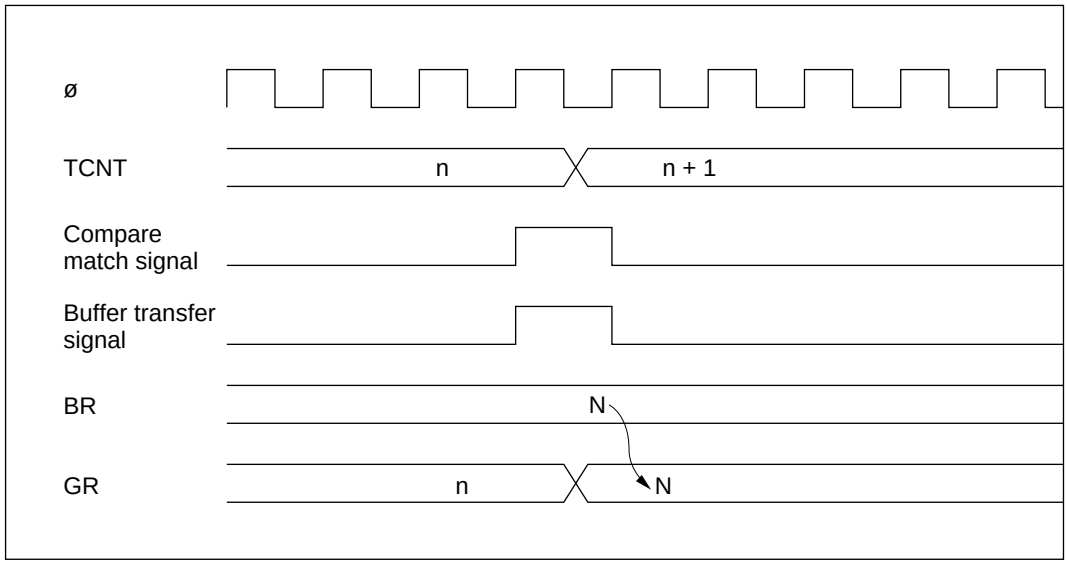


Figure 8-37 Compare Match and Buffer Transfer Timing (Example)

Figure 8-38 shows an example in which GRA is set to function as an input capture register buffered by BRA, and TCNT is cleared by input capture B. The falling edge is selected as the input capture edge at TIOCB. Both edges are selected as input capture edges at TIOCA. Because of the buffer setting, when the TCNT value is captured into GRA at input capture A, the previous GRA value is simultaneously transferred to BRA. Figure 8-39 shows the transfer timing.

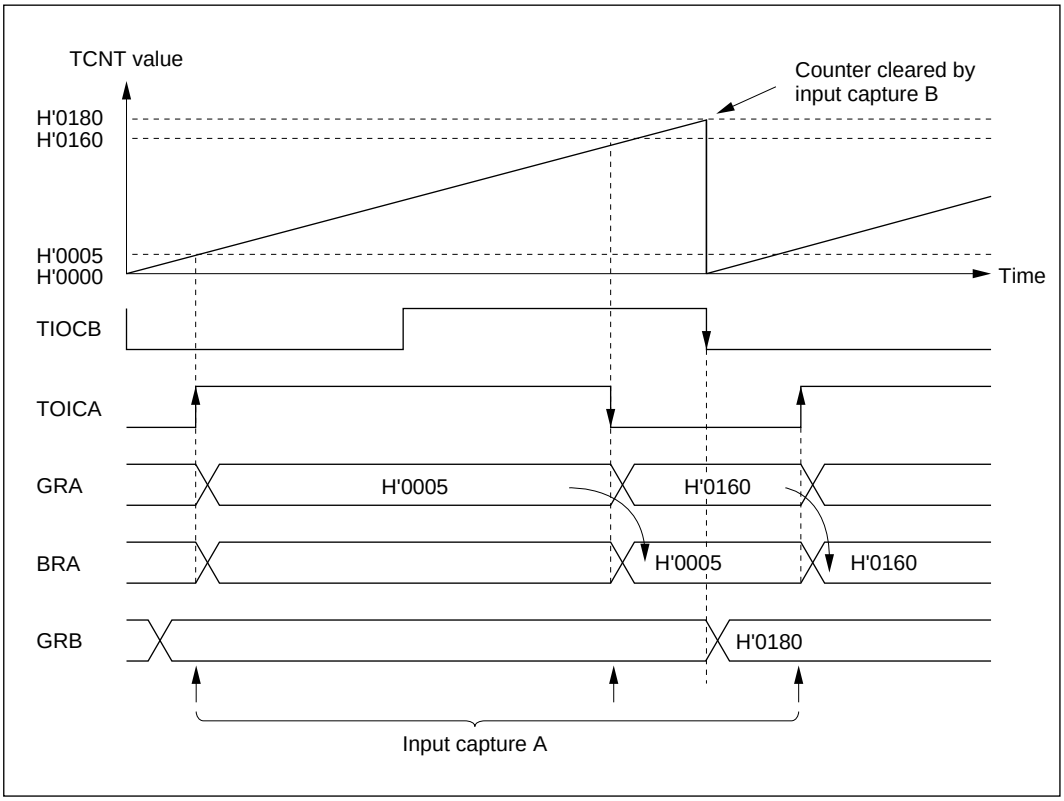


Figure 8-38 Register Buffering (Example 2: Buffering of Input Capture Register)

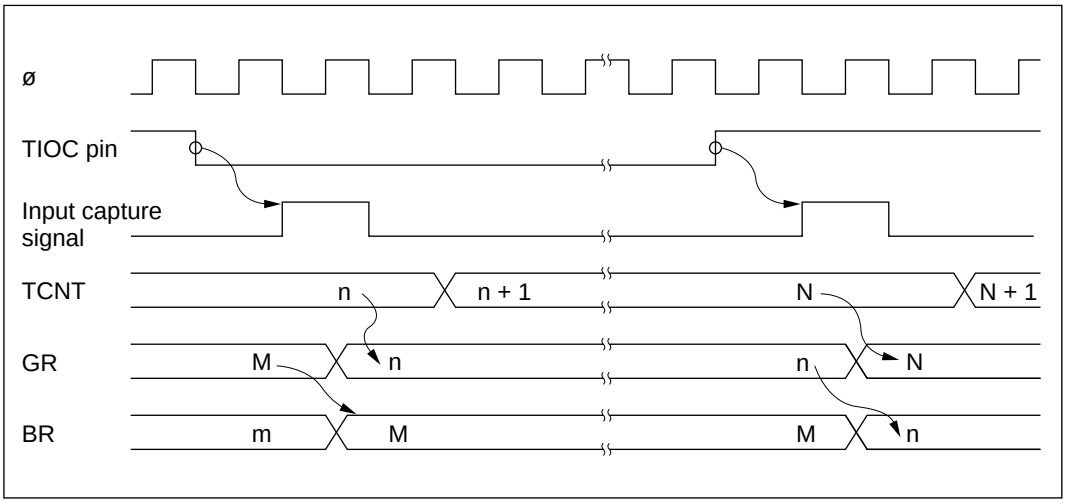


Figure 8-39 Input Capture and Buffer Transfer Timing (Example)

8.4.7 ITU Output Timing

The ITU outputs from channels 3 and 4 can be disabled by bit settings in TOER or by an external trigger, or inverted by bit settings in TOCR.

Timing of Enabling and Disabling of ITU Output by TOER: In this example an ITU output is disabled by clearing a master enable bit to 0 in TOER. An arbitrary value can be output by appropriate settings of the data register (DR) and data direction register (DDR) of the corresponding input/output port. Figure 8-40 illustrates the timing of the enabling and disabling of ITU output by TOER.

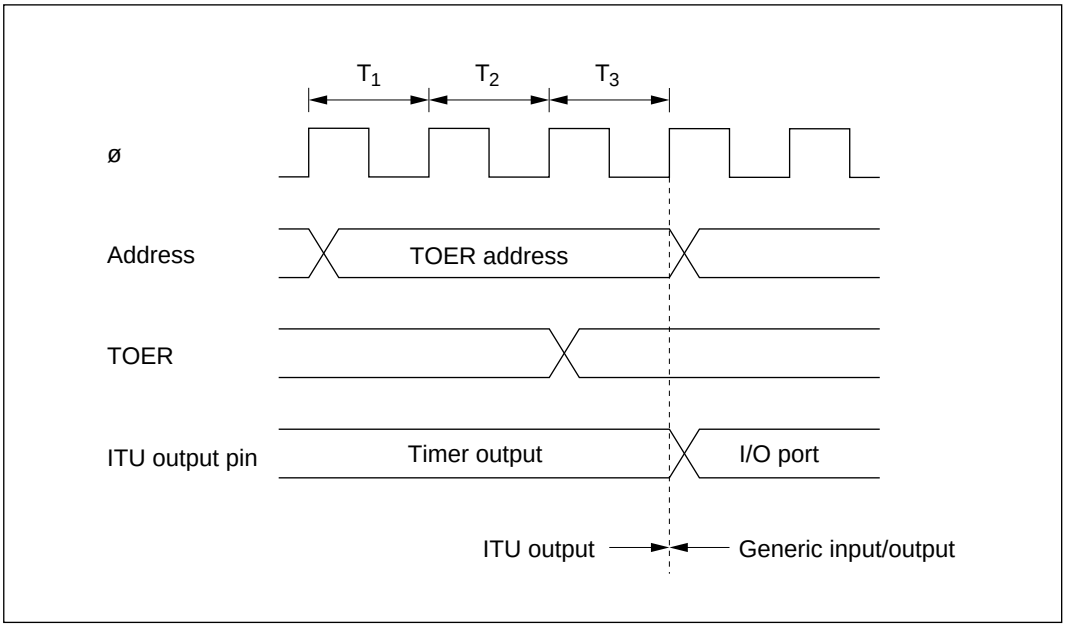


Figure 8-40 Timing of Disabling of ITU Output by Writing to TOER (Example)

8.5 Interrupts

The ITU has two types of interrupts: input capture/compare match interrupts, and overflow interrupts.

8.5.1 Setting of Status Flags

Timing of Setting of IMFA and IMFB at Compare Match: IMFA and IMFB are set to 1 by a compare match signal generated when TCNT matches a general register (GR). The compare match signal is generated in the last state in which the values match (when TCNT is updated from the matching count to the next count). Therefore, when TCNT matches a general register, the compare match signal is not generated until the next timer clock input. Figure 8-41 shows the timing of the setting of IMFA and IMFB.

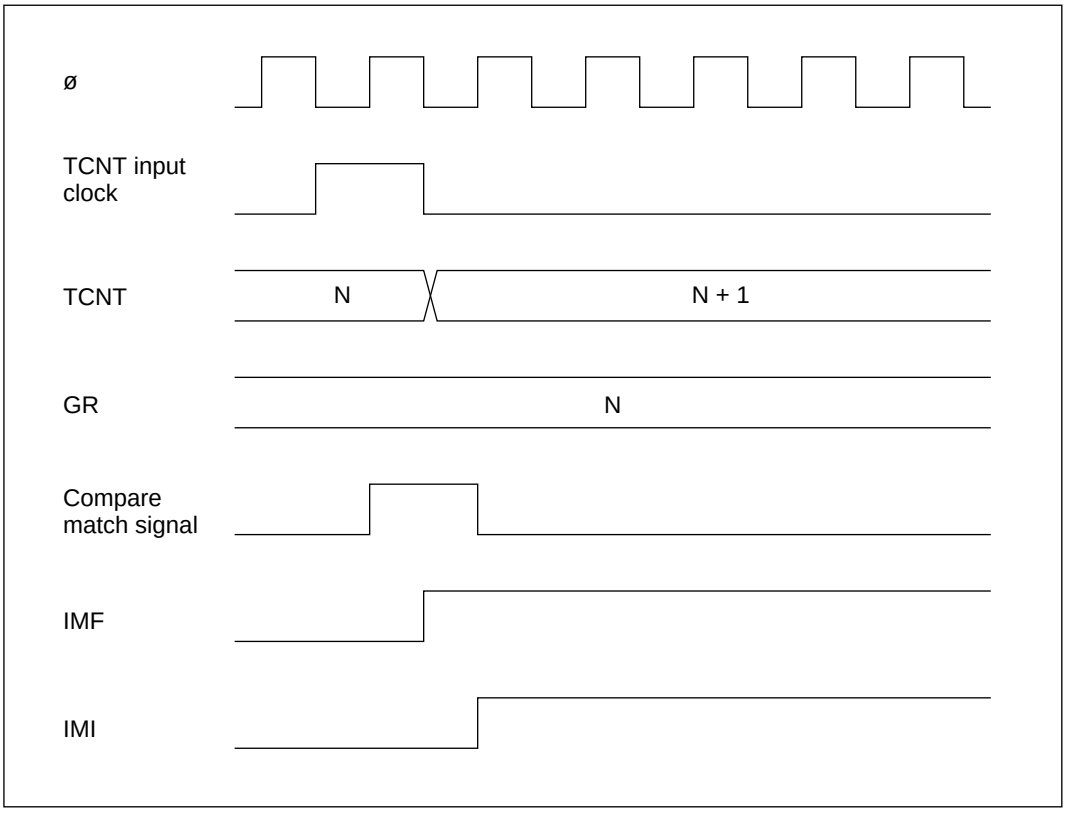


Figure 8-41 Timing of Setting of IMFA and IMFB by Compare Match

Timing of Setting of IMFA and IMFB by Input Capture: IMFA and IMFB are set to 1 by an input capture signal. The TCNT contents are simultaneously transferred to the corresponding general register. Figure 8-42 shows the timing.

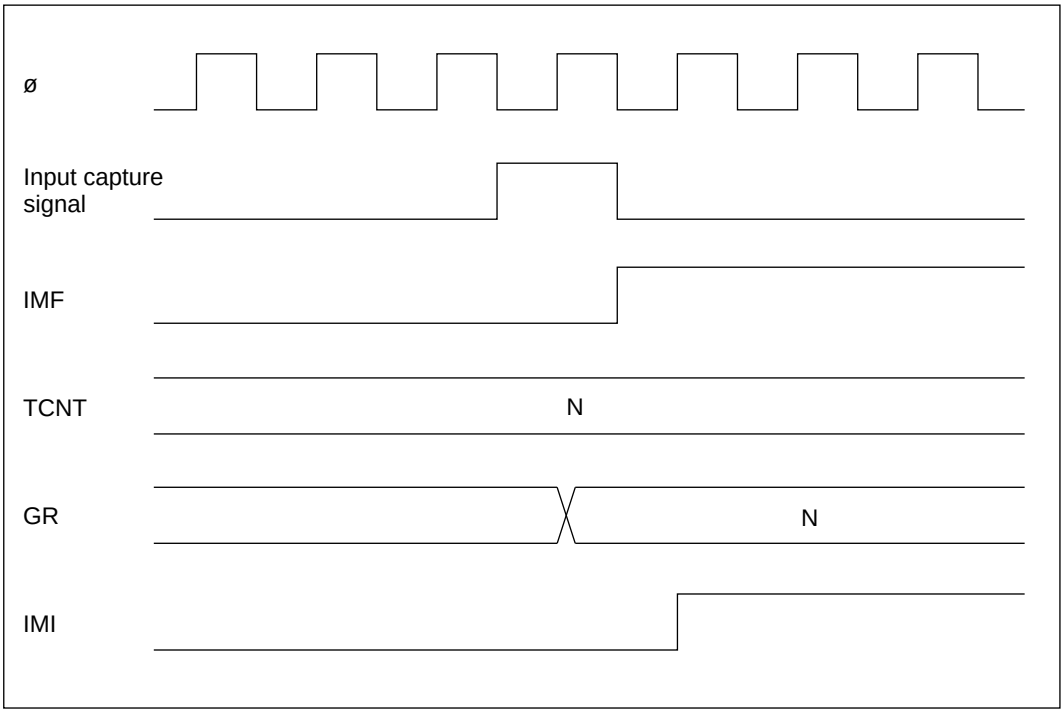


Figure 8-42 Timing of Setting of IMFA and IMFB by Input Capture

Timing of Setting of Overflow Flag (OVF): OVF is set to 1 when TCNT overflows from H'FFFF to H'0000 or underflows from H'0000 to H'FFFF. Figure 8-43 shows the timing.

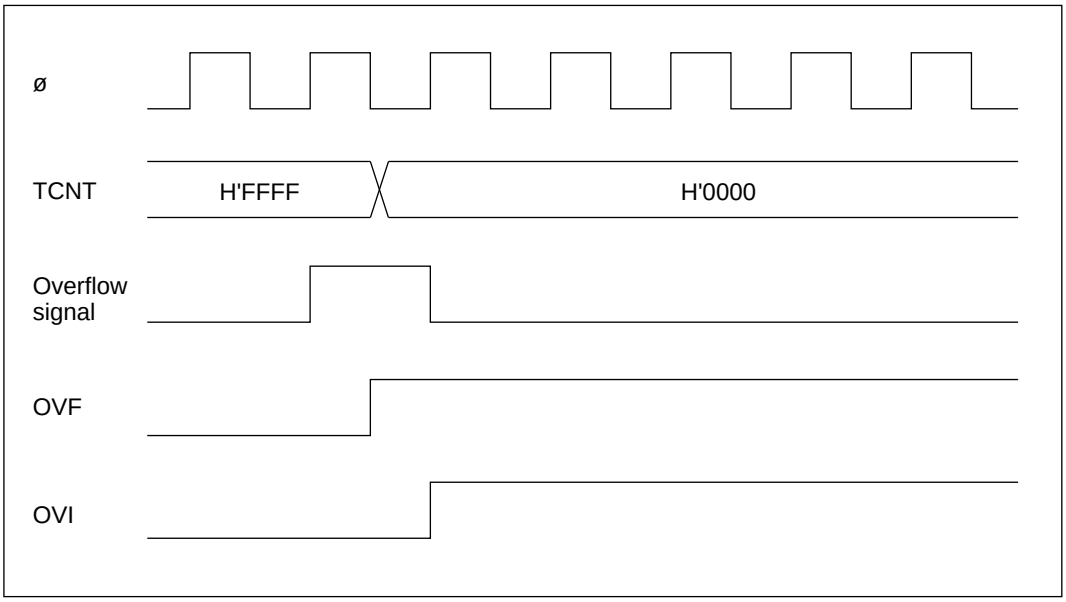


Figure 8-43 Timing of Setting of OVF

8.5.2 Clearing of Status Flags

If the CPU reads a status flag while it is set to 1, then writes 0 in the status flag, the status flag is cleared. Figure 8-44 shows the timing.

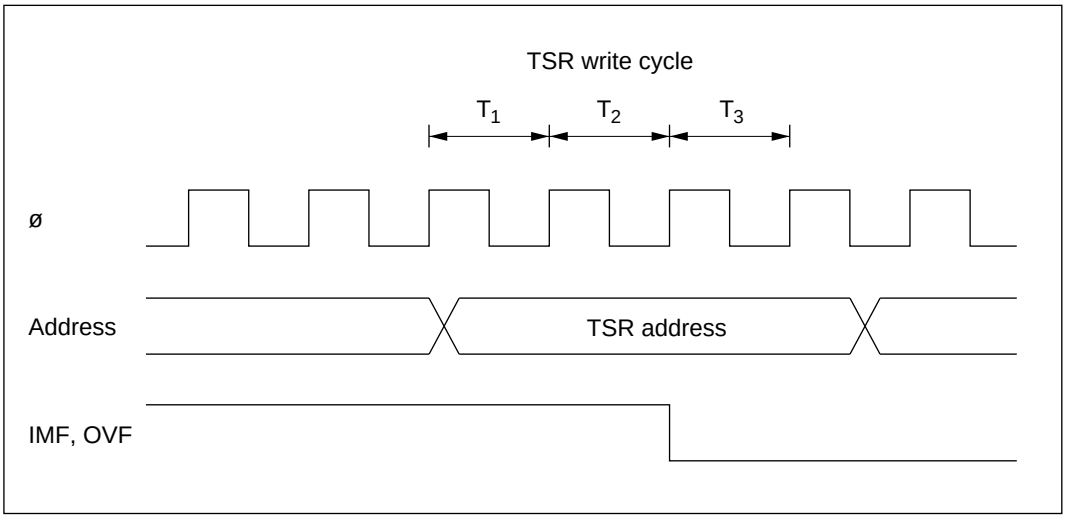


Figure 8-44 Timing of Clearing of Status Flags

8.5.3 Interrupt Sources

Each ITU channel can generate a compare match/input capture A interrupt, a compare match/input capture B interrupt, and an overflow interrupt. In total there are 15 interrupt sources, all independently vectored. An interrupt is requested when the interrupt request flag and interrupt enable bit are both set to 1.

The priority order of the channels can be modified in interrupt priority registers A and B (IPRA and IPRB). For details see section 5, Interrupt Controller.

Table 8-6 lists the interrupt sources.

Table 8-6 ITU Interrupt Sources

Channel	Interrupt Source	Description	Priority*
0	IMIA0	Compare match/input capture A0	High
	IMIB0	Compare match/input capture B0	
	OVI0	Overflow 0	
1	IMIA1	Compare match/input capture A1	
	IMIB1	Compare match/input capture B1	
	OVI1	Overflow 1	
2	IMIA2	Compare match/input capture A2	
	IMIB2	Compare match/input capture B2	
	OVI2	Overflow 2	
3	IMIA3	Compare match/input capture A3	
	IMIB3	Compare match/input capture B3	
	OVI3	Overflow 3	
4	IMIA4	Compare match/input capture A4	
	IMIB4	Compare match/input capture B4	
	OVI4	Overflow 4	Low

Note: * The priority immediately after a reset is indicated. Inter-channel priorities can be changed by settings in IPRA and IPRB.

8.6 Usage Notes

This section describes contention and other matters requiring special attention during ITU operations.

Contention between TCNT Write and Clear: If a counter clear signal occurs in the T_3 state of a TCNT write cycle, clearing of the counter takes priority and the write is not performed. See figure 8-45.

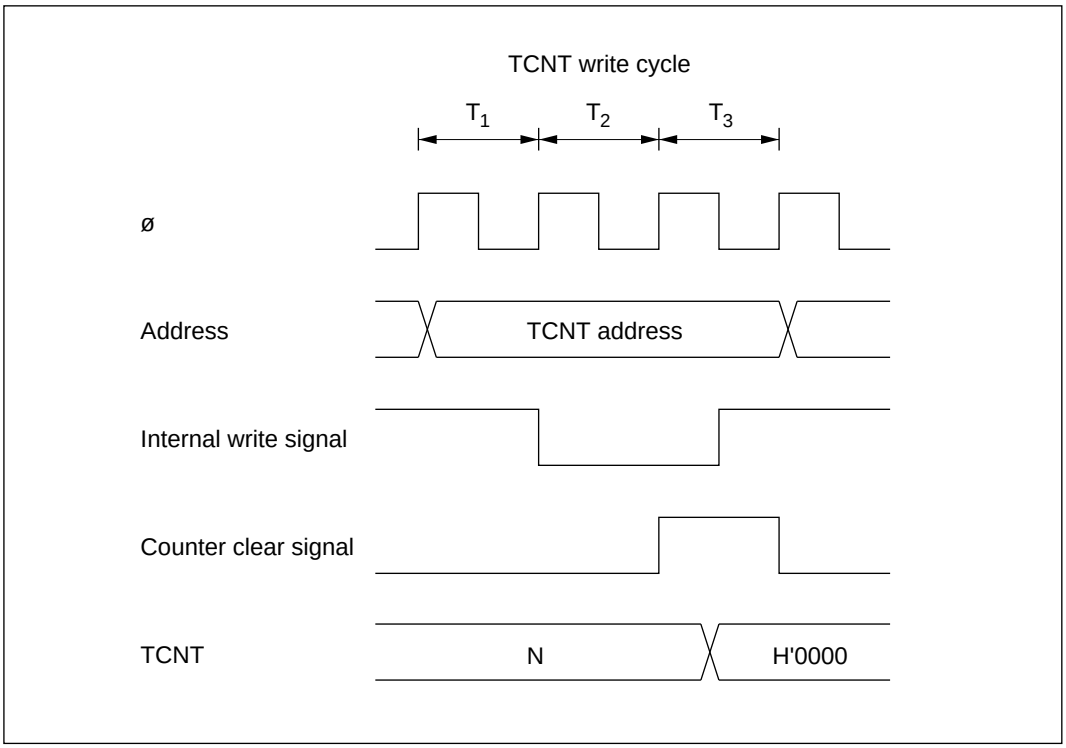


Figure 8-45 Contention between TCNT Write and Clear

Contention between TCNT Word Write and Increment: If an increment pulse occurs in the T_3 state of a TCNT word write cycle, writing takes priority and TCNT is not incremented. See figure 8-46.

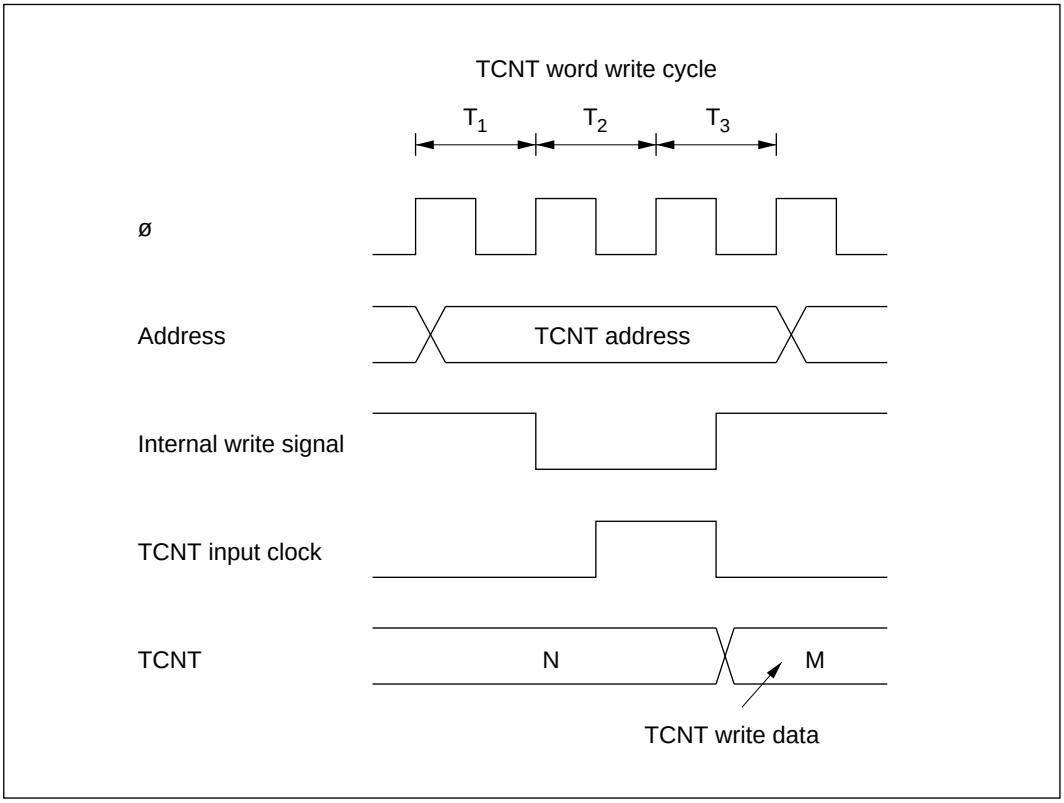


Figure 8-46 Contention between TCNT Word Write and Increment

Contention between TCNT Byte Write and Increment: If an increment pulse occurs in the T_2 or T_3 state of a TCNT byte write cycle, writing takes priority and TCNT is not incremented. The TCNT byte that was not written retains its previous value. See figure 8-47, which shows an increment pulse occurring in the T_2 state of a byte write to TCNTH.

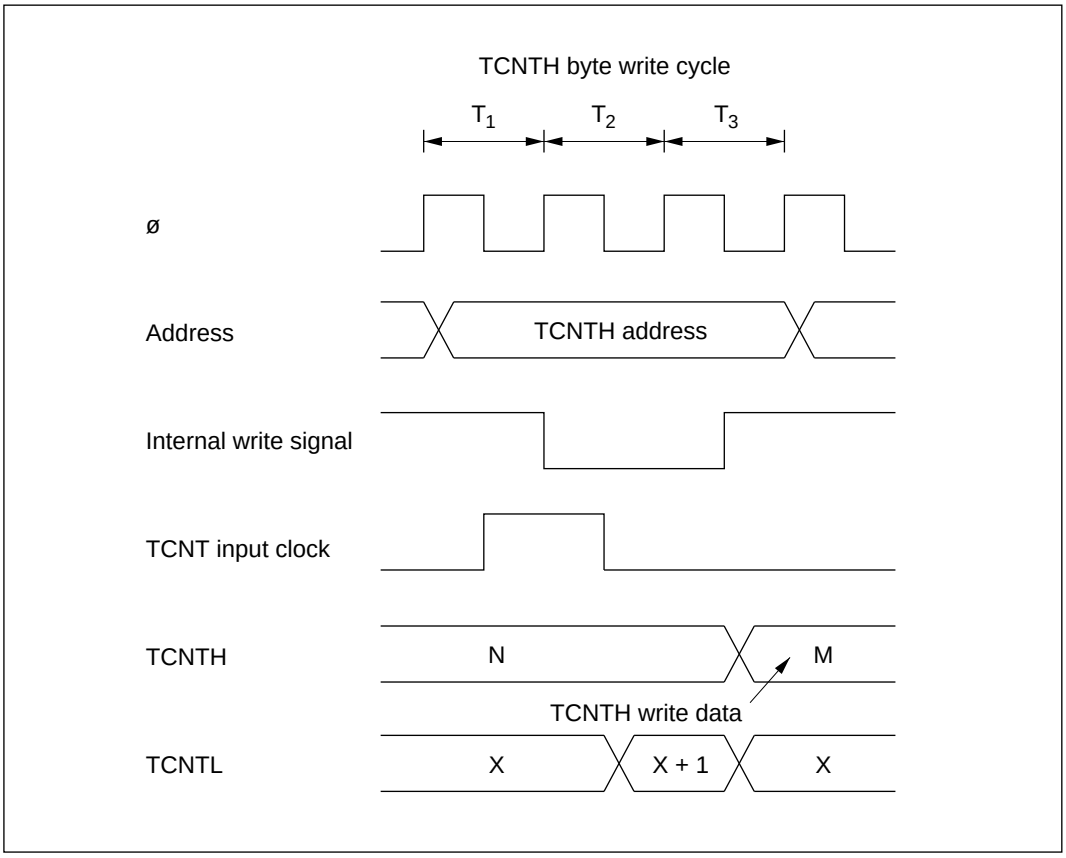


Figure 8-47 Contention between TCNT Byte Write and Increment

Contention between General Register Write and Compare Match: If a compare match occurs in the T_3 state of a general register write cycle, writing takes priority and the compare match signal is inhibited. See figure 8-48.

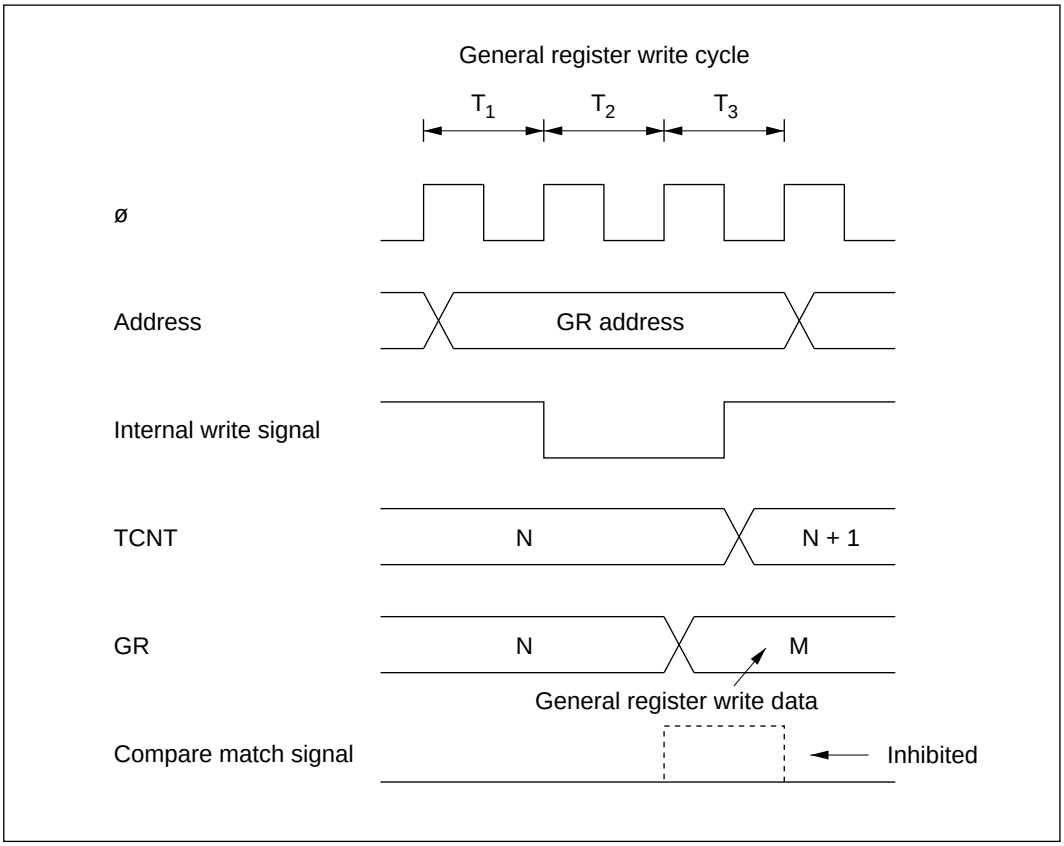


Figure 8-48 Contention between General Register Write and Compare Match

Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow or Underflow: If an overflow occurs in the T_3 state of a TCNT write cycle, writing takes priority and the counter is not incremented. OVF is set to 1.The same holds for underflow. See figure 8-49.

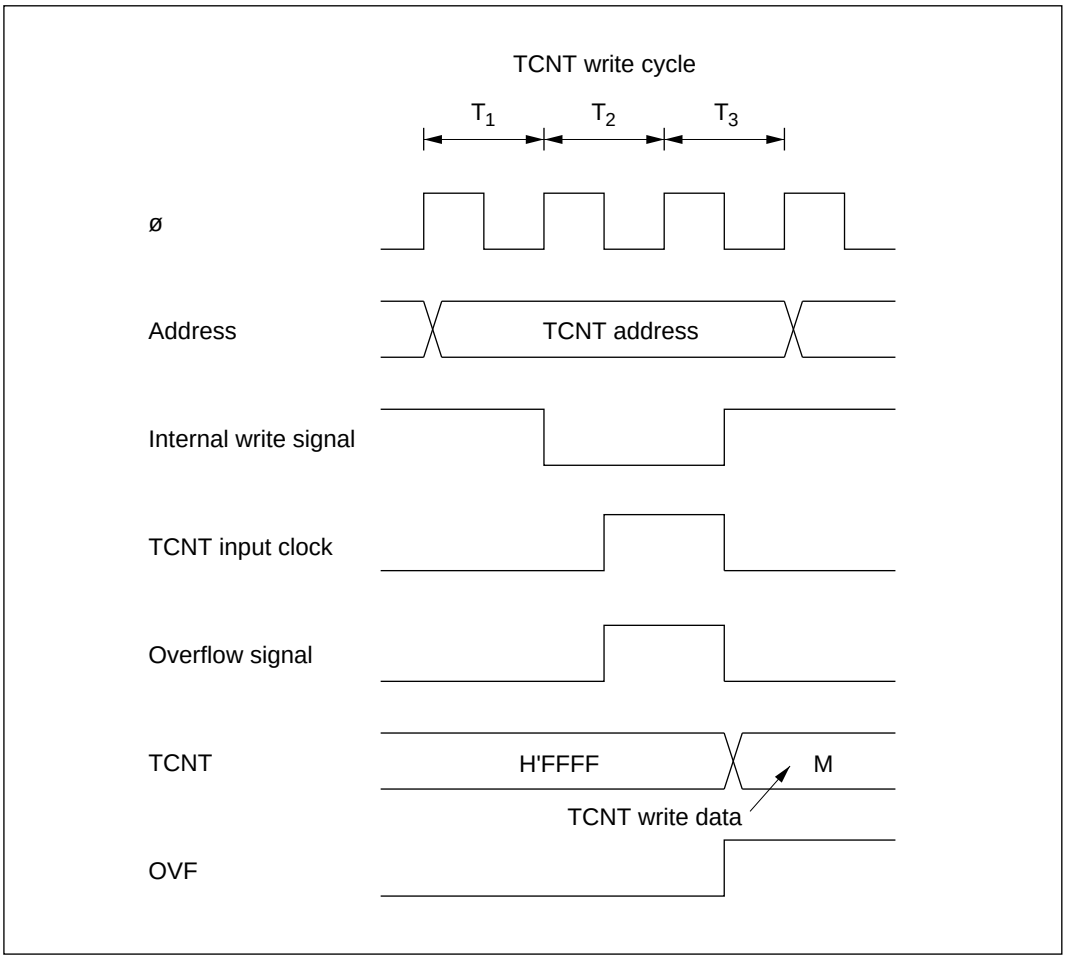


Figure 8-49 Contention between TCNT Write and Overflow

Contention between General Register Read and Input Capture: If an input capture signal occurs during the T_3 state of a general register read cycle, the value before input capture is read. See figure 8-50.

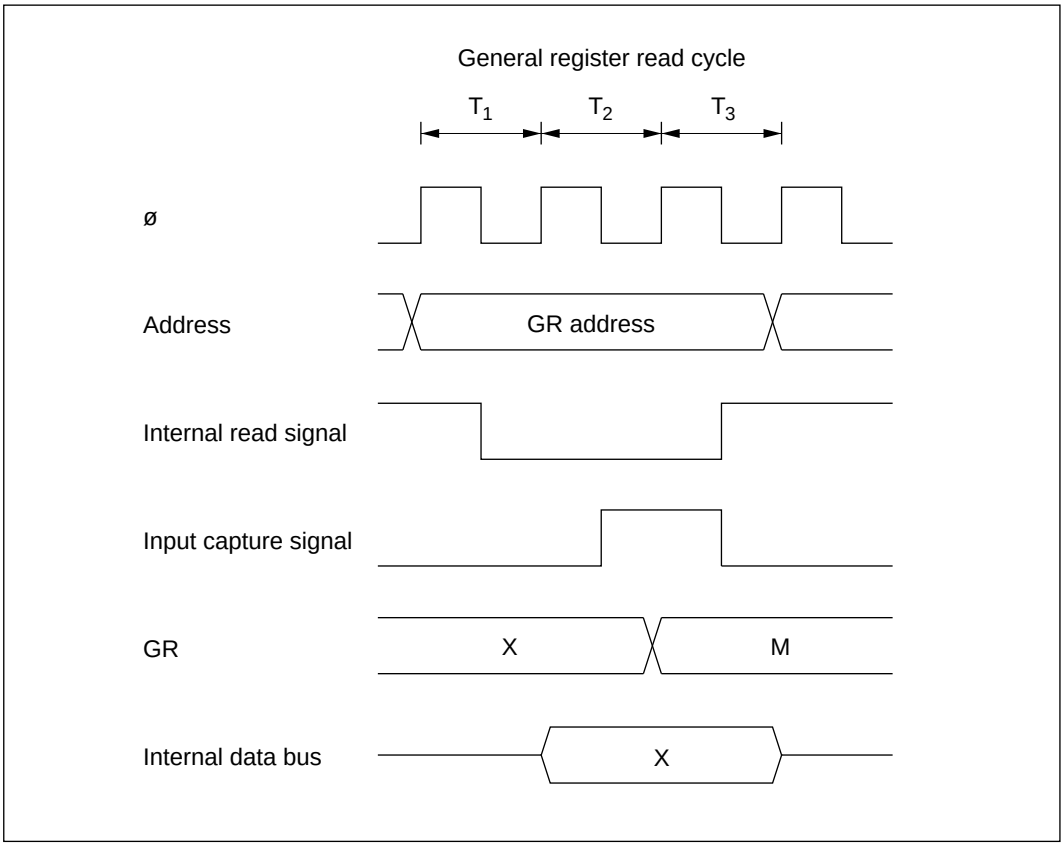


Figure 8-50 Contention between General Register Read and Input Capture

Contention between Counter Clearing by Input Capture and Counter Increment: If an input capture signal and counter increment signal occur simultaneously, the counter is cleared according to the input capture signal. The counter is not incremented by the increment signal. The value before the counter is cleared is transferred to the general register. See figure 8-51.

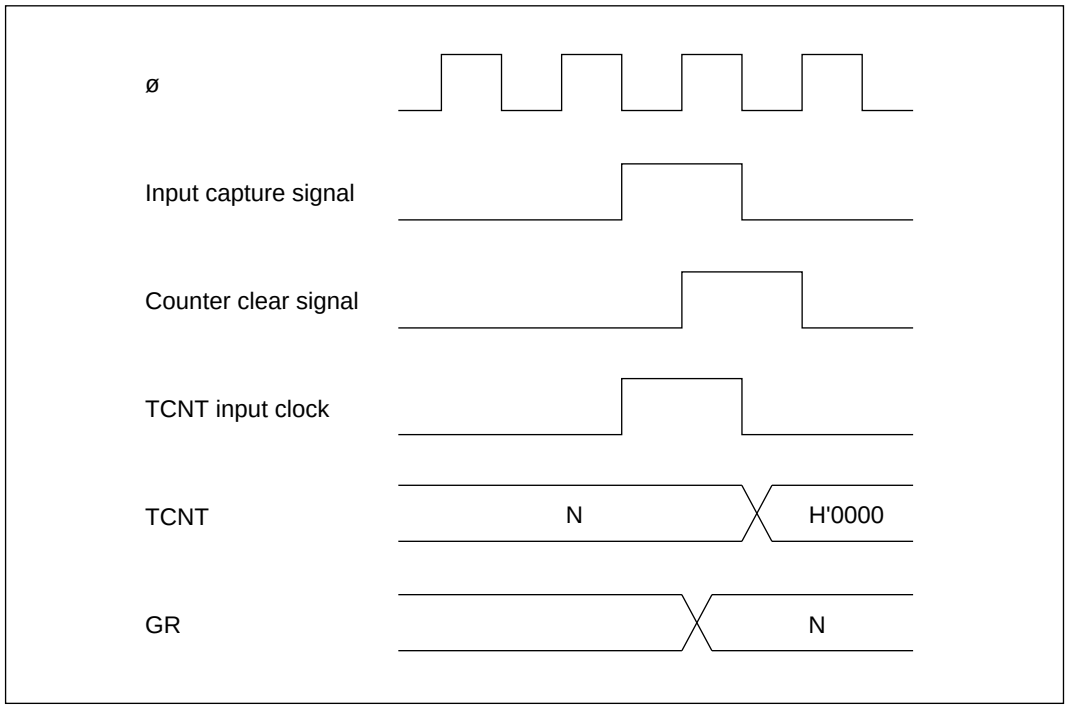


Figure 8-51 Contention between Counter Clearing by Input Capture and Counter Increment

Contention between General Register Write and Input Capture: If an input capture signal occurs in the T_3 state of a general register write cycle, input capture takes priority and the write to the general register is not performed. See figure 8-52.

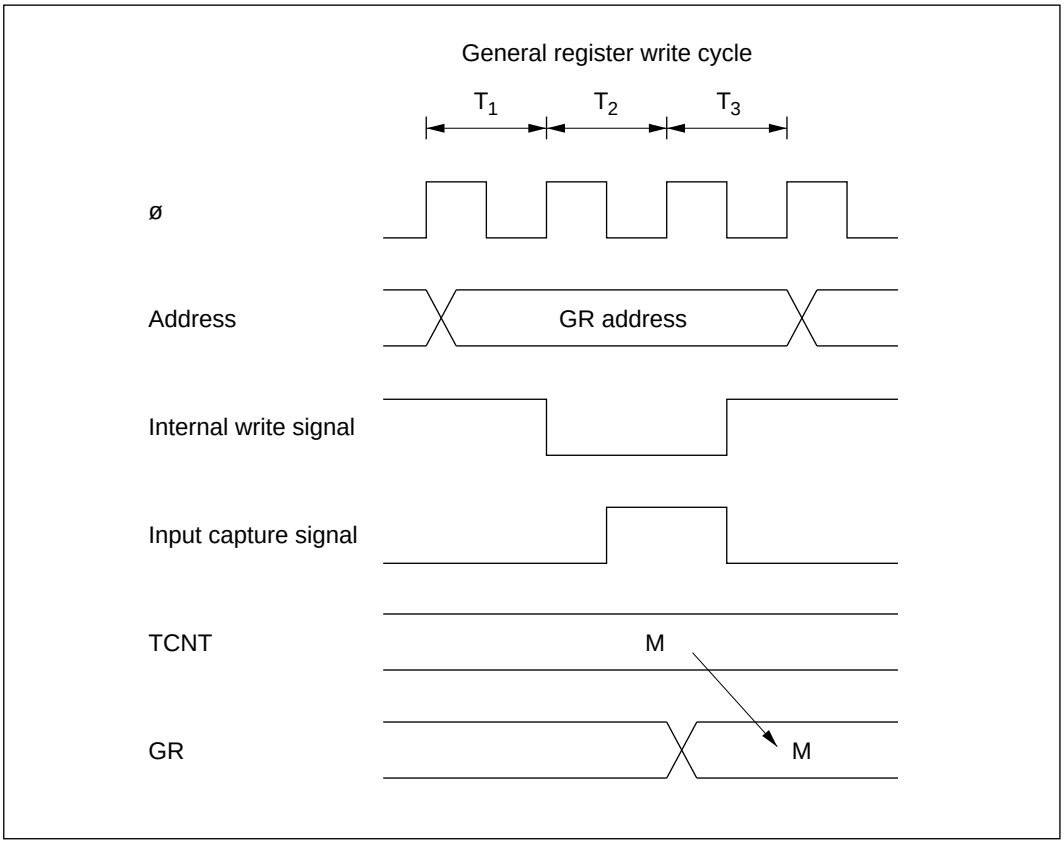


Figure 8-52 Contention between General Register Write and Input Capture

Note on Waveform Period Setting: When a counter is cleared by compare match, the counter is cleared in the last state at which the TCNT value matches the general register value, at the time when this value would normally be updated to the next count. The actual counter frequency is therefore given by the following formula:

$$f = \frac{ø}{(N + 1)}$$

(f: counter frequency. ø: system clock frequency. N: value set in general register.)

Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture: If a buffer register is used for input capture buffering and an input capture signal occurs in the T_3 state of a write cycle, input capture takes priority and the write to the buffer register is not performed.
See figure 8-53.

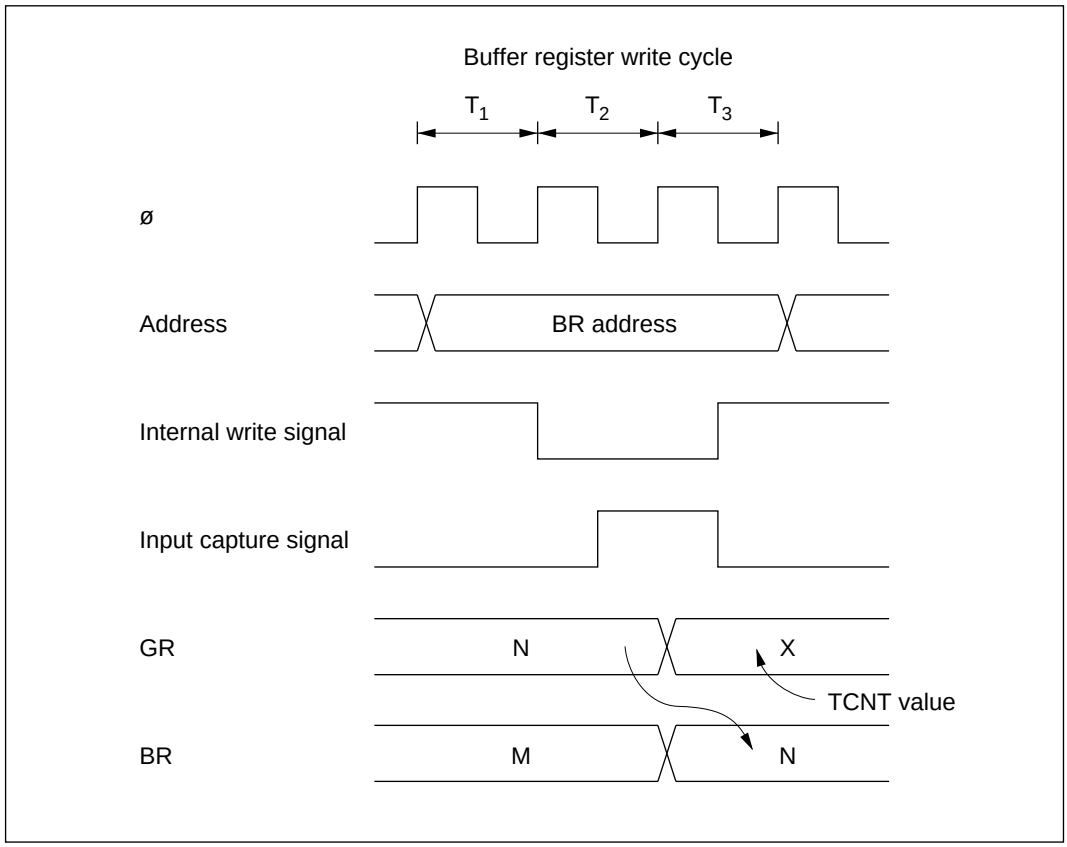
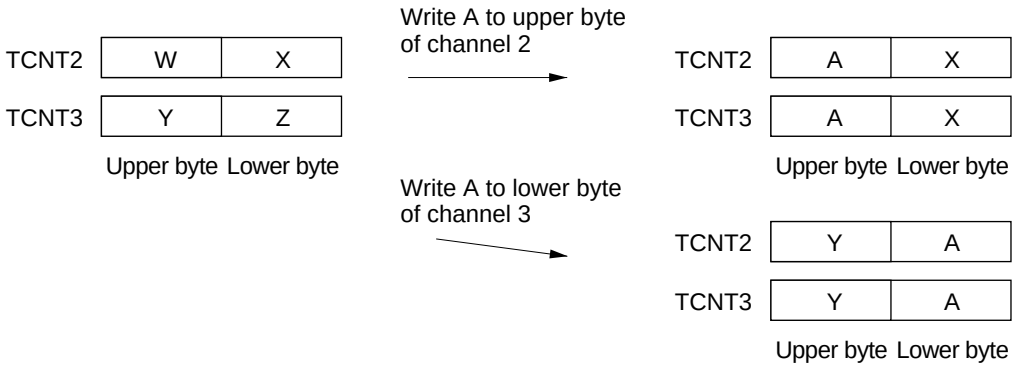


Figure 8-53 Contention between Buffer Register Write and Input Capture

Note on Synchronous Preset: When channels are synchronized, if a TCNT value is modified by byte write access, all 16 bits of all synchronized counters assume the same value as the counter that was addressed.

(Example) When channels 2 and 3 are synchronized

- Byte write to channel 2 or byte write to channel 3



- Word write to channel 2 or word write to channel 3

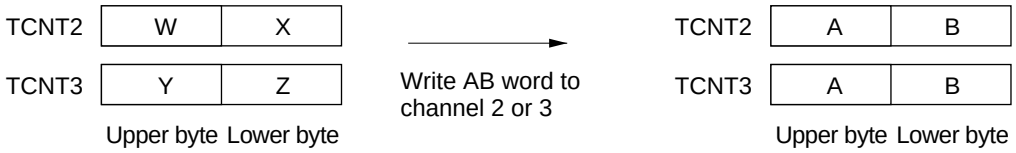


Table 8-7 (a) ITU Operating Modes (Channel 0)

		Register Settings									
		TSNC	TMDR			TFCR	TOER	TIOR0		TCR0	
Operating Mode		Synchro-nization	MDF	FDIR	PWM	Buffering	Master Enable	IOA	IOB	Clear Select	Clock Select
Synchronous preset		SYNC0 = 1	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	o	o
PWM mode		o	—	—	PWM0 = 1	—	—	—	o*	o	o
Output compare A		o	—	—	PWM0 = 0	—	—	IOA2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Output compare B		o	—	—	o	—	—	o	IOB2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Input capture A		o	—	—	PWM0 = 0	—	—	IOA2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Input capture B		o	—	—	PWM0 = 0	—	—	o	IOB2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Counter clearing	By compare match/input capture A	o	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 0 CCLR0 = 1	o
	By compare match/input capture B	o	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 0	o
	Synchronous clear	SYNC0 = 1	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 1	o

Legend: o Setting available (valid). — Setting does not affect this mode.

Note: * The input capture function cannot be used in PWM mode. If compare match A and compare match B occur simultaneously, the compare match signal is inhibited.

Table 8-7 (b) ITU Operating Modes (Channel 1)

		Register Settings								
		TSNC	TMDR			TFCR	TOER	TIOR1		TCR1	
Operating Mode		Synchro-nization	MDF	FDIR	PWM	Buffering	Master Enable	IOA	IOB	Clear Select	Clock Select
Synchronous preset		SYNC1 = 1	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	o	o
PWM mode		o	—	—	PWM1 = 1	—	—	—	o*1	o	o
Output compare A		o	—	—	PWM1 = 0	—	—	IOA2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Output compare B		o	—	—	o	—	—	o	IOB2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Input capture A		o	—	—	PWM1 = 0	—	—	IOA2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Input capture B		o	—	—	PWM1 = 0	—	—	o	IOB2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Counter clearing	By compare match/input capture A	o	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 0 CCLR0 = 1	o
	By compare match/input capture B	o	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 0	o
	Synchronous clear	SYNC1 = 1	—	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 1	o

Legend: o Setting available (valid). — Setting does not affect this mode.

Notes: 1. The input capture function cannot be used in PWM mode. If compare match A and compare match B occur simultaneously, the compare match signal is inhibited.
2. Valid only when channels 3 and 4 are operating in complementary PWM mode or reset-synchronized PWM mode.

Table 8-7 (c) ITU Operating Modes (Channel 2)

		Register Settings									
		TSNC	TMDR			TFCR	TOER	TIOR2		TCR2	
Operating Mode		Synchro-nization	MDF	FDIR	PWM	Buffering	Master Enable	IOA	IOB	Clear Select	Clock Select
Synchronous preset		SYNC2 = 1	o	—	o	—	—	o	o	o	o
PWM mode		o	o	—	PWM2 = 1	—	—	—	o*	o	o
Output compare A		o	o	—	PWM2 = 0	—	—	IOA2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Output compare B		o	o	—	o	—	—	o	IOB2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Input capture A		o	o	—	PWM2 = 0	—	—	IOA2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Input capture B		o	o	—	PWM2 = 0	—	—	o	IOB2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Counter clearing	By compare match/input capture A	o	o	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 0 CCLR0 = 1	o
	By compare match/input capture B	o	o	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 0	o
	Synchronous clear	SYNC2 = 1	o	—	o	—	—	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 1	o
Phase counting mode		o	MDF = 1	o	o	—	—	o	o	o	—

Legend: o Setting available (valid). — Setting does not affect this mode.
Note: * The input capture function cannot be used in PWM mode. If compare match A and compare match B occur simultaneously, the compare match signal is inhibited.

Table 8-7 (d) ITU Operating Modes (Channel 3)

		Register Settings									
		TSNC	TMDR			TFCR	TOER	TIOR3		TCR3	
Operating Mode		Synchro-nization	MDF	FDIR	PWM	Buffering	Master Enable	IOA	IOB	Clear Select	Clock Select
Synchronous preset		SYNC3 = 1	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	o	o
PWM mode		o	—	—	PWM3 = 1	o	o	—	o*2	o	o
Output compare A		o	—	—	PWM3 = 0	o	o	IOA2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Output compare B		o	—	—	o	o	o	o	IOB2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Input capture A		o	—	—	PWM3 = 0	o	EA3 ignored Other bits unrestricted	IOA2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Input capture B		o	—	—	PWM3 = 0	o	EA3 ignored Other bits unrestricted	o	IOA2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Counter clearing	By compare match/input capture A	o	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	CCLR1 = 0 CCLR0 = 1	o
	By compare match/input capture B	o	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 0	o
	Synchronous clear	SYNC3 = 1	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 1	o
Buffering (BRA)		o	—	—	o	BFA3 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o*1	o	o	o	o
Buffering (BRB)		o	—	—	o	BFB3 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o*1	o	o	o	o

Legend: o Setting available (valid). — Setting does not affect this mode.

Notes: 1. Master enable bit settings are valid only during waveform output.

2. The input capture function cannot be used in PWM mode. If compare match A and compare match B occur simultaneously, the compare match signal is inhibited.

Table 8-7 (e) ITU Operating Modes (Channel 4)

		Register Settings									
		TSNC	TMDR			TFCR	TOER	TIOR4		TCR4	
Operating Mode		Synchro-nization	MDF	FDIR	PWM	Buffering	Master Enable	IOA	IOB	Clear Select	Clock Select
Synchronous preset		SYNC4 = 1	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	o	o
PWM mode		o	—	—	PWM4 = 1	o	o	—	o*2	o	o
Output compare A		o	—	—	PWM4 = 0	o	o	IOA2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Output compare B		o	—	—	o	o	o	o	IOB2 = 0 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Input capture A		o	—	—	PWM4 = 0	o	EA4 ignored Other bits unrestricted	IOA2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o	o
Input capture B		o	—	—	PWM4 = 0	o	EB4 ignored Other bits unrestricted	o	IOB2 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o	o
Counter clearing	By compare match/input capture A	o	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	CCLR1 = 0 CCLR0 = 1	o
	By compare match/input capture B	o	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 0	o
	Synchronous clear	SYNC4 = 1	—	—	o	o	o*1	o	o	CCLR1 = 1 CCLR0 = 1	o
Buffering (BRA)		o	—	—	o	BFA4 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o*1	o	o	o	o
Buffering (BRB)		o	—	—	o	BFB4 = 1 Other bits unrestricted	o*1	o	o	o	o

Legend: o Setting available (valid). — Setting does not affect this mode.

Notes: 1. Master enable bit settings are valid only during waveform output.

2. The input capture function cannot be used in PWM mode. If compare match A and compare match B occur simultaneously, the compare match signal is inhibited.

Section 9 Programmable Timing Pattern Controller

9.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has a built-in programmable timing pattern controller (TPC) that provides pulse outputs by using the 16-bit integrated timer unit (ITU) as a time base. The TPC pulse outputs are divided into 4-bit groups (group 2 to group 0) that can operate simultaneously and independently.

9.1.1 Features

TPC features are listed below.

- 12-bit output data

  Maximum 12-bit data can be output. TPC output can be enabled on a bit-by-bit basis.

- Three output groups

  Output trigger signals can be selected in 4-bit groups to provide up to three different 4-bit outputs.

- Selectable output trigger signals

  Output trigger signals can be selected for each group from the compare-match signals of four ITU channels.

- Non-overlap mode

  A non-overlap margin can be provided between pulse outputs.

9.1.2 Block Diagram

Figure 9-1 shows a block diagram of the TPC.

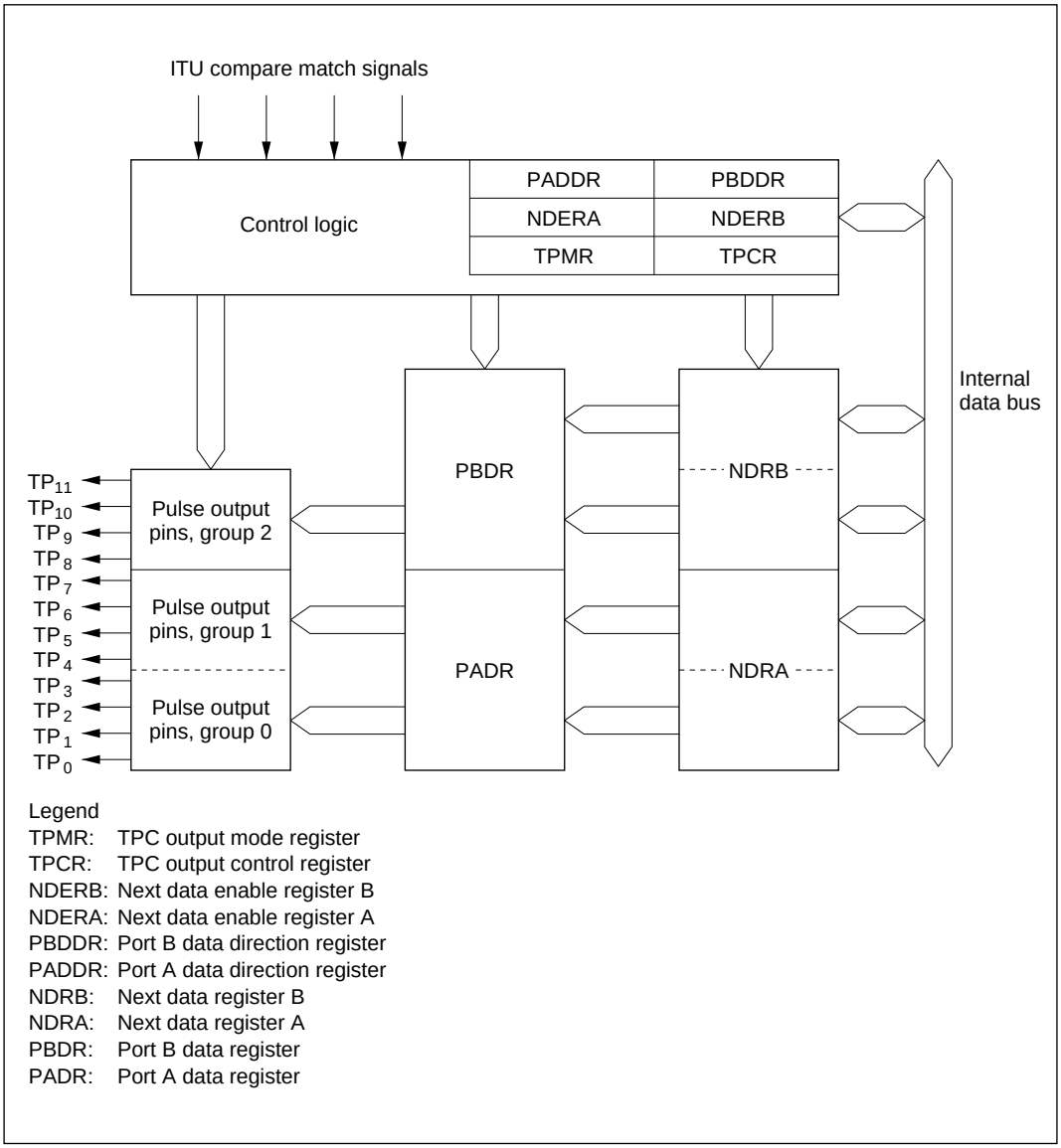


Figure 9-1 TPC Block Diagram

9.1.3 TPC Pins

Table 9-1 summarizes the TPC output pins.

Table 9-1 TPC Pins

Name	Symbol	I/O	Function
TPC output 0	TP_0	Output	Group 0 pulse output
TPC output 1	TP_1	Output	
TPC output 2	TP_2	Output	
TPC output 3	TP_3	Output	
TPC output 4	TP_4	Output	Group 1 pulse output
TPC output 5	TP_5	Output	
TPC output 6	TP_6	Output	
TPC output 7	TP_7	Output	
TPC output 8	TP_8	Output	Group 2 pulse output
TPC output 9	TP_9	Output	
TPC output 10	TP_{10}	Output	
TPC output 11	TP_{11}	Output	

9.1.4 Registers

Table 9-2 summarizes the TPC registers.

Table 9-2 TPC Registers

Address*1	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFD1	Port A data direction register	PADDR	W	H'00
H'FFD3	Port A data register	PADR	R/(W)*2	H'00
H'FFD4	Port B data direction register	PBDDR	W	H'00
H'FFD6	Port B data register	PBDR	R/(W)*2	H'00
H'FFA0	TPC output mode register	TPMR	R/W	H'F0
H'FFA1	TPC output control register	TPCR	R/W	H'FF
H'FFA2	Next data enable register B	NDERB	R/W	H'00
H'FFA3	Next data enable register A	NDERA	R/W	H'00
H'FFA5/ H'FFA7*3	Next data register A	NDRA	R/W	H'00
H'FFA4 H'FFA6*4	Next data register B	NDRB	R/W	H'00

Notes: 1. Lower 16 bits of the address.
2. Bits used for TPC output cannot be written.
3. The NDRA address is H'FFA5 when the same output trigger is selected for TPC output groups 0 and 1 by settings in TPCR. When the output triggers are different, the NDRA address is H'FFA7 for group 0 and H'FFA5 for group 1.
4. When the output triggers of TPC output group 2 and output group 3 are identical, as set in TPCR, the NDRB address becomes H'FFA4. When the output triggers differ, the NDRB address for group 2 becomes H'FFA6. The H8/3001 does not have any pins that correspond to TPC output group 3.

9.2 Register Descriptions

9.2.1 Port A Data Direction Register (PADDR)

PADDR is an 8-bit write-only register that selects input or output for each pin in port A.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	PA_7DDR	PA_6DDR	PA_5DDR	PA_4DDR	PA_3DDR	PA_2DDR	PA_1DDR	PA_0DDR
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port A data direction 7 to 0
These bits select input or output for port A pins

Port A is multiplexed with pins TP_7 to TP_0. Bits corresponding to pins used for TPC output must be set to 1. For further information about PADDR, see section 7.7, Port A.

9.2.2 Port A Data Register (PADR)

PADR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores TPC output data for groups 0 and 1, when these TPC output groups are used.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	PA_7	PA_6	PA_5	PA_4	PA_3	PA_2	PA_1	PA_0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

Port A data 7 to 0
These bits store output data for TPC output groups 0 and 1

Note: * Bits selected for TPC output by NDERA settings become read-only bits.

For further information about PADR, see section 7.7, Port A.

9.2.3 Port B Data Direction Register (PBDDR)

PBDDR is an 8-bit write-only register that selects input or output for each pin in port B.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	PB_3DDR	PB_2DDR	PB_1DDR	PB_0DDR
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Reserved bits

Port B data direction 3 to 0
These bits select input or output for port B pins

Port B is multiplexed with pins TP_{11} to TP_8. Bits corresponding to pins used for TPC output must be set to 1. For further information about PBDDR, see section 7.8, Port B.

9.2.4 Port B Data Register (PBDR)

PBDR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores TPC output data for group 2 when these TPC output groups are used.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	PB_3	PB_2	PB_1	PB_0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

Reserved bits

Port B data 3 to 0
These bits store output data for TPC output group 2

Note: * Bits selected for TPC output by NDERB settings become read-only bits.

For further information about PBDR, see section 7.8, Port B.

9.2.5 Next Data Register A (NDRA)

NDRA is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores the next output data for TPC output groups 1 and 0 (pins TP_7 to TP_0). During TPC output, when an ITU compare match event specified in TPCR occurs, NDRA contents are transferred to the corresponding bits in PADR. The address of NDRA differs depending on whether TPC output groups 0 and 1 have the same output trigger or different output triggers.

NDRA is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Same Trigger for TPC Output Groups 0 and 1: If TPC output groups 0 and 1 are triggered by the same compare match event, the NDRA address is H'FFA5. The upper 4 bits belong to group 1 and the lower 4 bits to group 0. Address H'FFA7 consists entirely of reserved bits that cannot be modified and always read 1.

Address H'FFA5

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	NDR7	NDR6	NDR5	NDR4	NDR3	NDR2	NDR1	NDR0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next data 7 to 4
These bits store the data that TPC output group 1 outputs next

Next data 3 to 0
These bits store the data that TPC output group 0 outputs next

Address H'FFA7

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Reserved bits

Different Triggers for TPC Output Groups 0 and 1: If TPC output groups 0 and 1 are triggered by different compare match events, the address of the upper 4 bits of NDRA (group 1) is H'FFA5 and the address of the lower 4 bits (group 0) is H'FFA7. Bits 3 to 0 of address H'FFA5 and bits 7 to 4 of address H'FFA7 are reserved bits that cannot be modified and always read 1.

Address H'FFA5

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	NDR7	NDR6	NDR5	NDR4	—	—	—	—
Initial value	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—

Next data 7 to 4
These bits store the data that TPC output group 1 outputs next

Reserved bits

Address H'FFA7

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	NDR3	NDR2	NDR1	NDR0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Reserved bits

Next data 3 to 0
These bits store the data that TPC output group 0 outputs next

9.2.6 Next Data Register B (NDRB)

NDRB is an 8-bit readable/writable register that stores the data that TPC output groups 3 and 2 (pins TP_{11} to TP_8) output next. However, the H8/3001 does not have any pins that correspond to TPC output group 3. During TPC output, when an ITU compare match event specified in TPCR occurs, NDRB contents are transferred to the corresponding bits in PBDR. The address of NDRB differs depending on whether TPC output groups 2 and 3 have the same output trigger or different output triggers.

NDRB is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Same Trigger for TPC Output Groups 2 and 3: If TPC output groups 2 and 3 are triggered by the same compare match event, the NDRB address is H'FFA4. The upper four bits belong to group 3 and the lower four bits to group 2. Address H'FFA6 consists entirely of reserved bits that cannot be modified and always read 1.

Address H'FFA4

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	NDR11	NDR10	NDR9	NDR8
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Reserved bits

Next data 11 to 8
These bits store the data that TPC output group 2 outputs next

Address H'FFA6

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

Reserved bits

Different Triggers for TPC Output Groups 2 and 3: If TPC output triggers 2 and 3 are triggered by different compare match events, the address of the upper four bits of NDRB is H'FFA4, and the address of the lower four bits (group 2) is H'FFA6. All bits of address H'FFA4 and bits 7 to 4 of address H'FFA6 are reserved bits. Bits 7 to 4 of H'FFA4 can be written and read, while all other bits are read-only bits that always read 1.

Address H'FFA4

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Initial value	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—

Reserved bits

Address H'FFA6

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	NDR11	NDR10	NDR9	NDR8
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Reserved bits

Next data 11 to 8
These bits store the next output data for TPC output group 2

9.2.7 Next Data Enable Register A (NDERA)

NDERA is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables or disables TPC output groups 1 and 0 (TP_7 to TP_0) on a bit-by-bit basis.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	NDER7	NDER6	NDER5	NDER4	NDER3	NDER2	NDER1	NDER0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next data enable 7 to 0
These bits enable or disable TPC output groups 1 and 0

If a bit is enabled for TPC output by NDERA, then when the ITU compare match event selected in the TPC output control register (TPCR) occurs, the NDRA value is automatically transferred to the corresponding PADR bit, updating the output value. If TPC output is disabled, the bit value is not transferred from NDRA to PADR and the output value does not change.

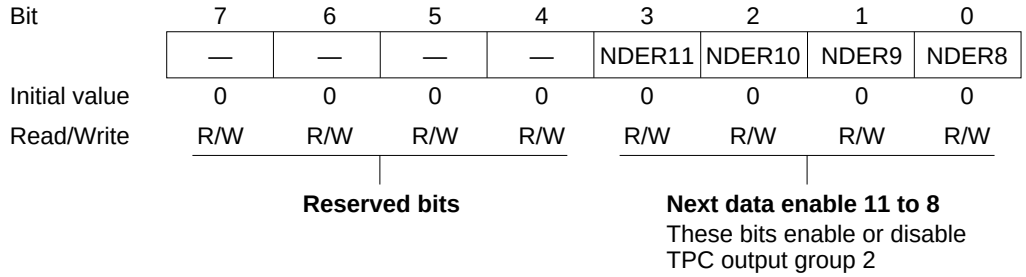
NDERA is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bits 7 to 0—Next Data Enable 7 to 0 (NDER7 to NDER0): These bits enable or disable TPC output groups 1 and 0 (TP_7 to TP_0) on a bit-by-bit basis.

Bits 7 to 0 NDER7 to NDER0	Description	
0	TPC outputs TP_7 to TP_0 are disabled (NDR7 to NDR0 are not transferred to PA_7 to PA_0)	(Initial value)
1	TPC outputs TP_7 to TP_0 are enabled (NDR7 to NDR0 are transferred to PA_7 to PA_0)	

9.2.8 Next Data Enable Register B (NDERB)

NDERB is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables or disables TPC output groups 3 and 2 (TP_{15} to TP_8) on a bit-by-bit basis.



If a bit is enabled for TPC output by NDERB, then when the ITU compare match event selected in the TPC output control register (TPCR) occurs, the NDRB value is automatically transferred to the corresponding PBDR bit, updating the output value. If TPC output is disabled, the bit value is not transferred from NDRB to PBDR and the output value does not change.

NDERB is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

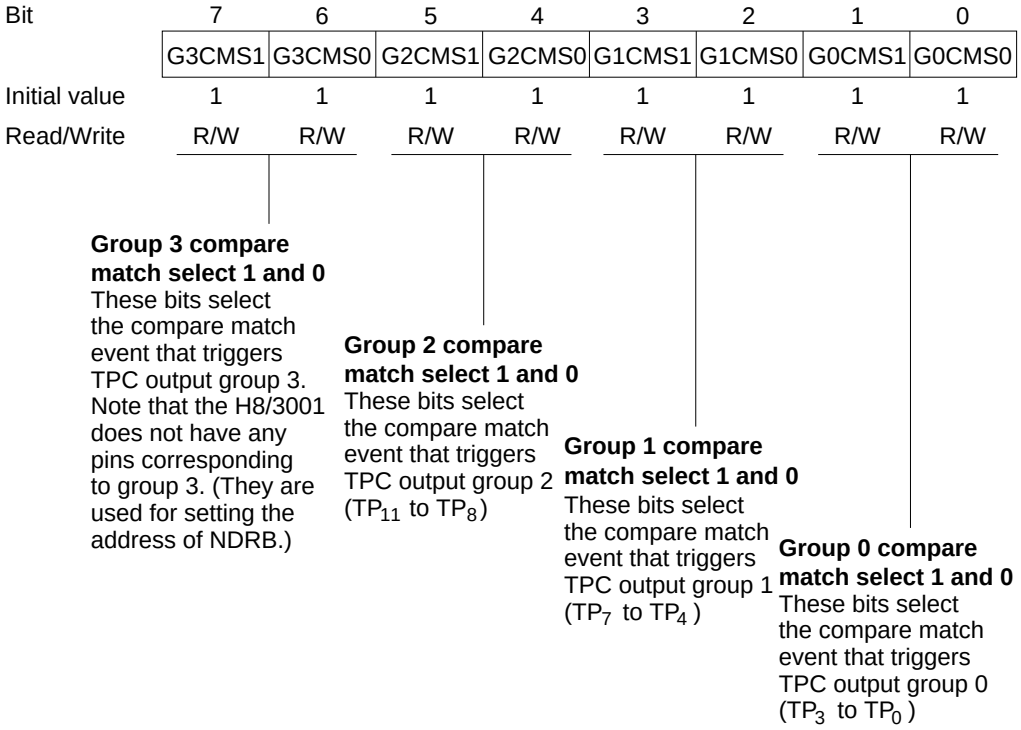
Bits 7 to 4—Reserved: Although reserved, these bits can be written and read.

Bits 3 to 0—Next Data Enable 11 to 8 (NDER11 to NDER8): These bits enable or disable TPC output group 2 (TP_{15} to TP_8) on a bit-by-bit basis.

Bits 7 to 0 NDER11 to NDER8	Description	
0	TPC outputs TP_{11} to TP_8 are disabled (NDR11 to NDR8 are not transferred to PB_3 to PB_0)	(Initial value)
1	TPC outputs TP_{11} to TP_8 are enabled (NDR11 to NDR8 are transferred to PB_3 to PB_0)	

9.2.9 TPC Output Control Register (TPCR)

TPCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects output trigger signals for TPC outputs on a group-by-group basis.



TPCR is initialized to H'FF by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bits 7 and 6—Group 3 Compare Match Select 1 and 0 (G3CMS1, G3CMS0): These bits select the compare match event that triggers TPC output group 3. Note that the H8/3001 does not have any pins corresponding to TPC output group 3. (They are used for setting the address of NDRB.)

Bit 7 G3CMS1	Bit 6 G3CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3 (Initial value)

Bits 5 and 4—Group 2 Compare Match Select 1 and 0 (G2CMS1, G2CMS0): These bits select the compare match event that triggers TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8).

Bit 5 G2CMS1	Bit 4 G2CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3 (Initial value)

Bits 3 and 2—Group 1 Compare Match Select 1 and 0 (G1CMS1, G1CMS0): These bits select the compare match event that triggers TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4).

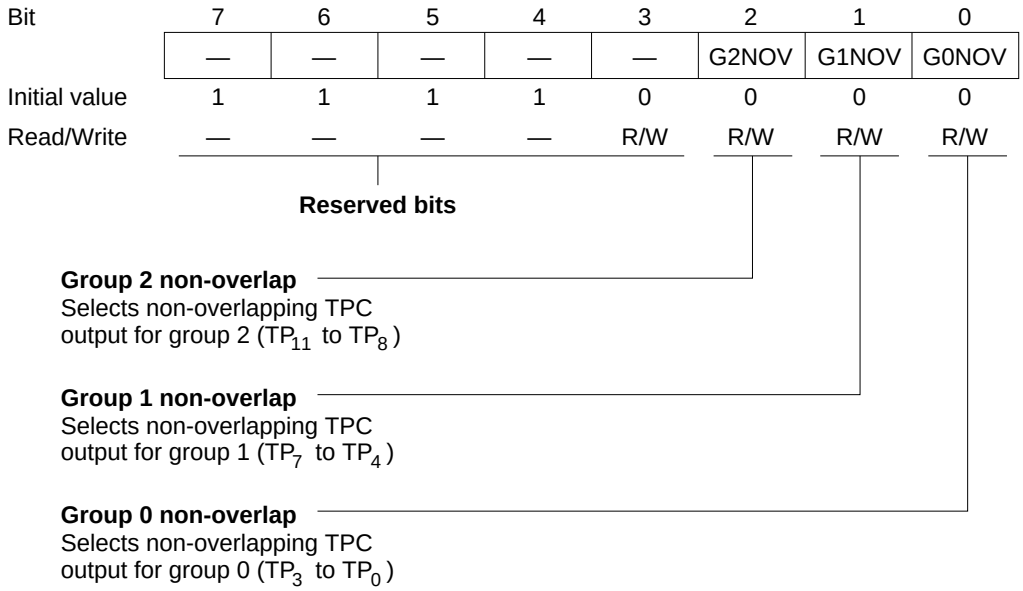
Bit 3 G1CMS1	Bit 2 G1CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3 (Initial value)

Bits 1 and 0—Group 0 Compare Match Select 1 and 0 (G0CMS1, G0CMS0): These bits select the compare match event that triggers TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0).

Bit 1 G0CMS1	Bit 0 G0CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3 (Initial value)

9.2.10 TPC Output Mode Register (TPMR)

TPMR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects normal or non-overlapping TPC output for each group.



The output trigger period of a non-overlapping TPC output waveform is set in general register B (GRB) in the ITU channel selected for output triggering. The non-overlap margin is set in general register A (GRA). The output values change at compare match A and B. For details see section 9.3.4, Non-Overlapping TPC Output.

TPMR is initialized to H'F0 by a reset and in hardware standby mode. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bits 7 to 4—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

Bit 3—Reserved: Although reserved, this bit can be written and read.

Bit 2—Group 2 Non-Overlap (G2NOV): Selects normal or non-overlapping TPC output for group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8).

Bit 2 G2NOV	Description	
0	Normal TPC output in group 2 (output values change at compare match A in the selected ITU channel)	(Initial value)
1	Non-overlapping TPC output in group 2 (independent 1 and 0 output at compare match A and B in the selected ITU channel)	

Bit 1—Group 1 Non-Overlap (G1NOV): Selects normal or non-overlapping TPC output for group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4).

Bit 1 G1NOV	Description	
0	Normal TPC output in group 1 (output values change at compare match A in the selected ITU channel)	(Initial value)
1	Non-overlapping TPC output in group 1 (independent 1 and 0 output at compare match A and B in the selected ITU channel)	

Bit 0—Group 0 Non-Overlap (G0NOV): Selects normal or non-overlapping TPC output for group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0).

Bit 0 G0NOV	Description	
0	Normal TPC output in group 0 (output values change at compare match A in the selected ITU channel)	(Initial value)
1	Non-overlapping TPC output in group 0 (independent 1 and 0 output at compare match A and B in the selected ITU channel)	

9.3 Operation

9.3.1 Overview

When corresponding bits in PADDR or PBDDR and NDERA or NDERB are set to 1, TPC output is enabled. The TPC output initially consists of the corresponding PADR or PBDR contents. When a compare-match event selected in TPCR occurs, the corresponding NDRA or NDRB bit contents are transferred to PADR or PBDR to update the output values.

Figure 9-2 illustrates the TPC output operation. Table 9-3 summarizes the TPC operating conditions.

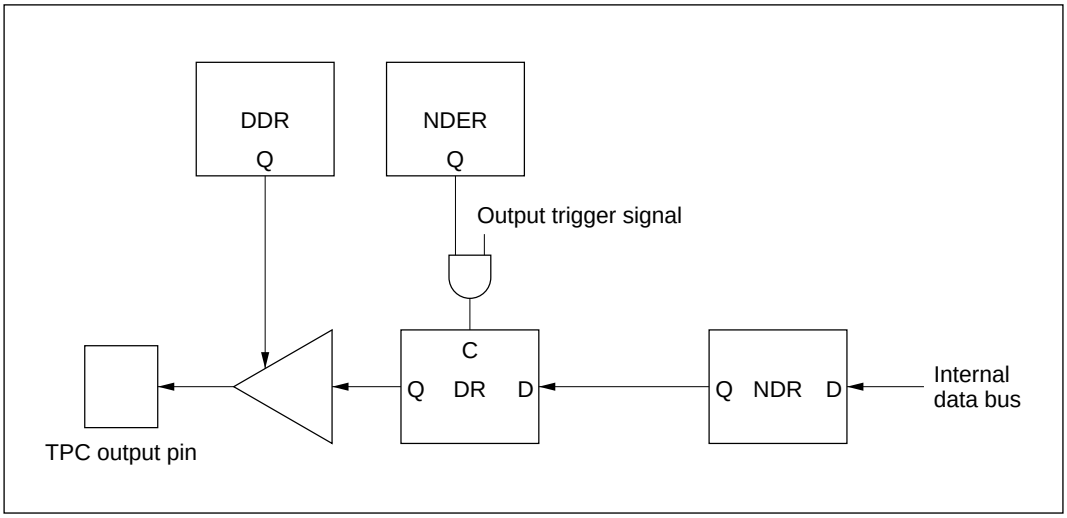


Figure 9-2 TPC Output Operation

Table 9-3 TPC Operating Conditions

NDER	DDR	Pin Function
0	0	Generic input port
	1	Generic output port
1	0	Generic input port (but the DR bit is a read-only bit, and when compare match occurs, the NDR bit value is transferred to the DR bit)
	1	TPC pulse output

Sequential output of up to 12-bit patterns is possible by writing new output data to NDRA and NDRB before the next compare match. For information on non-overlapping operation, see section 9.3.4, Non-Overlapping TPC Output.

9.3.2 Output Timing

If TPC output is enabled, NDRA/NDRB contents are transferred to PADR/PBDR and output when the selected compare match event occurs. Figure 9-3 shows the timing of these operations for the case of normal output in groups 2, triggered by compare match A.

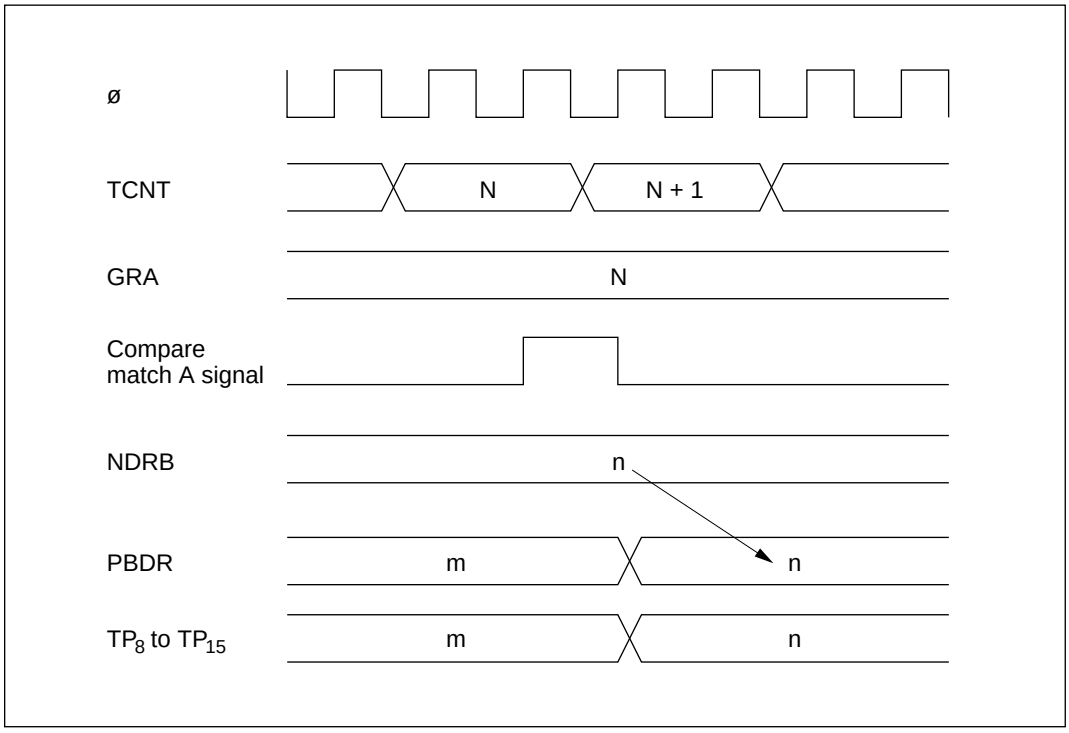


Figure 9-3 Timing of Transfer of Next Data Register Contents and Output (Example)

9.3.3 Normal TPC Output

Sample Setup Procedure for Normal TPC Output: Figure 9-4 shows a sample procedure for setting up normal TPC output.

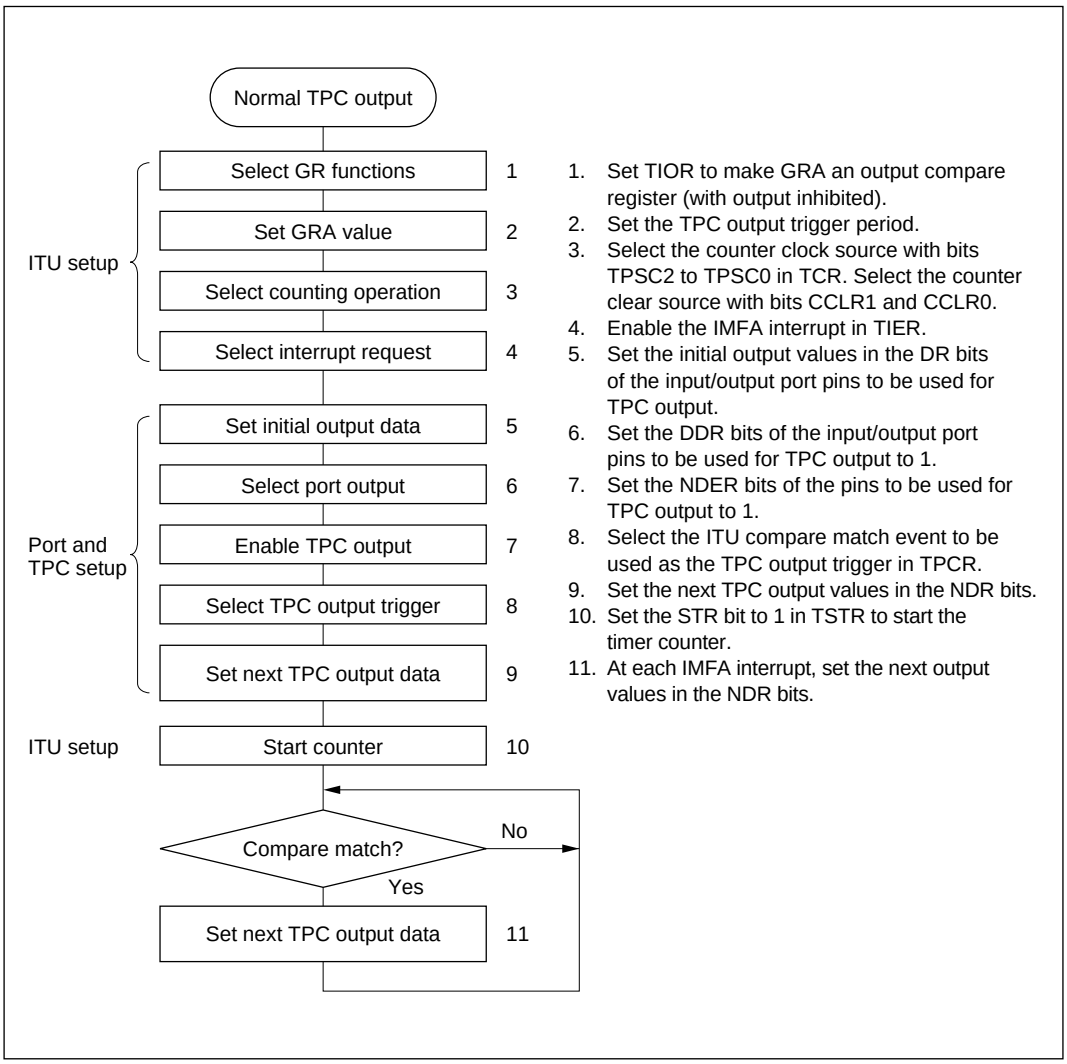
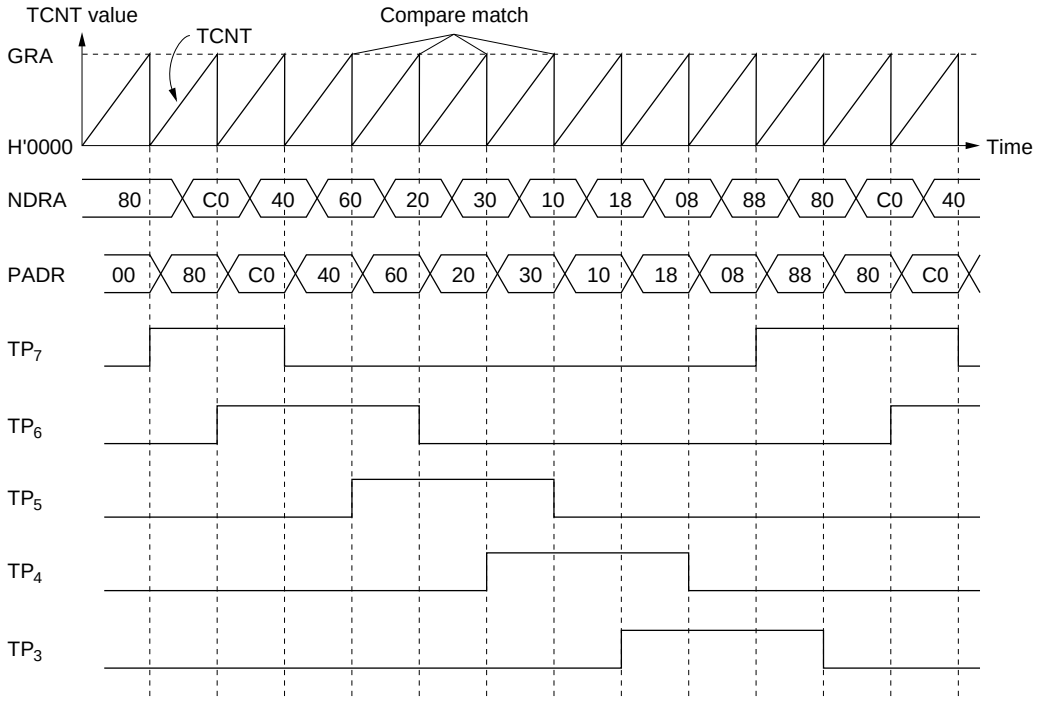


Figure 9-4 Setup Procedure for Normal TPC Output (Example)

Example of Normal TPC Output (Example of Five-Phase Pulse Output): Figure 9-5 shows an example in which the TPC is used for cyclic five-phase pulse output.



- The ITU channel to be used as the output trigger channel is set up so that GRA is an output compare register and the counter will be cleared by compare match A. The trigger period is set in GRA. The IMIEA bit is set to 1 in TIER to enable the compare match A interrupt.
- H'F8 is written in PADDR and NDERA, and bits G1CMS1, G1CMS0, G0CMS1, and G0CMS0 are set in TPCR to select compare match in the ITU channel set up in step 1 as the output trigger. Output data H'80 is written in NDRA.
- The timer counter in this ITU channel is started. When compare match A occurs, the NDRA contents are transferred to PADR and output. The compare match/input capture A (IMFA) interrupt service routine writes the next output data (H'C0) in NDRA.
- Five-phase overlapping pulse output (one or two phases active at a time) can be obtained by writing H'40, H'60, H'20, H'30, H'10, H'18, H'08, H'88… at successive IMFA interrupts.

Figure 9-5 Normal TPC Output Example (Five-Phase Pulse Output)

9.3.4 Non-Overlapping TPC Output

Sample Setup Procedure for Non-Overlapping TPC Output: Figure 9-6 shows a sample procedure for setting up non-overlapping TPC output.

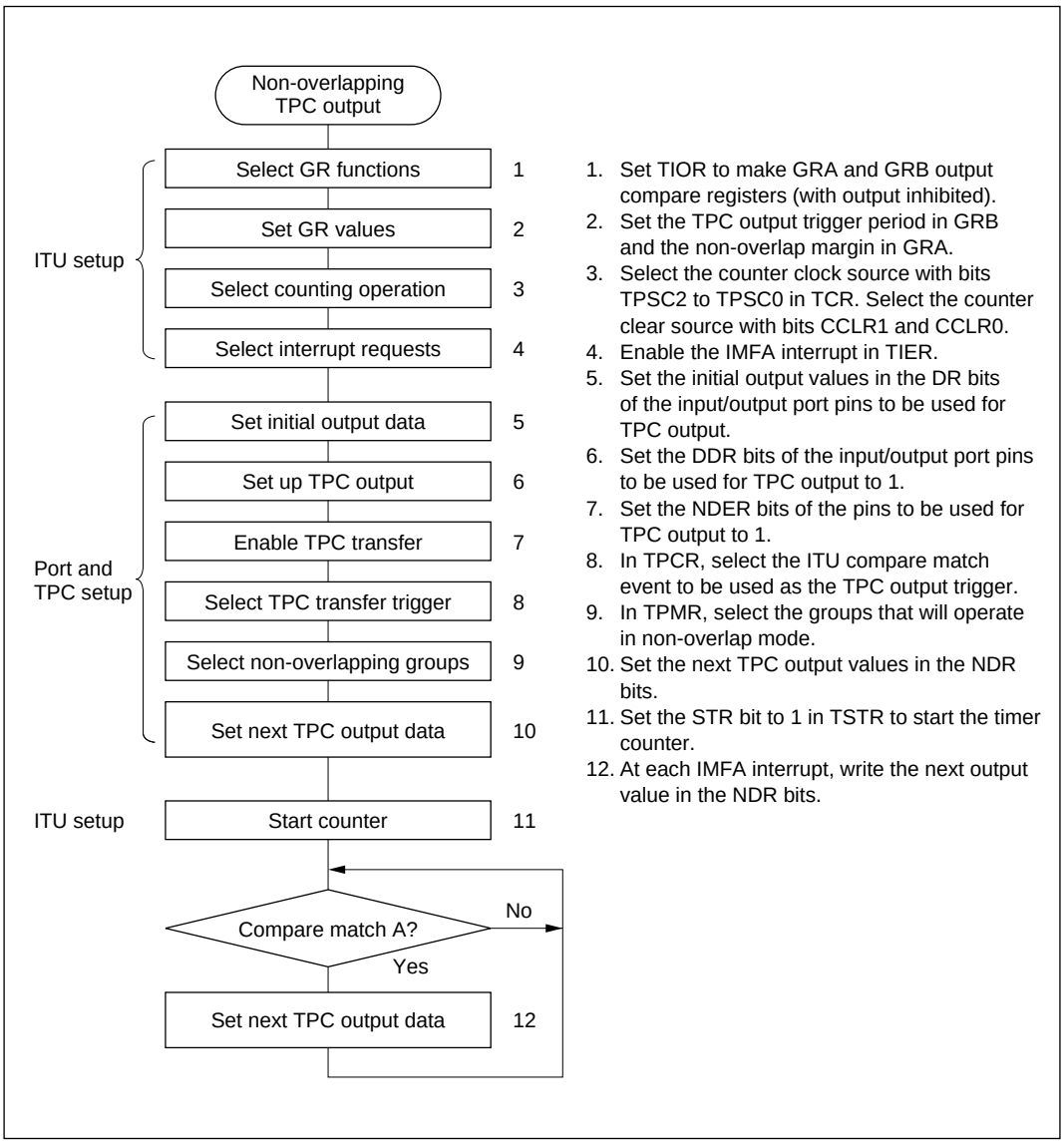
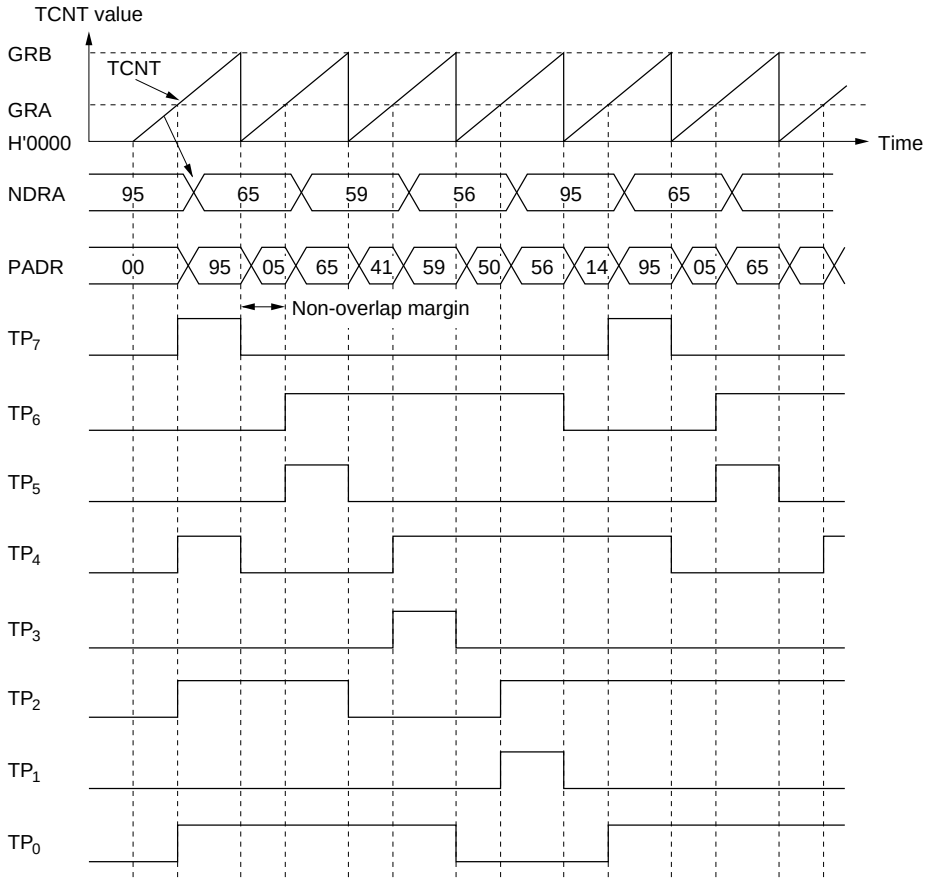


Figure 9-6 Setup Procedure for Non-Overlapping TPC Output (Example)

Example of Non-Overlapping TPC Output (Example of Eight-Phase Complementary Non-Overlapping Output): Figure 9-7 shows an example of the use of TPC output for eight-phase complementary non-overlapping pulse output.



- The ITU channel to be used as the output trigger channel is set up so that GRA and GRB are output compare registers and the counter will be cleared by compare match B. The TPC output trigger period is set in GRB. The non-overlap margin is set in GRA. The IMIEA bit is set to 1 in TIER to enable IMFA interrupts.
- H'FF is written in PADDR and NDERA, and bits G1CMS1, G1CMS0, G0CMS1, and G0CMS0 are set Bits G1NOV and G0NOV are set to 1 in TPMR to select non-overlapping output. Output data H'95 is written in NDRB.
- The timer counter in this ITU channel is started. When compare match B occurs, outputs change from 1 to 0. When compare match A occurs, outputs change from 0 to 1 (the change from 0 to 1 is delayed by the value of GRA). The IMFA interrupt service routine writes the next output data (H'65) in NDRB.
- Eight-phase complementary non-overlapping pulse output can be obtained by writing H'59, H'56, H'95… at successive IMFA interrupts.

Figure 9-7 Non-Overlapping TPC Output Example (Eight-Phase Complementary Non-Overlapping Pulse Output)

9.3.5 TPC Output Triggering by Input Capture

TPC output can be triggered by ITU input capture as well as by compare match. If GRA functions as an input capture register in the ITU channel selected in TPCR, TPC output will be triggered by the input capture signal. Figure 11-8 shows the timing.

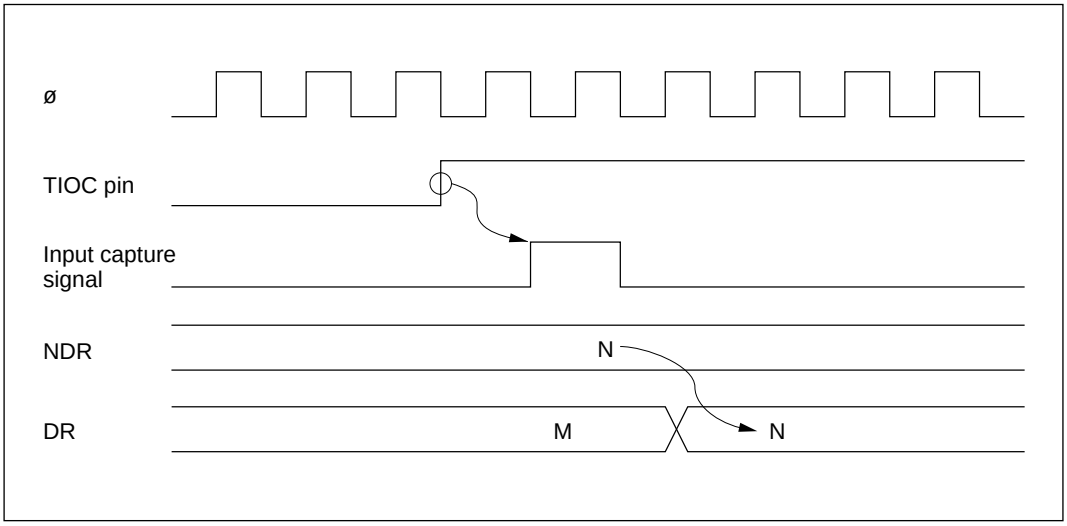


Figure 9-8 TPC Output Triggering by Input Capture (Example)

9.4 Usage Notes

9.4.1 Operation of TPC Output Pins

TP_0 to TP_{11} are multiplexed with ITU, address output, and other pin functions. When ITU or address output is enabled, the corresponding pins cannot be used for TPC output. The data transfer from NDR bits to DR bits takes place, however, regardless of the usage of the pin.

Pin functions should be changed only under conditions in which the output trigger event will not occur.

9.4.2 Note on Non-Overlapping Output

During non-overlapping operation, the transfer of NDR bit values to DR bits takes place as follows.

1. NDR bits are always transferred to DR bits at compare match A.
2. At compare match B, NDR bits are transferred only if their value is 0. Bits are not transferred if their value is 1.

Figure 9-9 illustrates the non-overlapping TPC output operation.

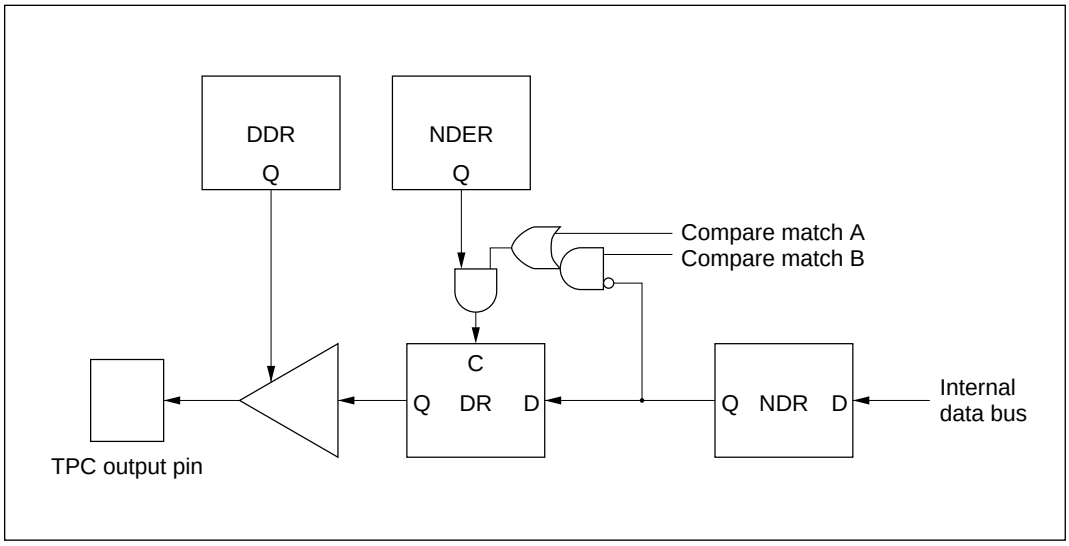


Figure 9-9 Non-Overlapping TPC Output

Therefore, 0 data can be transferred ahead of 1 data by making compare match B occur before compare match A. NDR contents should not be altered during the interval from compare match B to compare match A (the non-overlap margin).

This can be accomplished by having the IMFA interrupt service routine write the next data in NDR. The next data must be written before the next compare match B occurs.

Figure 9-10 shows the timing relationships.

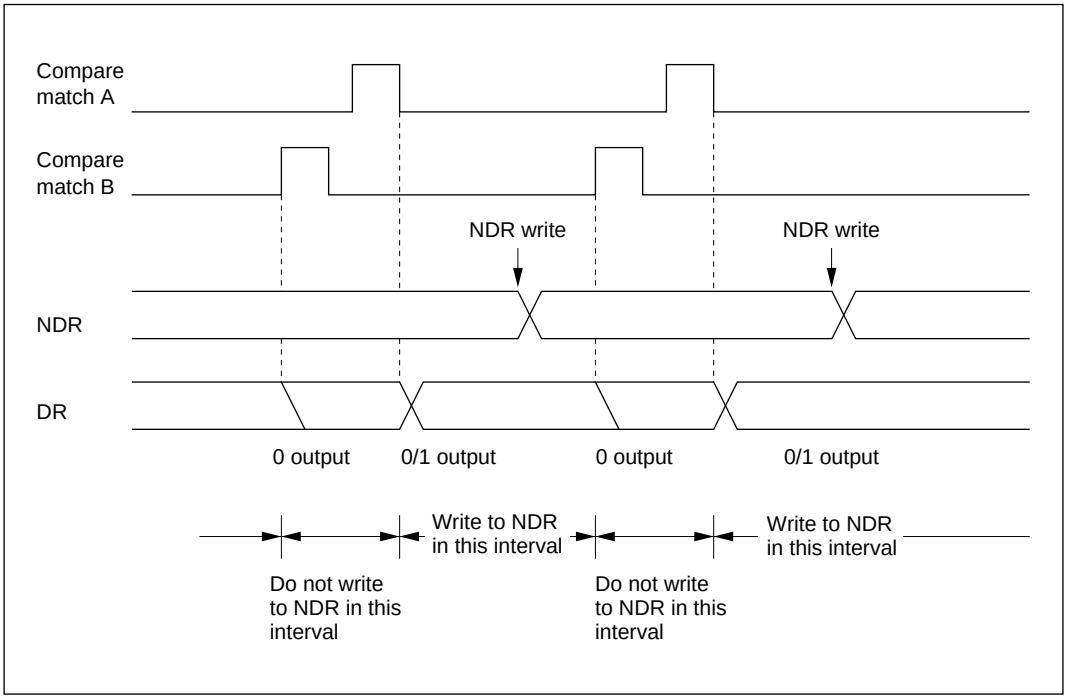


Figure 9-10 Non-Overlapping Operation and NDR Write Timing

Section 10 Serial Communication Interface

10.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has one channel of serial communication interface (SCI). The SCI can communicate in asynchronous mode or synchronous mode, and has a multiprocessor communication function for serial communication among two or more processors.

10.1.1 Features

SCI features are listed below.

- Selection of asynchronous or synchronous mode for serial communication

a. Asynchronous mode

Serial data communication is synchronized one character at a time. The SCI can communicate with a universal asynchronous receiver/transmitter (UART), asynchronous communication interface adapter (ACIA), or other chip that employs standard asynchronous serial communication. It can also communicate with two or more other processors using the multiprocessor communication function. There are twelve selectable serial data communication formats.

— Data length: 7 or 8 bits
— Stop bit length: 1 or 2 bits
— Parity bit: even, odd, or none
— Multiprocessor bit: 1 or 0
— Receive error detection: parity, overrun, and framing errors
— Break detection: by reading the RxD level directly when a framing error occurs

b. Synchronous mode

Serial data communication is synchronized with a clock signal. The SCI can communicate with other chips having a synchronous communication function. There is one serial data communication format.

— Data length: 8 bits
— Receive error detection: overrun errors

- Full duplex communication

  The transmitting and receiving sections are independent, so the SCI can transmit and receive simultaneously. The transmitting and receiving sections are both double-buffered, so serial data can be transmitted and received continuously.

- Built-in baud rate generator with selectable bit rates
- Selectable transmit/receive clock sources: internal clock from baud rate generator, or external clock from the SCK pin.
- Four types of interrupts

  Transmit-data-empty, transmit-end, receive-data-full, and receive-error interrupts are requested independently.

10.1.2 Block Diagram

Figure 10-1 shows a block diagram of the SCI.

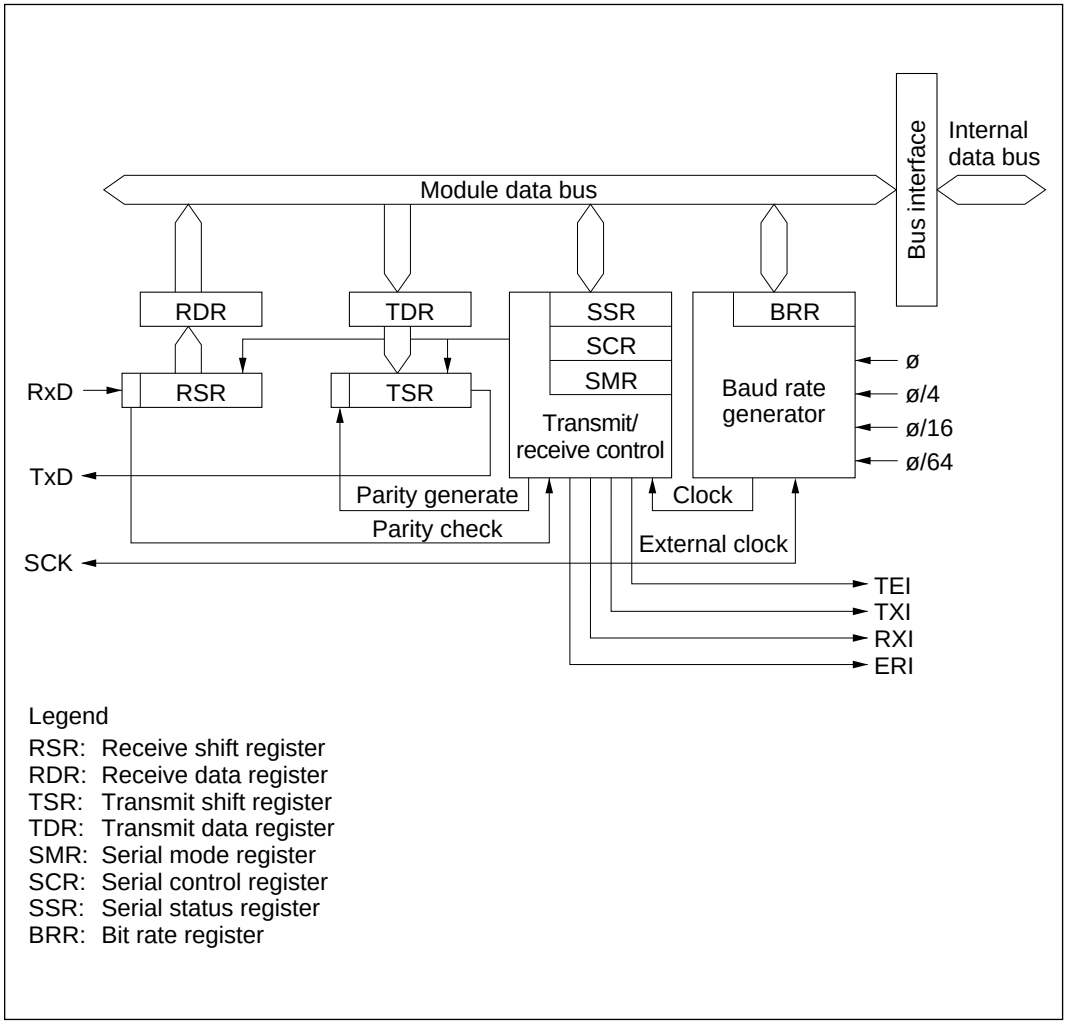


Figure 10-1 SCI Block Diagram

10.1.3 Input/Output Pins

The SCI has serial pins for each channel as listed in table 10-1.

Table 10-1 SCI Pins

Name	Abbreviation	I/O	Function
Serial clock pin	SCK	Input/output	SCI clock input/output
Receive data pin	RxD	Input	SCI receive data input
Transmit data pin	TxD	Output	SCI transmit data output

10.1.4 Register Configuration

The SCI has internal registers as listed in table 10-2. These registers select asynchronous or synchronous mode, specify the data format and bit rate, and control the transmitter and receiver sections.

Table 10-2 Registers

Address*1	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFB0	Serial mode register	SMR	R/W	H'00
H'FFB1	Bit rate register	BRR	R/W	H'FF
H'FFB2	Serial control register	SCR	R/W	H'00
H'FFB3	Transmit data register	TDR	R/W	H'FF
H'FFB4	Serial status register	SSR	R/(W)*2	H'84
H'FFB5	Receive data register	RDR	R	H'00

Notes: 1. Lower 16 bits of the address.
2. Only 0 can be written, to clear flags.

10.2 Register Descriptions

10.2.1 Receive Shift Register (RSR)

RSR is the register that receives serial data.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value								
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

The SCI loads serial data input at the RxD pin into RSR in the order received, LSB (bit 0) first, thereby converting the data to parallel data. When 1 byte has been received, it is automatically transferred to RDR. The CPU cannot read or write RSR directly.

10.2.2 Receive Data Register (RDR)

RDR is the register that stores received serial data.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

When the SCI finishes receiving 1 byte of serial data, it transfers the received data from RSR into RDR for storage. RSR is then ready to receive the next data. This double buffering allows data to be received continuously.

RDR is a read-only register. Its contents cannot be modified by the CPU. RDR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in standby mode.

10.2.3 Transmit Shift Register (TSR)

TSR is the register that transmits serial data.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value								
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

The SCI loads transmit data from TDR into TSR, then transmits the data serially from the TxD pin, LSB (bit 0) first. After transmitting one data byte, the SCI automatically loads the next transmit data from TDR into TSR and starts transmitting it. If the TDRE flag is set to 1 in SSR, however, the SCI does not load the TDR contents into TSR. The CPU cannot read or write TSR directly.

10.2.4 Transmit Data Register (TDR)

TDR is an 8-bit register that stores data for serial transmission.

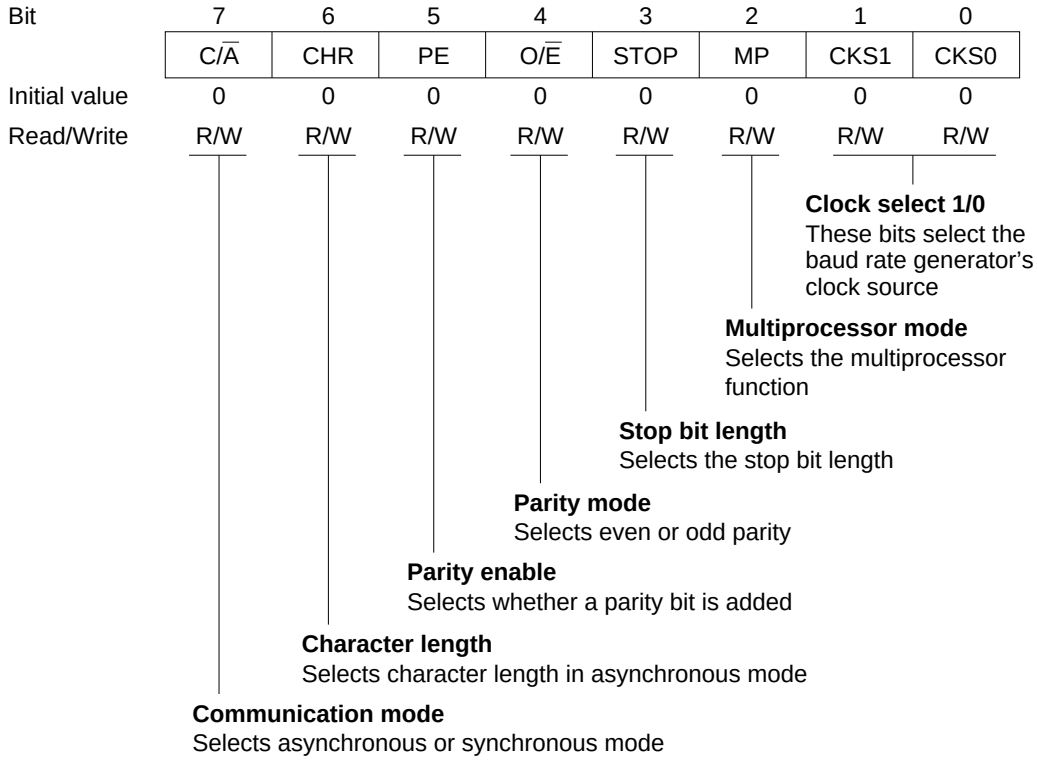
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

When the SCI detects that TSR is empty, it moves transmit data written in TDR from TDR into TSR and starts serial transmission. Continuous serial transmission is possible by writing the next transmit data in TDR during serial transmission from TSR.

The CPU can always read and write TDR. TDR is initialized to H'FF by a reset and in standby mode.

10.2.5 Serial Mode Register (SMR)

SMR is an 8-bit register that specifies the SCI serial communication format and selects the clock source for the baud rate generator.



The CPU can always read and write SMR. SMR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—Communication Mode (C/$\overline{A}$): Selects whether the SCI operates in asynchronous or synchronous mode.

Bit 7 C/$\overline{A}$	Description	
0	Asynchronous mode	(Initial value)
1	Synchronous mode	

Bit 6—Character Length (CHR): Selects 7-bit or 8-bit data length in asynchronous mode. In synchronous mode the data length is 8 bits regardless of the CHR setting.

Bit 6 CHR	Description	
0	8-bit data	(Initial value)
1	7-bit data*	

Note: * When 7-bit data is selected, the MSB (bit 7) in TDR is not transmitted.

Bit 5—Parity Enable (PE): In asynchronous mode, this bit enables or disables the addition of a parity bit to transmit data, and the checking of the parity bit in receive data. In synchronous mode the parity bit is neither added nor checked, regardless of the PE setting.

Bit 5 PE	Description	
0	Parity bit not added or checked	(Initial value)
1	Parity bit added and checked*	

Note: * When PE is set to 1, an even or odd parity bit is added to transmit data according to the even or odd parity mode selected by the O/$\overline{E}$ bit, and the parity bit in receive data is checked to see that it matches the even or odd mode selected by the O/$\overline{E}$ bit.

Bit 4—Parity Mode (O/$\overline{E}$): Selects even or odd parity. The O/$\overline{E}$ bit setting is valid in asynchronous mode when the PE bit is set to 1 to enable the adding and checking of a parity bit. The O/$\overline{E}$ setting is ignored in synchronous mode, or when parity adding and checking is disabled in asynchronous mode.

Bit 4 O/$\overline{E}$	Description	
0	Even parity*1	(Initial value)
1	Odd parity*2	

Notes: 1. When even parity is selected, the parity bit added to transmit data makes an even number of 1s in the transmitted character and parity bit combined. Receive data must have an even number of 1s in the received character and parity bit combined.
2. When odd parity is selected, the parity bit added to transmit data makes an odd number of 1s in the transmitted character and parity bit combined. Receive data must have an odd number of 1s in the received character and parity bit combined.

Bit 3—Stop Bit Length (STOP): Selects one or two stop bits in asynchronous mode. This setting is used only in asynchronous mode. In synchronous mode no stop bit is added, so the STOP bit setting is ignored.

Bit 3 STOP	Description	
0	One stop bit*1	(Initial value)
1	Two stop bits*2	

Notes: 1. One stop bit (with value 1) is added at the end of each transmitted character.
2. Two stop bits (with value 1) are added at the end of each transmitted character.

In receiving, only the first stop bit is checked, regardless of the STOP bit setting. If the second stop bit is 1 it is treated as a stop bit. If the second stop bit is 0 it is treated as the start bit of the next incoming character.

Bit 2—Multiprocessor Mode (MP): Selects a multiprocessor format. When a multiprocessor format is selected, parity settings made by the PE and O/$\overline{E}$ bits are ignored. The MP bit setting is valid only in asynchronous mode. It is ignored in synchronous mode.

For further information on the multiprocessor communication function, see section 10.3.3, Multiprocessor Communication Function.

Bit 2 MP	Description	
0	Multiprocessor function disabled	(Initial value)
1	Multiprocessor format selected	

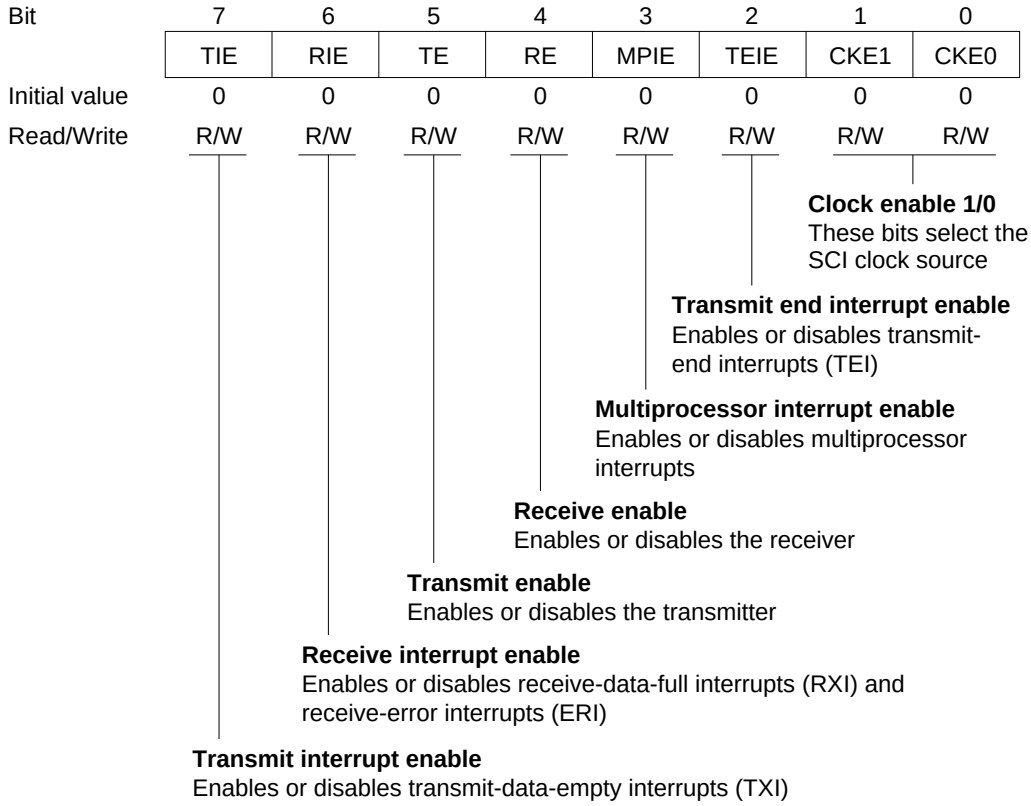
Bits 1 and 0—Clock Select 1 and 0 (CKS1/0): These bits select the clock source of the on-chip baud rate generator. Four clock sources are available: ø, ø/4, ø/16, and ø/64.

For the relationship between the clock source, bit rate register setting, and baud rate, see section 10.2.8, Bit Rate Register.

Bit 1 CKS1	Bit 0 CKS0	Description	
0	0	ø	(Initial value)
0	1	ø/4	
1	0	ø/16	
1	1	ø/64	

10.2.6 Serial Control Register (SCR)

SCR enables the SCI transmitter and receiver, enables or disables serial clock output in asynchronous mode, enables or disables interrupts, and selects the transmit/receive clock source.



The CPU can always read and write SCR. SCR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—Transmit Interrupt Enable (TIE): Enables or disables the transmit-data-empty interrupt (TXI) requested when the TDRE flag in SSR is set to 1 due to transfer of serial transmit data from TDR to TSR.

Bit 7 TIE	Description	
0	Transmit-data-empty interrupt request (TXI) is disabled*	(Initial value)
1	Transmit-data-empty interrupt request (TXI) is enabled	

Note: * TXI interrupt requests can be cleared by reading the value 1 from the TDRE flag, then clearing it to 0; or by clearing the TIE bit to 0.

Bit 6—Receive Interrupt Enable (RIE): Enables or disables the receive-data-full interrupt (RXI) requested when the RDRF flag is set to 1 in SSR due to transfer of serial receive data from RSR to RDR; also enables or disables the receive-error interrupt (ERI).

Bit 6 RIE	Description	
0	Receive-data-full (RXI) and receive-error (ERI) interrupt requests are disabled	(Initial value)
1	Receive-data-full (RXI) and receive-error (ERI) interrupt requests are enabled	

Note: * RXI and ERI interrupt requests can be cleared by reading the value 1 from the RDRF, FER, PER, or ORER flag, then clearing it to 0; or by clearing the RIE bit to 0.

Bit 5—Transmit Enable (TE): Enables or disables the start of SCI serial transmitting operations.

Bit 5 TE	Description	
0	Transmitting disabled*1	(Initial value)
1	Transmitting enabled*2	

Notes: 1. The TDRE bit is locked at 1 in SSR.
2. In the enabled state, serial transmitting starts when the TDRE bit in SSR is cleared to 0 after writing of transmit data into TDR. Select the transmit format in SMR before setting the TE bit to 1.

Bit 4—Receive Enable (RE): Enables or disables the start of SCI serial receiving operations.

Bit 4 RE	Description	
0	Receiving disabled*1	(Initial value)
1	Receiving enabled*2	

Notes: 1. Clearing the RE bit to 0 does not affect the RDRF, FER, PER, and ORER flags. These flags retain their previous values.
2. In the enabled state, serial receiving starts when a start bit is detected in asynchronous mode, or serial clock input is detected in synchronous mode. Select the receive format in SMR before setting the RE bit to 1.

Bit 3—Multiprocessor Interrupt Enable (MPIE): Enables or disables multiprocessor interrupts. The MPIE setting is valid only in asynchronous mode, and only if the MP bit is set to 1 in SMR. The MPIE setting is ignored in synchronous mode or when the MP bit is cleared to 0.

Bit 3 MPIE	Description	
0	Multiprocessor interrupts are disabled (normal receive operation) [Clearing conditions] The MPIE bit is cleared to 0. MPB = 1 in received data.	(Initial value)
1	Multiprocessor interrupts are enabled* Receive-data-full interrupts (RXI), receive-error interrupts (ERI), and setting of the RDRF, FER, and ORER status flags in SSR are disabled until data with the multiprocessor bit set to 1 is received.	

Note: * The SCI does not transfer receive data from RSR to RDR, does not detect receive errors, and does not set the RDRF, FER, and ORER flags in SSR. When it receives data in which MPB = 1, the SCI sets the MPB bit to 1 in SSR, automatically clears the MPIE bit to 0, enables RXI and ERI interrupts (if the RIE bit is set to 1 in SCR), and allows the FER and ORER flags to be set.

Bit 2—Transmit-End Interrupt Enable (TEIE): Enables or disables the transmit-end interrupt (TEI) requested if TDR does not contain new transmit data when the MSB is transmitted.

Bit 2 TEIE	Description	
0	Transmit-end interrupt requests (TEI) are disabled*	(Initial value)
1	Transmit-end interrupt requests (TEI) are enabled*	

Note: * TEI interrupt requests can be cleared by reading the value 1 from the TDRE flag in SSR, then clearing the TDRE flag to 0, thereby also clearing the TEND flag to 0; or by clearing the TEIE bit to 0.

Bits 1 and 0—Clock Enable 1 and 0 (CKE1/0): These bits select the SCI clock source and enable or disable clock output from the SCK pin. Depending on the settings of CKE1 and CKE0, the SCK pin can be used for generic input/output, serial clock output, or serial clock input.

The CKE0 setting is valid only in asynchronous mode, and only when the SCI is internally clocked (CKE1 = 0). The CKE0 setting is ignored in synchronous mode, or when an external clock source is selected (CKE1 = 1). Select the SCI operating mode in SMR before setting the CKE1 and CKE0 bits. For further details on selection of the SCI clock source, see table 10-9 in section 10.3, Operation.

Bit 1 CKE1	Bit 0 CKE0	Description	
0	0	Asynchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin available for generic input/output *1
		Synchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin used for serial clock output *1
0	1	Asynchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin used for clock output *2
		Synchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin used for serial clock output
1	0	Asynchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for clock input *3
		Synchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for serial clock input
1	1	Asynchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for clock input *3
		Synchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for serial clock input

Notes: 1. Initial value
2. The output clock frequency is the same as the bit rate.
3. The input clock frequency is 16 times the bit rate.

10.2.7 Serial Status Register (SSR)

SSR is an 8-bit register containing multiprocessor bit values, and status flags that indicate SCI operating status.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	FER	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
Read/Write	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R	R	R/W

Multiprocessor bit transfer
Value of multi-processor bit to be transmitted

Multiprocessor bit
Stores the received multiprocessor bit value

Transmit end
Status flag indicating end of transmission

Parity error
Status flag indicating detection of a receive parity error

Framing error
Status flag indicating detection of a receive framing error

Overrun error
Status flag indicating detection of a receive overrun error

Receive data register full
Status flag indicating that data has been received and stored in RDR

Transmit data register empty
Status flag indicating that transmit data has been transferred from TDR into TSR and new data can be written in TDR

Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

The CPU can always read and write SSR, but cannot write 1 in the TDRE, RDRF, ORER, PER, and FER flags. These flags can be cleared to 0 only if they have first been read while set to 1. The TEND and MPB flags are read-only bits that cannot be written.

SSR is initialized to H'84 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—Transmit Data Register Empty (TDRE): Indicates that the SCI has loaded transmit data from TDR into TSR and the next serial transmit data can be written in TDR.

Bit 7 TDRE	Description	
0	TDR contains valid transmit data [Clearing conditions] Software reads TDRE while it is set to 1, then writes 0.	
1	TDR does not contain valid transmit data [Setting conditions] The chip is reset or enters standby mode. The TE bit in SCR is cleared to 0. TDR contents are loaded into TSR, so new data can be written in TDR.	(Initial value)

Bit 6—Receive Data Register Full (RDRF): Indicates that RDR contains new receive data.

Bit 6 RDRF	Description	
0	RDR does not contain new receive data [Clearing conditions] The chip is reset or enters standby mode. Software reads RDRF while it is set to 1, then writes 0.	(Initial value)
1	RDR contains new receive data [Setting condition] When serial data is received normally and transferred from RSR to RDR.	

Note: The RDR contents and RDRF flag are not affected by detection of receive errors or by clearing of the RE bit to 0 in SCR. They retain their previous values. If the RDRF flag is still set to 1 when reception of the next data ends, an overrun error occurs and receive data is lost.

Bit 5—Overrun Error (ORER): Indicates that data reception ended abnormally due to an overrun error.

Bit 5 ORER	Description	
0	Receiving is in progress or has ended normally [Clearing conditions] The chip is reset or enters standby mode. Software reads ORER while it is set to 1, then writes 0.	(Initial value)*1
1	A receive overrun error occurred*2 [Setting condition] Reception of the next serial data ends when RDRF = 1.	

Notes: 1. Clearing the RE bit to 0 in SCR does not affect the ORER flag, which retains its previous value.
2. RDR continues to hold the receive data before the overrun error, so subsequent receive data is lost. Serial receiving cannot continue while the ORER flag is set to 1. In synchronous mode, serial transmitting is also disabled.

Bit 4—Framing Error (FER): Indicates that data reception ended abnormally due to a framing error in asynchronous mode.

Bit 4 FER	Description	
0	Receiving is in progress or has ended normally [Clearing conditions] The chip is reset or enters standby mode. Software reads FER while it is set to 1, then writes 0.	(Initial value)*1
1	A receive framing error occurred*2 [Setting condition] The stop bit at the end of receive data is checked and found to be 0.	

Notes: 1. Clearing the RE bit to 0 in SCR does not affect the FER flag, which retains its previous value.
2. When the stop bit length is 2 bits, only the first bit is checked. The second stop bit is not checked. When a framing error occurs the SCI transfers the receive data into RDR but does not set the RDRF flag. Serial receiving cannot continue while the FER flag is set to 1. In synchronous mode, serial transmitting is also disabled.

Bit 3—Parity Error (PER): Indicates that data reception ended abnormally due to a parity error in asynchronous mode.

Bit 3 PER	Description	
0	Receiving is in progress or has ended normally*1 [Clearing conditions] The chip is reset or enters standby mode. Software reads PER while it is set to 1, then writes 0.	(Initial value)
1	A receive parity error occurred*2 [Setting condition] The number of 1s in receive data, including the parity bit, does not match the even or odd parity setting of O/$\overline{E}$ in SMR.	

Notes: 1. Clearing the RE bit to 0 in SCR does not affect the PER flag, which retains its previous value.
2. When a parity error occurs the SCI transfers the receive data into RDR but does not set the RDRF flag. Serial receiving cannot continue while the PER flag is set to 1. In synchronous mode, serial transmitting is also disabled.

Bit 2—Transmit End (TEND): Indicates that when the last bit of a serial character was transmitted TDR did not contain new transmit data, so transmission has ended. The TEND flag is a read-only bit and cannot be written.

Bit 2 TEND	Description	
0	Transmission is in progress [Clearing conditions] Software reads TDRE while it is set to 1, then writes 0 in the TDRE flag.	
1	End of transmission [Setting conditions] The chip is reset or enters standby mode. The TE bit is cleared to 0 in SCR. TDRE is 1 when the last bit of a serial character is transmitted.	(Initial value)

Bit 1—Multiprocessor Bit (MPB): Stores the value of the multiprocessor bit in receive data when a multiprocessor format is used in asynchronous mode. MPB is a read-only bit and cannot be written.

Bit 1 MPB	Description	
0	Multiprocessor bit value in receive data is 0*	(Initial value)
1	Multiprocessor bit value in receive data is 1	

Note: * If the RE bit is cleared to 0 when a multiprocessor format is selected, MPB retains its previous value.

Bit 0—Multiprocessor Bit Transfer (MPBT): Stores the value of the multiprocessor bit added to transmit data when a multiprocessor format is selected for transmitting in asynchronous mode. The MPBT setting is ignored in synchronous mode, when a multiprocessor format is not selected, or when the SCI is not transmitting.

Bit 0 MPBT	Description	
0	Multiprocessor bit value in transmit data is 0	(Initial value)
1	Multiprocessor bit value in transmit data is 1	

10.2.8 Bit Rate Register (BRR)

BRR is an 8-bit register that, together with the CKS1 and CKS0 bits in SMR that select the baud rate generator clock source, determines the serial communication bit rate.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

The CPU can always read and write BRR. BRR is initialized to H'FF by a reset and in standby mode.

Table 10-3 shows examples of BRR settings in asynchronous mode. Table 10-4 shows examples of BRR settings in synchronous mode.

Table 10-3 Examples of Bit Rates and BRR Settings in Asynchronous Mode

	ø (MHz)											
	2			2.097152			2.4576			3		
Bit Rate (bits/s)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	1	141	0.03	1	148	–0.04	1	174	–0.26	1	212	0.03
150	1	103	0.16	1	108	0.21	1	127	0	1	155	0.16
300	0	207	0.16	0	217	0.21	0	255	0	1	77	0.16
600	0	103	0.16	0	108	0.21	0	127	0	0	155	0.16
1200	0	51	0.16	0	54	–0.70	0	63	0	0	77	0.16
2400	0	25	0.16	0	26	1.14	0	31	0	0	38	0.16
4800	0	12	0.16	0	13	–2.48	0	15	0	0	19	–2.34
9600	0	6	–6.99	0	6	–2.48	0	7	0	0	9	–2.34
19200	0	2	8.51	0	2	13.78	0	3	0	0	4	–2.34
31250	0	1	0	0	1	4.86	0	1	22.88	0	2	0
38400	0	1	–18.62	0	1	–14.67	0	1	0	—	—	—

	ø (MHz)											
	3.6864			4			4.9152			5		
Bit Rate (bits/s)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	64	0.70	2	70	0.03	2	86	0.31	2	88	–0.25
150	1	191	0	1	207	0.16	1	255	0	2	64	0.16
300	1	95	0	1	103	0.16	1	127	0	1	129	0.16
600	0	191	0	0	207	0.16	0	255	0	1	64	0.16
1200	0	95	0	0	103	0.16	0	127	0	0	129	0.16
2400	0	47	0	0	51	0.16	0	63	0	0	64	0.16
4800	0	23	0	0	25	0.16	0	31	0	0	32	–1.36
9600	0	11	0	0	12	0.16	0	15	0	0	15	1.73
19200	0	5	0	0	6	–6.99	0	7	0	0	7	1.73
31250	—	—	—	0	3	0	0	4	–1.70	0	4	0
38400	0	2	0	0	2	8.51	0	3	0	0	3	1.73

Table 10-3 Examples of Bit Rates and BRR Settings in Asynchronous Mode (cont)

	ø (MHz)											
	6			6.144			7.3728			8		
Bit Rate (bits/s)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	106	–0.44	2	108	0.08	2	130	–0.07	2	141	0.03
150	2	77	0.16	2	79	0	2	95	0	2	103	0.16
300	1	155	0.16	1	159	0	1	191	0	1	207	0.16
600	1	77	0.16	1	79	0	1	95	0	1	103	0.16
1200	0	155	0.16	0	159	0	0	191	0	0	207	0.16
2400	0	77	0.16	0	79	0	0	95	0	0	103	0.16
4800	0	38	0.16	0	39	0	0	47	0	0	51	0.16
9600	0	19	–2.34	0	19	0	0	23	0	0	25	0.16
19200	0	9	–2.34	0	9	0	0	11	0	0	12	0.16
31250	0	5	0	0	5	2.40	0	6	5.33	0	7	0
38400	0	4	–2.34	0	4	0	0	5	0	0	6	–6.99

	ø (MHz)											
	9.8304			10			12			12.288		
Bit Rate (bits/s)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	174	–0.26	2	177	–0.25	2	212	0.03	2	217	0.08
150	2	127	0	2	129	0.16	2	155	0.16	2	159	0
300	1	255	0	2	64	0.16	2	77	0.16	2	79	0
600	1	127	0	1	129	0.16	1	155	0.16	1	159	0
1200	0	255	0	1	64	0.16	1	77	0.16	1	79	0
2400	0	127	0	0	129	0.16	0	155	0.16	0	159	0
4800	0	63	0	0	64	0.16	0	77	0.16	0	79	0
9600	0	31	0	0	32	–1.36	0	38	0.16	0	39	0
19200	0	15	0	0	15	1.73	0	19	–2.34	0	19	0
31250	0	9	–1.70	0	9	0	0	11	0	0	11	2.40
38400	0	7	0	0	7	1.73	0	9	–2.34	0	9	0

Table 10-3 Examples of Bit Rates and BRR Settings in Asynchronous Mode (cont)

	ø (MHz)								
	14			14.7456			16		
Bit Rate (bits/s)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)	n	N	Error (%)
110	2	248	–0.17	3	64	0.70	3	70	0.03
150	2	181	0.16	2	191	0	2	207	0.16
300	2	90	0.16	2	95	0	2	103	0.16
600	1	181	0.16	1	191	0	1	207	0.16
1200	1	90	0.16	1	95	0	1	103	0.16
2400	0	181	0.16	0	191	0	0	207	0.16
4800	0	90	0.16	0	95	0	0	103	0.16
9600	0	45	–0.93	0	47	0	0	51	0.16
19200	0	22	–0.93	0	23	0	0	25	0.16
31250	0	13	0	0	14	–1.70	0	15	0
38400	0	10	3.57	0	11	0	0	12	0.16

Table 10-4 Examples of Bit Rates and BRR Settings in Synchronous Mode

Bit Rate (bits/s)	ø (MHz)									
	2		4		8		10		16	
	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N	n	N
110	3	70	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
250	2	124	2	249	3	124	—	—	3	249
500	1	249	2	124	2	249	—	—	3	124
1 k	1	124	1	249	2	124	—	—	2	249
2.5 k	0	199	1	99	1	199	1	249	2	99
5 k	0	99	0	199	1	99	1	124	1	199
10 k	0	49	0	99	0	199	0	249	1	99
25 k	0	19	0	39	0	79	0	99	0	159
50 k	0	9	0	19	0	39	0	49	0	79
100 k	0	4	0	9	0	19	0	24	0	39
250 k	0	1	0	3	0	7	0	9	0	15
500 k	0	0*	0	1	0	3	0	4	0	7
1 M			0	0*	0	1	—	—	0	3
2 M					0	0*	—	—	0	1
2.5 M					—	—	0	0*	—	—
4 M									0	0*

Note: Settings with an error of 1% or less are recommended.
Legend
Blank: No setting available
—: Setting possible, but error occurs
*: Continuous transmit/receive not possible

The BRR setting is calculated as follows:

Asynchronous mode:

$$N = \frac{ø}{64 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} \times 10^6 - 1$$

Synchronous mode:

$$N = \frac{ø}{8 \times 2^{2n-1} \times B} \times 10^6 - 1$$

B: Bit rate (bits/s)
N: BRR setting for baud rate generator ($0 \leq N \leq 255$)
ø: System clock frequency (MHz)
n: Baud rate generator clock source (n = 0, 1, 2, 3)
(For the clock sources and values of n, see the table below.)

		SMR Settings	
n	**Clock Source**	**CKS1**	**CKS0**
0	ø	0	0
1	ø/4	0	1
2	ø/16	1	0
3	ø/64	1	1

The bit rate error in asynchronous mode is calculated as follows.

$$\text{Error (\%)} = \left\{ \frac{\text{ø} \times 10^6}{(N + 1) \times B \times 64 \times 2^{2n-1}} - 1 \right\} \times 100$$

Table 10-5 indicates the maximum bit rates in asynchronous mode for various system clock frequencies. Tables 10-6 and 10-7 indicate the maximum bit rates with external clock input.

Table 10-5 Maximum Bit Rates for Various Frequencies (Asynchronous Mode)

		Settings	
ø (MHz)	**Maximum Bit Rate (bits/s)**	**n**	**N**
2	62500	0	0
2.097152	65536	0	0
2.4576	76800	0	0
3	93750	0	0
3.6864	115200	0	0
4	125000	0	0
4.9152	153600	0	0
5	156250	0	0
6	187500	0	0
6.144	192000	0	0
7.3728	230400	0	0
8	250000	0	0
9.8304	307200	0	0
10	312500	0	0
12	375000	0	0
12.288	384000	0	0
14	437500	0	0
14.7456	460800	0	0
16	500000	0	0

Table 10-6 Maximum Bit Rates with External Clock Input (Asynchronous Mode)

ø (MHz)	External Input Clock (MHz)	Maximum Bit Rate (bits/s)
2	0.5000	31250
2.097152	0.5243	32768
2.4576	0.6144	38400
3	0.7500	46875
3.6864	0.9216	57600
4	1.0000	62500
4.9152	1.2288	76800
5	1.2500	78125
6	1.5000	93750
6.144	1.5360	96000
7.3728	1.8432	115200
8	2.0000	125000
9.8304	2.4576	153600
10	2.5000	156250
12	3.0000	187500
12.288	3.0720	192000
14	3.5000	218750
14.7456	3.6864	230400
16	4.0000	250000

Table 10-7 Maximum Bit Rates with External Clock Input (Synchronous Mode)

ø (MHz)	External Input Clock (MHz)	Maximum Bit Rate (bits/s)
2	0.3333	333333.3
4	0.6667	666666.7
6	1.0000	1000000.0
8	1.3333	1333333.3
10	1.6667	1666666.7
12	2.0000	2000000.0
14	2.3333	2333333.3
16	2.6667	2666666.7

10.3 Operation

10.3.1 Overview

The SCI has an asynchronous mode in which characters are synchronized individually, and a synchronous mode in which communication is synchronized with clock pulses. Serial communication is possible in either mode. Asynchronous or synchronous mode and the communication format are selected in SMR, as shown in table 10-8. The SCI clock source is selected by the C/$\overline{A}$ bit in SMR and the CKE1 and CKE0 bits in SCR, as shown in table 10-9.

Asynchronous Mode

- Data length is selectable: 7 or 8 bits.
- Parity and multiprocessor bits are selectable. So is the stop bit length (1 or 2 bits). These selections determine the communication format and character length.
- In receiving, it is possible to detect framing errors, parity errors, overrun errors, and the break state.
- An internal or external clock can be selected as the SCI clock source.
  - — When an internal clock is selected, the SCI operates using the on-chip baud rate generator, and can output a serial clock signal with a frequency matching the bit rate.
  - — When an external clock is selected, the external clock input must have a frequency 16 times the bit rate. (The on-chip baud rate generator is not used.)

Synchronous Mode

- The communication format has a fixed 8-bit data length.
- In receiving, it is possible to detect overrun errors.
- An internal or external clock can be selected as the SCI clock source.
  - — When an internal clock is selected, the SCI operates using the on-chip baud rate generator, and outputs a serial clock signal to external devices.
  - — When an external clock is selected, the SCI operates on the input serial clock. The on-chip baud rate generator is not used.

Table 10-8 SMR Settings and Serial Communication Formats

SMR Settings						SCI Communication Format			
Bit 7 C/$\overline{A}$	Bit 6 CHR	Bit 2 MP	Bit 5 PE	Bit 3 STOP	Mode	Data Length	Multi-processor Bit	Parity Bit	Stop Bit Length
0	0	0	0	0	Asynchronous mode	8-bit data	Absent	Absent	1 bit
0	0	0	0	1					2 bits
0	0	0	1	0				Present	1 bit
0	0	0	1	1					2 bits
0	1	0	0	0		7-bit data		Absent	1 bit
0	1	0	0	1					2 bits
0	1	0	1	0				Present	1 bit
0	1	0	1	1					2 bits
0	0	1	—	0	Asynchronous mode (multi-processor format)	8-bit data	Present	Absent	1 bit
0	0	1	—	1					2 bits
0	1	1	—	0		7-bit data			1 bit
0	1	1	—	1					2 bits
1	—	—	—	—	Synchronous mode	8-bit data	Absent		None

Table 10-9 SMR and SCR Settings and SCI Clock Source Selection

SMR	SCR Settings			SCI Transmit/Receive Clock	
Bit 7 C/$\overline{A}$	Bit 1 CKE1	Bit 0 CKE0	Mode	Clock Source	SCK Pin Function
0	0	0	Asynchronous mode	Internal	SCI does not use the SCK pin
0	0	1			Outputs a clock with frequency matching the bit rate
0	1	0		External	Inputs a clock with frequency 16 times the bit rate
0	1	1			
1	0	0	Synchronous mode	Internal	Outputs the serial clock
1	0	1			
1	1	0		External	Inputs the serial clock
1	1	1			

10.3.2 Operation in Asynchronous Mode

In asynchronous mode each transmitted or received character begins with a start bit and ends with a stop bit. Serial communication is synchronized one character at a time.

The transmitting and receiving sections of the SCI are independent, so full duplex communication is possible. The transmitter and receiver are both double buffered, so data can be written and read while transmitting and receiving are in progress, enabling continuous transmitting and receiving.

Figure 10-2 shows the general format of asynchronous serial communication. In asynchronous serial communication the communication line is normally held in the mark (high) state. The SCI monitors the line and starts serial communication when the line goes to the space (low) state, indicating a start bit. One serial character consists of a start bit (low), data (LSB first), parity bit (high or low), and stop bit (high), in that order.

When receiving in asynchronous mode, the SCI synchronizes at the falling edge of the start bit. The SCI samples each data bit on the eighth pulse of a clock with a frequency 16 times the bit rate. Receive data is latched at the center of each bit.

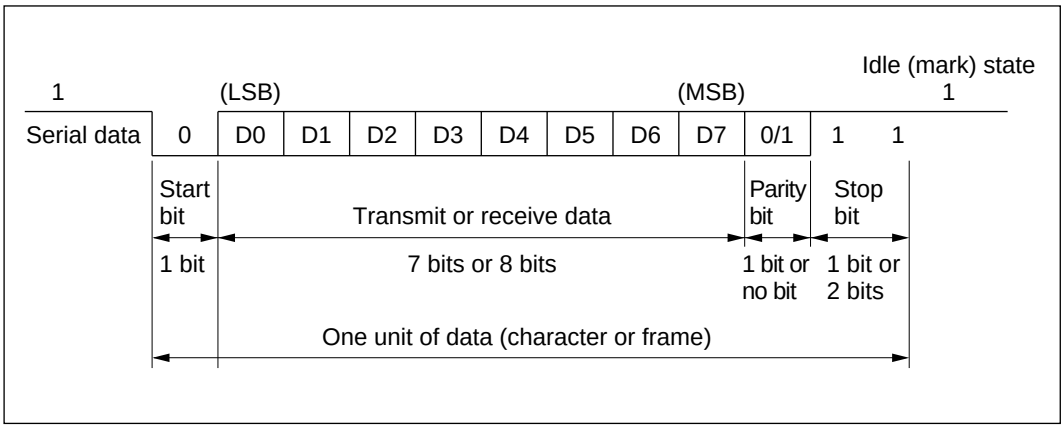


Figure 10-2 Data Format in Asynchronous Communication (Example: 8-Bit Data with Parity and 2 Stop Bits)

Communication Formats: Table 10-10 shows the 12 communication formats that can be selected in asynchronous mode. The format is selected by settings in SMR.

Table 10-10 Serial Communication Formats (Asynchronous Mode)

SMR Settings				Serial Communication Format and Frame Length
CHR	PE	MP	STOP	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
0	0	0	0	S 8-bit data STOP
0	0	0	1	S 8-bit data STOP STOP
0	1	0	0	S 8-bit data P STOP
0	1	0	1	S 8-bit data P STOP STOP
1	0	0	0	S 7-bit data STOP
1	0	0	1	S 7-bit data STOP STOP
1	1	0	0	S 7-bit data P STOP
1	1	0	1	S 7-bit data P STOP STOP
0	—	1	0	S 8 bit data MPB STOP
0	—	1	1	S 8 bit data MPB STOP STOP
1	—	1	0	S 7-bit data MPB STOP
1	—	1	1	S 7-bit data MPB STOP STOP

Legend
S: Start bit
STOP: Stop bit
P: Parity bit
MPB: Multiprocessor bit

Clock: An internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external clock input from the SCK pin can be selected as the SCI transmit/receive clock. The clock source is selected by the C/$\overline{A}$ bit in SMR and bits CKE1 and CKE0 in SCR. See table 10-9.

When an external clock is input at the SCK pin, it must have a frequency equal to 16 times the desired bit rate.

When the SCI operates on an internal clock, it can output a clock signal at the SCK pin. The frequency of this output clock is equal to the bit rate. The phase is aligned as in figure 10-3 so that the rising edge of the clock occurs at the center of each transmit data bit.

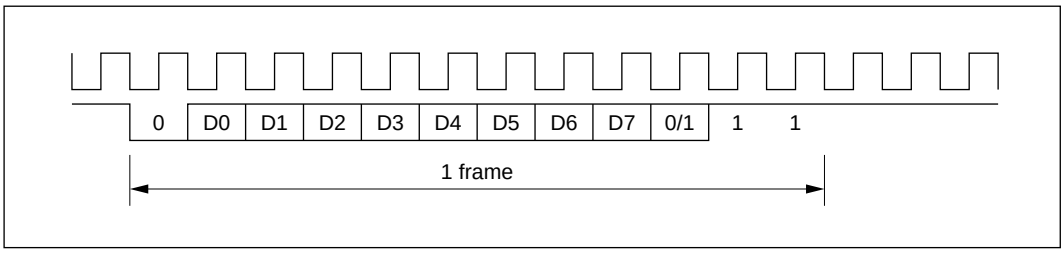


Figure 10-3 Phase Relationship between Output Clock and Serial Data (Asynchronous Mode)

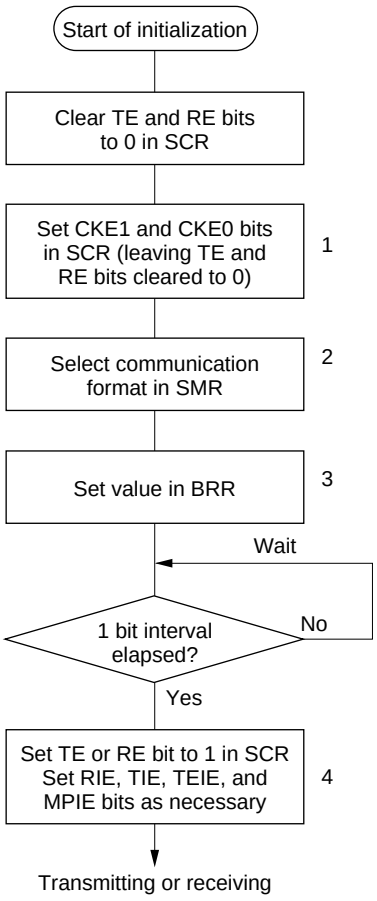
Transmitting and Receiving Data

SCI Initialization (Asynchronous Mode): Before transmitting or receiving, clear the TE and RE bits to 0 in SCR, then initialize the SCI as follows.

When changing the communication mode or format, always clear the TE and RE bits to 0 before following the procedure given below. Clearing TE to 0 sets the TDRE flag to 1 and initializes TSR. Clearing RE to 0, however, does not initialize the RDRF, PER, FER, and ORER flags and RDR, which retain their previous contents.

When an external clock is used, the clock should not be stopped during initialization or subsequent operation. SCI operation becomes unreliable if the clock is stopped.

Figure 10-4 is a sample flowchart for initializing the SCI.



1. Select the clock source in SCR. Clear the RIE, TIE, TEIE, MPIE, TE, and RE bits to 0. If clock output is selected in asynchronous mode, clock output starts immediately after the setting is made in SCR.
2. Select the communication format in SMR.
3. Write the value corresponding to the bit rate in BRR. This step is not necessary when an external clock is used.
4. Wait for at least the interval required to transmit or receive 1 bit, then set the TE or RE bit to 1 in SCR. Set the RIE, TIE, TEIE, and MPIE bits as necessary. Setting the TE or RE bit enables the SCI to use the TxD or RxD pin.

Figure 10-4 Sample Flowchart for SCI Initialization

Transmitting Serial Data (Asynchronous Mode): Figure 10-5 shows a sample flowchart for transmitting serial data and indicates the procedure to follow.

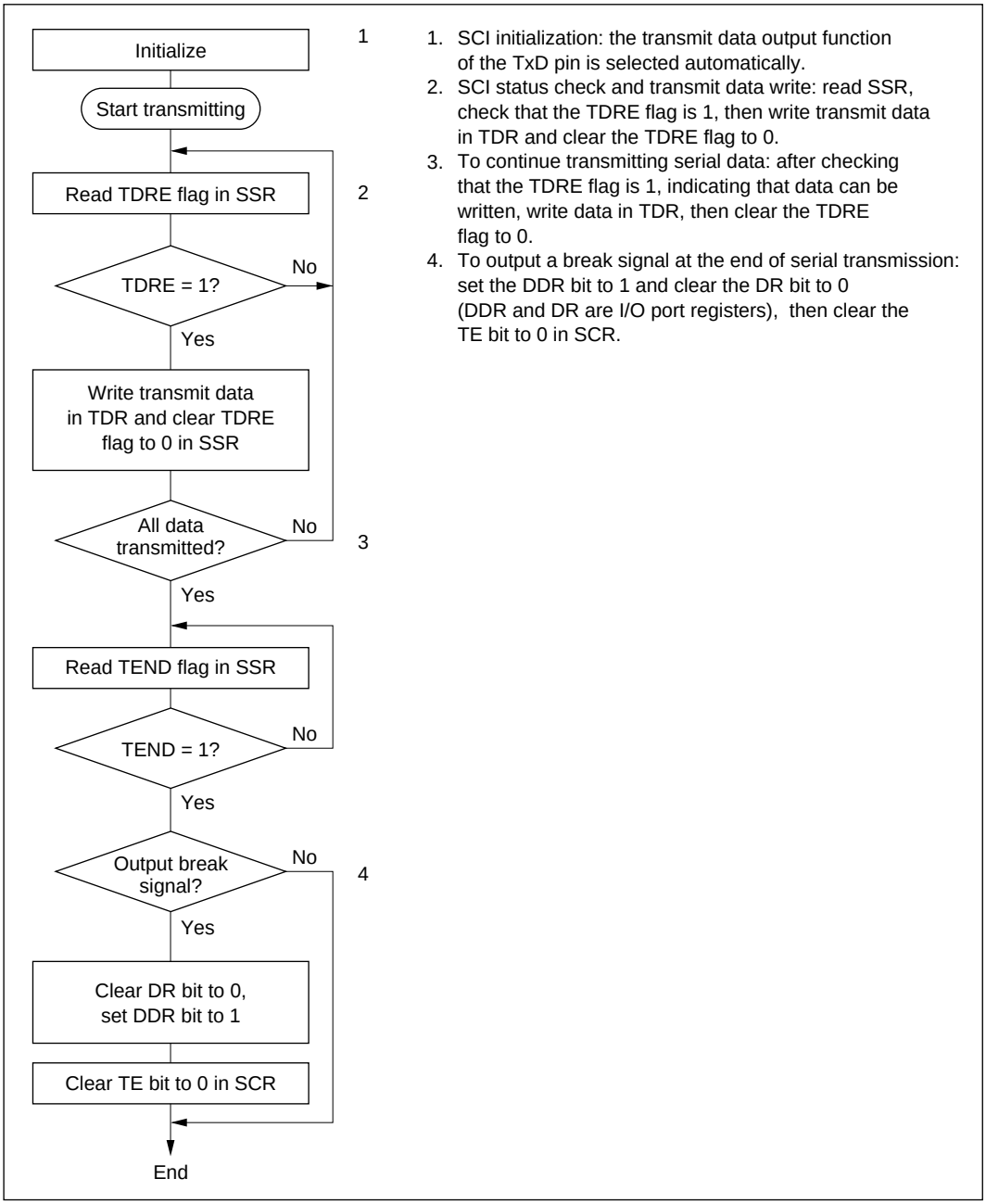


Figure 10-5 Sample Flowchart for Transmitting Serial Data

In transmitting serial data, the SCI operates as follows.

- The SCI monitors the TDRE flag in SSR. When the TDRE flag is cleared to 0 the SCI recognizes that TDR contains new data, and loads this data from TDR into TSR.
- After loading the data from TDR into TSR, the SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 and starts transmitting. If the TIE bit is set to 1 in SCR, the SCI requests a transmit-data-empty interrupt (TXI) at this time.

  Serial transmit data is transmitted in the following order from the TxD pin:

  — Start bit: One 0 bit is output.
  — Transmit data: 7 or 8 bits are output, LSB first.
  — Parity bit or multiprocessor bit: One parity bit (even or odd parity) or one multiprocessor bit is output. Formats in which neither a parity bit nor a multiprocessor bit is output can also be selected.
  — Stop bit: One or two 1 bits (stop bits) are output.
  — Mark state: Output of 1 bits continues until the start bit of the next transmit data.

- The SCI checks the TDRE flag when it outputs the stop bit. If the TDRE flag is 0, the SCI loads new data from TDR into TSR, outputs the stop bit, then begins serial transmission of the next frame. If the TDRE flag is 1, the SCI sets the TEND flag to 1 in SSR, outputs the stop bit, then continues output of 1 bits in the mark state. If the TEIE bit is set to 1 in SCR, a transmit-end interrupt (TEI) is requested at this time.

Figure 10-6 shows an example of SCI transmit operation in asynchronous mode.

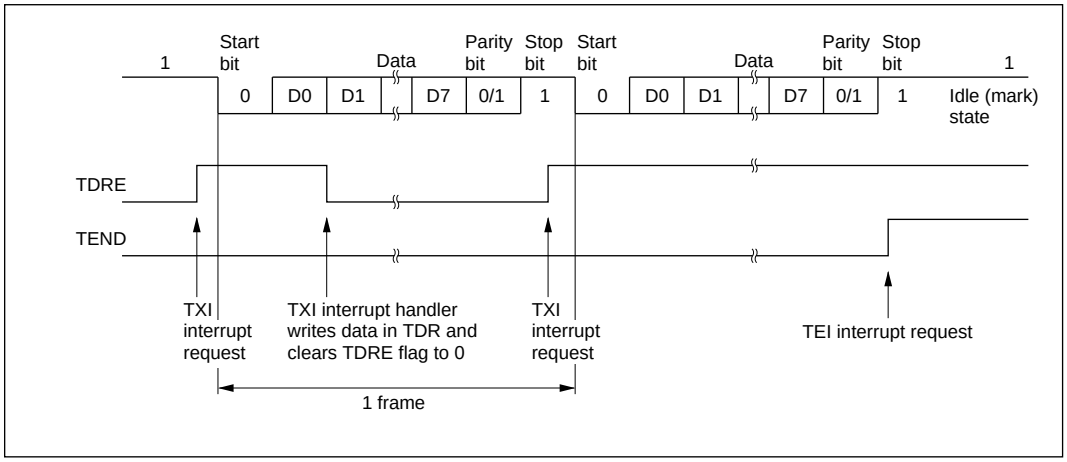


Figure 10-6 Example of SCI Transmit Operation in Asynchronous Mode (8-Bit Data with Parity and 1 Stop Bit)

Receiving Serial Data (Asynchronous Mode): Figure 10-7 shows a sample flowchart for receiving serial data and indicates the procedure to follow.

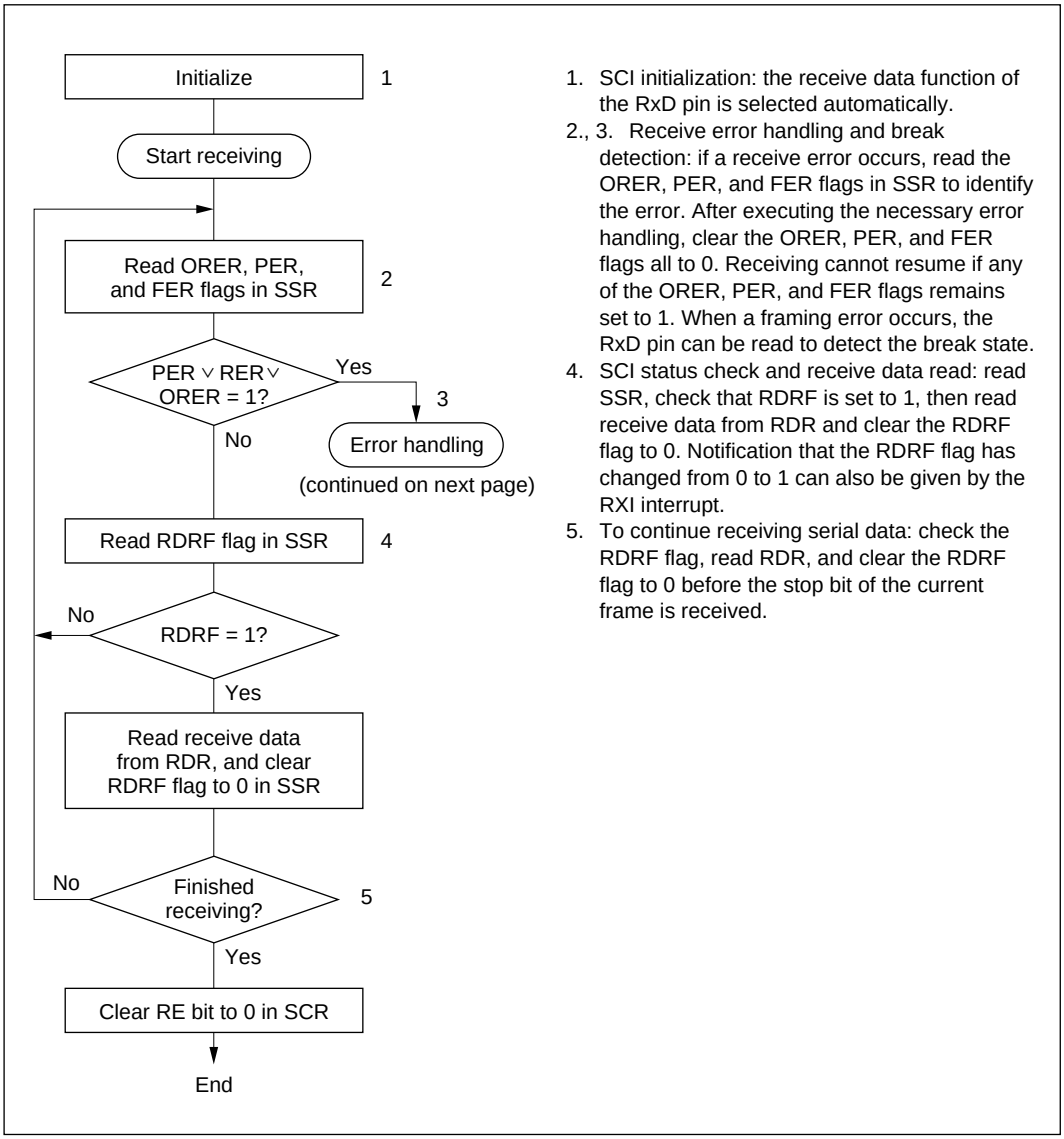


Figure 10-7 Sample Flowchart for Receiving Serial Data (1)

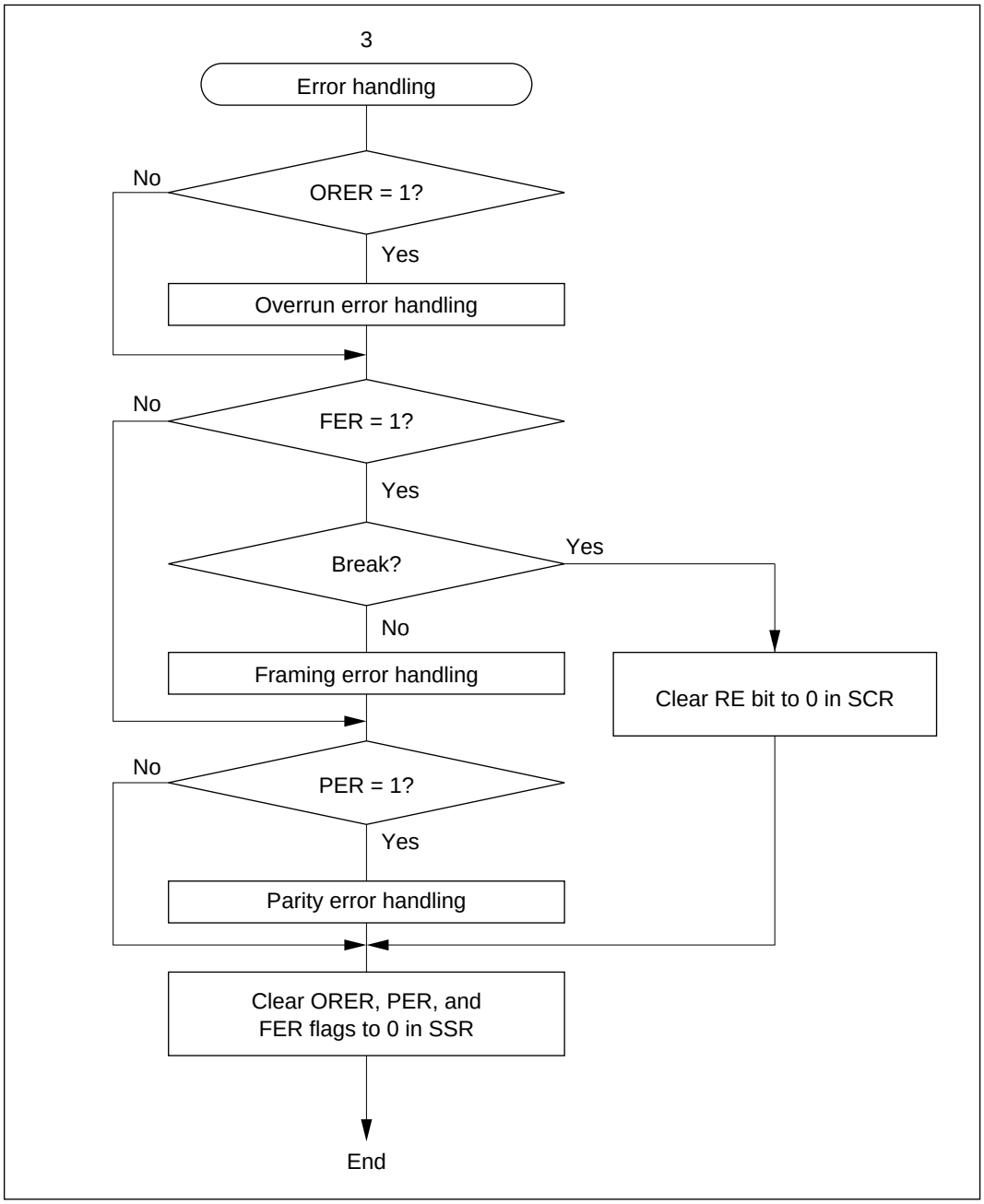


Figure 10-7 Sample Flowchart for Receiving Serial Data (2)

In receiving, the SCI operates as follows.

- The SCI monitors the receive data line. When it detects a start bit, the SCI synchronizes internally and starts receiving.
- Receive data is stored in RSR in order from LSB to MSB.
- The parity bit and stop bit are received.

After receiving, the SCI makes the following checks:

— Parity check: The number of 1s in the receive data must match the even or odd parity setting of the O/$\overline{E}$ bit in SMR.
— Stop bit check: The stop bit value must be 1. If there are two stop bits, only the first stop bit is checked.
— Status check: The RDRF flag must be 0 so that receive data can be transferred from RSR into RDR.

If these checks all pass, the RDRF flag is set to 1 and the received data is stored in RDR. If one of the checks fails (receive error), the SCI operates as indicated in table 10-11.

Note: When a receive error occurs, further receiving is disabled. In receiving, the RDRF flag is not set to 1. Be sure to clear the error flags.

- When the RDRF flag is set to 1, if the RIE bit is set to 1 in SCR, a receive-data-full interrupt (RXI) is requested. If the ORER, PER, or FER flag is set to 1 and the RIE bit in SCR is also set to 1, a receive-error interrupt (ERI) is requested.

Table 10-11 Receive Error Conditions

Receive Error	Abbreviation	Condition	Data Transfer
Overrun error	ORER	Receiving of next data ends while RDRF flag is still set to 1 in SSR	Receive data not transferred from RSR to RDR
Framing error	FER	Stop bit is 0	Receive data transferred from RSR to RDR
Parity error	PER	Parity of receive data differs from even/odd parity setting in SMR	Receive data transferred from RSR to RDR

Figure 10-8 shows an example of SCI receive operation in asynchronous mode.

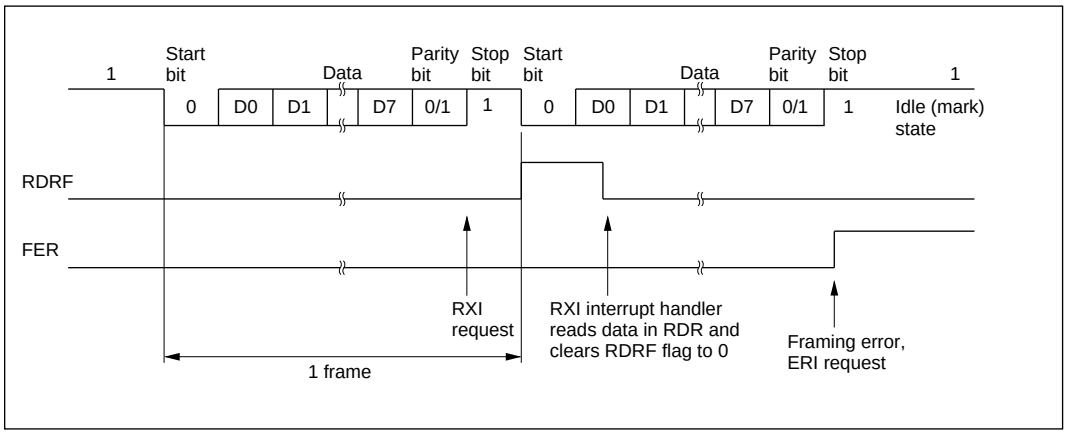


Figure 10-8 Example of SCI Receive Operation (8-Bit Data with Parity and One Stop Bit)

10.3.3 Multiprocessor Communication

The multiprocessor communication function enables several processors to share a single serial communication line. The processors communicate in asynchronous mode using a format with an additional multiprocessor bit (multiprocessor format).

In multiprocessor communication, each receiving processor is addressed by an ID. A serial communication cycle consists of an ID-sending cycle that identifies the receiving processor, and a data-sending cycle. The multiprocessor bit distinguishes ID-sending cycles from data-sending cycles.

The transmitting processor starts by sending the ID of the receiving processor with which it wants to communicate as data with the multiprocessor bit set to 1. Next the transmitting processor sends transmit data with the multiprocessor bit cleared to 0.

Receiving processors skip incoming data until they receive data with the multiprocessor bit set to 1. When they receive data with the multiprocessor bit set to 1, receiving processors compare the data with their IDs. The receiving processor with a matching ID continues to receive further incoming data. Processors with IDs not matching the received data skip further incoming data until they again receive data with the multiprocessor bit set to 1. Multiple processors can send and receive data in this way.

Figure 10-9 shows an example of communication among different processors using a multiprocessor format.

Communication Formats: Four formats are available. Parity-bit settings are ignored when a multiprocessor format is selected. For details see table 10-8.

Clock: See the description of asynchronous mode.

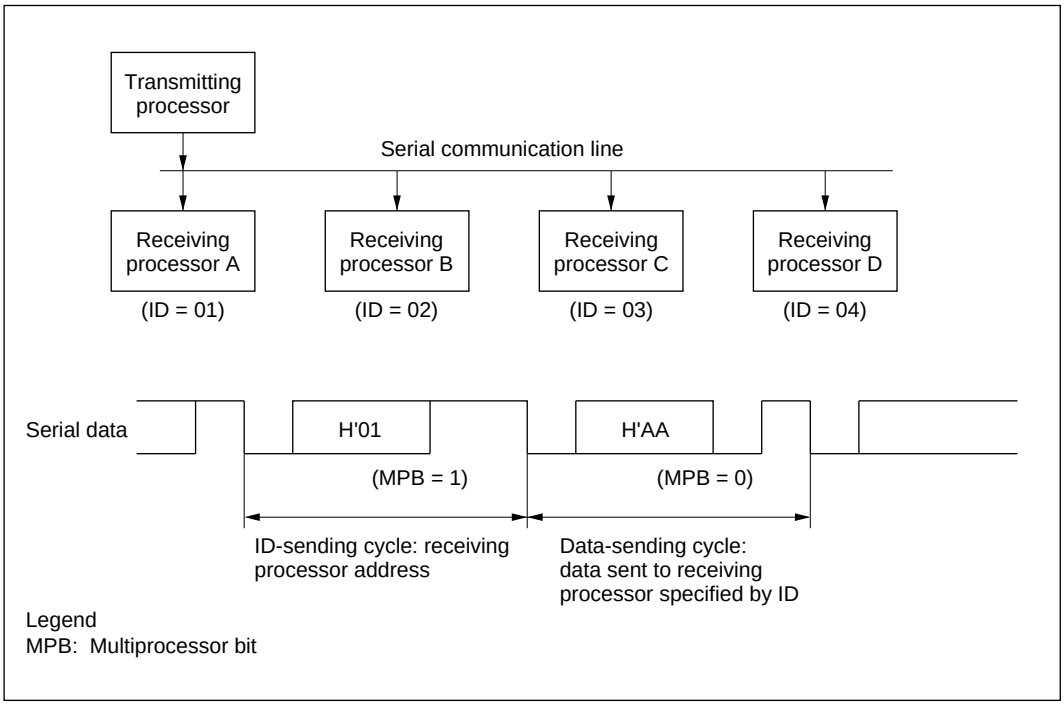


Figure 10-9 Example of Communication among Processors using Multiprocessor Format (Sending Data H'AA to Receiving Processor A)

Transmitting and Receiving Data

Transmitting Multiprocessor Serial Data: Figure 10-10 shows a sample flowchart for transmitting multiprocessor serial data and indicates the procedure to follow.

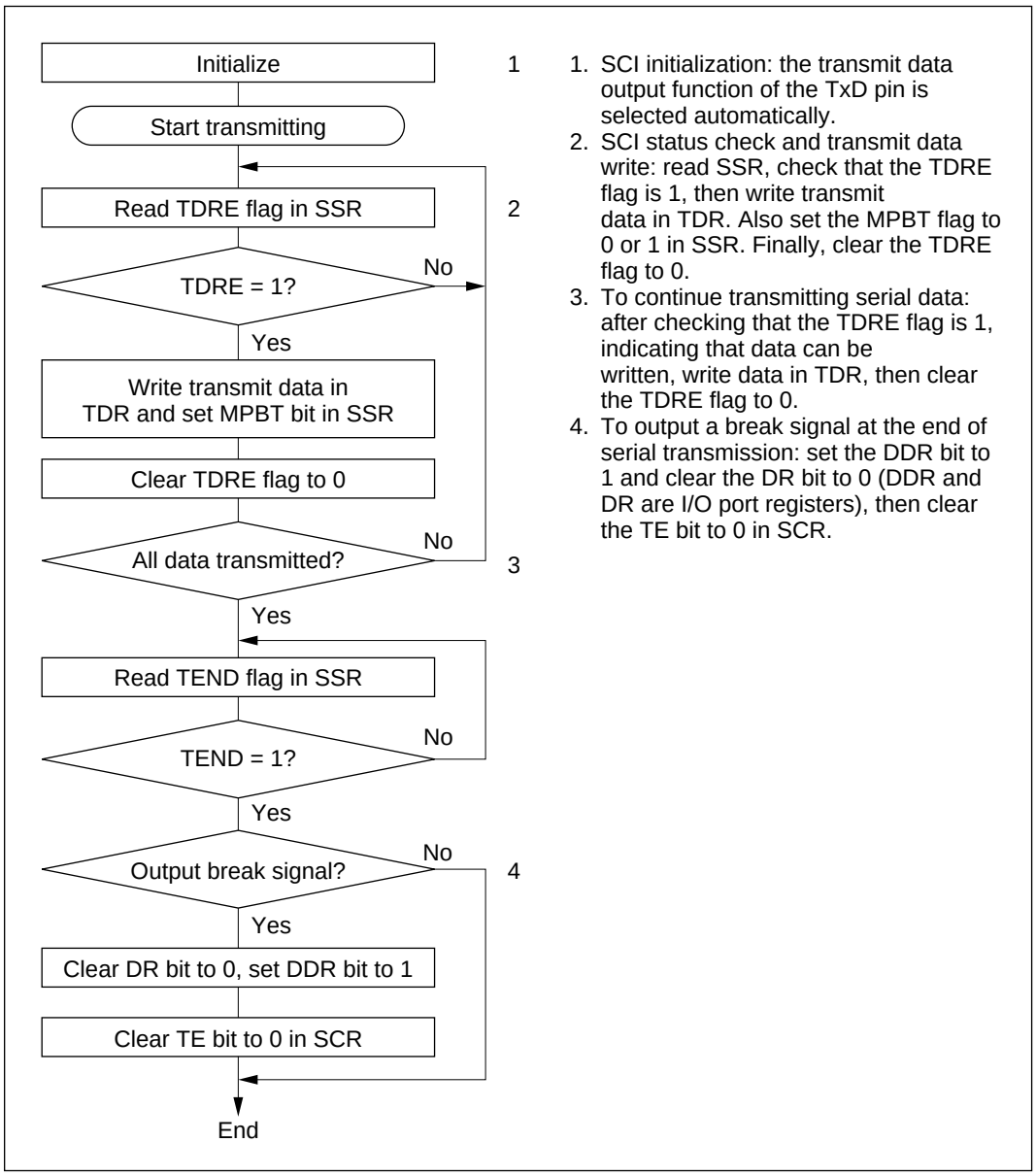


Figure 10-10 Sample Flowchart for Transmitting Multiprocessor Serial Data

In transmitting serial data, the SCI operates as follows.

- The SCI monitors the TDRE flag in SSR. When the TDRE flag is cleared to 0 the SCI recognizes that TDR contains new data, and loads this data from TDR into TSR.
- After loading the data from TDR into TSR, the SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 and starts transmitting. If the TIE bit in SCR is set to 1, the SCI requests a transmit-data-empty interrupt (TXI) at this time.

Serial transmit data is transmitted in the following order from the TxD pin:

— Start bit: One 0 bit is output.
— Transmit data: 7 or 8 bits are output, LSB first.
— Multiprocessor bit: One multiprocessor bit (MPBT value) is output.
— Stop bit: One or two 1 bits (stop bits) are output.
— Mark state: Output of 1 bits continues until the start bit of the next transmit data.

- The SCI checks the TDRE flag when it outputs the stop bit. If the TDRE flag is 0, the SCI loads data from TDR into TSR, outputs the stop bit, then begins serial transmission of the next frame. If the TDRE flag is 1, the SCI sets the TEND flag in SSR to 1, outputs the stop bit, then continues output of 1 bits in the mark state. If the TEIE bit is set to 1 in SCR, a transmit-end interrupt (TEI) is requested at this time.

Figure 10-11 shows an example of SCI transmit operation using a multiprocessor format.

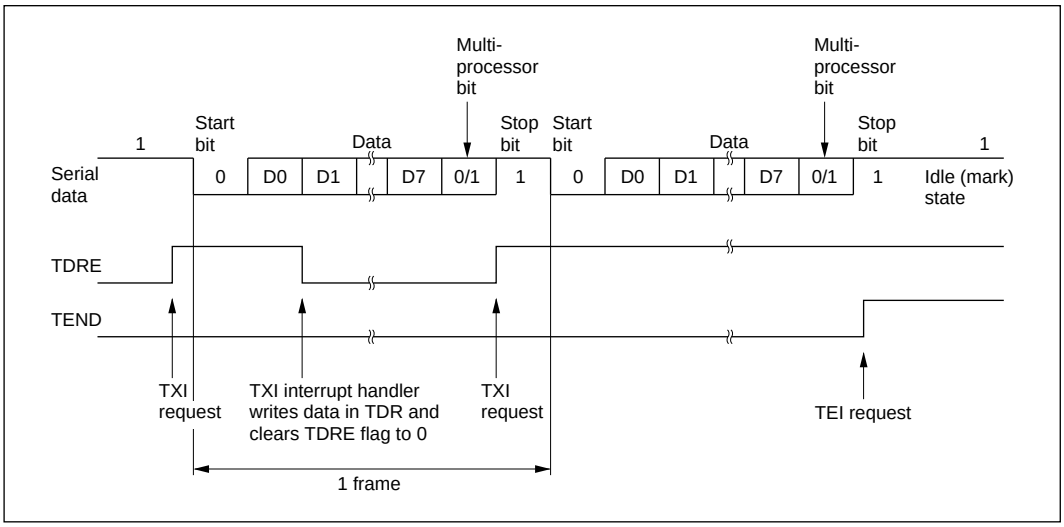


Figure 10-11 Example of SCI Transmit Operation (8-Bit Data with Multiprocessor Bit and One Stop Bit)

Receiving Multiprocessor Serial Data: Figure 10-12 shows a sample flowchart for receiving multiprocessor serial data and indicates the procedure to follow.

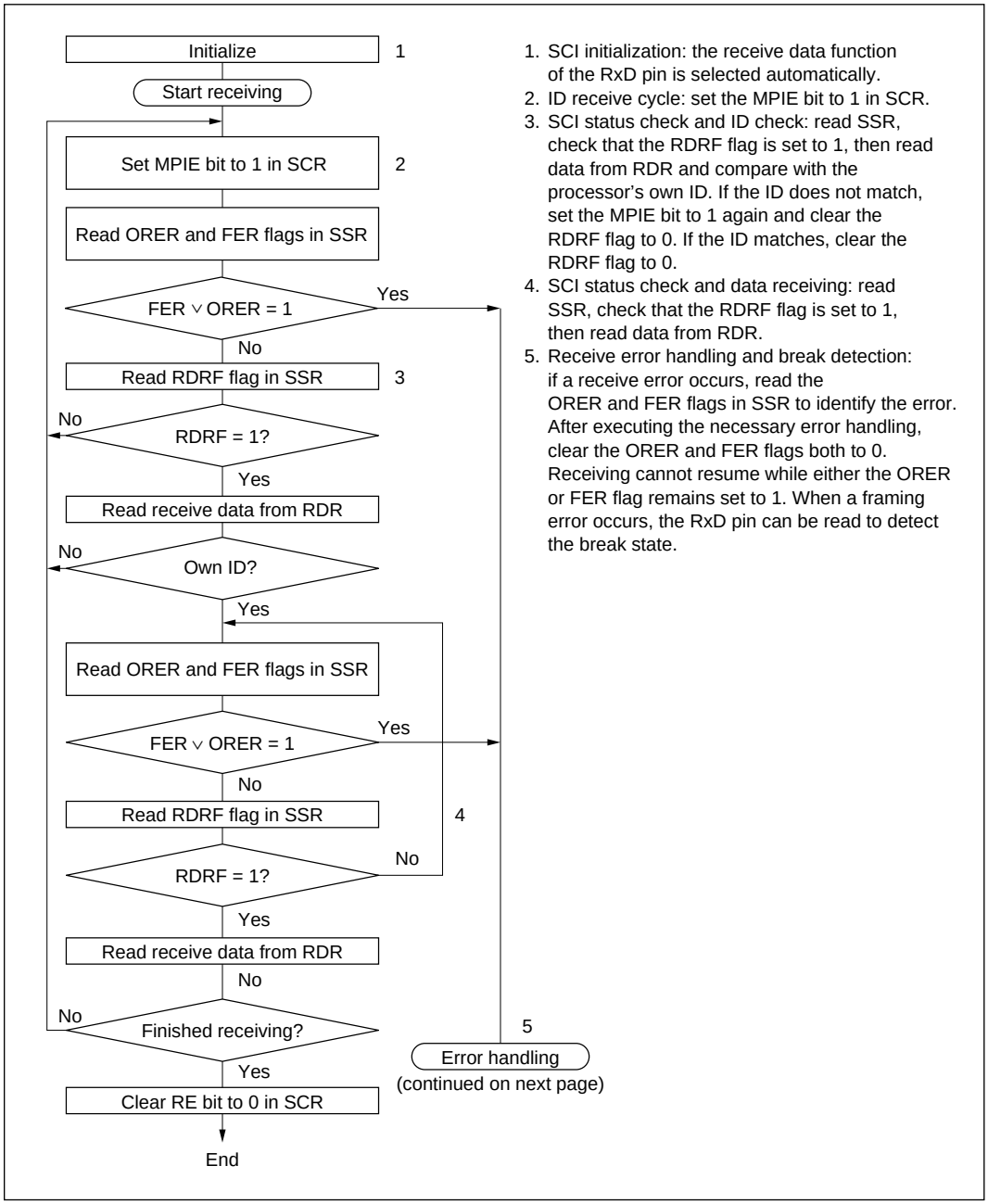


Figure 10-12 Sample Flowchart for Receiving Multiprocessor Serial Data (1)

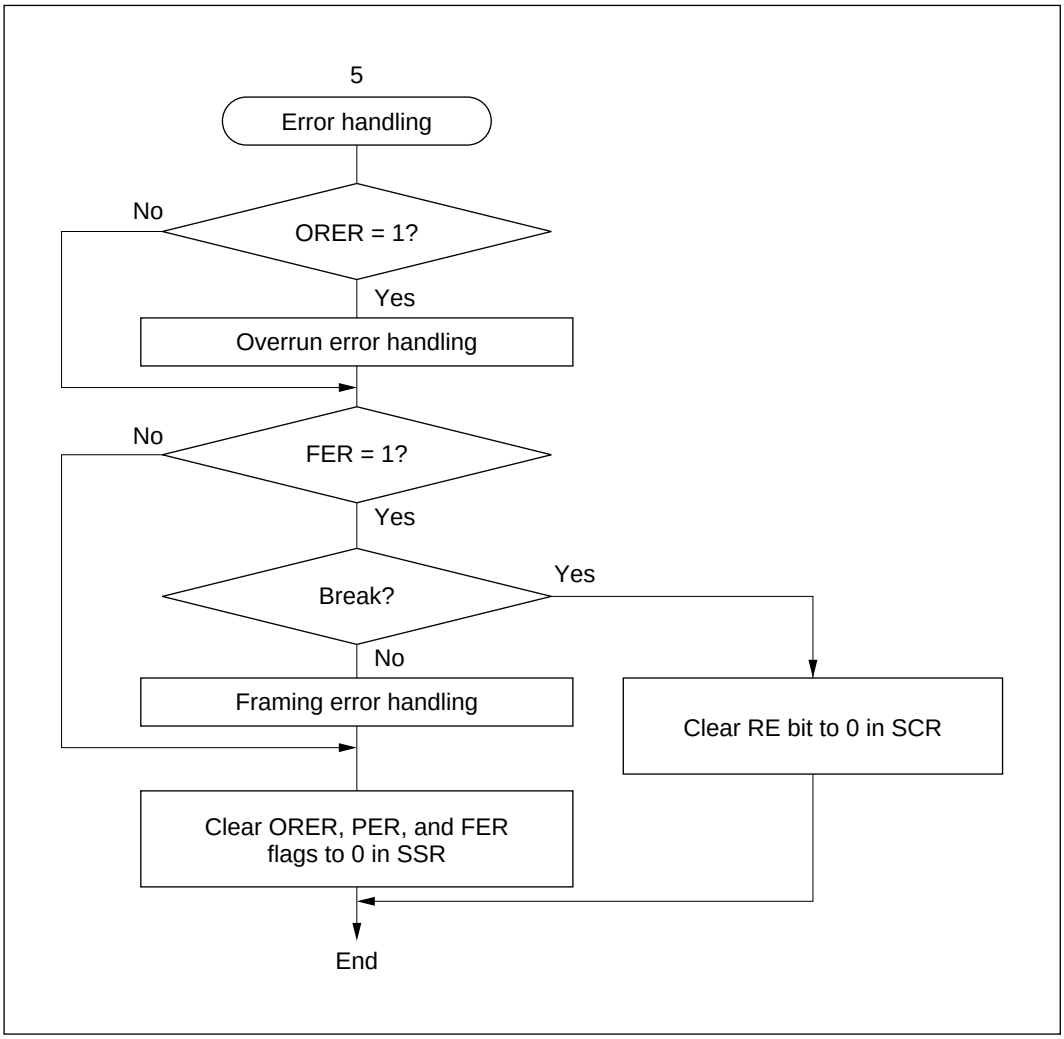


Figure 10-12 Sample Flowchart for Receiving Multiprocessor Serial Data (2)

Figure 10-13 shows an example of SCI receive operation using a multiprocessor format.

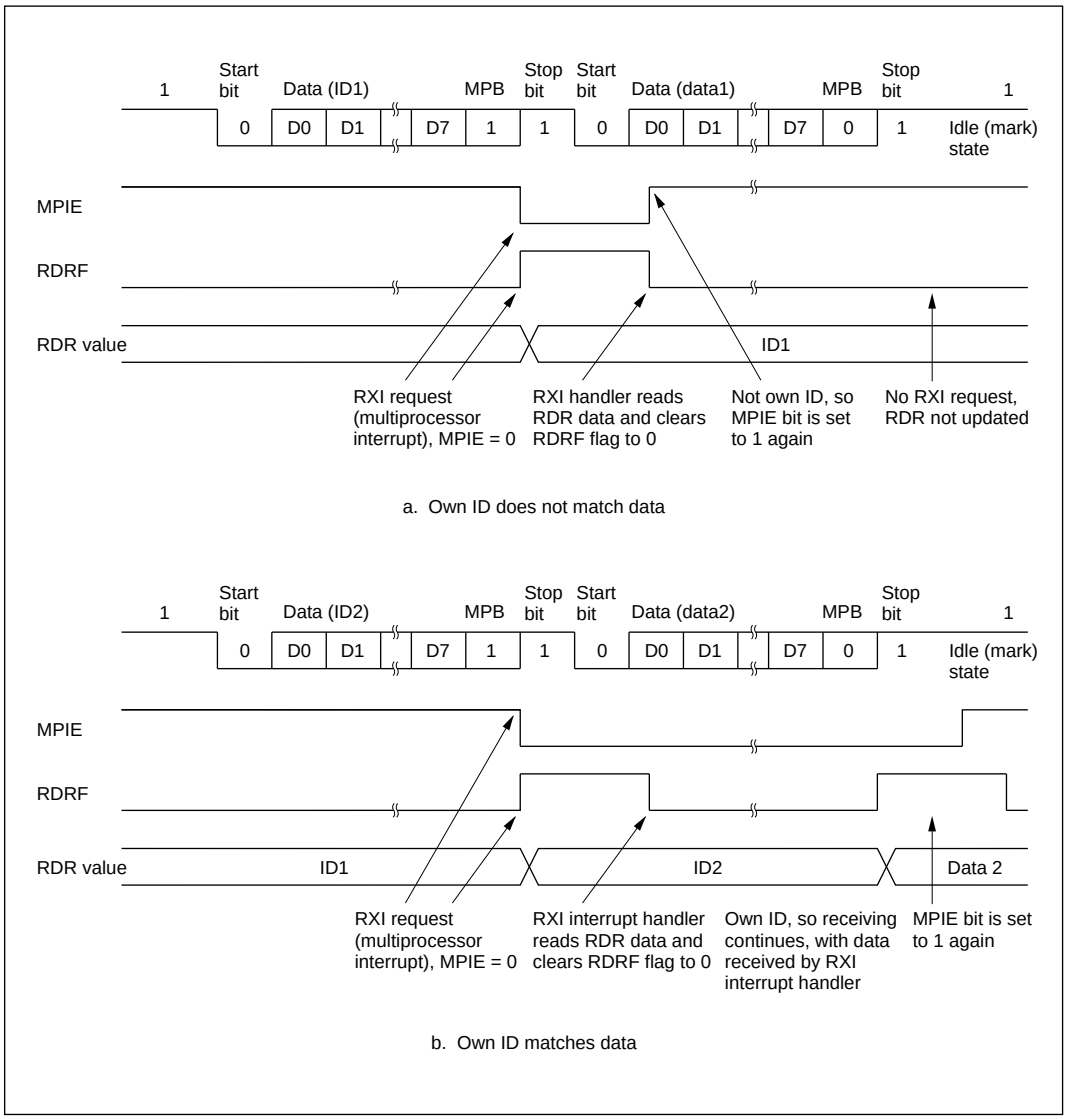


Figure 10-13 Example of SCI Receive Operation (8-Bit Data with Multiprocessor Bit and One Stop Bit)

10.3.4 Synchronous Operation

In synchronous mode, the SCI transmits and receives data in synchronization with clock pulses. This mode is suitable for high-speed serial communication.

The SCI transmitter and receiver share the same clock but are otherwise independent, so full duplex communication is possible. The transmitter and receiver are also double buffered, so continuous transmitting or receiving is possible by reading or writing data while transmitting or receiving is in progress.

Figure 10-14 shows the general format in synchronous serial communication.

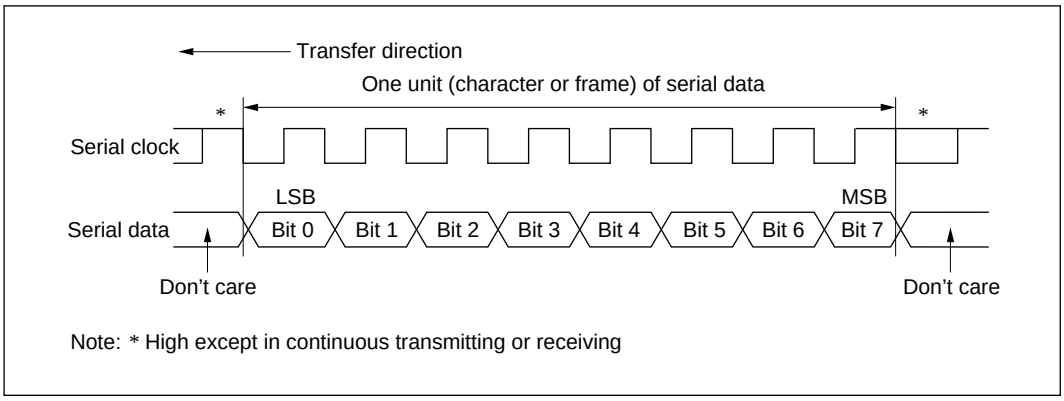


Figure 10-14 Data Format in Synchronous Communication

In synchronous serial communication, each data bit is placed on the communication line from one falling edge of the serial clock to the next. Data is guaranteed valid at the rise of the serial clock. In each character, the serial data bits are transmitted in order from LSB (first) to MSB (last). After output of the MSB, the communication line remains in the state of the MSB. In synchronous mode the SCI receives data by synchronizing with the rise of the serial clock.

Communication Format: The data length is fixed at 8 bits. No parity bit or multiprocessor bit can be added.

Clock: An internal clock generated by the on-chip baud rate generator or an external clock input from the SCK pin can be selected by clearing or setting the CKE1 bit in SCR. See table 10-9. When the SCI operates on an internal clock, it outputs the clock signal at the SCK pin. Eight clock pulses are output per transmitted or received character. When the SCI is not transmitting or receiving, the clock signal remains in the high state. When the SCI is only receiving, it receives in units of two characters, so it outputs 16 clock pulses. To receive in units of one character, an external clock source must be selected.

Transmitting and Receiving Data

SCI Initialization (Synchronous Mode): Before transmitting or receiving, clear the TE and RE bits to 0 in SCR, then initialize the SCI as follows.

When changing the communication mode or format, always clear the TE and RE bits to 0 before following the procedure given below. Clearing the TE bit to 0 sets the TDRE flag to 1 and initializes TSR. Clearing the RE bit to 0, however, does not initialize the RDRF, PER, FER, and ORE flags and RDR, which retain their previous contents.

Figure 10-15 is a sample flowchart for initializing the SCI.

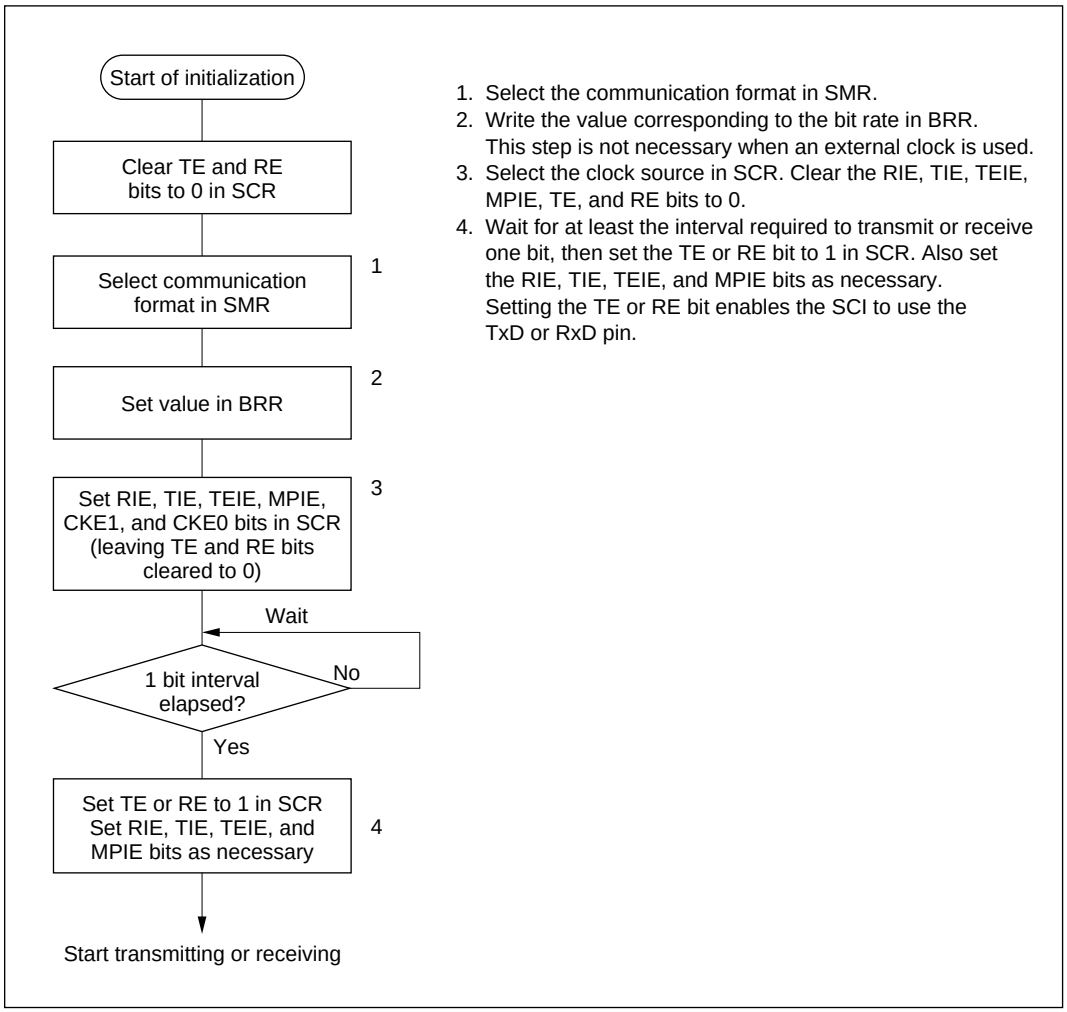


Figure 10-15 Sample Flowchart for SCI Initialization

Transmitting Serial Data (Synchronous Mode): Figure 10-16 shows a sample flowchart for transmitting serial data and indicates the procedure to follow.

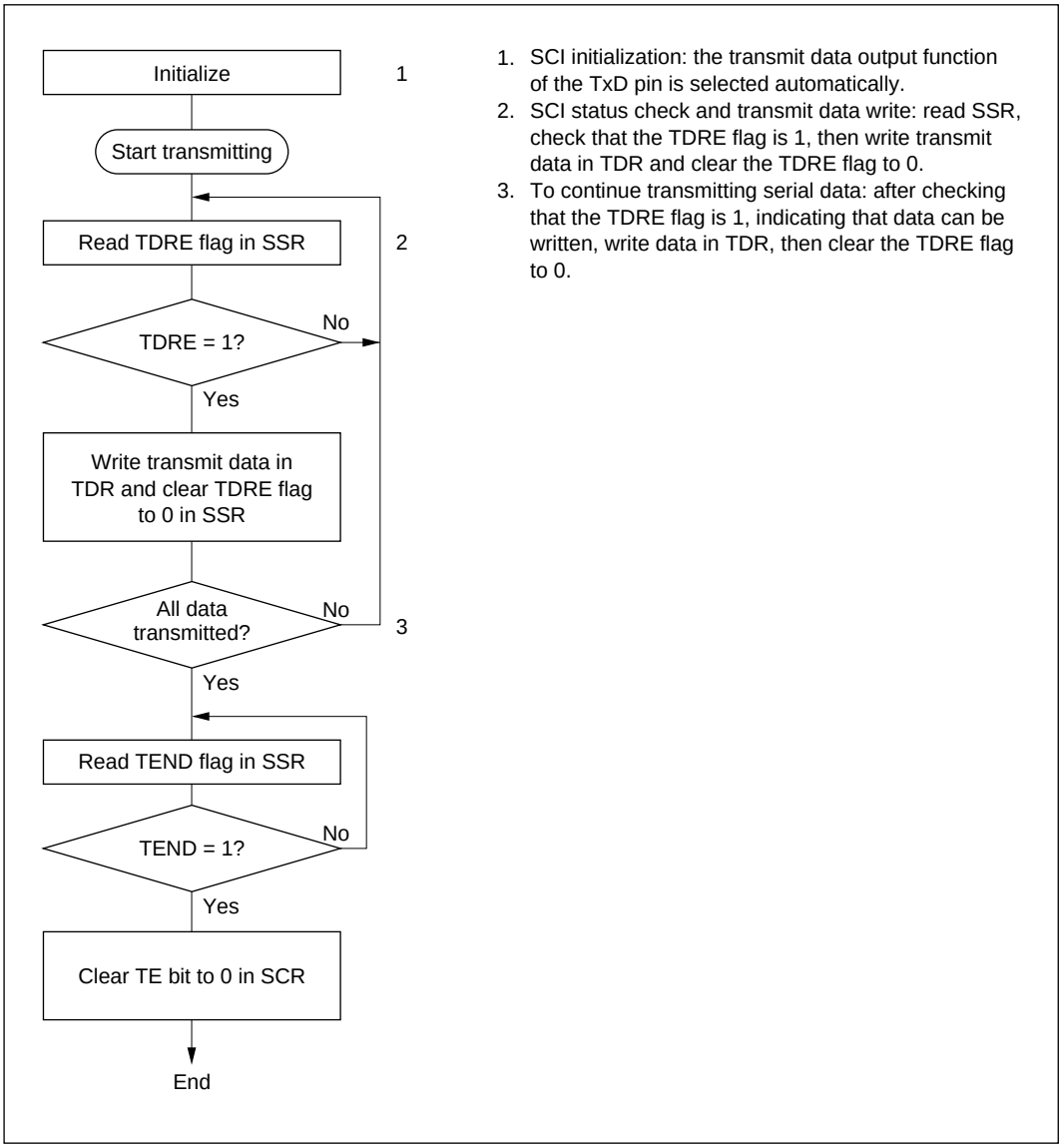


Figure 10-16 Sample Flowchart for Serial Transmitting

In transmitting serial data, the SCI operates as follows.

- The SCI monitors the TDRE flag in SSR. When the TDRE flag is cleared to 0 the SCI recognizes that TDR contains new data, and loads this data from TDR into TSR.
- After loading the data from TDR into TSR, the SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 and starts transmitting. If the TIE bit is set to 1 in SCR, the SCI requests a transmit-data-empty interrupt (TXI) at this time.

  If clock output is selected, the SCI outputs eight serial clock pulses. If an external clock source is selected, the SCI outputs data in synchronization with the input clock. Data is output from the TxD pin in order from LSB (bit 0) to MSB (bit 7).
- The SCI checks the TDRE flag when it outputs the MSB (bit 7). If the TDRE flag is 0, the SCI loads data from TDR into TSR and begins serial transmission of the next frame. If the TDRE flag is 1, the SCI sets the TEND flag to 1 in SSR, and after transmitting the MSB, holds the TxD pin in the MSB state. If the TEIE bit in SCR is set to 1, a transmit-end interrupt (TEI) is requested at this time.
- After the end of serial transmission, the SCK pin is held in a constant state.

Figure 10-17 shows an example of SCI transmit operation.

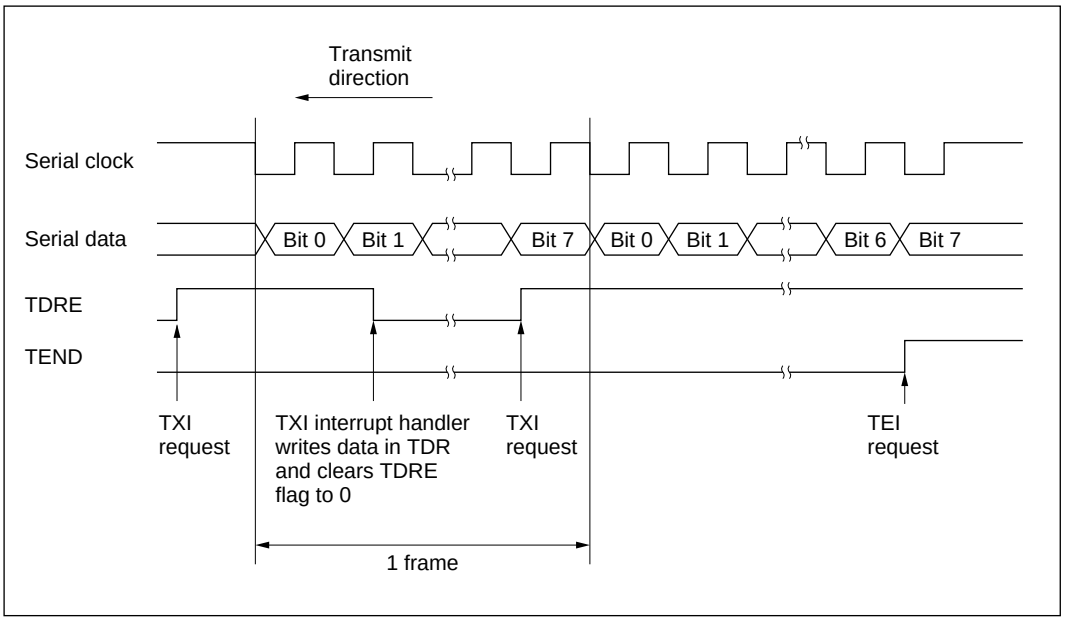
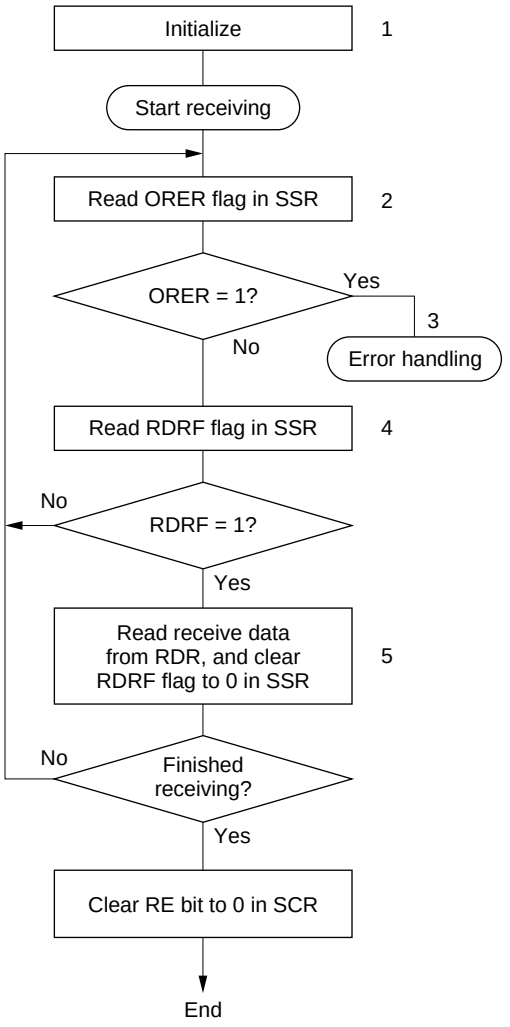


Figure 10-17 Example of SCI Transmit Operation

Receiving Serial Data: Figure 10-18 shows a sample flowchart for receiving serial data and indicates the procedure to follow. When switching from asynchronous mode to synchronous mode, make sure that the ORER, PER, and FER flags are cleared to 0. If the FER or PER flag is set to 1 the RDRF flag will not be set and both transmitting and receiving will be disabled.



1. SCI initialization: the receive data function of the RxD pin is selected automatically.
2., 3. Receive error handling: if a receive error occurs, read the ORER flag in SSR, then after executing the necessary error handling, clear the ORER flag to 0. Neither transmitting nor receiving can resume while the ORER flag remains set to 1.
4. SCI status check and receive data read: read SSR, check that the RDRF flag is set to 1, then read receive data from RDR and clear the RDRF flag to 0. Notification that the RDRF flag has changed from 0 to 1 can also be given by the RXI interrupt.
5. To continue receiving serial data: check the RDRF flag, read RDR, and clear the RDRF flag to 0 before the MSB (bit 7) of the current frame is received. If the DMAC is activated by a receive-data-full interrupt request (RXI) to read RDR, the RDRF flag is cleared automatically.

Figure 10-18 Sample Flowchart for Serial Receiving (1)

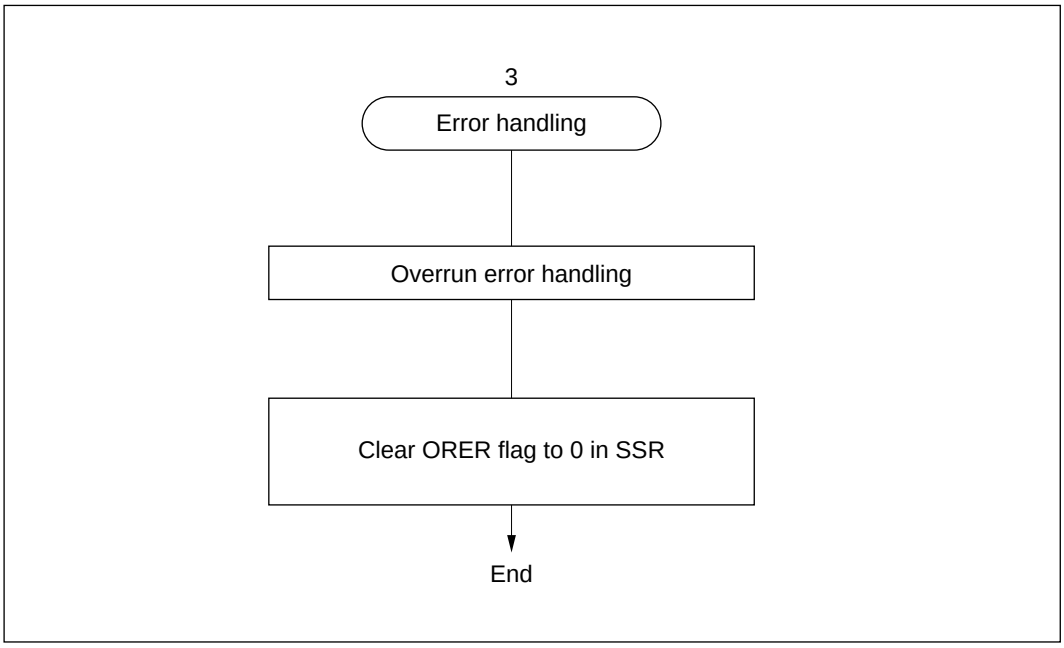


Figure 10-18 Sample Flowchart for Serial Receiving (2)

In receiving, the SCI operates as follows.

- The SCI synchronizes with serial clock input or output and initializes internally.
- Receive data is stored in RSR in order from LSB to MSB.

  After receiving the data, the SCI checks that the RDRF flag is 0 so that receive data can be transferred from RSR to RDR. If this check passes, the RDRF flag is set to 1 and the received data is stored in RDR. If the check does not pass (receive error), the SCI operates as indicated in table 10-11.
- After setting the RDRF flag to 1, if the RIE bit is set to 1 in SCR, the SCI requests a receive-data-full interrupt (RXI). If the ORER flag is set to 1 and the RIE bit in SCR is also set to 1, the SCI requests a receive-error interrupt (ERI).

Figure 10-19 shows an example of SCI receive operation.

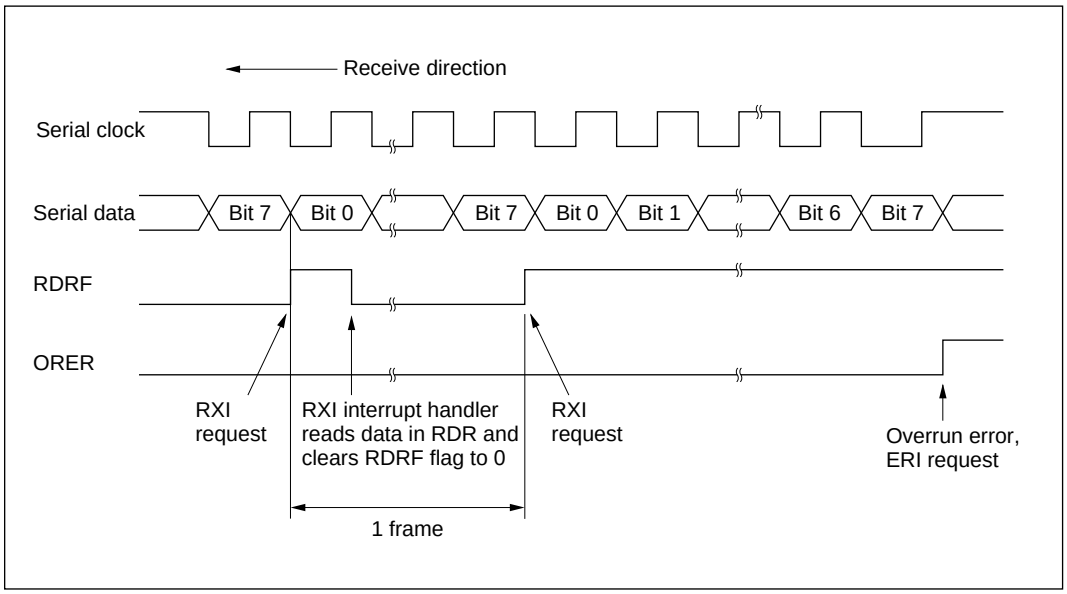
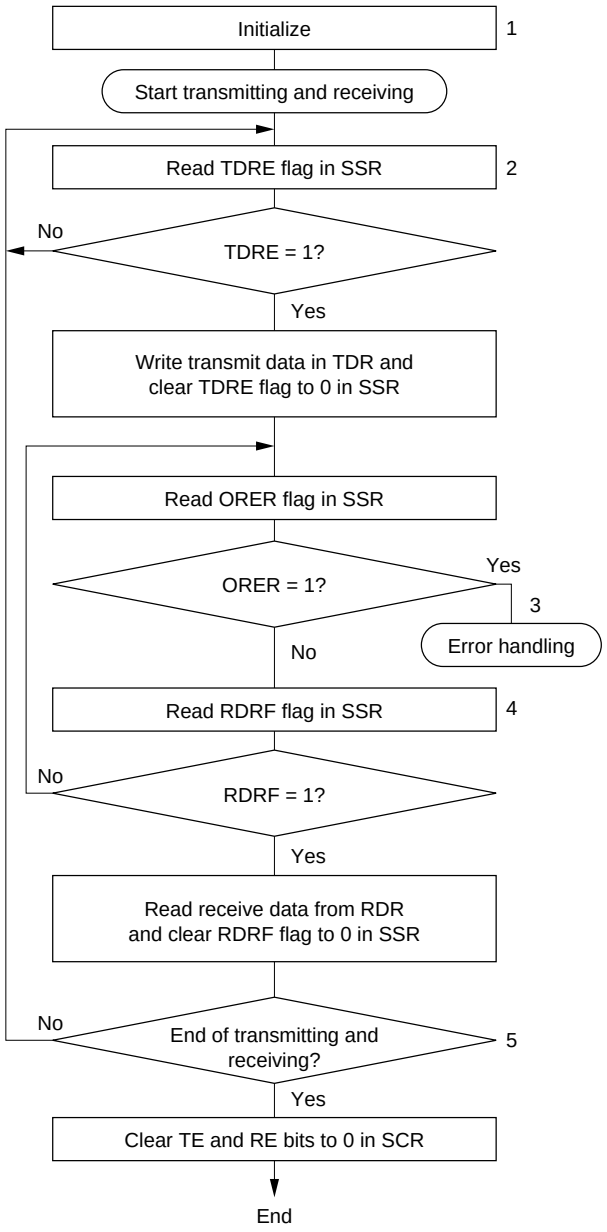


Figure 10-19 Example of SCI Receive Operation

Transmitting and Receiving Serial Data Simultaneously (Synchronous Mode): Figure 10-20 shows a sample flowchart for transmitting and receiving serial data simultaneously and indicates the procedure to follow.



Note: * When switching from transmitting or receiving to simultaneous transmitting and receiving, clear the TE and RE bits both to 0, then set the TE and RE bits both to 1.

1. SCI initialization: the transmit data output function of the TxD pin and receive data input function of the RxD pin are selected, enabling simultaneous transmitting and receiving.
2. SCI status check and transmit data write: read SSR, check that the TDRE flag is 1, then write transmit data in TDR and clear the TDRE flag to 0.
   Notification that the TDRE flag has changed from 0 to 1 can also be given by the TXI interrupt.
3. Receive error handling: if a receive error occurs, read the ORER flag in SSR, then after executing the necessary error handling, clear the ORER flag to 0.
   Neither transmitting nor receiving can resume while the ORER flag remains set to 1.
4. SCI status check and receive data read: read SSR, check that the RDRF flag is 1, then read receive data from RDR and clear the RDRF flag to 0. Notification that the RDRF flag has changed from 0 to 1 can also be given by the RXI interrupt.
5. To continue transmitting and receiving serial data: check the RDRF flag, read RDR, and clear the RDRF flag to 0 before the MSB (bit 7) of the current frame is received. Also check that the TDRE flag is (bit 7) of the current frame is received. Also check that the TDRE flag is set to 1, indicating that data can be written, write data in TDR, then clear the TDRE flag to 0 before the MSB (bit 7) of the current frame is transmitted.

Figure 10-20 Sample Flowchart for Serial Transmitting

10.4 SCI Interrupts

The SCI has four interrupt request sources: TEI (transmit-end interrupt), ERI (receive-error interrupt), RXI (receive-data-full interrupt), and TXI (transmit-data-empty interrupt). Table 10-12 lists the interrupt sources and indicates their priority. These interrupts can be enabled and disabled by the TIE, TEIE, and RIE bits in SCR. Each interrupt request is sent separately to the interrupt controller.

The TXI interrupt is requested when the TDRE flag is set to 1 in SSR. The TEI interrupt is requested when the TEND flag is set to 1 in SSR.

The RXI interrupt is requested when the RDRF flag is set to 1 in SSR. The ERI interrupt is requested when the ORER, PER, or FER flag is set to 1 in SSR.

Table 10-12 SCI Interrupt Sources

Interrupt	Description	Priority
ERI	Receive error (ORER, FER, or PER)	High
RXI	Receive data register full (RDRF)	
TXI	Transmit data register empty (TDRE)	
TEI	Transmit end (TEND)	Low

10.5 Usage Notes

Note the following points when using the SCI.

TDR Write and TDRE Flag: The TDRE flag in SSR is a status flag indicating the loading of transmit data from TDR into TSR. The SCI sets the TDRE flag to 1 when it transfers data from TDR to TSR.

Data can be written into TDR regardless of the state of the TDRE flag. If new data is written in TDR when the TDRE flag is 0, the old data stored in TDR will be lost because this data has not yet been transferred to TSR. Before writing transmit data in TDR, be sure to check that the TDRE flag is set to 1.

Simultaneous Multiple Receive Errors: Table 10-13 indicates the state of SSR status flags when multiple receive errors occur simultaneously. When an overrun error occurs the RSR contents are not transferred to RDR, so receive data is lost.

Table 10-13 SSR Status Flags and Transfer of Receive Data

SSR Status Flags				Receive Data Transfer	
RDRF	**ORER**	**FER**	**PER**	**RSR → RDR**	**Receive Errors**
1	1	0	0	×	Overrun error
0	0	1	0	o	Framing error
0	0	0	1	o	Parity error
1	1	1	0	×	Overrun error + framing error
1	1	0	1	×	Overrun error + parity error
0	0	1	1	o	Framing error + parity error
1	1	1	1	×	Overrun error + framing error + parity error

Notes: o: Receive data is transferred from RSR to RDR.
× Receive data is not transferred from RSR to RDR.

Break Detection and Processing: Break signals can be detected by reading the RxD pin directly when a framing error (FER) is detected. In the break state the input from the RxD pin consists of all 0s, so the FER flag is set and the parity error flag (PER) may also be set. In the break state the SCI receiver continues to operate, so if the FER flag is cleared to 0 it will be set to 1 again.

Sending a Break Signal: When the TE bit is cleared to 0 the TxD pin becomes an I/O port, the level and direction (input or output) of which are determined by DR and DDR bits. This feature can be used to send a break signal.

After the serial transmitter is initialized, the DR value substitutes for the mark state until the TE bit is set to 1 (the TxD pin function is not selected until the TE bit is set to 1). The DDR and DR bits should therefore both be set to 1 beforehand.

To send a break signal during serial transmission, clear the DR bit to 0, then clear the TE bit to 0. When the TE bit is cleared to 0 the transmitter is initialized, regardless of its current state, so the TxD pin becomes an output port outputting the value 0.

Receive Error Flags and Transmitter Operation (Synchronous Mode Only): When a receive error flag (ORER, PER, or FER) is set to 1 the SCI will not start transmitting, even if the TDRE flag is cleared to 0. Be sure to clear the receive error flags to 0 when starting to transmit. Note that clearing the RE bit to 0 does not clear the receive error flags to 0.

Receive Data Sampling Timing in Asynchronous Mode and Receive Margin: In asynchronous mode the SCI operates on a base clock with 16 times the bit rate frequency. In receiving, the SCI synchronizes internally with the fall of the start bit, which it samples on the base clock. Receive data is latched at the rising edge of the eighth base clock pulse. See figure 10-21.

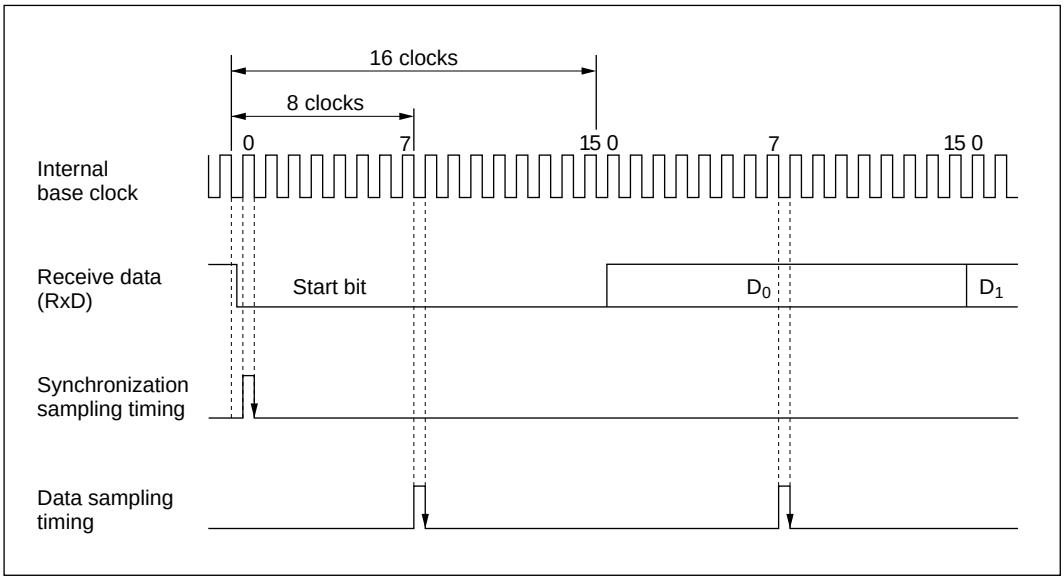


Figure 10-21 Receive Data Sampling Timing in Asynchronous Mode

The receive margin in asynchronous mode can therefore be expressed as in equation (1).

$$M = \left| \left(0.5 - \frac{1}{2N}\right) - (L - 0.5)\,F - \frac{|D - 0.5|}{N}(1 + F) \right| \times 100\% \quad \text{.....(1)}$$

M: Receive margin (%)
N: Ratio of clock frequency to bit rate (N = 16)
D: Clock duty cycle (D = 0 to 1.0)
L: Frame length (L = 9 to 12)
F: Absolute deviation of clock frequency

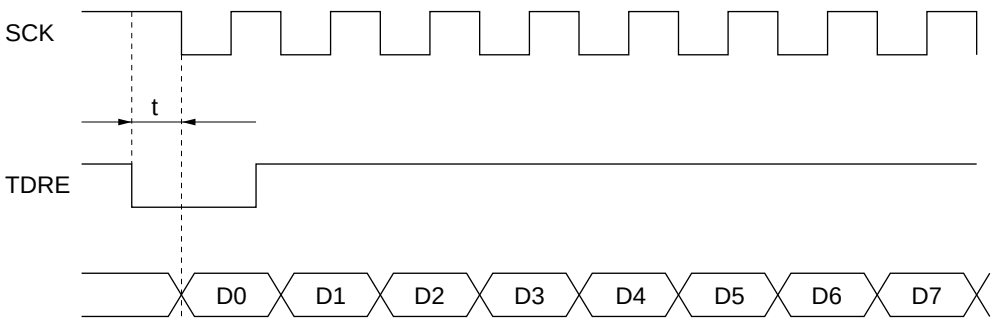
From equation (1), if F = 0 and D = 0.5 the receive margin is 46.875%, as given by equation (2).

$D = 0.5, F = 0$

$$M = [0.5 - 1/(2 \times 16)] \times 100\%$$
$$= 46.875\% \quad \text{.....(2)}$$

This is a theoretical value. A reasonable margin to allow in system designs is 20% to 30%.

Restrictions in Synchronous Mode: When an external clock source is used as the synchronous clock, the serial clock must be input after at least five system clocks (5ø) have elapsed after TDR has been updated. If the serial clock is input after only four system clocks have elapsed or less, an error may occur (see figure 10-22).



Note: When using an external clock, t must be greater than four system clocks.

Figure 10-22 Example of Transmission Synchronous Mode

Section 11 A/D Converter

11.1 Overview

The H8/3001 includes a 10-bit successive-approximations A/D converter with a selection of up to four analog input channels.

11.1.1 Features

A/D converter features are listed below.

- 10-bit resolution
- Four input channels
- High-speed conversion

  Conversion time: maximum 8.4 µs per channel (with 16 MHz system clock)
- Two conversion modes

  Single mode: A/D conversion of one channel
  Scan mode: continuous conversion on one to four channels
- Four 16-bit data registers

  A/D conversion results are transferred for storage into data registers corresponding to the channels.
- Sample-and-hold function
- A/D interrupt requested at end of conversion

  At the end of A/D conversion, an A/D end interrupt (ADI) can be requested.

11.1.2 Block Diagram

Figure 11-1 shows a block diagram of the A/D converter.

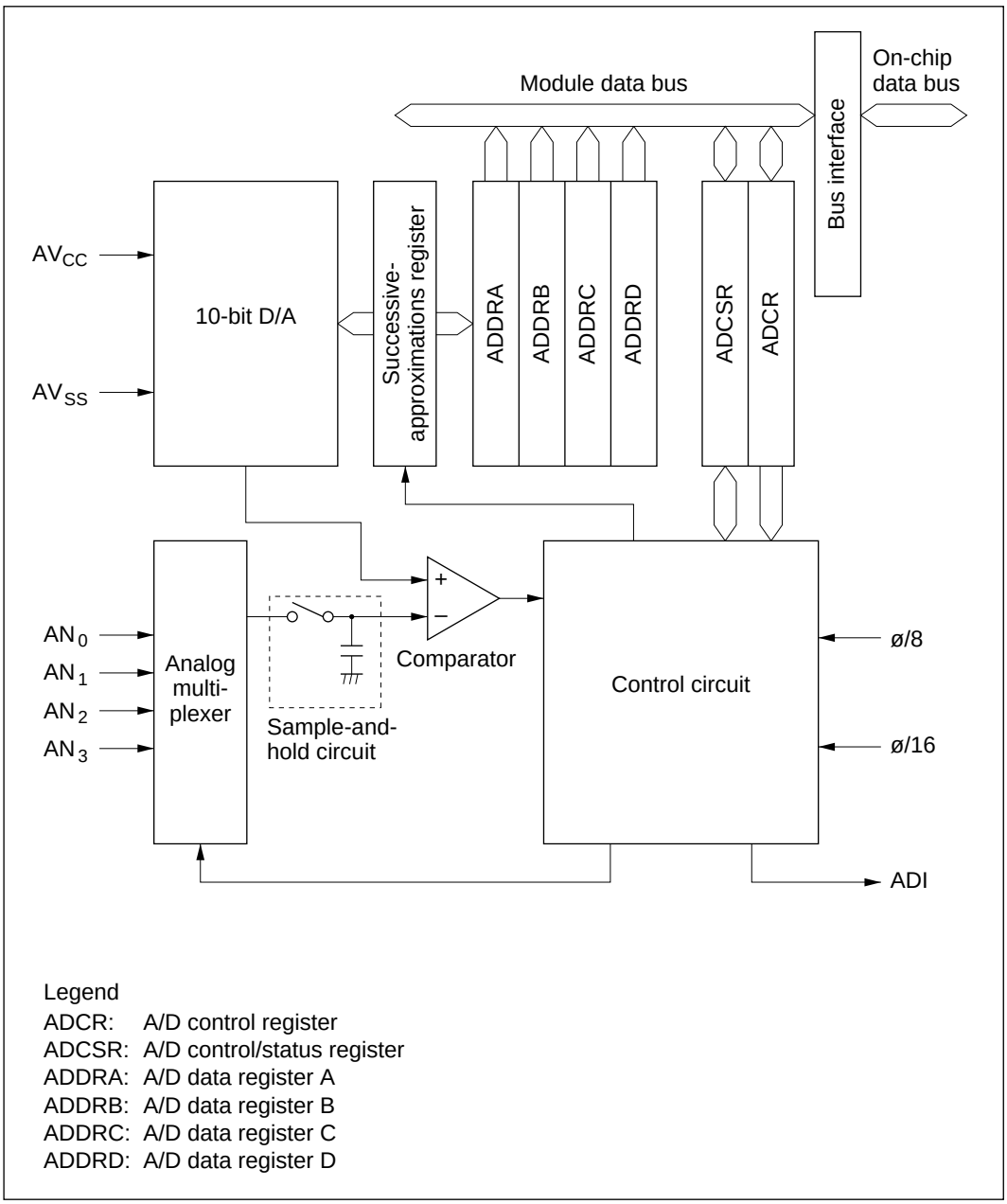


Figure 11-1 A/D Converter Block Diagram

11.1.3 Input Pins

Table 11-1 summarizes the A/D converter's input pins. AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} are the power supply for the analog circuits in the A/D converter.

Table 11-1 A/D Converter Pins

Pin Name	Abbreviation	I/O	Function
Analog power supply pin	AV_{CC}	Input	Analog power supply
Analog ground pin	AV_{SS}	Input	Analog ground and reference voltage
Analog input pin 0	AN_0	Input	Analog inputs
Analog input pin 1	AN_1	Input	
Analog input pin 2	AN_2	Input	
Analog input pin 3	AN_3	Input	

11.1.4 Register Configuration

Table 11-2 summarizes the A/D converter's registers.

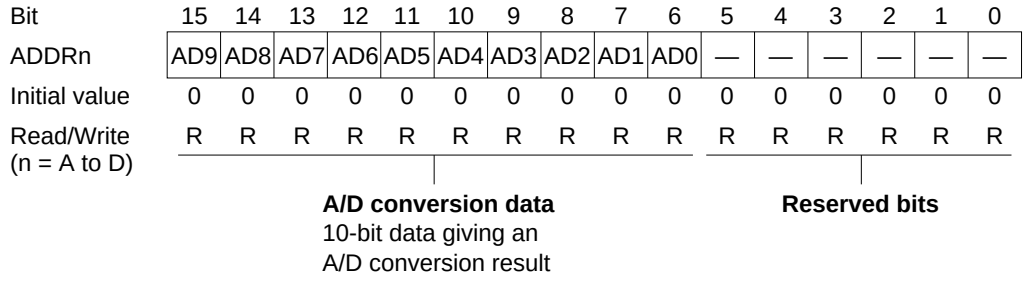
Table 11-2 A/D Converter Registers

Address*1	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFE0	A/D data register A (high)	ADDRAH	R	H'00
H'FFE1	A/D data register A (low)	ADDRAL	R	H'00
H'FFE2	A/D data register B (high)	ADDRBH	R	H'00
H'FFE3	A/D data register B (low)	ADDRBL	R	H'00
H'FFE4	A/D data register C (high)	ADDRCH	R	H'00
H'FFE5	A/D data register C (low)	ADDRCL	R	H'00
H'FFE6	A/D data register D (high)	ADDRDH	R	H'00
H'FFE7	A/D data register D (low)	ADDRDL	R	H'00
H'FFE8	A/D control/status register	ADCSR	R/(W)*2	H'00
H'FFE9	A/D control register	ADCR	R/W	H'7E

Notes: 1. Lower 16 bits of the address
2. Only 0 can be written in bit 7, to clear the flag.

11.2 Register Descriptions

11.2.1 A/D Data Registers A to D (ADDRA to ADDRD)



The four A/D data registers (ADDRA to ADDRD) are 16-bit read-only registers that store the results of A/D conversion.

An A/D conversion produces 10-bit data, which is transferred for storage into the A/D data register corresponding to the selected channel. The upper 8 bits of the result are stored in the upper byte of the A/D data register. The lower 2 bits are stored in the lower byte. Bits 5 to 0 of an A/D data register are reserved bits that always read 0. Table 11-3 indicates the pairings of analog input channels and A/D data registers.

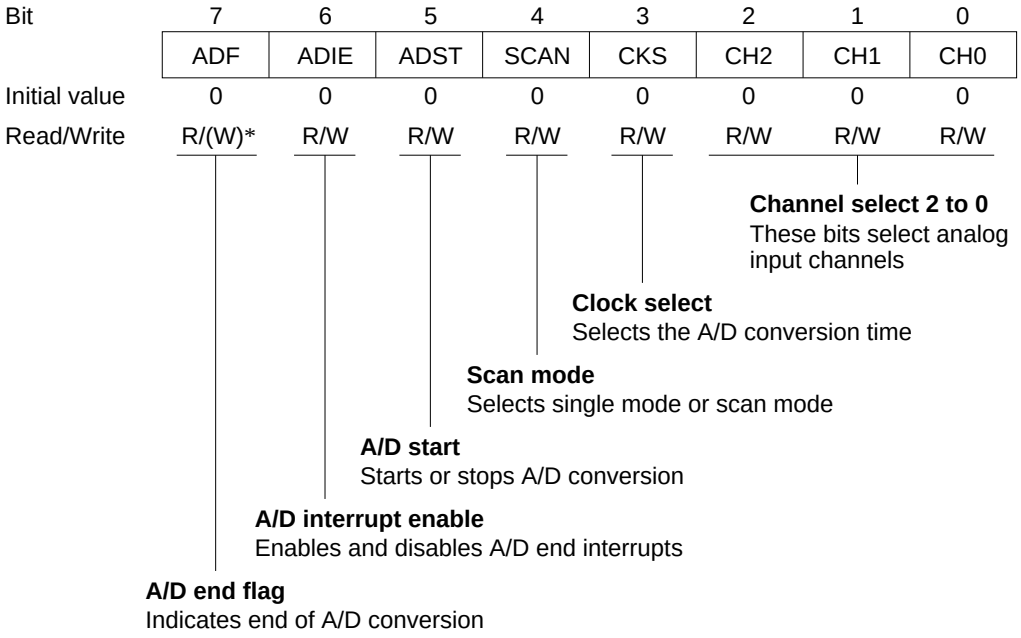
The CPU can always read and write the A/D data registers. The upper byte can be read directly, but the lower byte is read through a temporary register (TEMP). For details see section 11.3, CPU Interface.

The A/D data registers are initialized to H'0000 by a reset and in standby mode.

Table 11-3 Analog Input Channels and A/D Data Registers

Analog Input Channel	A/D Data Register
AN_0	ADDRA
AN_1	ADDRB
AN_2	ADDRC
AN_3	ADDRD

11.2.2 A/D Control/Status Register (ADCSR)



Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

ADCSR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that selects the mode and controls the A/D converter. ADCSR is initialized to H'00 by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—A/D End Flag (ADF): Indicates the end of A/D conversion.

Bit 7 ADF	Description	
0	[Clearing condition] Cleared by reading ADF while ADF = 1, then writing 0 in ADF	(Initial value)
1	[Setting conditions] Single mode: A/D conversion ends Scan mode: A/D conversion ends in all selected channels	

Bit 6—A/D Interrupt Enable (ADIE): Enables or disables the interrupt (ADI) requested at the end of A/D conversion.

Bit 6 ADIE	Description	
0	A/D end interrupt request (ADI) is disabled	(Initial value)
1	A/D end interrupt request (ADI) is enabled	

Bit 5—A/D Start (ADST): Starts or stops A/D conversion. The ADST bit remains set to 1 during A/D conversion.

Bit 5 ADST	Description	
0	A/D conversion is stopped	(Initial value)
1	Single mode: A/D conversion starts; ADST is automatically cleared to 0 when conversion ends. Scan mode: A/D conversion starts and continues, cycling among the selected channels, until ADST is cleared to 0 by software, by a reset, or by a transition to standby mode.	

Bit 4—Scan Mode (SCAN): Selects single mode or scan mode. For further information on operation in these modes, see section 11.4, Operation. Clear the ADST bit to 0 before switching the conversion mode.

Bit 4 SCAN	Description	
0	Single mode	(Initial value)
1	Scan mode	

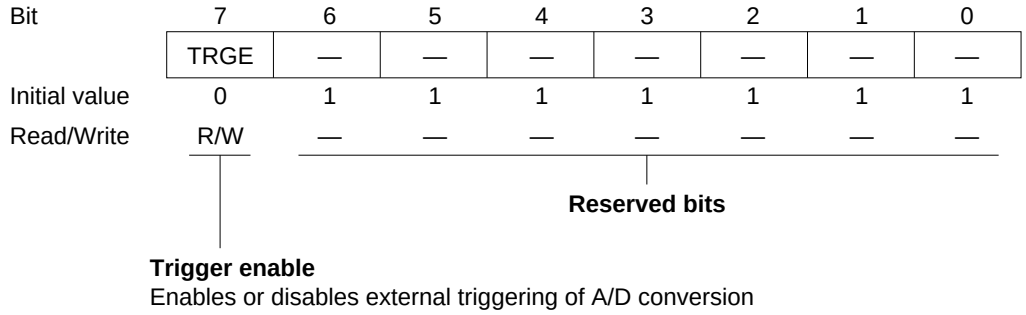
Bit 3—Clock Select (CKS): Selects the A/D conversion time. Clear the ADST bit to 0 before switching the conversion time.

Bit 3 CKS	Description	
0	Conversion time = 266 states (maximum)	(Initial value)
1	Conversion time = 134 states (maximum)	

Bits 2 to 0—Channel Select 2 to 0 (CH2 to CH0): These bits and the SCAN bit select the analog input channels. Clear the ADST bit to 0 before changing the channel selection.

Group Selection	Channel Selection		Description	
CH2	CH1	CH0	Single Mode	Scan Mode
0	0	0	AN_0 (Initial value)	AN_0
		1	AN_1	AN_0, AN_1
	1	0	AN_2	AN_0 to AN_2
		1	AN_3	AN_0 to AN_3
1	—	—	Illegal setting	Illegal setting

11.2.3 A/D Control Register (ADCR)



ADCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register that enables or disables external triggering of A/D conversion. ADCR is initialized to H'7F by a reset and in standby mode.

Bit 7—Trigger Enable (TRGE): Enables or disables external triggering of A/D conversion.

Bit 7 TRGE	Description	
0	A/D conversion cannot be externally triggered	(Initial value)
1	Illegal setting	

Bits 6 to 0—Reserved: Read-only bits, always read as 1.

11.3 CPU Interface

ADDRA to ADDRD are 16-bit registers, but they are connected to the CPU by an 8-bit data bus. Therefore, although the upper byte can be be accessed directly by the CPU, the lower byte is read through an 8-bit temporary register (TEMP).

An A/D data register is read as follows. When the upper byte is read, the upper-byte value is transferred directly to the CPU and the lower-byte value is transferred into TEMP. Next, when the lower byte is read, the TEMP contents are transferred to the CPU.

When reading an A/D data register, always read the upper byte before the lower byte. It is possible to read only the upper byte, but if only the lower byte is read, incorrect data may be obtained.

Figure 11-2 shows the data flow for access to an A/D data register.

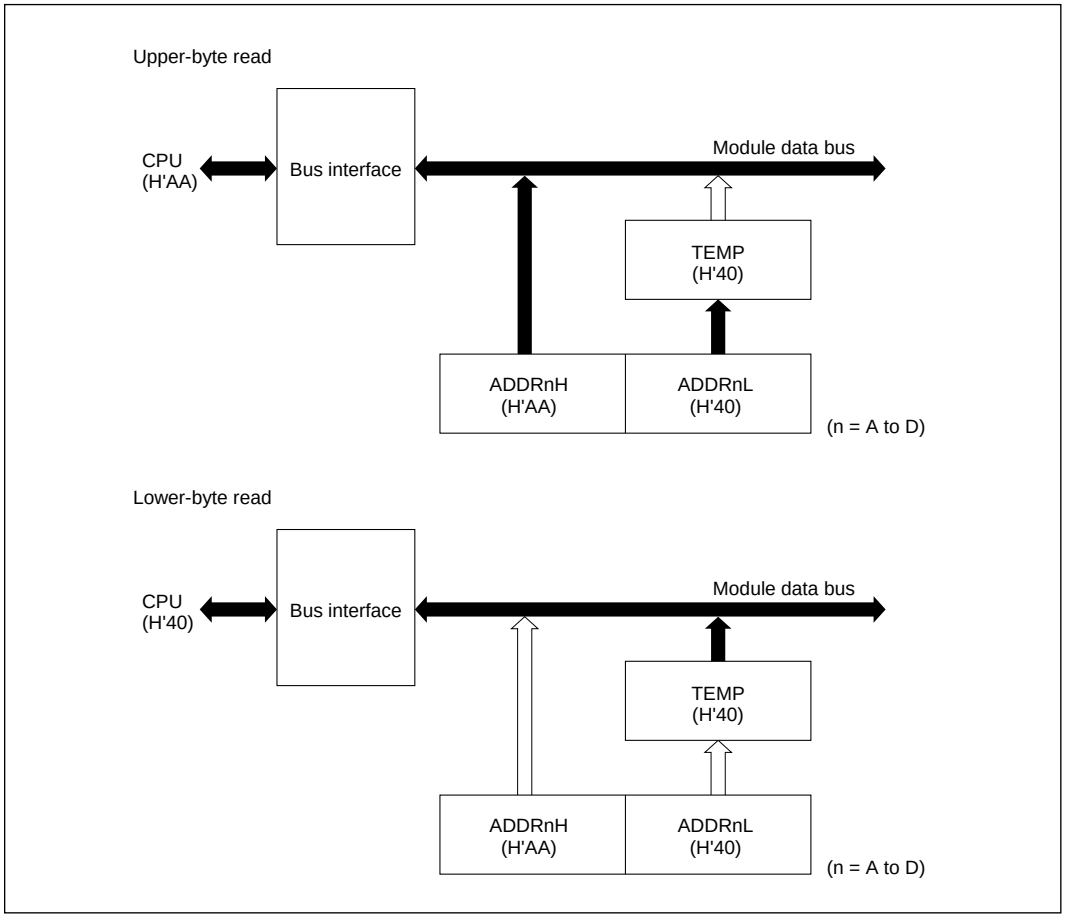


Figure 11-2 A/D Data Register Access Operation (Reading H'AA40)

11.4 Operation

The A/D converter operates by successive approximations with 10-bit resolution. It has two operating modes: single mode and scan mode.

11.4.1 Single Mode (SCAN = 0)

Single mode should be selected when only one A/D conversion on one channel is required. A/D conversion starts when the ADST bit is set to 1 by software. The ADST bit remains set to 1 during A/D conversion and is automatically cleared to 0 when conversion ends.

When conversion ends the ADF bit is set to 1. If the ADIE bit is also set to 1, an ADI interrupt is requested at this time. To clear the ADF flag to 0, first read ADCSR, then write 0 in ADF.

When the mode or analog input channel must be switched during analog conversion, to prevent incorrect operation, first clear the ADST bit to 0 in ADCSR to halt A/D conversion. After making the necessary changes, set the ADST bit to 1 to start A/D conversion again. The ADST bit can be set at the same time as the mode or channel is changed.

Typical operations when channel 1 (AN_1) is selected in single mode are described next.
Figure 11-3 shows a timing diagram for this example.

1. Single mode is selected (SCAN = 0), input channel AN_1 is selected (CH2 = CH1 = 0, CH0 = 1), the A/D interrupt is enabled (ADIE = 1), and A/D conversion is started (ADST = 1).
2. When A/D conversion is completed, the result is transferred into ADDRB. At the same time the ADF flag is set to 1, the ADST bit is cleared to 0, and the A/D converter becomes idle.
3. Since ADF = 1 and ADIE = 1, an ADI interrupt is requested.
4. The A/D interrupt handling routine starts.
5. The routine reads ADCSR, then writes 0 in the ADF flag.
6. The routine reads and processes the conversion result (ADDRB).
7. Execution of the A/D interrupt handling routine ends. After that, if the ADST bit is set to 1, A/D conversion starts again and steps 2 to 7 are repeated.

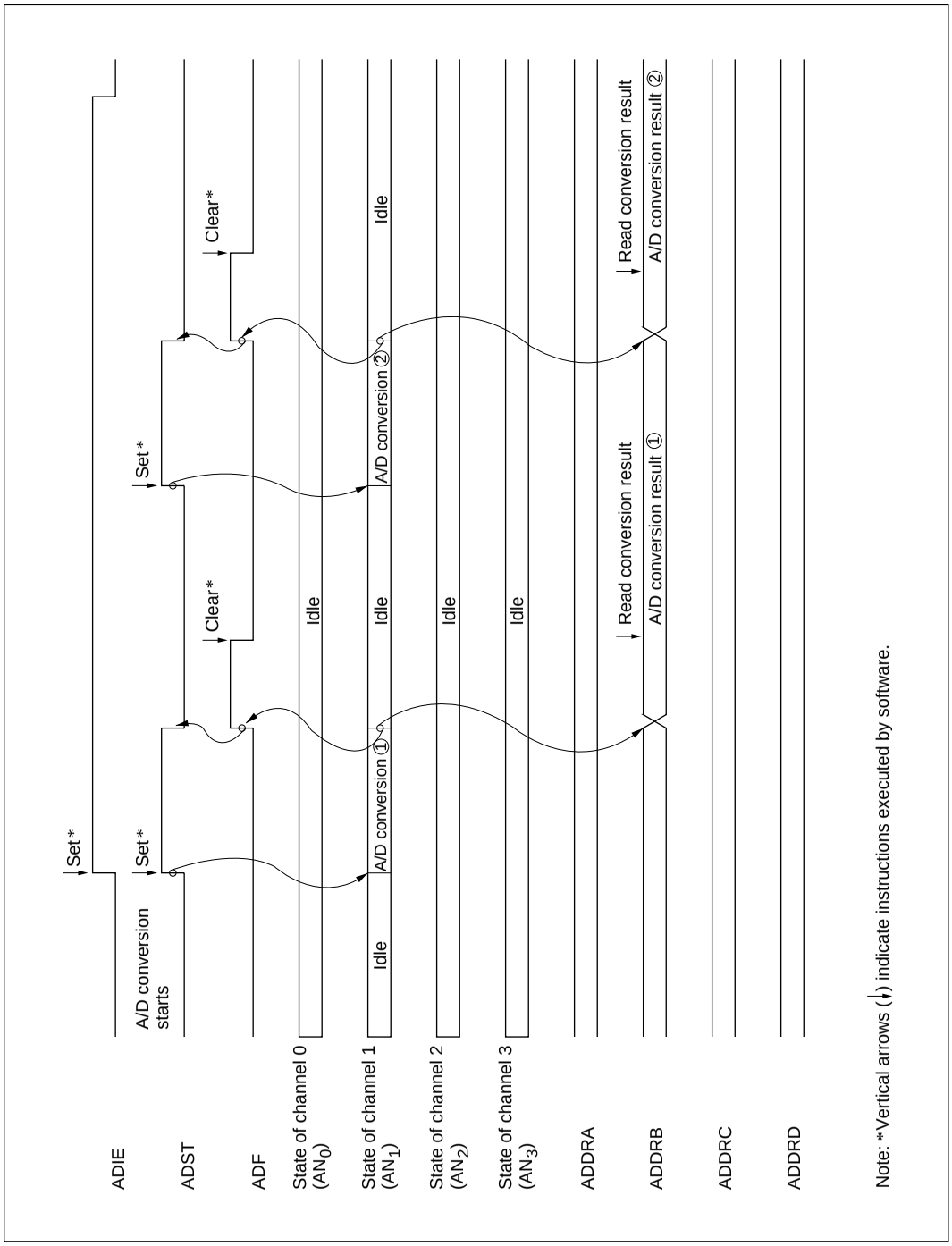


Figure 11-3 Example of A/D Converter Operation (Single Mode, Channel 1 Selected)

11.4.2 Scan Mode (SCAN = 1)

Scan mode is useful for monitoring analog inputs in a group of one or more channels. When the ADST bit is set to 1 by software, A/D conversion starts on the first channel (AN_0). When two or more channels are selected, after conversion of the first channel ends, conversion of the second channel (AN_1) starts immediately. A/D conversion continues cyclically on the selected channels until the ADST bit is cleared to 0. The conversion results are transferred for storage into the A/D data registers corresponding to the channels.

When the mode or analog input channel selection must be changed during analog conversion, to prevent incorrect operation, first clear the ADST bit to 0 in ADCSR to halt A/D conversion. After making the necessary changes, set the ADST bit to 1. A/D conversion will start again from the first channel in the group. The ADST bit can be set at the same time as the mode or channel selection is changed.

Typical operations when three channels (AN_0 to AN_2) are selected in scan mode are described next. Figure 11-4 shows a timing diagram for this example.

1. Scan mode is selected (SCAN = 1), analog input channels AN_0 to AN_2 are selected (CH2 = 0, CH1 = 1, CH0 = 0), and A/D conversion is started (ADST = 1).

2. When A/D conversion of the first channel (AN_0) is completed, the result is transferred into ADDRA. Next, conversion of the second channel (AN_1) starts automatically.

3. Conversion proceeds in the same way through the third channel (AN_2).

4. When conversion of all selected channels (AN_0 to AN_2) is completed, the ADF flag is set to 1 and conversion of the first channel (AN_0) starts again. If the ADIE bit is set to 1, an ADI interrupt is requested at this time.

5. Steps 2 to 4 are repeated as long as the ADST bit remains set to 1. When the ADST bit is cleared to 0, A/D conversion stops. After that, if the ADST bit is set to 1, A/D conversion starts again from the first channel (AN_0).

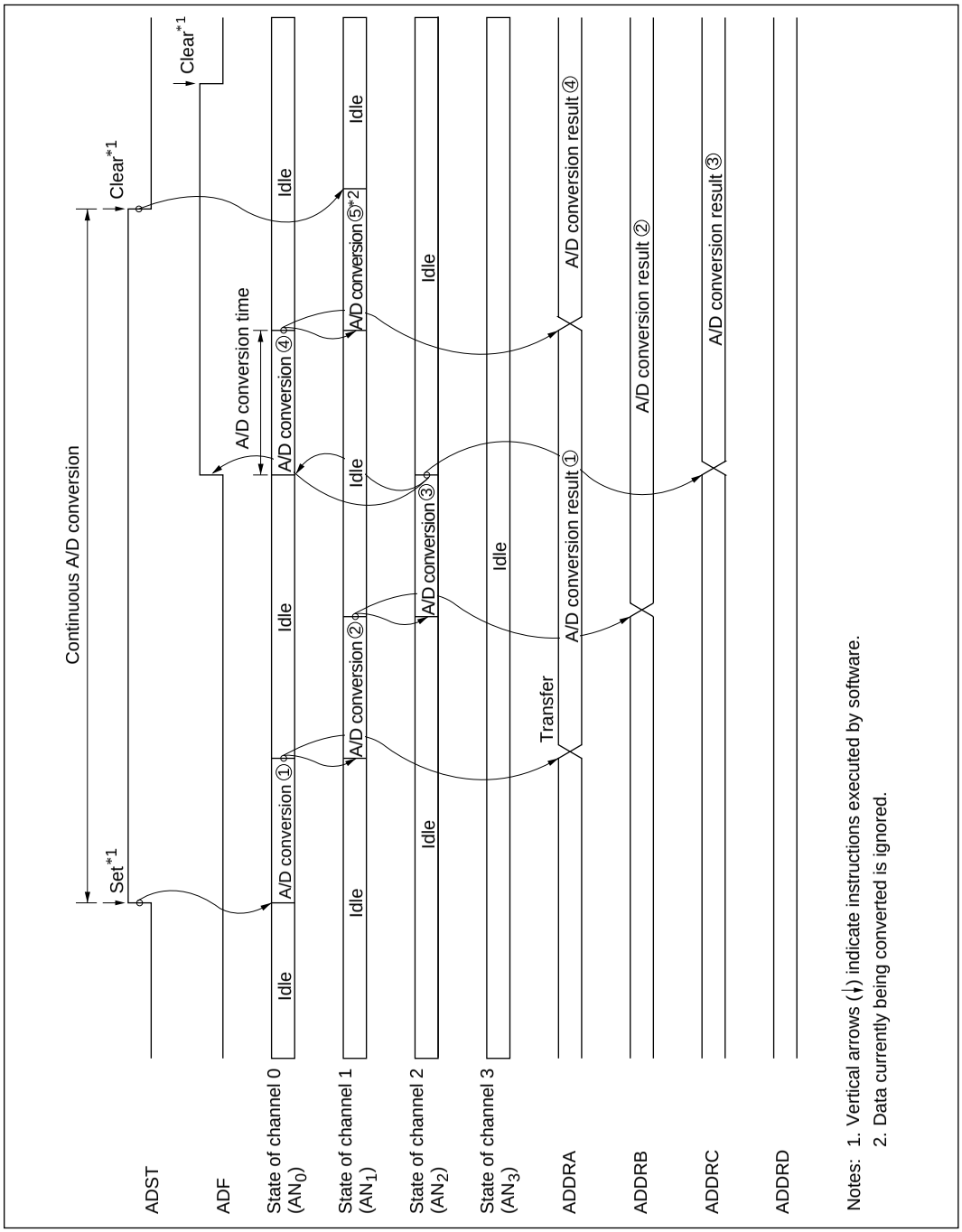


Figure 11-4 Example of A/D Converter Operation (Scan Mode, Channels AN_0 to AN_2 Selected)

11.4.3 Input Sampling and A/D Conversion Time

The A/D converter has a built-in sample-and-hold circuit. The A/D converter samples the analog input at a time t_D after the ADST bit is set to 1, then starts conversion. Figure 11-5 shows the A/D conversion timing. Table 11-4 indicates the A/D conversion time.

As indicated in figure 11-5, the A/D conversion time includes t_D and the input sampling time. The length of t_D varies depending on the timing of the write access to ADCSR. The total conversion time therefore varies within the ranges indicated in table 11-4.

In scan mode, the values given in table 11-4 apply to the first conversion. In the second and subsequent conversions the conversion time is fixed at 256 states when CKS = 0 or 128 states when CKS = 1.

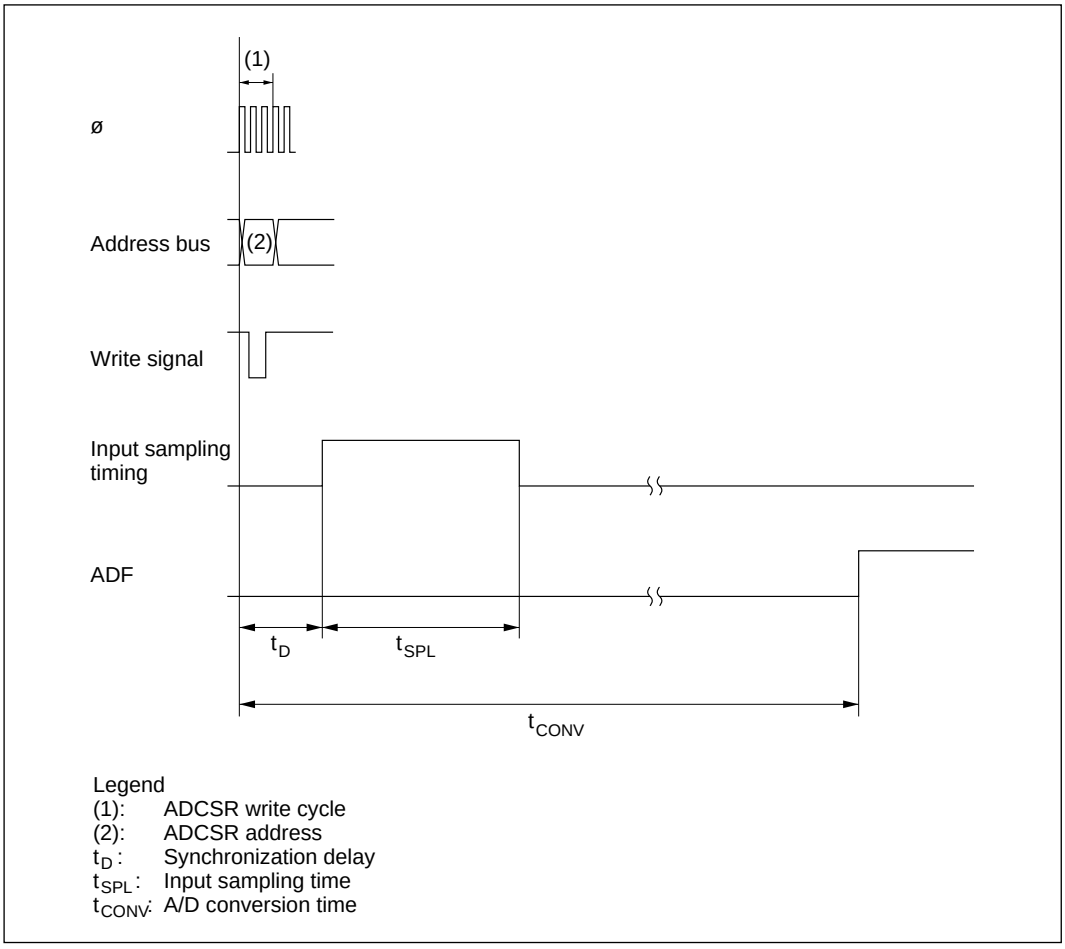


Figure 11-5 A/D Conversion Timing

Table 11-4 A/D Conversion Time (Single Mode)

		CKS = 0			CKS = 1		
	Symbol	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**
Synchronization delay	t_D	10	—	17	6	—	9
Input sampling time	t_{SPL}	—	80	—	—	40	—
A/D conversion time	t_{CONV}	259	—	266	131	—	134

Note: Values in the table are numbers of states.

11.5 Interrupts

The A/D converter generates an interrupt (ADI) at the end of A/D conversion. The ADI interrupt request can be enabled or disabled by the ADIE bit in ADCSR.

11.6 Usage Notes

When using the A/D converter, note the following points:

Analog Input Voltage Range: During A/D conversion, the voltages input to the analog input pins AN_n should be in the range $AV_{SS} \leq AN_n \leq AV_{CC}$. (n = 0 to 3)

AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} Input Voltages: AV_{SS} should have the following value: $AV_{SS} = V_{SS}$.
If the A/D converter is not used, set $AV_{CC} = V_{CC}$ and $AV_{SS} = V_{SS}$.

Section 12 RAM

12.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has 512 bytes of on-chip static RAM. The RAM is connected to the CPU by a 16-bit data bus. The CPU accesses both byte data and word data in two states, making the RAM suitable for rapid data transfer.

The on-chip RAM is assigned to addresses H'FFD10 to H'FFF0F in modes 1 and 2, and addresses H'FFFD10 to H'FFFF0F in modes 3 and 4. The RAM enable bit (RAME) in the system control register (SYSCR) can enable or disable the on-chip RAM.

12.1.1 Block Diagram

Figure 12-1 shows a block diagram of the on-chip RAM.

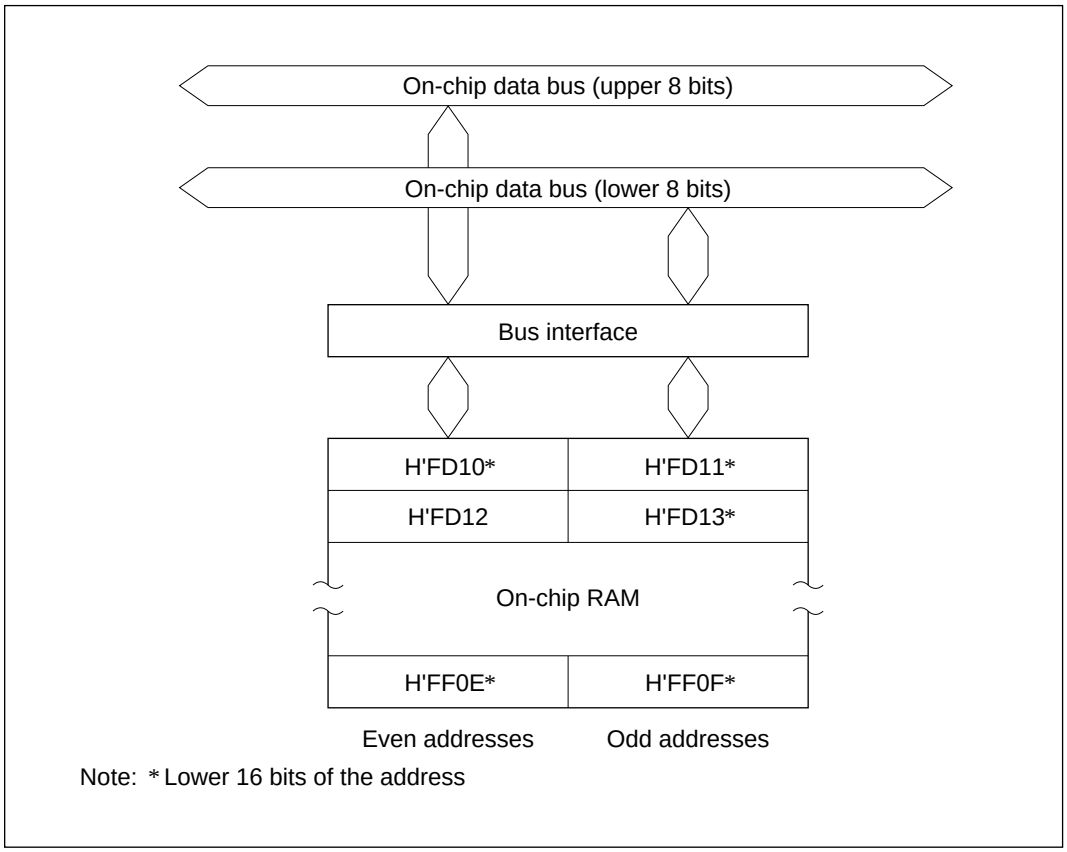


Figure 12-1 RAM Block Diagram

12.1.2 Register Configuration

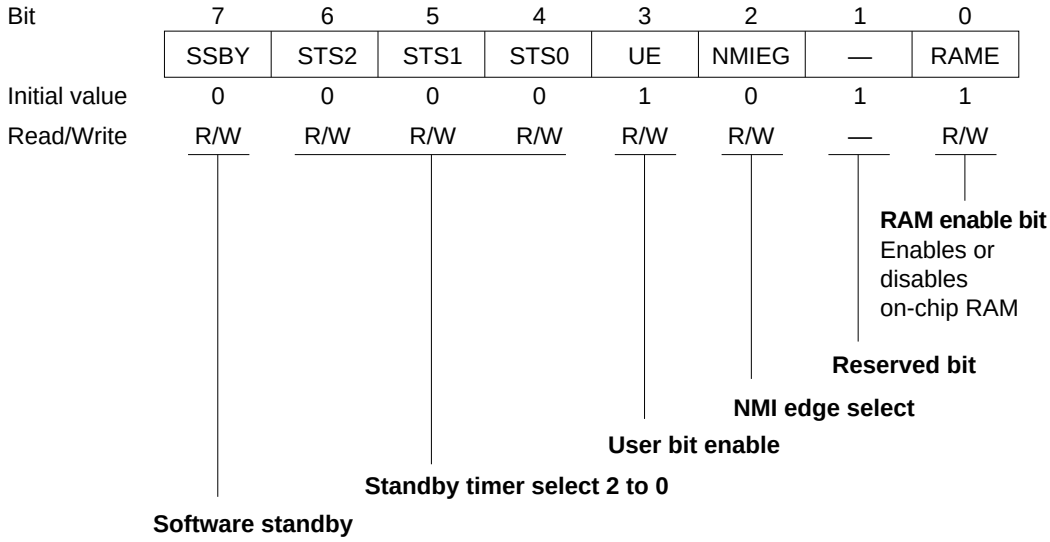
The on-chip RAM is controlled by the system control register (SYSCR). Table 12-1 gives the address and initial value of SYSCR.

Table 12-1 RAM Control Register

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFF2	System control register	SYSCR	R/W	H'0B

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address

12.2 System Control Register (SYSCR)



One function of SYSCR is to enable or disable access to the on-chip RAM. The on-chip RAM is enabled or disabled by the RAME bit in SYSCR. For details about the other bits, see section 3.3, System Control Register.

Bit 0—RAM Enable (RAME): Enables or disables the on-chip RAM. The RAME bit is initialized at the rising edge of the input at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin. It is not initialized in software standby mode.

Bit 0 RAME	Description	
0	On-chip RAM is disabled	
1	On-chip RAM is enabled	(Initial value)

12.3 Operation

When the RAME bit is set to 1, accesses to addresses H'FFD10 to H'FFF0F in modes 1 and 2, and to addresses H'FFFD10 to H'FFFF0F in modes 3 and 4, are directed to the on-chip RAM. When the RAME bit is cleared to 0, the off-chip address space is accessed.

Since the on-chip RAM is connected to the CPU by an internal 16-bit data bus, it can be written and read by word access. It can also be written and read by byte access. Byte data is accessed in two states using the upper 8 bits of the data bus. Word data starting at an even address is accessed in two states using all 16 bits of the data bus.

Section 13 Clock Pulse Generator

13.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has a built-in clock pulse generator (CPG) that generates the system clock (ø) and other internal clock signals (ø/2 to ø/4096).

The clock pulse generator consists of an oscillator circuit, a duty adjustment circuit, and the prescalers.

13.1.1 Block Diagram

Figure 13-1 shows block diagrams of the clock pulse generator.

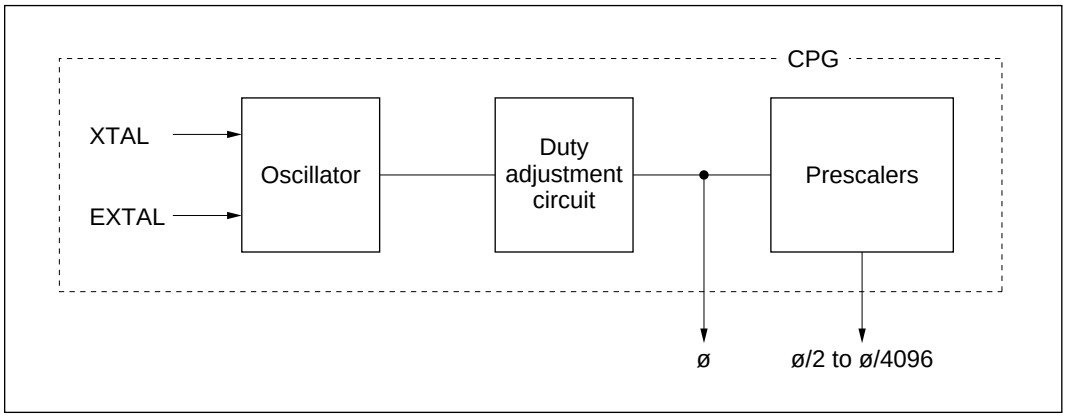


Figure 13-1 Block Diagram of Clock Pulse Generator

13.2 Oscillator Circuit

Clock pulses can be supplied by connecting a crystal resonator, or by input of an external clock signal.

13.2.1 Connecting a Crystal Resonator

Circuit Configuration: A crystal resonator can be connected as in the example in figure 13-2. The damping resistance Rd should be selected according to table 13-1. An AT-cut parallel-resonance crystal should be used.

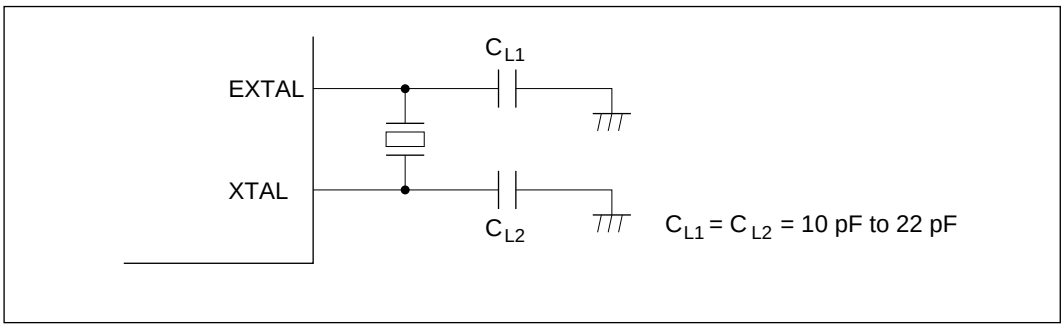


Figure 13-2 Connection of Crystal Resonator (Example)

Table 13-1 Damping Resistance Value

Frequency (MHz)	2	4	8	10	12	14
Rd (Ω)	1 k	500	200	0	0	0

Crystal Resonator: Figure 13-3 shows an equivalent circuit of the crystal resonator. The crystal resonator should have the characteristics listed in table 13-2.

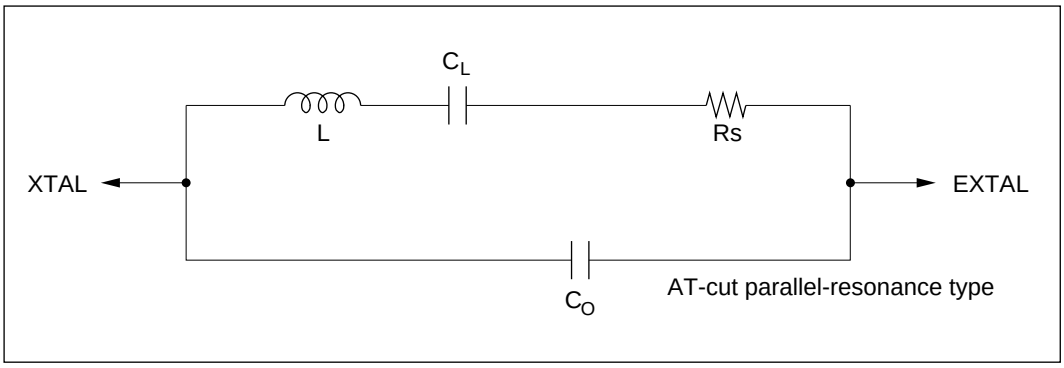


Figure 13-3 Crystal Resonator Equivalent Circuit

Table 13-2 Crystal Resonator Parameters

Frequency (MHz)	2	4	8	10	12	16
Rs max (Ω)	500	120	80	70	60	50
Co (pF)	7 pF max					

Use a crystal resonator with a frequency equal to the system clock frequency (ø).

Notes on Board Design: When a crystal resonator is connected, the following points should be noted:

Other signal lines should be routed away from the oscillator circuit to prevent induction from interfering with correct oscillation. See figure 13-4.

When the board is designed, the crystal resonator and its load capacitors should be placed as close as possible to the XTAL and EXTAL pins.

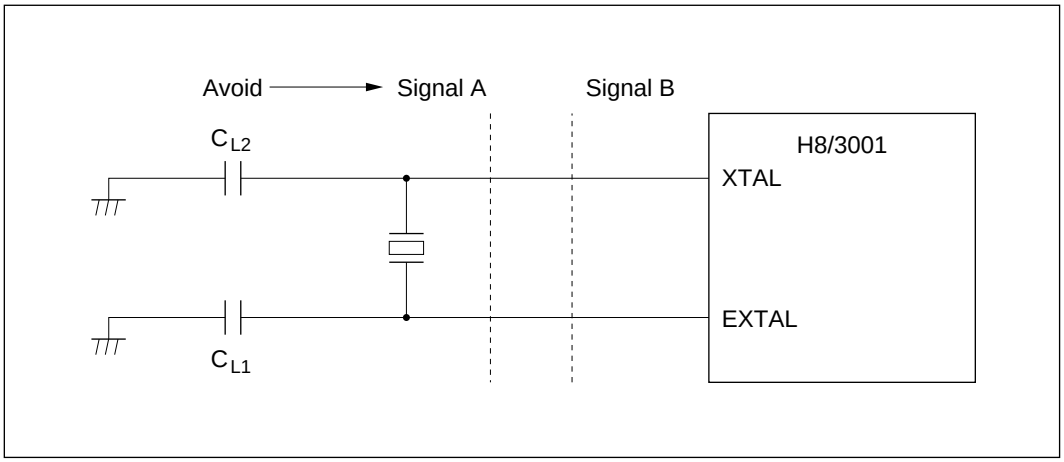


Figure 13-4 Example of Incorrect Board Design

13.2.2 External Clock Input

Circuit Configuration: An external clock signal can be input as shown in the examples in figure 13-5. In example b, the clock should be held high in standby mode.

If the XTAL pin is left open, the stray capacitance should be 10 pF.

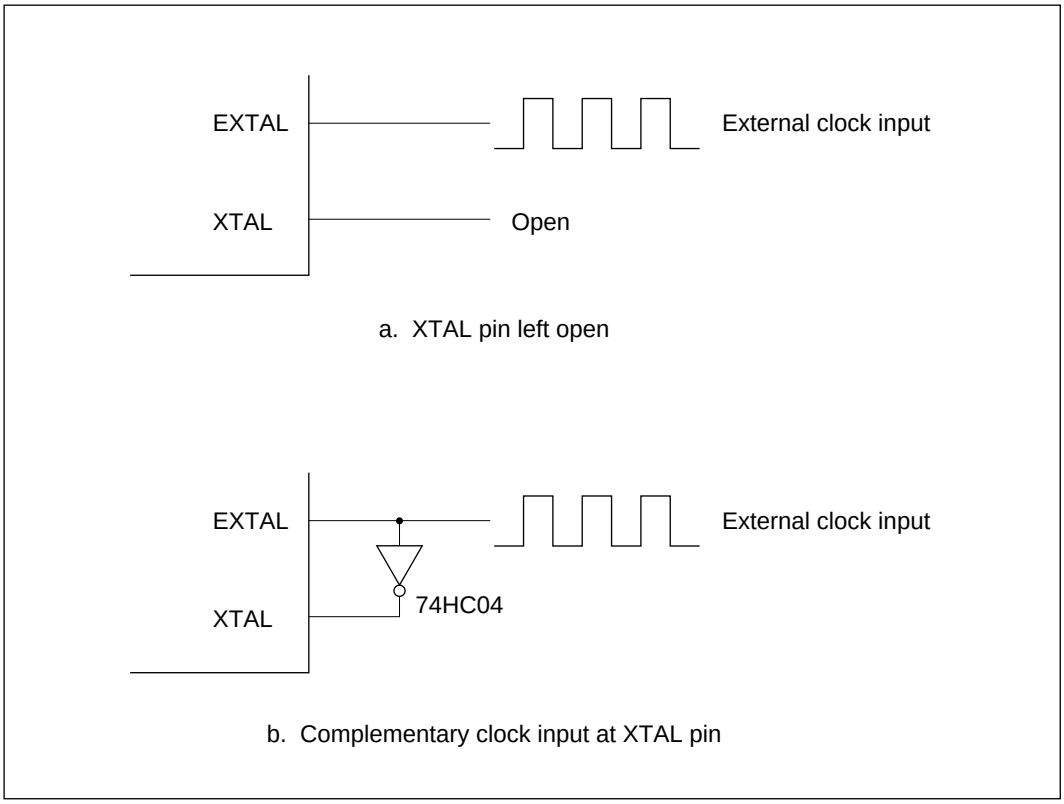


Figure 13-5 External Clock Input (Examples)

External Clock

The external clock frequency should be equal to the system clock frequency (ø). Table 13-3 and figure 13-6 indicate the clock timing.

Table 13-3 Clock Timing

		V_{CC} = 2.7 to 5.5 V		V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%				
Item	**Symbol**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Unit**	**Test Conditions**	
External clock rise time	t_{EXr}	—	10	—	5	ns	Figure 13-6	
External clock fall time	t_{EXf}	—	10	—	5	ns		
External clock input duty cycle (a/t_{cyc})	—	30	70	30	70	%	ø ≥ 5 MHz	Figure 13-6
		40	60	40	60	%	ø < 5 MHz	
ø clock duty cycle (b/t_{cyc})	—	40	60	40	60	%		

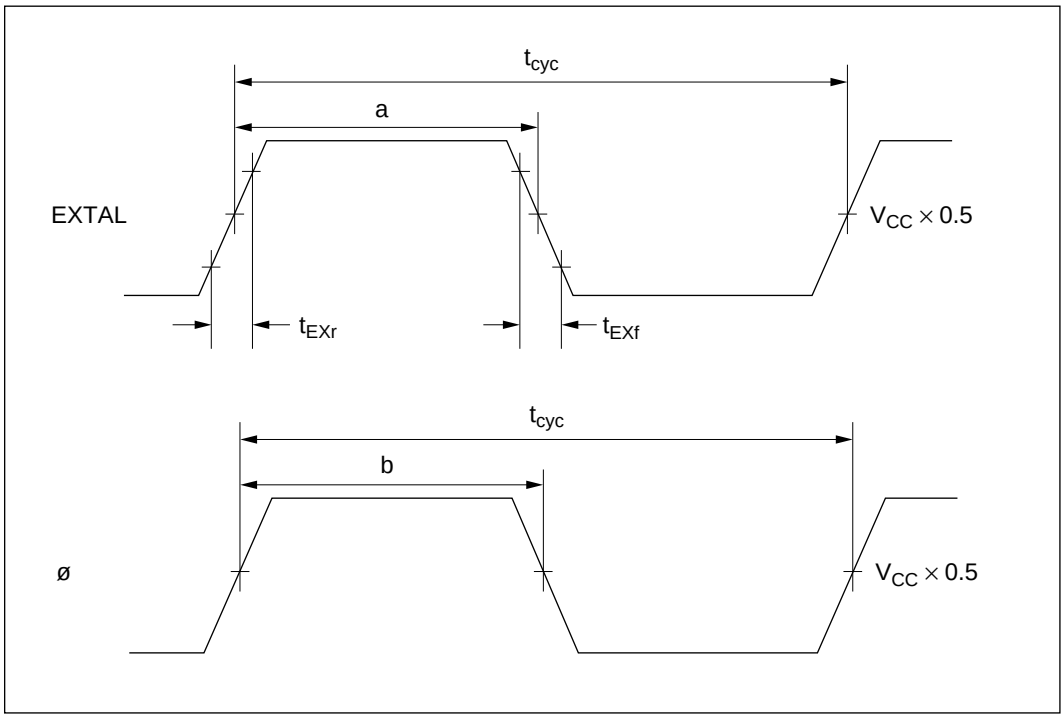


Figure 13-6 External Clock Input Timing

13.3 Duty Adjustment Circuit

When the oscillator frequency is 5 MHz or higher, the duty adjustment circuit adjusts the duty cycle of the clock signal from the oscillator to generate a system clock (ø).

13.4 Prescalers

The prescalers divide the system clock (ø) to generate internal clocks (ø/2 to ø/4096).

Section 14 Power-Down State

14.1 Overview

The H8/3001 has a power-down state that greatly reduces power consumption by halting CPU functions. The power-down state includes the following three modes:

- Sleep mode
- Software standby mode
- Hardware standby mode

Table 14-1 indicates the methods of entering and exiting these power-down modes and the status of the CPU and on-chip supporting modules in each mode.

Table 14-1 Power-Down State

		State						
Mode	**Entering Conditions**	**Clock**	**CPU**	**CPU Registers**	**Supporting Functions**	**RAM**	**I/O Ports**	**Exiting Conditions**
Sleep mode	SLEEP instruction executed while SSBY = 0 in SYSCR	Active	Halted	Held	Active	Held	Held	• Interrupt • $\overline{\text{RES}}$ • $\overline{\text{STBY}}$
Software standby mode	SLEEP instruction executed while SSBY = 1 in SYSCR	Halted	Halted	Held	Halted and reset	Held	Held	• NMI • $\overline{\text{IRQ}_0}$ and $\overline{\text{IRQ}_1}$ • $\overline{\text{RES}}$ • $\overline{\text{STBY}}$
Hardware standby mode	Low input at $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin	Halted	Halted	Undetermined	Halted and reset	Held*	High impedance	• $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ • $\overline{\text{RES}}$

Notes: * The RAME bit must be cleared to 0 in SYSCR before the transition from the program execution state to hardware standby mode.

Legend
SYSCR: System control register
SSBY: Software standby bit

14.2 Register Configuration

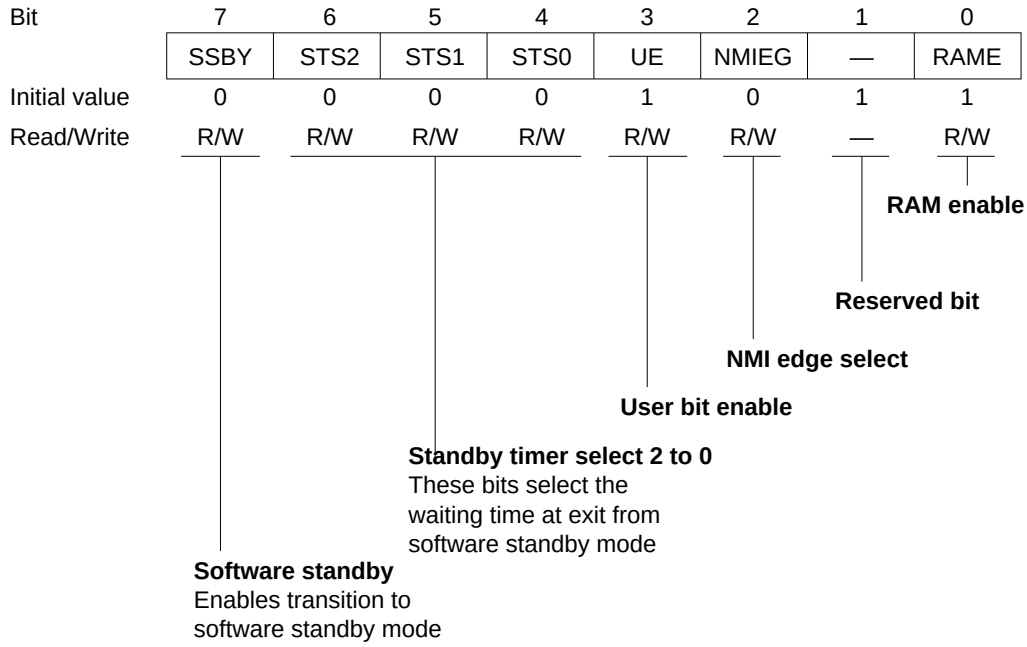
The H8/3001's system control register (SYSCR) controls the power-down state. Table 14-2 summarizes this register.

Table 14-2 Control Register

Address*	Name	Abbreviation	R/W	Initial Value
H'FFF2	System control register	SYSCR	R/W	H'0B

Note: * Lower 16 bits of the address.

14.2.1 System Control Register (SYSCR)



SYSCR is an 8-bit readable/writable register. Bit 7 (SSBY) and bits 6 to 4 (STS2 to STS0) control the power-down state. For information on the other SYSCR bits, see section 3.3, System Control Register.

Bit 7—Software Standby (SSBY): Enables transition to software standby mode. When software standby mode is exited by an external interrupt, this bit remains set to 1 after the return to normal operation. To clear this bit, write 0.

Bit 7 SSBY	Description	
0	SLEEP instruction causes transition to sleep mode	(Initial value)
1	SLEEP instruction causes transition to software standby mode	

Bits 6 to 4—Standby Timer Select (STS2 to STS0): These bits select the length of time the CPU and on-chip supporting modules wait for the clock to settle when software standby mode is exited by an external interrupt. If the clock is generated by a crystal resonator, set these bits according to the clock frequency so that the waiting time will be at least 8 ms. See table 14-3. If an external clock is used, any setting is permitted.

Bit 6 STS2	Bit 5 STS1	Bit 4 STS0	Description	
0	0	0	Waiting time = 8192 states	(Initial value)
		1	Waiting time = 16384 states	
	1	0	Waiting time = 32768 states	
		1	Waiting time = 65536 states	
1	0	—	Waiting time = 131072 states	
	1	—	Illegal setting	

14.3 Sleep Mode

14.3.1 Transition to Sleep Mode

When the SSBY bit is cleared to 0 in the system control register (SYSCR), execution of the SLEEP instruction causes a transition from the program execution state to sleep mode. Immediately after executing the SLEEP instruction the CPU halts, but the contents of its internal registers are retained. On-chip supporting modules do not halt in sleep mode.

14.3.2 Exit from Sleep Mode

Sleep mode is exited by an interrupt, or by input at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ or $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin.

Exit by Interrupt: An interrupt terminates sleep mode and causes a transition to the interrupt exception handling state. Sleep mode is not exited by an interrupt source in an on-chip supporting module if the interrupt is disabled in the on-chip supporting module. Sleep mode is not exited by an interrupt (except for an NMI interrupt) if it is masked by IPR and bits I and UI in CCR.

Exit by $\overline{\text{RES}}$ Input: Low input at the $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pin exits from sleep mode to the reset state.

Exit by $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ Input: Low input at the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin exits from sleep mode to hardware standby mode.

14.4 Software Standby Mode

14.4.1 Transition to Software Standby Mode

To enter software standby mode, execute the SLEEP instruction while the SSBY bit is set to 1 in SYSCR.

In software standby mode, current dissipation is reduced to an extremely low level because the CPU, clock, and on-chip supporting modules all halt. The on-chip supporting modules are reset. As long as the specified voltage is supplied, however, CPU register contents and on-chip RAM data are retained. The settings of the I/O ports are also held.

14.4.2 Exit from Software Standby Mode

Software standby mode can be exited by input of an external interrupt at the NMI, $\overline{IRQ_0}$, or $\overline{IRQ_1}$ pin, or by input at the $\overline{RES}$ or $\overline{STBY}$ pin.

Exit by Interrupt: When an NMI, IRQ_0, or IRQ_1, interrupt request signal is received, the clock oscillator begins operating. After the oscillator settling time selected by bits STS2 to STS0 in SYSCR, stable clock signals are supplied to the entire H8/3001 chip, software standby mode ends, and interrupt exception handling begins. Software standby mode is not exited if the interrupt enable bits of interrupts IRQ_0 and IRQ_1 are cleared to 0, or if these interrupts are masked by IPR and bits I and UI in CCR.

Exit by $\overline{RES}$ Input: When the $\overline{RES}$ input goes low, the clock oscillator starts and clock pulses are supplied immediately to the entire H8/3001 chip. The $\overline{RES}$ signal must be held low long enough for the clock oscillator to stabilize. When $\overline{RES}$ goes high, the CPU starts reset exception handling.

Exit by $\overline{STBY}$ Input: Low input at the $\overline{STBY}$ pin causes a transition to hardware standby mode.

14.4.3 Selection of Waiting Time for Exit from Software Standby Mode

Bits STS2 to STS0 in SYSCR should be set as follows.

Crystal Resonator: Set STS2 to STS0 so that the waiting time (for the clock to stabilize) is at least 8 ms. Table 14-3 indicates the waiting times that are selected by STS2 to STS0 settings at various system clock frequencies.

External Clock: Any value may be set.

Table 14-3 Clock Frequency and Waiting Time for Clock to Settle

STS2	STS1	STS0	Waiting Time	16 MHZ	12 MHz	10 MHz	8 MHz	6 MHz	4 MHz	2 MHz	Unit
0	0	0	8192 states	0.51	0.65	0.8	1.0	1.3	2.0	4.1	ms
0	0	1	16384 states	1.0	1.3	1.6	2.0	2.7	4.1	[8.2]	
0	1	0	32768 states	2.0	2.7	3.3	4.1	5.5	[8.2]	16.4	
0	1	1	65536 states	4.1	5.5	6.6	[8.2]	[10.9]	16.4	32.8	
1	0	—	131072 states	[8.2]	[10.9]	[13.1]	16.4	21.8	32.8	65.5	
1	1	—	Illegal setting								

[ ]: Recommended setting

14.4.4 Sample Application of Software Standby Mode

Figure 14-1 shows an example in which software standby mode is entered at the fall of NMI and exited at the rise of NMI.

With the NMI edge select bit (NMIEG) cleared to 0 in SYSCR (selecting the falling edge), an NMI interrupt occurs. Next the NMIEG bit is set to 1 (selecting the rising edge) and the SSBY bit is set to 1; then the SLEEP instruction is executed to enter software standby mode.

Software standby mode is exited at the next rising edge of the NMI signal .

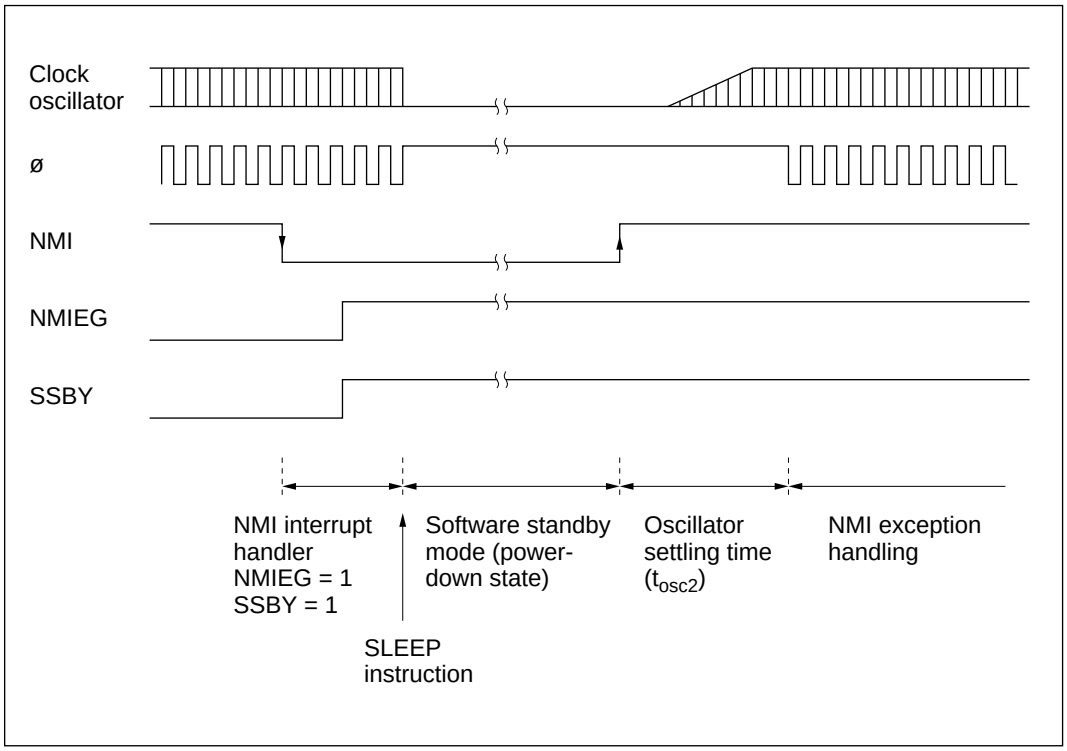


Figure 14-1 NMI Timing for Software Standby Mode (Example)

14.4.5 Note

The I/O ports retain their existing states in software standby mode. If a port is in the high output state, its output current is not reduced.

14.5 Hardware Standby Mode

14.5.1 Transition to Hardware Standby Mode

Regardless of its current state, the chip enters hardware standby mode whenever the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ pin goes low. Hardware standby mode reduces power consumption drastically by halting all functions of the CPU and on-chip supporting modules. All modules are reset except the on-chip RAM. As long as the specified voltage is supplied, on-chip RAM data is retained*. I/O ports are placed in the high-impedance state.

The inputs at the mode pins (MD2 to MD0) should not be changed during hardware standby mode.

Note: * Clear the RAME bit to 0 in SYSCR before $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ goes low to retain on-chip RAM data.

14.5.2 Exit from Hardware Standby Mode

Hardware standby mode is exited by inputs at the $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ and $\overline{\text{RES}}$ pins. While $\overline{\text{RES}}$ is low, when $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ goes high, the clock oscillator starts running. $\overline{\text{RES}}$ should be held low long enough for the clock oscillator to settle. When $\overline{\text{RES}}$ goes high, reset exception handling begins, followed by a transition to the program execution state.

14.5.3 Timing for Hardware Standby Mode

Figure 14-2 shows the timing relationships for hardware standby mode. To enter hardware standby mode, first drive $\overline{\text{RES}}$ low, then drive $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ low. To exit hardware standby mode, first drive $\overline{\text{STBY}}$ high, wait for the clock to settle, then bring $\overline{\text{RES}}$ from low to high.

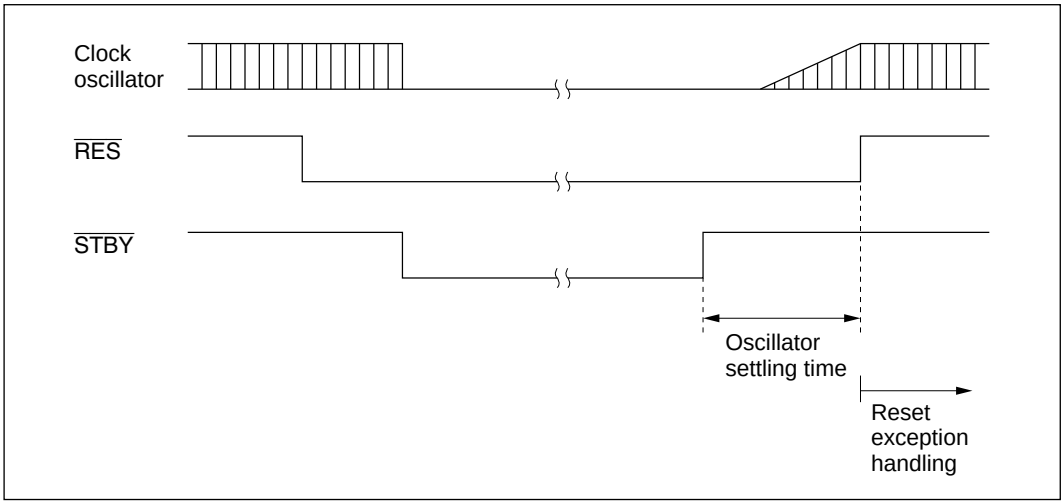


Figure 14-2 Hardware Standby Mode Timing

Section 15 Electrical Characteristics

15.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Table 15-1 lists the absolute maximum ratings.

Table 15-1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

Item	Symbol	Value	Unit
Power supply voltage	V_{CC}	–0.3 to +7.0	V
Input voltage (except port 7)	V_{IN}	–0.3 to V_{CC} +0.3	V
Input voltage (port 7)	V_{IN}	–0.3 to AV_{CC} +0.3	V
Analog power supply voltage	AV_{CC}	–0.3 to +7.0	V
Analog input voltage	V_{AN}	–0.3 to AV_{CC} +0.3	V
Operating temperature	T_{opr}	Regular specifications: –20 to +75	°C
		Wide-range specifications: –40 to +85	°C
Storage temperature	T_{stg}	–55 to +125	°C

Caution: Permanent damage to the chip may result if absolute maximum ratings are exceeded.

15.2 Electrical Characteristics

15.2.1 DC Characteristics

Table 15-2 lists the DC characteristics. Table 15-3 lists the permissible output currents.

Table 15-2 DC Characteristics

Conditions: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V*,
T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
Schmitt trigger input voltages	Ports 8, A, B	V_T^-	1.0	—	—	V	
		V_T^+	—	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	V	
		$V_T^+ - V_T^-$	0.4	—	—	V	
Input high voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, NMI, MD_2 to MD_0	V_{IH}	V_{CC} – 0.7	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	EXTAL		$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	Port 7		2.0	—	AV_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	Ports 4, 6, 9, D_{15} to D_8		2.0	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
Input low voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, MD_2 to MD_0	V_{IL}	–0.3	—	0.5	V	
	NMI, EXTAL, ports 4, 6, 7, 9, D_{15} to D_8		–0.3	—	0.8	V	
Output high voltage	All output pins	V_{OH}	V_{CC} – 0.5	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –200 µA
			3.5	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –1 mA
Output low voltage	All output pins	V_{OL}	—	—	0.4	V	I_{OL} = 1.6 mA
	Port B, A_{19} to A_0		—	—	1.0	V	I_{OL} = 10 mA

Note: * If the A/D converter is not used, do not leave the AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} pins open. Connect AV_{CC} to V_{CC}, and connect AV_{SS} to V_{SS}.

Table 15-2 DC Characteristics (cont)

Conditions: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V*1,
T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
Input leakage current	$\overline{STBY}$, NMI, $\overline{RES}$, MD_2 to MD_0	$\|I_{IN}\|$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
	Port 7		—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to AV_{CC} – 0.5 V
Three-state leakage current (off state)	Ports 4, 6, 8, 9, A, B, A_{19} to A_0, D_{15} to D_8	$\|I_{TS1}\|$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
Input pull-up current	Port 4	$-I_P$	50	—	300	µA	V_{IN} = 0 V
Input capacitance	NMI	C_{IN}	—	—	50	pF	V_{IN} = 0 V, f = 1 MHz, T_a = 25°C
	All input pins except NMI		—	—	15		
Current dissipation*2	Normal operation	I_{CC}	—	45	60	mA	f = 16 MHz
	Sleep mode		—	32	45	mA	f = 16 MHz
	Standby mode*3		—	0.01	5.0	µA	$T_a \leq 50°C$
			—	—	20.0	µA	$50°C < T_a$
Analog power supply current	During A/D conversion	AI_{CC}	—	1.5	2.6	mA	
	Idle		—	0.02	10.0	µA	
RAM standby voltage		V_{RAM}	2.0	—	—	V	

Notes: 1. If the A/D converter is not used, do not leave the AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} pins open. Connect AV_{CC} to V_{CC}, and connect AV_{SS} to V_{SS}.
2. Current dissipation values are for V_{IHmin} = V_{CC} – 0.5 V and V_{ILmax} = 0.5 V with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip pull-up transistors in the off state.
3. The values are for $V_{RAM} \leq V_{CC} < 4.5$ V, $V_{IHmin} = V_{CC} \times 0.9$, and V_{ILmax} = 0.3 V.

Table 15-2 DC Characteristics (cont)

Conditions: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V*,
T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
Schmitt trigger input voltages	Ports 8, A, B	V_T^-	$V_{CC} \times 0.2$	—	—	V	
		V_T^+	—	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	V	
		$V_T^+ - V_T^-$	$V_{CC} \times 0.07$	—	—	V	
Input high voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, NMI, MD_2 to MD_0	V_{IH}	$V_{CC} \times 0.9$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	EXTAL		$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	Port 7		$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	—	AV_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	Ports 4, 6, 9, D_{15} to D_8		$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
Input low voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, MD_2 to MD_0	V_{IL}	–0.3	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.1$	V	
	NMI, EXTAL, ports 4, 6, 7, 9, D_{15} to D_8		–0.3	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.2$	V	V_{CC} < 4.0 V
					0.8	V	V_{CC} = 4.0 to 5.5 V
Output high voltage	All output pins	V_{OH}	V_{CC} – 0.5	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –200 µA
			V_{CC} – 1.0	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –1 mA
Output low voltage	All output pins	V_{OL}	—	—	0.4	V	I_{OL} = 1.6 mA
	Port B, A_{19} to A_0		—	—	1.0	V	$V_{CC} \leq 4$ V, I_{OL} = 5 mA, 4 V < $V_{CC} \leq$ 5.5 V, I_{OL} = 10 mA

Note: * If the A/D converter is not used, do not leave the AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} pins open. Connect AV_{CC} to V_{CC}, and connect AV_{SS} to V_{SS}.

Table 15-2 DC Characteristics (cont)

Conditions: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V*1,
T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
Input leakage current	$\overline{STBY}$, NMI, $\overline{RES}$, MD_2 to MD_0	$\|I_{IN}\|$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
	Port 7		—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to AV_{CC} – 0.5 V
Three-state leakage current (off state)	Ports 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, A, B, A_{19} to A_0, D_{15} to D_8	$\|I_{TS1}\|$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
Input pull-up current	Port 4	$-I_P$	10	—	300	µA	V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{IN} = 0 V
Input capacitance	NMI	C_{IN}	—	—	50	pF	V_{IN} = 0 V, f = 1 MHz, T_a = 25°C
	All input pins except NMI		—	—	15		
Current dissipation*2	Normal operation	I_{CC}*4	—	12 (3.0 V)	33.8 (5.5 V)	mA	f = 8 MHz
	Sleep mode		—	8 (3.0 V)	25.0 (5.5 V)	mA	f = 8 MHz
	Standby mode*3		—	0.01	5.0	µA	$T_a \leq$ 50°C
			—	—	20.0	µA	50°C < T_a
Analog power supply current	During A/D conversion	AI_{CC}	—	1.2	2.4	mA	AV_{CC} = 3.0 V
			—	1.5	—	mA	AV_{CC} = 5.0 V
	Idle		—	0.02	10.0	µA	
RAM standby voltage		V_{RAM}	2.0	—	—	V	

Notes: 1. If the A/D converter is not used, do not leave the AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} pins open. Connect AV_{CC} to V_{CC}, and connect AV_{SS} to V_{SS}.
2. Current dissipation values are for V_{IHmin} = V_{CC} – 0.5 V and V_{ILmax} = 0.5 V with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip pull-up transistors in the off state.
3. The values are for $V_{RAM} \leq V_{CC}$ < 2.7 V, V_{IHmin} = $V_{CC} \times 0.9$, and V_{ILmax} = 0.3 V.
4. I_{CC} depends on V_{CC} and f as follows:
I_{CCmax} = 3.0 (mA) + 0.7 (mA/MHz · V) × V_{CC} × f [normal mode]
I_{CCmax} = 3.0 (mA) + 0.5 (mA/MHz · V) × V_{CC} × f [sleep mode]

Table 15-2 DC Characteristics (cont)

Conditions: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V*,
T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
Schmitt trigger input voltages	Ports 8, A, B	V_T^-	$V_{CC} \times 0.2$	—	—	V	
		V_T^+	—	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	V	
		$V_T^+ - V_T^-$	$V_{CC} \times 0.07$	—	—	V	
Input high voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, NMI, MD_2 to MD_0	V_{IH}	$V_{CC} \times 0.9$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	EXTAL		$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	Port 7		$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	—	AV_{CC} + 0.3	V	
	Ports 4, 6, 9, D_{15} to D_8		$V_{CC} \times 0.7$	—	V_{CC} + 0.3	V	
Input low voltage	$\overline{RES}$, $\overline{STBY}$, MD_2 to MD_0	V_{IL}	–0.3	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.1$	V	
	NMI, EXTAL, ports 4, 6, 7, 9, D_{15} to D_8		–0.3	—	$V_{CC} \times 0.2$	V	V_{CC} < 4.0 V
					0.8	V	V_{CC} = 4.0 to 5.5 V
Output high voltage	All output pins	V_{OH}	V_{CC} – 0.5	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –200 µA
			V_{CC} – 1.0	—	—	V	I_{OH} = –1 mA
Output low voltage	All output pins	V_{OL}	—	—	0.4	V	I_{OL} = 1.6 mA
	Port B, A_{19} to A_0		—	—	1.0	V	$V_{CC} \leq 4$ V I_{OL} = 5 mA 4 V < $V_{CC} \leq 5.5$ I_{OL} = 10 mA

Note: * If the A/D converter is not used, do not leave the AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} pins open. Connect AV_{CC} to V_{CC}, and connect AV_{SS} to V_{SS}.

Table 15-2 DC Characteristics (cont)

Conditions: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V*1,
T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
Input leakage current	$\overline{STBY}$, NMI, $\overline{RES}$, MD_2 to MD_0	$\|I_{IN}\|$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
	Port 7		—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to AV_{CC} – 0.5 V
Three-state leakage current (off state)	Ports 4, 6, 8 to B, A_{19} to A_0, D_{15} to D_8	$\|I_{TS1}\|$	—	—	1.0	µA	V_{IN} = 0.5 to V_{CC} – 0.5 V
Input pull-up current	Port 4	$-I_P$	10	—	300	µA	V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{IN} = 0 V
Input capacitance	NMI	C_{IN}	—	—	50	pF	V_{IN} = 0 V, f = 1 MHz, T_a = 25°C
	All input pins except NMI		—	—	15		
Current dissipation*2	Normal operation	I_{CC}*4	—	15 (3.0 V)	41.5 (5.5 V)	mA	f = 10 MHz
	Sleep mode		—	10 (3.0 V)	30.5 (5.5 V)	mA	f = 10 MHz
	Standby mode*3		—	0.01	5.0	µA	$T_a \leq 50°C$
			—	—	20.0	µA	$50°C < T_a$
Analog power supply current	During A/D conversion	AI_{CC}	—	1.2	2.4	mA	AV_{CC} = 3.0 V
			—	1.5	—	mA	AV_{CC} = 5.0 V
	Idle		—	0.02	10.0	µA	
RAM standby voltage		V_{RAM}	2.0	—	—	V	

Notes: 1. If the A/D converter is not used, do not leave the AV_{CC} and AV_{SS} pins open. Connect AV_{CC} to V_{CC}, and connect AV_{SS} to V_{SS}.
2. Current dissipation values are for V_{IHmin} = V_{CC} – 0.5 V and V_{ILmax} = 0.5 V with all output pins unloaded and the on-chip pull-up transistors in the off state.
3. The values are for $V_{RAM} \leq V_{CC} < 2.7$ V, $V_{IHmin} = V_{CC} \times 0.9$, and V_{ILmax} = 0.3 V.
4. I_{CC} depends on V_{CC} and f as follows:
I_{CCmax} = 3.0 (mA) + 0.7 (mA/MHz · V) × V_{CC} × f [normal mode]
I_{CCmax} = 3.0 (mA) + 0.5 (mA/MHz · V) × V_{CC} × f [sleep mode]

Table 15-3 Permissible Output Currents

Conditions: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Item		Symbol	Min	Typ	Max	Unit
Permissible output low current (per pin)	Ports 5 and B, A_{19} to A_0	I_{OL}	—	—	10	mA
	Other output pins		—	—	2.0	mA
Permissible output low current (total)	Total of 24 pins including port B and A_{19} to A_0	ΣI_{OL}	—	—	80	mA
	Total of all output pins, including the above		—	—	120	mA
Permissible output high current (per pin)	All output pins	I_{OH}	—	—	2.0	mA
Permissible output high current (total)	Total of all output pins	ΣI_{OH}	—	—	40	mA

Notes: 1. To protect chip reliability, do not exceed the output current values in table 15-3.
2. When driving a darlington pair or LED, always insert a current-limiting resistor in the output line, as shown in figures 15-1 and 15-2.

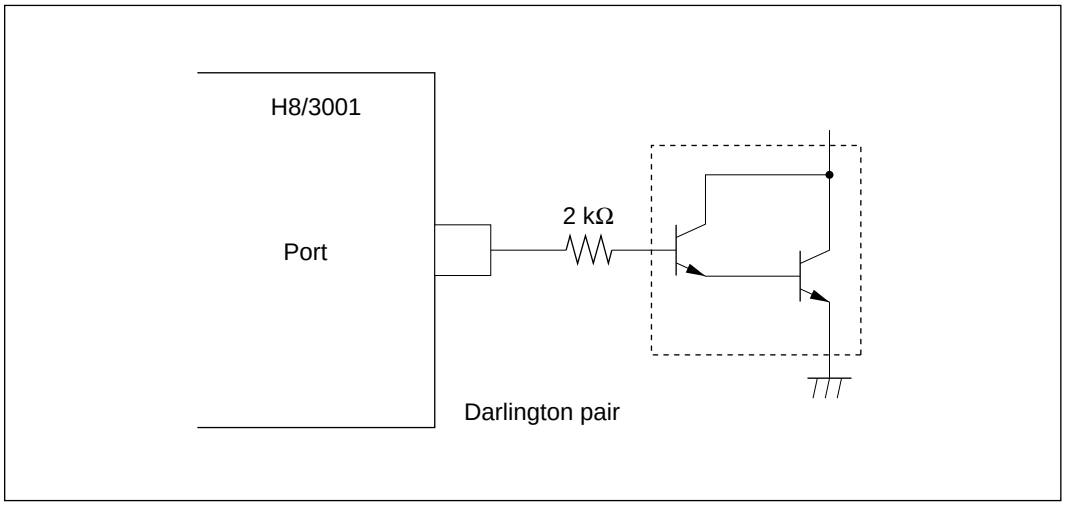


Figure 15-1 Darlington Pair Drive Circuit (Example)

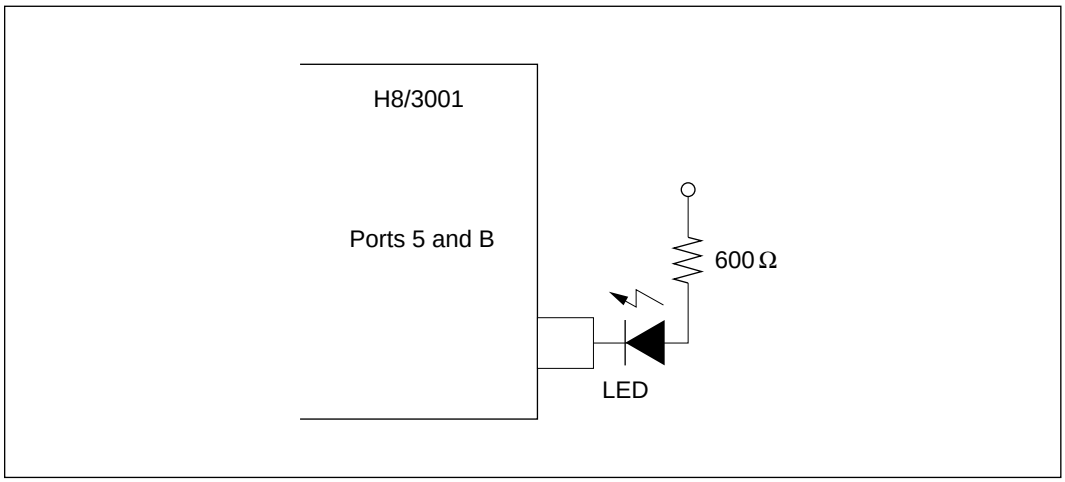


Figure 15-2 LED Drive Circuit (Example)

15.2.2 AC Characteristics

Bus timing parameters are listed in table 15-4. Control signal timing parameters are listed in table 15-5. Refresh controller bus timing parameters are listed in table 15-6. Timing parameters of the on-chip supporting modules are listed in table 15-7.

Table 15-4 Bus Timing (1)

Condition A: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 8 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 10 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

		Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			
		8 MHz		10 MHz		16 MHz			
Item	**Symbol**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Unit**	**Test Conditions**
Clock cycle time	t_{CYC}	125	500	100	500	62.5	500	ns	Figure 15-4, Figure 15-5
Clock low pulse width	t_{CL}	40	—	30	—	20	—		
Clock high pulse width	t_{CH}	40	—	30	—	20	—		
Clock rise time	t_{CR}	—	20	—	15	—	10		
Clock fall time	t_{CF}	—	20	—	15	—	10		
Address delay time	t_{AD}	—	60	—	50	—	30		
Address hold time	t_{AH}	25	—	20	—	10	—		
Address strobe delay time	t_{ASD}	—	60	—	40	—	30		
Write strobe delay time	t_{WSD}	—	60	—	50	—	30		
Strobe delay time	t_{SD}	—	60	—	50	—	30		
Write data strobe pulse width 1	t_{WSW1}*	85	—	60	—	35	—		
Write data strobe pulse width 2	t_{WSW2}*	150	—	110	—	65	—		
Address setup time 1	t_{AS1}	20	—	15	—	10	—		
Address setup time 2	t_{AS2}	80	—	65	—	40	—		
Read data setup time	t_{RDS}	50	—	35	—	20	—		
Read data hold time	t_{RDH}	0	—	0	—	0	—		

Table 15-4 Bus Timing (cont)

Condition A: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 8 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 10 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

		Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			
		8 MHz		10 MHz		16 MHz			
Item	**Symbol**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Unit**	**Test Conditions**
Write data delay time	t_{WDD}	—	75	—	75	—	60	ns	Figure 15-4, Figure 15-5
Write data setup time 1	t_{WDS1}	60	—	40	—	15	—		
Write data setup time 2	t_{WDS2}	5	—	–10	—	–5	—		
Write data hold time	t_{WDH}	25	—	20	—	20	—		
Read data access time 1	t_{ACC1}*	—	110	—	100	—	55		
Read data access time 2	t_{ACC2}*	—	230	—	200	—	115		
Read data access time 3	t_{ACC3}*	—	55	—	50	—	25		
Read data access time 4	t_{ACC4}*	—	160	—	150	—	85		
Precharge time	t_{PCH}*	85	—	60	—	40	—		
Wait setup time	t_{WTS}	40	—	40	—	25	—	ns	Figure 15-6
Wait hold time	t_{WTH}	10	—	10	—	5	—		
Bus request setup ime	t_{BRQS}	40	—	40	—	40	—	ns	Figure 15-9
Bus acknowledge delay time 1	t_{BACD1}	—	60	—	50	—	30		
Bus acknowledge delay time 2	t_{BACD2}	—	60	—	50	—	30		
Bus-floating time	t_{BZD}	—	70	—	70	—	40		

Note is on next page.

Note: In condition A, the times below depend as indicated on the clock cycle time.

$t_{ACC1} = 1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 78$ (ns) $t_{WSW1} = 1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 40$ (ns)
$t_{ACC2} = 2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 83$ (ns) $t_{WSW2} = 1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 38$ (ns)
$t_{ACC3} = 1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 70$ (ns) $t_{PCH} = 1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 40$ (ns)
$t_{ACC4} = 2.0 \times t_{cyc} - 90$ (ns)

In condition C, the times below depend as indicated on the clock cycle time.

$t_{ACC1} = 1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 39$ (ns) $t_{WSW1} = 1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 28$ (ns)
$t_{ACC2} = 2.5 \times t_{cyc} - 41$ (ns) $t_{WSW2} = 1.5 \times t_{cyc} - 28$ (ns)
$t_{ACC3} = 1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 38$ (ns) $t_{PCH} = 1.0 \times t_{cyc} - 23$ (ns)
$t_{ACC4} = 2.0 \times t_{cyc} - 40$ (ns)

Table 15-5 Control Signal Timing

Condition A: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 8 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 10 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

		Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			
		8 MHz		10 MHz		16 MHz			
Item	**Symbol**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Unit**	**Test Conditions**
$\overline{RES}$ setup time	t_{RESS}	200	—	200	—	200	—	ns	Figure 15-7
$\overline{RES}$ pulse width	t_{RESW}	10	—	10	—	10	—	t_{CYC}	
NMI setup time (NMI, $\overline{IRQ_4}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, $\overline{IRQ_0}$)	t_{NMIS}	200	—	200	—	150	—	ns	Figure 15-8
NMI hold time (NMI, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, $\overline{IRQ_0}$)	t_{NMIH}	10	—	10	—	10	—		
Interrupt pulse width (NMI, $\overline{IRQ_2}$ to $\overline{IRQ_0}$ when exiting software standby mode)	t_{NMIW}	200	—	200	—	200	—		
Clock oscillator settling time at reset (crystal)	t_{OSC1}	20	—	20	—	20	—	ms	Figure 15-10
Clock oscillator settling time in software standby (crystal)	t_{OSC2}	8	—	8	—	8	—	ms	Figure 14-1

Table 15-6 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules

Condition A: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 8 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 10 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

				Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			
				8 MHz		10 MHz		16 MHz			
Item			**Symbol**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Min**	**Max**	**Unit**	**Test Conditions**
ITU	Timer output delay time		t_{TOCD}	—	100	—	100	—	100	ns	Figure 15-12
	Timer input setup time		t_{TICS}	50	—	50	—	50	—		
	Timer clock input setup time		t_{TCKS}	50	—	50	—	50	—		Figure 15-13
	Timer clock pulse width	Single edge	t_{TCKWH}	1.5	—	1.5	—	1.5	—	t_{CYC}	
		Both edges	t_{TCKWL}	2.5	—	2.5	—	2.5	—		
SCI	Input clock cycle	Asyn-chronous	t_{SCYC}	4	—	4	—	4	—		Figure 15-14
		Syn-chronous	t_{SCYC}	6	—	6	—	6	—		
	Input clock rise time		t_{SCKr}	—	1.5	—	1.5	—	1.5		
	Input clock fall time		t_{SCKf}	—	1.5	—	1.5	—	1.5		
	Input clock pulse width		t_{SCKW}	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	0.4	0.6	t_{SCYC}	

Table 15-7 Timing of On-Chip Supporting Modules (cont)

Condition A: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 8 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 10 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V, ø = 2 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications), T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

				Condition A		Condition B		Condition C			
				8 MHz		10 MHz		16 MHz			
Item			Symbol	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Unit	Test Conditions
SCI	Transmit data delay time		t_{TXD}	—	100	—	100	—	100	ns	Figure 15-15
	Receive data setup time (synchronous)		t_{RXS}	100	—	100	—	100	—		
	Receive data hold time (synchronous)	Clock input	t_{RXH}	100	—	100	—	100	—		
		Clock output	t_{RXH}	0	—	0	—	0	—		
Ports and TPC	Output data delay time		t_{PWD}	—	100	—	100	—	100	ns	Figure 15-11
	Input data setup time (synchronous)		t_{PRS}	50	—	50	—	50	—		
	Input data hold time (synchronous)		t_{PRH}	50	—	50	—	50	—		

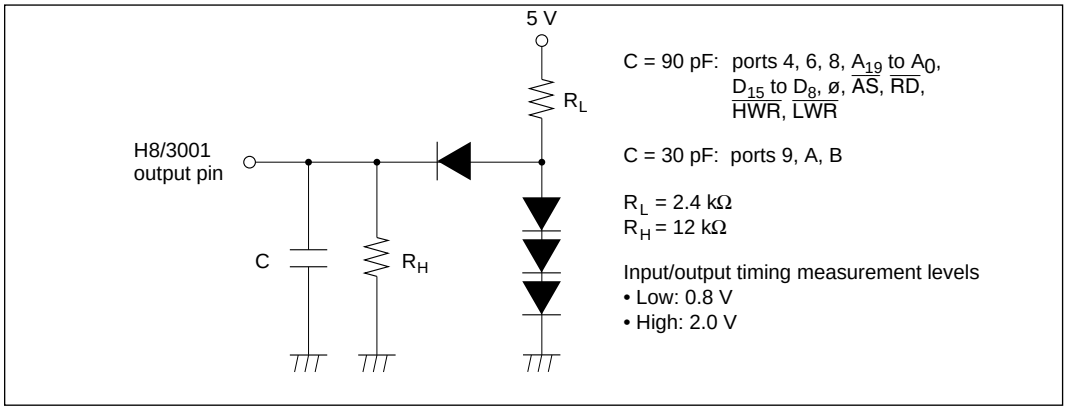


Figure 15-3 Output Load Circuit

15.2.3 A/D Conversion Characteristics

Table 15-8 lists the A/D conversion characteristics.

Table 15-8 A/D Converter Characteristics

Condition A: V_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 2.7 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 8 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition B: V_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, AV_{CC} = 3.0 V to 5.5 V, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 10 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

Condition C: V_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, AV_{CC} = 5.0 V ± 10%, V_{SS} = AV_{SS} = 0 V,
ø = 2 MHz to 16 MHz, T_a = –20°C to +75°C (regular specifications),
T_a = –40°C to +85°C (wide-range specifications)

	Condition A			Condition B			Condition C			
	8 MHz			10 MHz			16 MHz			
Item	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Min**	**Typ**	**Max**	**Unit**
Resolution	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	bits
Conversion time	—	—	16.8	—	—	13.4	—	—	8.4	µs
Analog input capacitance	—	—	20	—	—	20	—	—	20	pF
Permissible signal-source impedance	—	—	10*1	—	—	10*1	—	—	10*4	kΩ
	—	—	5*2	—	—	5*3	—	—	5*5	
Nonlinearity error	—	—	±6.0	—	—	±6.0	—	—	±3.0	LSB
Offset error	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±2.0	LSB
Full-scale error	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±4.0	—	—	±2.0	LSB
Quantization error	—	—	±0.5	—	—	±0.5	—	—	±0.5	LSB
Absolute accuracy	—	—	±8.0	—	—	±8.0	—	—	±4.0	LSB

Notes: 1. The value is for $4.0 \le AV_{CC} \le 5.5$.
2. The value is for $2.7 \le AV_{CC} < 4.0$.
3. The value is for $3.0 \le AV_{CC} < 4.0$.
4. The value is for ø ≤ 12 MHz.
5. The value is for ø > 12 MHz.

15.3 Operational Timing

This section shows timing diagrams.

15.3.1 Bus Timing

Bus timing is shown as follows:

- Basic bus cycle: two-state access

  Figure 15-4 shows the timing of the external two-state access cycle.

- Basic bus cycle: three-state access

  Figure 15-5 shows the timing of the external three-state access cycle.

- Basic bus cycle: three-state access with one wait state

  Figure 15-6 shows the timing of the external three-state access cycle with one wait state inserted.

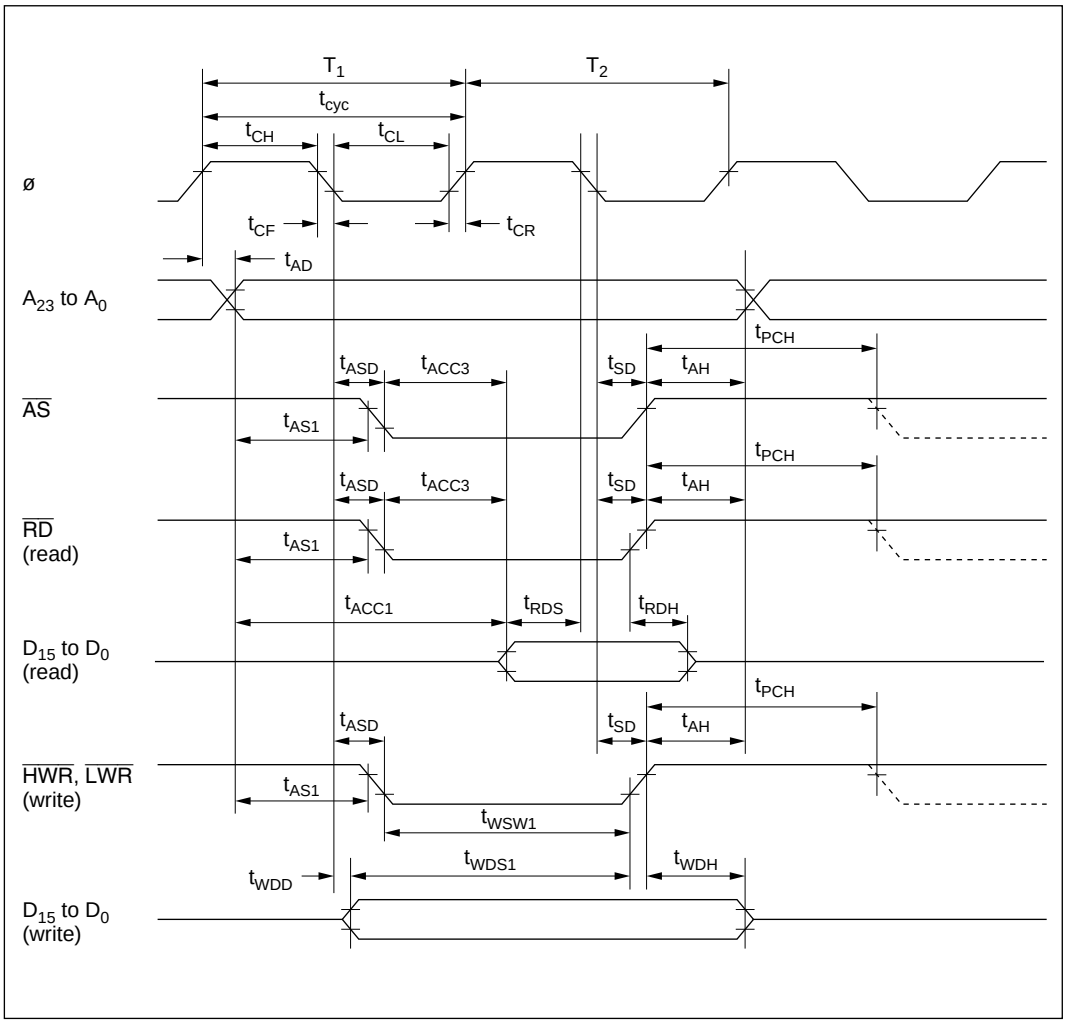


Figure 15-4 Basic Bus Cycle: Two-State Access

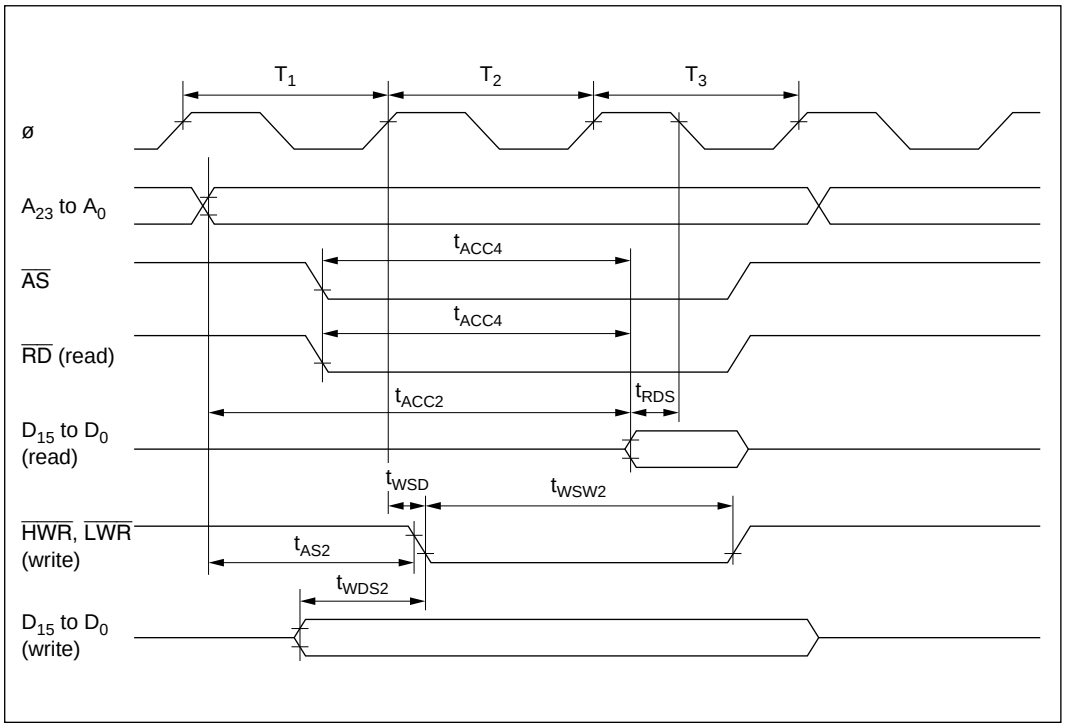


Figure 15-5 Basic Bus Cycle: Three-State Access

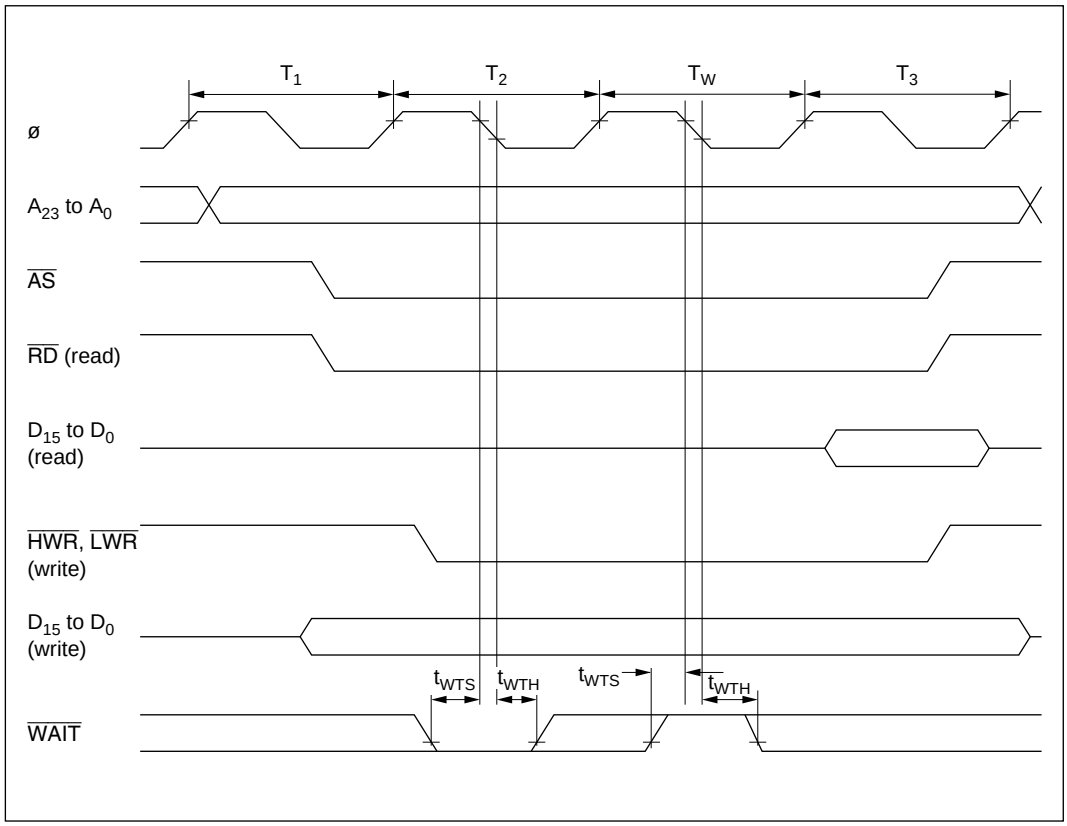


Figure 15-6 Basic Bus Cycle: Three-State Access with One Wait State

15.3.2 Control Signal Timing

Control signal timing is shown as follows:

- Reset input timing

  Figure 15-7 shows the reset input timing.

- Interrupt input timing

  Figure 15-8 shows the input timing for NMI and $\overline{IRQ_4}$, $\overline{IRQ_1}$, and $\overline{IRQ_0}$.

- Bus-release mode timing

  Figure 15-9 shows the bus-release mode timing.

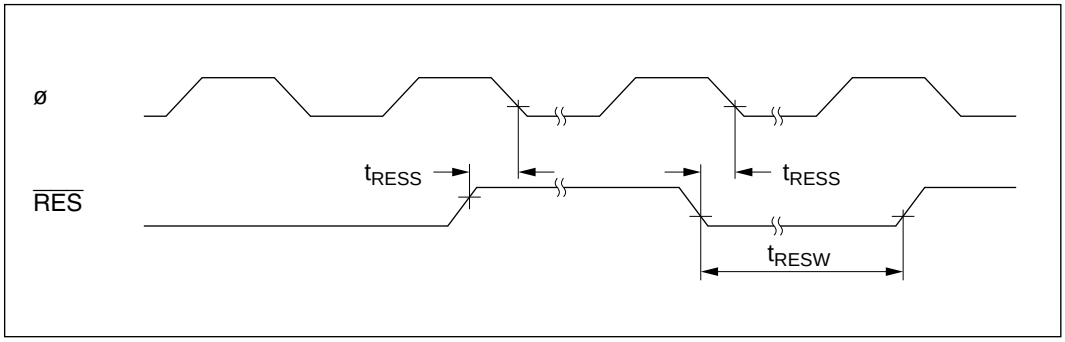


Figure 15-7 Reset Input Timing

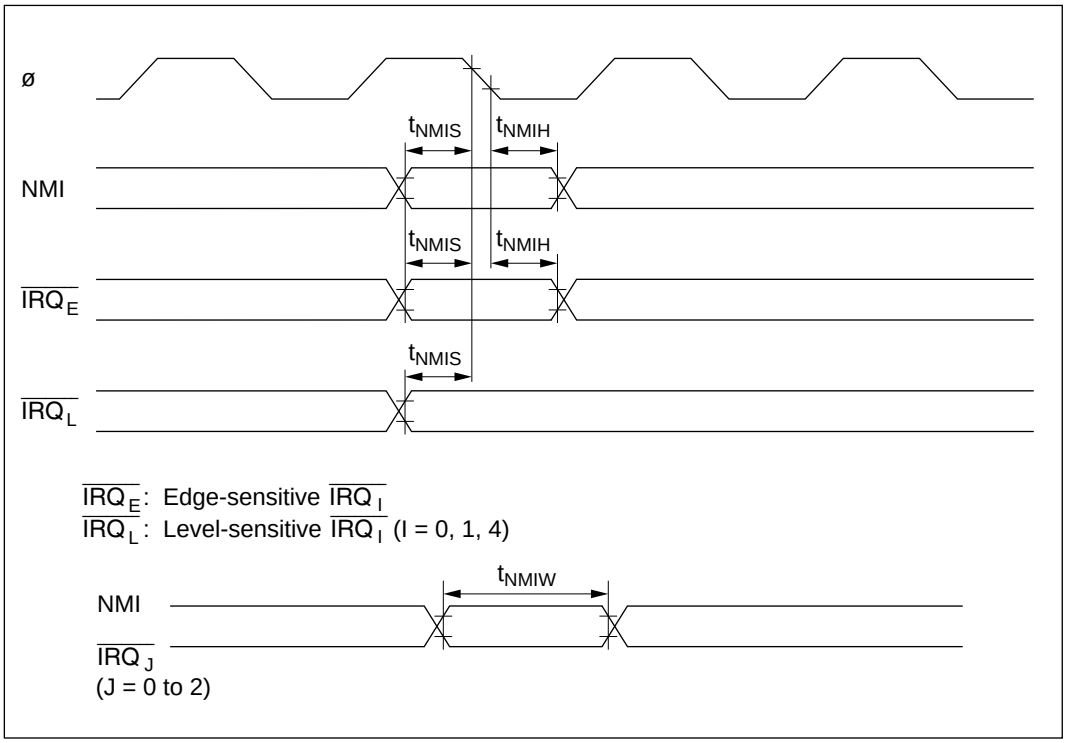


Figure 15-8 Interrupt Input Timing

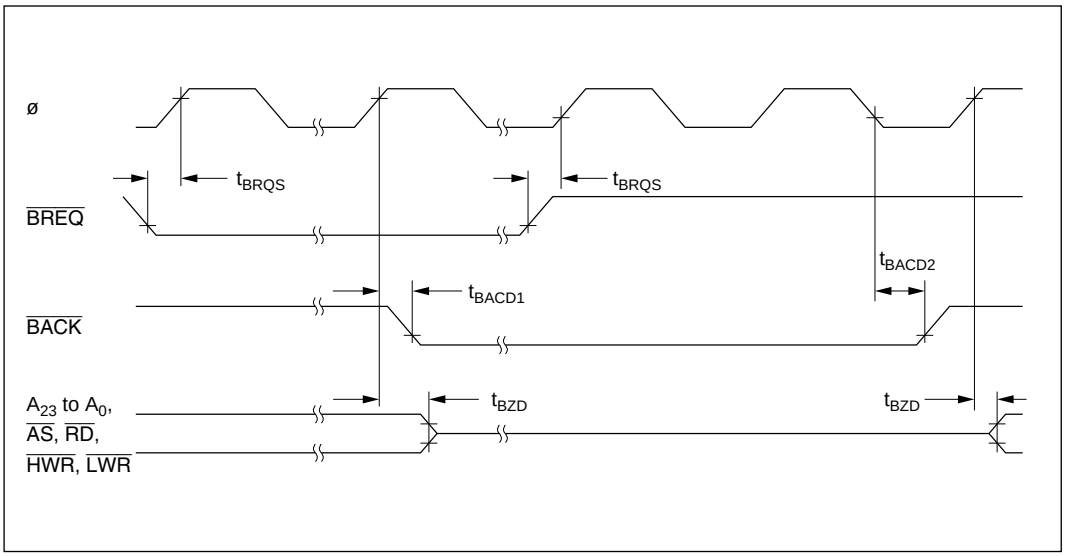


Figure 15-9 Bus-Release Mode Timing

15.3.3 Clock Timing

Clock timing is shown as follows:

- Oscillator settling timing

  Figure 15-10 shows the oscillator settling timing.

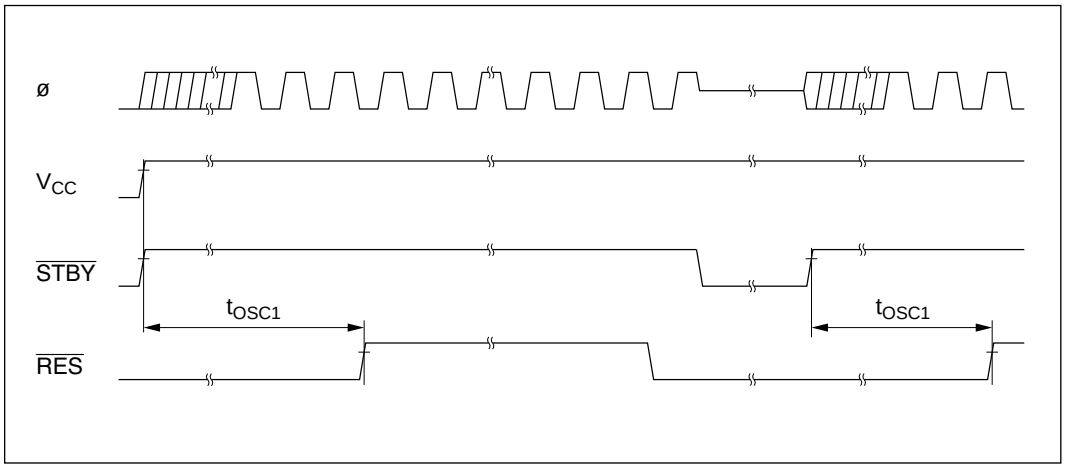


Figure 15-10 Oscillator Settling Timing

15.3.4 TPC and I/O Port Timing

TPC and I/O port timing is shown as follows.

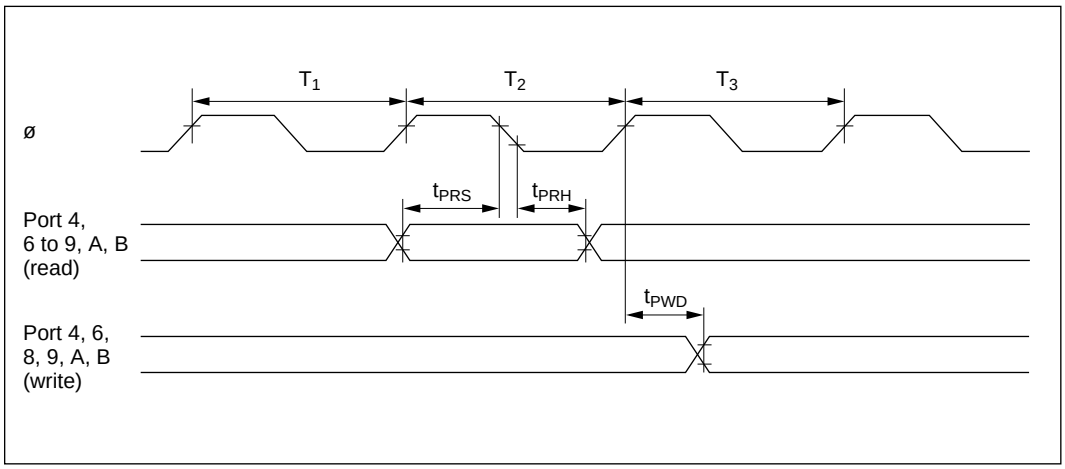


Figure 15-11 TPC and I/O Port Input/Output Timing

15.3.5 ITU Timing

ITU timing is shown as follows:

- ITU input/output timing

  Figure 15-12 shows the ITU input/output timing.

- ITU external clock input timing

  Figure 15-13 shows the ITU external clock input timing.

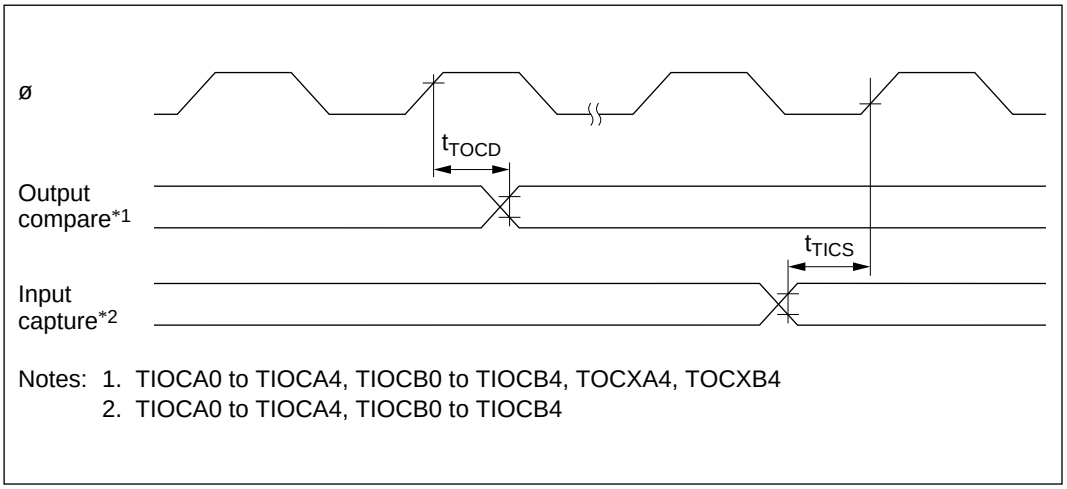


Figure 15-12 ITU Input/Output Timing

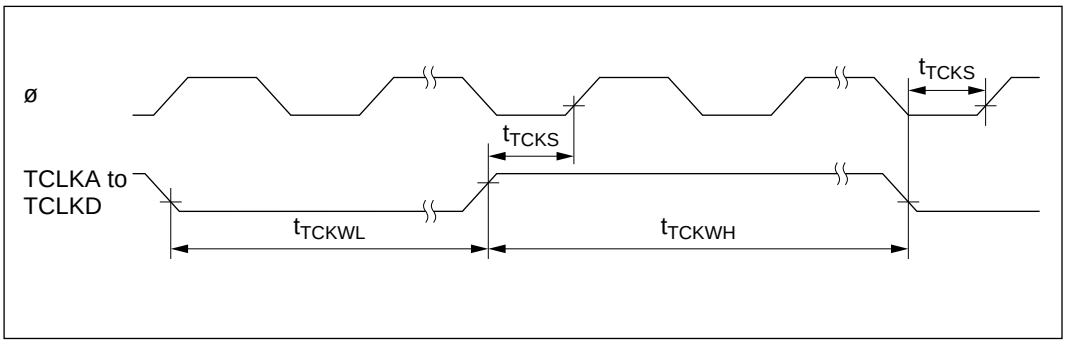


Figure 15-13 ITU Clock Input Timing

15.3.6 SCI Input/Output Timing

SCI timing is shown as follows:

- SCI input clock timing

  Figure 15-14 shows the SCI input clock timing.

- SCI input/output timing (synchronous mode)

  Figure 15-15 shows the SCI input/output timing in synchronous mode.

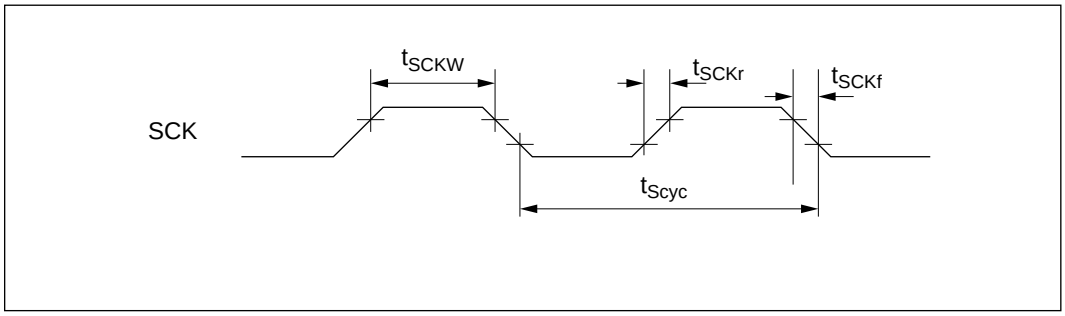


Figure 15-14 SCK Input Clock Timing

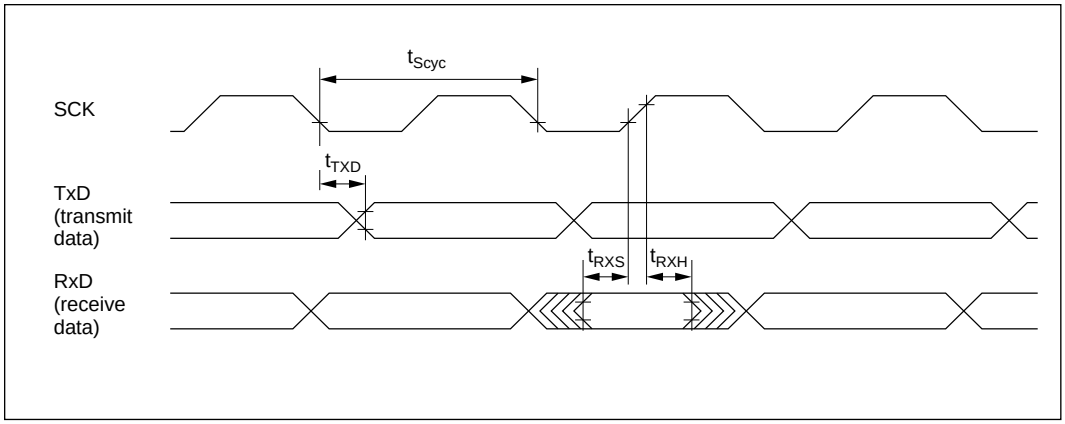


Figure 15-15 SCI Input/Output Timing in Synchronous Mode

Appendix A Instruction Set

A.1 Instruction List

Operand Notation

Symbol	Description
Rd	General destination register
Rs	General source register
Rn	General register
ERd	General destination register (address register or 32-bit register)
ERs	General source register (address register or 32-bit register)
ERn	General register (32-bit register)
(EAd)	Destination operand
(EAs)	Source operand
PC	Program counter
SP	Stack pointer
CCR	Condition code register
N	N (negative) flag in CCR
Z	Z (zero) flag in CCR
V	V (overflow) flag in CCR
C	C (carry) flag in CCR
disp	Displacement
→	Transfer from the operand on the left to the operand on the right, or transition from the state on the left to the state on the right
+	Addition of the operands on both sides
–	Subtraction of the operand on the right from the operand on the left
×	Multiplication of the operands on both sides
÷	Division of the operand on the left by the operand on the right
∧	Logical AND of the operands on both sides
∨	Logical OR of the operands on both sides
⊕	Exclusive logical OR of the operands on both sides
¬	NOT (logical complement)
( ), < >	Contents of operand

Note: General registers include 8-bit registers (R0H to R7H and R0L to R7L) and 16-bit registers (R0 to R7 and E0 to E7).

Condition Code Notation

Symbol	Description
↕	Changed according to execution result
*	Undetermined (no guaranteed value)
0	Cleared to 0
1	Set to 1
—	Not affected by execution of the instruction
Δ	Varies depending on conditions, described in notes

Table A-1 Instruction Set

1. Data transfer instructions

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
MOV.B #xx:8, Rd	B	#xx:8 → Rd8	2									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
MOV.B Rs, Rd	B	Rs8 → Rd8		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
MOV.B @ERs, Rd	B	@ERs → Rd8			2							—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
MOV.B @(d:16, ERs), Rd	B	@(d:16, ERs) → Rd8				4						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.B @(d:24, ERs), Rd	B	@(d:24, ERs) → Rd8				8						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.B @ERs+, Rd	B	@ERs → RD8 ERs32+1 → ERs32					2					—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.B @aa:8, Rd	B	@aa:8 → Rd8						2				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
MOV.B @aa:16, Rd	B	@aa:16 → Rd8						4				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.B @aa:24, Rd	B	@aa:24 → Rd8						6				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	8	
MOV.B Rs, @ERd	B	Rs8 → @ERd			2							—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
MOV.B Rs, @(d:16, ERd)	B	Rs8 → @(d:16, ERd)				4						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.B Rs, @(d:24, ERd)	B	Rs8 → @(d:24, ERd)				8						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.B Rs, @ERd	B	ERd32–1 → ERd32 Rs8 → @ERd					2					—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.B Rs, @aa:8	B	Rs8 → @aa:8						2				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
MOV.B Rs, @aa:16	B	Rs8 → @aa:16						4				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.B Rs, @aa:24	B	Rs8 → @aa:24						6				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	8	
MOV.W #xx:16, Rd	W	#xx:16 → Rd16	4									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
MOV.W Rs, Rd	W	Rs16 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
MOV.W @ERs, Rd	W	@ERs → Rd16			2							—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
MOV.W @(d:16, ERs), Rd	W	@(d:16, ERs) → Rd16				4						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.W @(d:24, ERs), Rd	W	@(d:24, ERs) → Rd16				8						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.W @ERs+, Rd	W	@ERs → Rd16 ERs32+2 → @ERd					2					—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.W @aa:16, Rd	W	@aa:16 → Rd16						4				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
MOV.W @aa:24, Rd	W	@aa:24 → Rd16						6				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	8	
MOV.W Rs, @ERd	W	Rs16 → @ERd			2							—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
MOV.W Rs, @(d:16, ERd)	W	Rs16 → @(d:16, ERd)				4						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.W Rs, @(d:24, ERd)	W	Rs16 → @(d:24, ERd)				8						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.W Rs, @–ERd	W	ERd32–2 → ERd32 Rs16 → @ERd					2					—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.W Rs, @aa:16	W	Rs16 → @aa:16						4				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
MOV.W Rs, @aa:24	W	Rs16 → @aa:24						6				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	8	
MOV.L #xx:32, Rd	L	#xx:32 → Rd32	6									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.L ERs, ERd	L	ERs32 → ERd32		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
MOV.L @ERs, ERd	L	@ERs → ERd32			4							—	—	↕	↕	0	—	8	
MOV.L @(d:16, ERs), ERd	L	@(d:16, ERs) → ERd32				6						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.L @(d:24, ERs), ERd	L	@(d:24, ERs) → ERd32				10						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	14	
MOV.L @ERs+, ERd	L	@ERs → ERd32 ERs32+4 → ERs32					4					—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.L @aa:16, ERd	L	@aa:16 → ERd32						6				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.L @aa:24, ERd	L	@aa:24 → ERd32						8				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	12	
MOV.L ERs, @ERd	L	ERs32 → @ERd			4							—	—	↕	↕	0	—	8	
MOV.L ERs, @(d:16, ERd)	L	ERs32 → @(d:16, ERd)				6						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.L ERs, @(d:24, ERd)	L	ERs32 → @(d:24, ERd)				10						—	—	↕	↕	0	—	14	
MOV.L ERs, @–ERd	L	ERd32–4 → ERd32 ERs32 → @ERd					4					—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.L ERs, @aa:16	L	ERs32 → @aa:16						6				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOV.L ERs, @aa:24	L	ERs32 → @aa:24						8				—	—	↕	↕	0	—	12	
POP.W Rn	W	@SP → Rn16 SP+2 → SP									2	—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
POP.L ERn	L	@SP → ERn32 SP+4 → SP									4	—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
PUSH.W Rn	W	SP–2 → SP Rn16 → @SP									2	—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
PUSH.L ERn	L	SP–4 → SP ERn32 → @SP									4	—	—	↕	↕	0	—	10	
MOVFPE @aa:16, Rd	B	Cannot be used in the H8/3001						4				Cannot be used in the H8/3001							
MOVTPE Rs, @aa:16	B	Cannot be used in the H8/3001						4				Cannot be used in the H8/3001							

2. Arithmetic instructions

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
ADD.B #xx:8, Rd	B	Rd8+#xx:8 → Rd8	2									—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
ADD.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8+Rs8 → Rd8		2								—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
ADD.W #xx:16, Rd	W	Rd16+#xx:16 → Rd16	4									—	1	↕	↕	↕	↕	4	
ADD.W Rs, Rd	W	Rd16+Rs16 → Rd16		2								—	1	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
ADD.L #xx:32, ERd	L	ERd32+#xx:32 → ERd32	6									—	2	↕	↕	↕	↕	6	
ADD.L ERs, ERd	L	ERd32+ERs32 → ERd32		2								—	2	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
ADDX.B #xx:8, Rd	B	Rd8+#xx:8 +C → Rd8	2									—	↕	↕	3	↕	↕	2	
ADDX.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8+Rs8 +C → Rd8		2								—	↕	↕	3	↕	↕	2	
ADDS.L #1, ERd	L	ERd32+1 → ERd32		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
ADDS.L #2, ERd	L	ERd32+2 → ERd32		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
ADDS.L #4, ERd	L	ERd32+4 → ERd32		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
INC.B Rd	B	Rd8+1 → Rd8		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
INC.W #1, Rd	W	Rd16+1 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
INC.W #2, Rd	W	Rd16+2 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
INC.L #1, ERd	L	ERd32+1 → ERd32		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
INC.L #2, ERd	L	ERd32+2 → ERd32		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
DAA Rd	B	Rd8 decimal adjust → Rd8		2								—	*	↕	↕	*	—	2	
SUB.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8–Rs8 → Rd8		2								—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
SUB.W #xx:16, Rd	W	Rd16–#xx:16 → Rd16	4									—	1	↕	↕	↕	↕	4	
SUB.W Rs, Rd	W	Rd16–Rs16 → Rd16		2								—	1	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
SUB.L #xx:32, ERd	L	ERd32–#xx:32 → ERd32	6									—	2	↕	↕	↕	↕	6	
SUB.L ERs, ERd	L	ERd32–ERs32 → ERd32		2								—	2	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
SUBX.B #xx:8, Rd	B	Rd8–#xx:8–C → Rd8	2									—	↕	↕	3	↕	↕	2	
SUBX.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8–Rs8–C → Rd8		2								—	↕	↕	3	↕	↕	2	
SUBS.L #1, ERd	L	ERd32–1 → ERd32		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
SUBS.L #2, ERd	L	ERd32–2 → ERd32		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
SUBS.L #4, ERd	L	ERd32–4 → ERd32		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
DEC.B Rd	B	Rd8–1 → Rd8		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
DEC.W #1, Rd	W	Rd16–1 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
DEC.W #2, Rd	W	Rd16–2 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
DEC.L #1, ERd	L	ERd32–1 → ERd32		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
DEC.L #2, ERd	L	ERd32–2 → ERd32		2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	—	2	
DAS.Rd	B	Rd8 decimal adjust → Rd8		2								—	*	↕	↕	*	—	2	
MULXU. B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8 × Rs8 → Rd16 (unsigned multiplication)		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	14	
MULXU. W Rs, ERd	W	Rd16 × Rs16 → ERd32 (unsigned multiplication)		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	22	
MULXS. B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8 × Rs8 → Rd16 (signed multiplication)		4								—	—	↕	↕	—	—	16	
MULXS. W Rs, ERd	W	Rd16 × Rs16 → ERd32 (signed multiplication)		4								—	—	↕	↕	—	—	24	
DIVXU. B Rs, Rd	B	Rd16 ÷ Rs8 → Rd16 (RdH: remainder, RdL: quotient) (unsigned division)		2								—	—	6	7	—	—	14	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
DIVXU. W Rs, ERd	W	ERd32 ÷ Rs16 →ERd32 (Ed: remainder, Rd: quotient) (unsigned division)		2								—	—	6	7	—	—	22	
DIVXS. B Rs, Rd	B	Rd16 ÷ Rs8 → Rd16 (RdH: remainder, RdL: quotient) (signed division)		4								—	—	8	7	—	—	16	
DIVXS. W Rs, ERd	W	ERd32 ÷ Rs16 → ERd32 (Ed: remainder, Rd: quotient) (signed division)		4								—	—	8	7	—	—	24	
CMP.B #xx:8, Rd	B	Rd8–#xx:8	2									—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
CMP.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8–Rs8		2								—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
CMP.W #xx:16, Rd	W	Rd16–#xx:16	4									—	1	↕	↕	↕	↕	4	
CMP.W Rs, Rd	W	Rd16–Rs16		2								—	1	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
CMP.L #xx:32, ERd	L	ERd32–#xx:32	6									—	2	↕	↕	↕	↕	6	
CMP.L ERs, ERd	L	ERd32–ERs32		2								—	2	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
NEG.B Rd	B	0–Rd8 → Rd8		2								—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
NEG.W Rd	W	0–Rd16 → Rd16		2								—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
NEG.L ERd	L	0–ERd32 → ERd32		2								—	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
EXTU.W Rd	W	0 → (<bits 15 to 8> of Rd16)		2								—	—	0	↕	0	—	2	
EXTU.L ERd	L	0 → (<bits 31 to 16> of Rd32)		2								—	—	0	↕	0	—	2	
EXTS.W Rd	W	(<bit 7> of Rd16) → (<bits 15 to 8> of Rd16)		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
EXTS.L ERd	L	(<bit 15> of Rd32) → (<bits 31 to 16> of ERd32)		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

3. Logic instructions

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
AND.B #xx:8, Rd	B	Rd8∧#xx:8 → Rd8	2									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
AND.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8∧Rs8 → Rd8		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
AND.W #xx:16, Rd	W	Rd16∧#xx:16 → Rd16	4									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
AND.W Rs, Rd	W	Rd16∧Rs16 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
AND.L #xx:32, ERd	L	ERd32∧#xx:32 → ERd32	6									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
AND.L ERs, ERd	L	ERd32∧ERs32 → ERd32		4								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
OR.B #xx:8, Rd	B	Rd8∨#xx:8 → Rd8	2									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
OR.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8∨Rs8 → Rd8		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
OR.W #xx:16, Rd	W	Rd16∨#xx:16 → Rd16	4									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
OR.W Rs, Rd	W	Rd16∨Rs16 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
OR.L #xx:32, ERd	L	ERd32∨#xx:32 → ERd32	6									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
OR.L ERs, ERd	L	ERd32∨ERs32 → ERd32		4								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
XOR.B #xx:8, Rd	B	Rd8⊕#xx:8 → Rd8	2									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
XOR.B Rs, Rd	B	Rd8⊕Rs8 → Rd8		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
XOR.W #xx:16, Rd	W	Rd16⊕#xx:16 → Rd16	4									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
XOR.W Rs, Rd	W	Rd16⊕Rs16 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
XOR.L #xx:32, ERd	L	ERd32⊕#xx:32 → ERd32	6									—	—	↕	↕	0	—	6	
XOR.L ERs, ERd	L	ERd32⊕ERs32 → ERd32		4								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	4	
NOT.B Rd	B	¬ Rd8 → Rd8		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
NOT.W Rd	W	¬ Rd16 → Rd16		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	
NOT.L ERd	L	¬ Rd32 → Rd32		2								—	—	↕	↕	0	—	2	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

4. Shift instructions

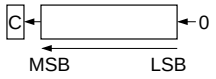
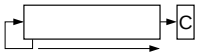
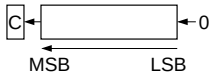
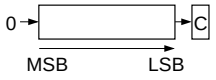
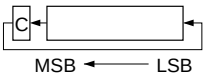
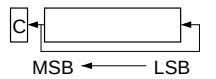
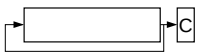
Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
SHAL.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
SHAL.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
SHAL.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
SHAR.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHAR.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHAR.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHLL.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHLL.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHLL.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHLR.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHLR.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
SHLR.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTXL.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTXL.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTXL.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTXR.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTXR.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTXR.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTL.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTL.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTL.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTR.B Rd	B			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTR.W Rd	W			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	
ROTR.L ERd	L			2								—	—	↕	↕	0	↕	2	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

5. Bit manipulation instructions

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
BSET #xx:3, Rd	B	(#xx:3 of Rd8) ← 1		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BSET #xx:3, @ERd	B	(#xx:3 of @ERd) ← 1			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BSET #xx:3, @aa:8	B	(#xx:3 of @aa:8) ← 1						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BSET Rn, Rd	B	(Rn8 of Rd8) ← 1		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BSET Rn, @ERd	B	(Rn8 of @ERd) ← 1			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BSET Rn, @aa:8	B	(Rn8 of @aa:8) ← 1						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BCLR #xx:3, Rd	B	(#xx:3 of Rd8) ← 0		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BCLR #xx:3, @ERd	B	(#xx:3 of @ERd) ← 0			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BCLR #xx:3, @aa:8	B	(#xx:3 of @aa:8) ← 0						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BCLR Rn, Rd	B	(Rn8 of Rd8) ← 0		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BCLR Rn, @ERd	B	(Rn8 of @ERd) ← 0			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BCLR Rn, @aa:8	B	(Rn8 of @aa:8) ← 0						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BNOT #xx:3, Rd	B	(#xx:3 of Rd8) ← ¬ (#xx:3 of Rd8)		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BNOT #xx:3, @ERd	B	(#xx:3 of @ERd) ← ¬ (#xx:3 of @ERd)			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BNOT #xx:3, @aa:8	B	(#xx:3 of @aa:8) ← ¬ (#xx:3 of @aa:8)						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BNOT Rn, Rd	B	(Rn8 of Rd8) ← ¬ (Rn8 of Rd8)		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BNOT Rn, @ERd	B	(Rn8 of @ERd) ← ¬ (Rn8 of @ERd)			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BNOT Rn, @aa:8	B	(Rn8 of @aa:8) ← ¬ (Rn8 of @aa:8)						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BTST #xx:3, Rd	B	(#xx:3 of Rd8) → Z		2								—	—	—	↕	—	—	2	
BTST #xx:3, @ERd	B	(#xx:3 of @ERd) → Z			4							—	—	—	↕	—	—	6	
BTST #xx:3, @aa:8	B	(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → Z						4				—	—	—	↕	—	—	6	
BTST Rn, Rd	B	(Rn8 of @Rd8) → Z		2								—	—	—	↕	—	—	2	
BTST Rn, @ERd	B	(Rn8 of @ERd) → Z			4							—	—	—	↕	—	—	6	
BTST Rn, @aa:8	B	(Rn8 of @aa:8) → Z						4				—	—	—	↕	—	—	6	
BLD #xx:3, Rd	B	(#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
BLD #xx:3, @ERd	B	(#xx:3 of @ERd) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BLD #xx:3, @aa:8	B	(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BILD #xx:3, Rd	B	¬ (#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	
BILD #xx:3, @ERd	B	¬ (#xx:3 of @ERd) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BILD #xx:3, @aa:8	B	¬ (#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BST #xx:3, Rd	B	C → (#xx:3 of Rd8)		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BST #xx:3, @REd	B	C → (#xx:3 of @ERd)			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BST #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C → (#xx:3 of @aa:8)						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BIST #xx:3, Rd	B	C → (#xx:3 of Rd8)		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
BIST #xx:3, @ERd	B	C → (#xx:3 of @ERd24)			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BIST #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C → (#xx:3 of @aa:8)						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
BAND #xx:3, Rd	B	C∧(#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	
BAND #xx:3, @ERd	B	C∧(#xx:3 of @ERd24) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BAND #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C∧(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BIAND #xx:3, Rd	B	C∧(#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	
BIAND #xx:3, @ERd	B	C∧(#xx:3 of @ERd24) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BIAND #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C∧(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BOR #xx:3, Rd	B	C∨(#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	
BOR #xx:3, @ERd	B	C∨(#xx:3 of @ERd24) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BOR #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C∨(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BIOR #xx:3, Rd	B	C∨(#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	
BIOR #xx:3, @ERd	B	C∨(#xx:3 of @ERd24) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BIOR #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C∨(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BXOR #xx:3, Rd	B	C⊕(#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	
BXOR #xx:3, @ERd	B	C⊕(#xx:3 of @ERd24) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BXOR #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C⊕(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BIXOR #xx:3, Rd	B	C⊕(#xx:3 of Rd8) → C		2								—	—	—	—	—	↕	2	
BIXOR #xx:3, @ERd	B	C⊕(#xx:3 of @ERd24) → C			4							—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	
BIXOR #xx:3, @aa:8	B	C⊕(#xx:3 of @aa:8) → C						4				—	—	—	—	—	↕	6	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

6. Branching instructions

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation		Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
				#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
BRA d:8 (BT d:8)	—	If condition is true then PC ← PC+d else next;	Always							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BRA d:16 (BT d:16)	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BRN d:8 (BF d:8)	—		Never							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BRN d:16 (BF d:16)	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BHI d:8	—		C ∨ Z = 0							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BHI d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BLS d:8	—		C ∨ Z = 1							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BLS d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BCC d:8 (BHS d:8)	—		C = 0							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BCC d:16 (BHS d:16)	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BCS d:8 (BLO d:8)	—		C = 1							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BCS d:16 (BLO d:16)	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BNE d:8	—		Z = 0							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BNE d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BEQ d:8	—		Z = 1							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BEQ d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BVC d:8	—		V = 0							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BVC d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BVS d:8	—		V = 1							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BVS d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BPL d:8	—		N = 0							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BPL d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BMI d:8	—		N = 1							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BMI d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BGE d:8	—		N⊕V = 0							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BGE d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BLT d:8	—		N⊕V = 1							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BLT d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
BGT d:8	—		Z ∨ (N⊕V) = 0							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BGT d:16	—									4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
BLE d:8	—	If condition $Z \vee (N \oplus V) = 1$ is true then PC ← PC+d else next;							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
BLE d:16	—								4			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
JMP @ERn	—	PC ← ERn			2							—	—	—	—	—	—	4	
JMP @aa:24	—	PC ← aa:24						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
JMP @@aa:8	—	PC ← @aa:8								2		—	—	—	—	—	—	8	10
BSR d:8	—	PC → @–SP PC ← PC+d:8							2			—	—	—	—	—	—	6	8
BSR d:16	—	PC → @–SP PC ← PC+d:16							4			—	—	—	—	—	—	8	10
JSR @ERn	—	PC → @–SP PC ← @ERn			2							—	—	—	—	—	—	6	8
JSR @aa:24	—	PC → @–SP PC ← @aa:24						4				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	10
JSR @@aa:8	—	PC → @–SP PC ← @aa:8								2		—	—	—	—	—	—	8	12
RTS	—	PC ← @SP+									2	—	—	—	—	—	—	8	10

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

7. System control instructions

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
TRAPA #x:2	—	PC → @–SP CCR → @–SP <vector> → PC									2	—	—	—	—	—	—	14	16
RTE	—	CCR ← @SP+ PC ← @SP+										↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	10	
SLEEP	—	Transition to power-down state										—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
LDC #xx:8, CCR	B	#xx:8 → CCR	2									↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
LDC Rs, CCR	B	Rs8 → CCR		2								↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
LDC @ERs, CCR	W	@ERs → CCR			4							↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	6	
LDC @(d:16, ERs), CCR	W	@(d:16, ERs) → CCR				6						↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	8	
LDC @(d:24, ERs), CCR	W	@(d:24, ERs) → CCR				10						↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	12	
LDC @ERs+, CCR	W	@ERs → CCR ERs32+2 → ERs32					4					↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	8	
LDC @aa:16, CCR	W	@aa:16 → CCR						6				↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	8	
LDC @aa:24, CCR	W	@aa:24 → CCR						8				↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	10	
STC CCR, Rd	B	CCR → Rd8		2								—	—	—	—	—	—	2	
STC CCR, @ERd	W	CCR → @ERd			4							—	—	—	—	—	—	6	
STC CCR, @(d:16, ERd)	W	CCR → @(d:16, ERd)				6						—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
STC CCR, @(d:24, ERd)	W	CCR → @(d:24, ERd)				10						—	—	—	—	—	—	12	
STC CCR, @–ERd	W	ERd32–2 → ERd32 CCR → @ERd					4					—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
STC CCR, @aa:16	W	CCR → @aa:16						6				—	—	—	—	—	—	8	
STC CCR, @aa:24	W	CCR → @aa:24						8				—	—	—	—	—	—	10	
ANDC #xx:8, CCR	B	CCR∧#xx:8 → CCR	2									↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
ORC #xx:8, CCR	B	CCR∨#xx:8 → CCR	2									↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
XORC #xx:8, CCR	B	CCR⊕#xx:8 → CCR	2									↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	↕	2	
NOP	—	PC ← PC+2									2	—	—	—	—	—	—	2	

Table A-1 Instruction Set (cont)

8. Block transfer instructions

Mnemonic	Operand Size	Operation	Addressing Mode and Instruction Length (bytes)									Condition Code						No. of States *1	
			#xx	Rn	@ERn	@(d, ERn)	@–ERn/@ERn+	@aa	@(d, PC)	@@aa	Implied	I	H	N	Z	V	C	Normal	Advanced
EEPMOV. B	—	if R4L ≠ 0 then repeat @R5 → @R6 R5+1 → R5 R6+1 → R6 R4L–1 → R4L until R4L=0 else next									4	—	—	—	—	—	—	8+ 4n*2	
EEPMOV. W	—	if R4 ≠ 0 then repeat @R5 → @R6 R5+1 → R5 R6+1 → R6 R4L–1 → R4 until R4=0 else next									4	—	—	—	—	—	—	8+ 4n*2	

Notes: 1. The number of states is the number of states required for execution when the instruction and its operands are located in on-chip memory. For other cases see section A.3, Number of States Required for Execution.

2. n is the value set in register R4L or R4.

1 Set to 1 when a carry or borrow occurs at bit 11; otherwise cleared to 0.
2 Set to 1 when a carry or borrow occurs at bit 27; otherwise cleared to 0.
3 Retains its previous value when the result is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.
4 Set to 1 when the adjustment produces a carry; otherwise retains its previous value.
5 The number of states required for execution of an instruction that transfers data in synchronization with the E clock is variable.
6 Set to 1 when the divisor is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.
7 Set to 1 when the divisor is zero; otherwise cleared to 0.
8 Set to 1 when the quotient is negative; otherwise cleared to 0.

A.2 Operation Code Map (1)

Table A-2 Operation Code Map

Instruction code:

1st byte		2nd byte	
AH	AL	BH	BL

Instruction when most significant bit of BH is 0.

Instruction when most significant bit of BH is 1.

AH \ AL	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	NOP	Table A.2 (2)	STC	LDC	ORG	XORC	ANDC	LDC	ADD		Table A.2 (2)	Table A.2 (2)	MOV		ADDX	Table A.2 (2)
1	Table A.2 (2)	Table A.2 (2)	Table A.2 (2)	Table A.2 (2)	OR.B	XOR.B	AND.B	Table A.2 (2)	SUB		Table A.2 (2)	Table A.2 (2)	CMP		SUBX	Table A.2 (2)
2																
3																
4	BRA	BRN	BHI	BLS	BCC	BCS	BNE	BEQ	BVC	BVS	BPL	BMI	BGE	BLT	BGT	BLE
5	MULXU.B	DIVXU.B	MULXU.W	DIVXU.W	RTS	BSR	RTE	TRAPA	Table A.2 (2)	JMP			BSR	JSR		
6	BSET	BNOT	BCLR	BTST	OR.W	XOR.W	AND.W	BST / BIST	MOV.B	MOV						
7					BOR / BIOR	BXOR / BIXOR	BAND / BIAND	BLD / BILD	MOV.B/W	Table A.2 (2)	Table A.2 (2)	EEPMOV	Table A.2 (3)			
8	ADD															
9	ADDX															
A	CMP															
B	SUBX															
C	OR															
D	XOR															
E	AND															
F	MOV															

Operation Code Map (2)

Table A-2 Operation Code Map (cont)

Instruction code:

1st byte		2nd byte	
AH	AL	BH	BL

AH AL \ BH	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
01	MOV				LDC/STC				SLEEP				Table A.2 (3)	Table A.2 (3)		Table A.2 (3)
0A	INC								ADD							
0B	ADDS					INC		INC	ADDS					INC		INC
0F	DAA								MOV							
10	SHLL			SHLL					SHAL			SHAL				
11	SHLR			SHLR					SHAR			SHAR				
12	ROTXL			ROTXL					ROTL			ROTL				
13	ROTXR			ROTXR					ROTR			ROTR				
17	NOT			NOT		EXTU		EXTU	NEG			NEG		EXTS		EXTS
1A	DEC								SUB							
1B	SUBS					DEC		DEC	SUB					DEC		DEC
1F	DAS								CMP.L							
58	BRA	BRN	BHI	BLS	BCC	BCS	BNE	BEQ	BVC	BVS	BPL	BMI	BGE	BLT	BGT	BLE
79	MOV	ADD	CMP	SUB	OR	XOR	AND									
7A	MOV	ADD	CMP	SUB	OR	XOR	AND									

Operation Code Map (3)

Table A-2 Operation Code Map (cont)

Instruction code:

1st byte		2nd byte		3rd byte		4th byte	
AH	AL	BH	BL	CH	CL	DH	DL

Instruction when most significant bit of DH is 0.

Instruction when most significant bit of DH is 1.

AH / ALBH / BLCH \ C	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
01406										LDC / STC		LBC / STC		LDC / STC		LDC / STC
01C05	MULXS		MULXS													
01D05		DIVXS		DIVXS												
01F06					OR	XOR	AND									
7Cr06 *1				BTST												
7Cr07 *1				BTST	BOR / BIOR	BXOR / BIXOR	BAND / BIAND	BLD / BILD								
7Dr06 *1	BSET	BNOT	BCLR					BST / BIST								
7Dr07 *1	BSET	BNOT	BCLR													
7Eaa6 *2				BTST												
7Eaa7 *2				BTST	BOR / BIOR	BXOR / BIXOR	BAND / BIAND	BLD / BILD								
7Faa6 *2	BSET	BNOT	BCLR					BST / BIST								
7Faa7 *2	BSET	BNOT	BCLR													

Notes: 1. r is the register designation field.
2. aa is the absolute address field.

A.3 Number of States Required for Execution

The tables in this section can be used to calculate the number of states required for instruction execution by the H8/300H CPU. Table A-4 indicates the number of instruction fetch, data read/write, and other cycles occurring in each instruction. Table A-3 indicates the number of states required per cycle according to the bus size. The number of states required for execution of an instruction can be calculated from these two tables as follows:

Number of states = $I \times S_I + J \times S_J + K \times S_K + L \times S_L + M \times S_M + N \times S_N$

Examples of Calculation of Number of States Required for Execution

Examples: Advanced mode, stack located in external address space, on-chip supporting modules accessed with 8-bit bus width, external devices accessed in three states with one wait state and 16-bit bus width.

BSET #0, @FFFFC7:8

From table A-3, I = L = 2 and J = K = M = N = 0
From table A-2, $S_I = 4$ and $S_L = 3$
Number of states = $2 \times 4 + 2 \times 3 = 14$

JSR @@30

From table A-3, I = J = K = 2 and L = M = N = 0
From table A-2, $S_I = S_J = S_K = 4$
Number of states = $2 \times 4 + 2 \times 4 + 2 \times 4 = 24$

Table A-3 Number of States per Cycle

		Access Conditions						
			On-Chip Supporting Module		External Device			
					8-Bit Bus		16-Bit Bus	
Cycle		**On-Chip Memory**	**8-Bit Bus**	**16-Bit Bus**	**2-State Access**	**3-State Access**	**2-State Access**	**3-State Access**
Instruction fetch	S_I	2	6	3	4	6 + 2m	2	3 + m
Branch address read	S_J							
Stack operation	S_K							
Byte data access	S_L		3		2	3 + m		
Word data access	S_M		6		4	6 + 2m		
Internal operation	S_N	1						

Legend
m: Number of wait states inserted into external device access

Table A-4 Number of Cycles per Instruction

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch I	Branch Addr. Read J	Stack Operation K	Byte Data Access L	Word Data Access M	Internal Operation N
ADD	ADD.B #xx:8, Rd	1					
	ADD.B Rs, Rd	1					
	ADD.W #xx:16, Rd	2					
	ADD.W Rs, Rd	1					
	ADD.L #xx:32, ERd	3					
	ADD.L ERs, ERd	1					
ADDS	ADDS #1/2/4, ERd	1					
ADDX	ADDX #xx:8, Rd	1					
	ADDX Rs, Rd	1					
AND	AND.B #xx:8, Rd	1					
	AND.B Rs, Rd	1					
	AND.W #xx:16, Rd	2					
	AND.W Rs, Rd	1					
	AND.L #xx:32, ERd	3					
	AND.L ERs, ERd	2					
ANDC	ANDC #xx:8, CCR	1					
BAND	BAND #xx:3, Rd	1					
	BAND #xx:3, @ERd	2			1		
	BAND #xx:3, @aa:8	2			1		
Bcc	BRA d:8 (BT d:8)	2					
	BRN d:8 (BF d:8)	2					
	BHI d:8	2					
	BLS d:8	2					
	BCC d:8 (BHS d:8)	2					
	BCS d:8 (BLO d:8)	2					
	BNE d:8	2					
	BEQ d:8	2					
	BVC d:8	2					
	BVS d:8	2					
	BPL d:8	2					
	BMI d:8	2					
	BGE d:8	2					
	BLT d:8	2					
	BGT d:8	2					
	BLE d:8	2					

Table A-4 Number of Cycles per Instruction (cont)

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch I	Branch Addr. Read J	Stack Operation K	Byte Data Access L	Word Data Access M	Internal Operation N
Bcc	BRA d:16 (BT d:16)	2					2
	BRN d:16 (BF d:16)	2					2
	BHI d:16	2					2
	BLS d:16	2					2
	BCC d:16 (BHS d:16)	2					2
	BCS d:16 (BLO d:16)	2					2
	BNE d:16	2					2
	BEQ d:16	2					2
	BVC d:16	2					2
	BVS d:16	2					2
	BPL d:16	2					2
	BMI d:16	2					2
	BGE d:16	2					2
	BLT d:16	2					2
	BGT d:16	2					2
	BLE d:16	2					2
BCLR	BCLR #xx:3, Rd	1					
	BCLR #xx:3, @ERd	2			2		
	BCLR #xx:3, @aa:8	2			2		
	BCLR Rn, Rd	1					
	BCLR Rn, @ERd	2			2		
	BCLR Rn, @aa:8	2			2		
BIAND	BIAND #xx:3, Rd	1					
	BIAND #xx:3, @ERd	2			1		
	BIAND #xx:3, @aa:8	2			1		
BILD	BILD #xx:3, Rd	1					
	BILD #xx:3, @ERd	2			1		
	BILD #xx:3, @aa:8	2			1		
BIOR	BIOR #xx:8, Rd	1					
	BIOR #xx:8, @ERd	2			1		
	BIOR #xx:8, @aa:8	2			1		
BIST	BIST #xx:3, Rd	1					
	BIST #xx:3, @ERd	2			2		
	BIST #xx:3, @aa:8	2			2		
BIXOR	BIXOR #xx:3, Rd	1					
	BIXOR #xx:3, @ERd	2			1		
	BIXOR #xx:3, @aa:8	2			1		
BLD	BLD #xx:3, Rd	1					
	BLD #xx:3, @ERd	2			1		
	BLD #xx:3, @aa:8	2			1		

Table A-4 Number of Cycles per Instruction (cont)

Instruction	Mnemonic		Instruction Fetch I	Branch Addr. Read J	Stack Operation K	Byte Data Access L	Word Data Access M	Internal Operation N
BNOT	BNOT #xx:3, Rd		1					
	BNOT #xx:3, @ERd		2			2		
	BNOT #xx:3, @aa:8		2			2		
	BNOT Rn, Rd		1					
	BNOT Rn, @ERd		2			2		
	BNOT Rn, @aa:8		2			2		
BOR	BOR #xx:3, Rd		1					
	BOR #xx:3, @ERd		2			1		
	BOR #xx:3, @aa:8		2			1		
BSET	BSET #xx:3, Rd		1					
	BSET #xx:3, @ERd		2			2		
	BSET #xx:3, @aa:8		2			2		
	BSET Rn, Rd		1					
	BSET Rn, @ERd		2			2		
	BSET Rn, @aa:8		2			2		
BSR	BSR d:8	Normal*1	2		1			
		Advanced	2		2			
	BSR d:16	Normal*1	2		1			2
		Advanced	2		2			2
BST	BST #xx:3, Rd		1					
	BST #xx:3, @ERd		2			2		
	BST #xx:3, @aa:8		2			2		
BTST	BTST #xx:3, Rd		1					
	BTST #xx:3, @ERd		2			1		
	BTST #xx:3, @aa:8		2			1		
	BTST Rn, Rd		1					
	BTST Rn, @ERd		2			1		
	BTST Rn, @aa:8		2			1		
BXOR	BXOR #xx:3, Rd		1					
	BXOR #xx:3, @ERd		2			1		
	BXOR #xx:3, @aa:8		2			1		
CMP	CMP.B #xx:8, Rd		1					
	CMP.B Rs, Rd		1					
	CMP.W #xx:16, Rd		2					
	CMP.W Rs, Rd		1					
	CMP.L #xx:32, ERd		3					
	CMP.L ERs, ERd		1					
DAA	DAA Rd		1					
DAS	DAS Rd		1					

Table A-4 Number of Cycles per Instruction (cont)

Instruction	Mnemonic		Instruction Fetch I	Branch Addr. Read J	Stack Operation K	Byte Data Access L	Word Data Access M	Internal Operation N
DEC	DEC.B Rd		1					
	DEC.W #1/2, Rd		1					
	DEC.L #1/2, ERd		1					
DIVXS	DIVXS.B Rs, Rd		2					12
	DIVXS.W Rs, ERd		2					20
DIVXU	DIVXU.B Rs, Rd		1					12
	DIVXU.W Rs, ERd		1					20
EEPMOV	EEPMOV.B		2			2n + 2*2		
	EEPMOV.W		2			2n + 2*2		
EXTS	EXTS.W Rd		1					
	EXTS.L ERd		1					
EXTU	EXTU.W Rd		1					
	EXTU.L ERd		1					
INC	INC.B Rd		1					
	INC.W #1/2, Rd		1					
	INC.L #1/2, ERd		1					
JMP	JMP @ERn		2					
	JMP @aa:24		2					2
	JMP @@aa:8	Normal*1	2	1				2
		Advanced	2	2				2
JSR	JSR @ERn	Normal*1	2		1			
		Advanced	2		2			
	JSR @aa:24	Normal*1	2		1			2
		Advanced	2		2			2
	JSR @@aa:8	Normal*1	2	1	1			
		Advanced	2	2	2			
LDC	LDC #xx:8, CCR		1					
	LDC Rs, CCR		1					
	LDC @ERs, CCR		2				1	
	LDC @(d:16, ERs), CCR		3				1	
	LDC @(d:24, ERs), CCR		5				1	
	LDC @ERs+, CCR		2				1	2
	LDC @aa:16, CCR		3				1	
	LDC @aa:24, CCR		4				1	

Table A-4 Number of Cycles per Instruction (cont)

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch I	Branch Addr. Read J	Stack Operation K	Byte Data Access L	Word Data Access M	Internal Operation N
MOV	MOV.B #xx:8, Rd	1					
	MOV.B Rs, Rd	1					
	MOV.B @ERs, Rd	1			1		
	MOV.B @(d:16, ERs), Rd	2			1		
	MOV.B @(d:24, ERs), Rd	4			1		
	MOV.B @ERs+, Rd	1			1		2
	MOV.B @aa:8, Rd	1			1		
	MOV.B @aa:16, Rd	2			1		
	MOV.B @aa:24, Rd	3			1		
	MOV.B Rs, @ERd	1			1		
	MOV.B Rs, @(d:16, ERd)	2			1		
	MOV.B Rs, @(d:24, ERd)	4			1		
	MOV.B Rs, @–ERd	1			1		2
	MOV.B Rs, @aa:8	1			1		
	MOV.B Rs, @aa:16	2			1		
	MOV.B Rs, @aa:24	3			1		
	MOV.W #xx:16, Rd	2					
	MOV.W Rs, Rd	1					
	MOV.W @ERs, Rd	1				1	
	MOV.W @(d:16, ERs), Rd	2				1	
	MOV.W @(d:24, ERs), Rd	4				1	
	MOV.W @ERs+, Rd	1				1	2
	MOV.W @aa:16, Rd	2				1	
	MOV.W @aa:24, Rd	3				1	
	MOV.W Rs, @ERd	1				1	
	MOV.W Rs, @(d:16, ERd)	2				1	
	MOV.W Rs, @(d:24, ERd)	4				1	
	MOV.W Rs, @–ERd	1				1	2
	MOV.W Rs, @aa:16	2				1	
	MOV.W Rs, @aa:24	3				1	
	MOV.L #xx:32, ERd	3					
	MOV.L ERs, ERd	1					
	MOV.L @ERs, ERd	2				2	
	MOV.L @(d:16, ERs), ERd	3				2	
	MOV.L @(d:24, ERs), ERd	5				2	
	MOV.L @ERs+, ERd	2				2	2
	MOV.L @aa:16, ERd	3				2	
	MOV.L @aa:24, ERd	4				2	
	MOV.L ERs, @ERd	2				2	
	MOV.L ERs, @(d:16, ERd)	3				2	
	MOV.L ERs, @(d:24, ERd)	5				2	
	MOV.L ERs, @–ERd	2				2	2
	MOV.L ERs, @aa:16	3				2	
	MOV.L ERs, @aa:24	4				2	

Table A-4 Number of Cycles per Instruction (cont)

Instruction	Mnemonic	Instruction Fetch I	Branch Addr. Read J	Stack Operation K	Byte Data Access L	Word Data Access M	Internal Operation N
MOVFPE	MOVFPE @aa:16, Rd*3	2			1*3		
MOVTPE	MOVTPE Rs, @aa:16*3	2			1*3		
MULXS	MULXS.B Rs, Rd	2					12
	MULXS.W Rs, ERd	2					20
MULXU	MULXU.B Rs, Rd	1					12
	MULXU.W Rs, ERd	1					20
NEG	NEG.B Rd	1					
	NEG.W Rd	1					
	NEG.L ERd	1					
NOP	NOP	1					
NOT	NOT.B Rd	1					
	NOT.W Rd	1					
	NOT.L ERd	1					
OR	OR.B #xx:8, Rd	1					
	OR.B Rs, Rd	1					
	OR.W #xx:16, Rd	2					
	OR.W Rs, Rd	1					
	OR.L #xx:32, ERd	3					
	OR.L ERs, ERd	2					
ORC	ORC #xx:8, CCR	1					
POP	POP.W Rn	1				1	2
	POP.L ERn	2				2	2
PUSH	PUSH.W Rn	1				1	2
	PUSH.L ERn	2				2	2
ROTL	ROTL.B Rd	1					
	ROTL.W Rd	1					
	ROTL.L ERd	1					
ROTR	ROTR.B Rd	1					
	ROTR.W Rd	1					
	ROTR.L ERd	1					
ROTXL	ROTXL.B Rd	1					
	ROTXL.W Rd	1					
	ROTXL.L ERd	1					
ROTXR	ROTXR.B Rd	1					
	ROTXR.W Rd	1					
	ROTXR.L ERd	1					
RTE	RTE	2		2			2

Table A-4 Number of Cycles per Instruction (cont)

Instruction	Mnemonic		Instruction Fetch I	Branch Addr. Read J	Stack Operation K	Byte Data Access L	Word Data Access M	Internal Operation N
RTS	RTS	Normal*1	2		1			2
		Advanced	2		2			2
SHAL	SHAL.B Rd		1					
	SHAL.W Rd		1					
	SHAL.L ERd		1					
SHAR	SHAR.B Rd		1					
	SHAR.W Rd		1					
	SHAR.L ERd		1					
SHLL	SHLL.B Rd		1					
	SHLL.W Rd		1					
	SHLL.L ERd		1					
SHLR	SHLR.B Rd		1					
	SHLR.W Rd		1					
	SHLR.L ERd		1					
SLEEP	SLEEP		1					
STC	STC CCR, Rd		1					
	STC CCR, @ERd		2				1	
	STC CCR, @(d:16, ERd)		3				1	
	STC CCR, @(d:24, ERd)		5				1	
	STC CCR, @–ERd		2				1	2
	STC CCR, @aa:16		3				1	
	STC CCR, @aa:24		4				1	
SUB	SUB.B Rs, Rd		1					
	SUB.W #xx:16, Rd		2					
	SUB.W Rs, Rd		1					
	SUB.L #xx:32, ERd		3					
	SUB.L ERs, ERd		1					
SUBS	SUBS #1/2/4, ERd		1					
SUBX	SUBX #xx:8, Rd		1					
	SUBX Rs, Rd		1					
TRAPA	TRAPA #x:2	Normal*1	2	1	2			4
		Advanced	2	2	2			4
XOR	XOR.B #xx:8, Rd		1					
	XOR.B Rs, Rd		1					
	XOR.W #xx:16, Rd		2					
	XOR.W Rs, Rd		1					
	XOR.L #xx:32, ERd		3					
	XOR.L ERs, ERd		2					
XORC	XORC #xx:8, CCR		1					

Notes: 1. Normal mode is not available in the H8/3001.
2. n is the value set in register R4L or R4. The source and destination are accessed n + 1 times each.
3. Not available in the H8/3001.

Appendix B Register Field

B.1 Register Addresses and Bit Names

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'1C											
H'1D											
H'1E											
H'1F											
H'20	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'21	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'22	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'23	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'24	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'25	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'26	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'27	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'28	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'29	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'2A	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'2B	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'2C	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'2D	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'2E	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'2F	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'30	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'31	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'32	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'33	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'34	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'35	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'36	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'37	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'38	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'39	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'3A	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'3B	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'3C	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'3D	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'3E	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'3F	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	

(Continued on next page)

(Continued from preceding page)

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'40	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'41	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'42	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'43	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'44	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'45	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'46	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'47	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'48	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'49	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'4A	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'4B	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'4C	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'4D	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'4E	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'4F	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'50	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'51	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'52	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'53	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'54	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'55	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'56	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'57	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'58	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'59	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'5A	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'5B	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'5C	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'5D	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'5E	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'5F	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	

(Continued on next page)

(Continued from preceding page)

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'60	TSTR	8	—	—	—	STR4	STR3	STR2	STR1	STR0	ITU (all channels)
H'61	TSNC	8	—	—	—	SYNC4	SYNC3	SYNC2	SYNC1	SYNC0	
H'62	TMDR	8		MDF	FDIR	PWM4	PWM3	PWM2	PWM1	PWM0	
H'63	TFCR	8	—	—	—	—	BFB4	BFA4	BFB3	BFA3	
H'64	TCR0	8	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	ITU channel 0
H'65	TIOR0	8	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
H'66	TIER0	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA	
H'67	TSR0	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA	
H'68	TCNT0H	16									
H'69	TCNT0L										
H'6A	GRA0H	16									
H'6B	GRA0L										
H'6C	GRB0H	16									
H'6D	GRB0L										
H'6E	TCR1	8	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	ITU channel 1
H'6F	TIOR1	8	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
H'70	TIER1	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA	
H'71	TSR1	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA	
H'72	TCNT1H	16									
H'73	TCNT1L										
H'74	GRA1H	16									
H'75	GRA1L										
H'76	GRB1H	16									
H'77	GRB1L										
H'78	TCR2	8	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	ITU channel 2
H'79	TIOR2	8	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
H'7A	TIER2	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA	
H'7B	TSR2	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA	
H'7C	TCNT2H	16									
H'7D	TCNT2L										
H'7E	GRA2H	16									
H'7F	GRA2L										
H'80	GRB2H	16									
H'81	GRB2L										

Legend
ITU: 16-bit integrated timer unit

(Continued on next page)

(Continued from preceding page)

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'82	TCR3	8	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	ITU channel 3
H'83	TIOR3	8	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
H'84	TIER3	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA	
H'85	TSR3	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA	
H'86	TCNT3H	16									
H'87	TCNT3L										
H'88	GRA3H	16									
H'89	GRA3L										
H'8A	GRB3H	16									
H'8B	GRB3L										
H'8C	BRA3H	16									
H'8D	BRA3L										
H'8E	BRB3H	16									
H'8F	BRB3L										
H'90	TOER	8	—	—	—	—	EB3	EB4	EA4	EA3	ITU (all channels)
H'91	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'92	TCR4	8	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	ITU channel 4
H'93	TIOR4	8	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	
H'94	TIER4	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA	
H'95	TSR4	8	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA	
H'96	TCNT4H	16									
H'97	TCNT4L										
H'98	GRA4H	16									
H'99	GRA4L										
H'9A	GRB4H	16									
H'9B	GRB4L										
H'9C	BRA4H	16									
H'9D	BRA4L										
H'9E	BRB4H	16									
H'9F	BRB4L										

Legend
ITU: 16-bit integrated timer unit

(Continued on next page)

(Continued from preceding page)

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'A0	TPMR	8	—	—	—	—	—	G2NOV	G1NOV	G0NOV	TPC
H'A1	TPCR	8	—	—	G2CMS1	G2CMS0	G1CMS1	G1CMS0	G0CMS1	G0CMS0	
H'A2	NDERB	8	—	—	—	—	NDER11	NDER10	NDER9	NDER8	
H'A3	NDERA	8	NDER7	NDER6	NDER5	NDER4	NDER3	NDER2	NDER1	NDER0	
H'A4	NDRB*	8	—	—	—	—	NDR11	NDR10	NDR9	NDR8	
		8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'A5	NDRA*	8	NDR7	NDR6	NDR5	NDR4	NDR3	NDR2	NDR1	NDR0	
		8	NDR7	NDR6	NDR5	NDR4	—	—	—	—	
H'A6	NDRB*	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		8	—	—	—	—	NDR11	NDR10	NDR9	NDR8	
H'A7	NDRA*	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
		8	—	—	—	—	NDR3	NDR2	NDR1	NDR0	
H'A8	TCSR	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'A9	TCNT	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'AA	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'AB	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'AC	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'AD	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'AE	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'AF	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'B0	SMR	8	C/$\overline{A}$	CHR	PE	O/$\overline{E}$	STOP	MP	CKS1	CKS0	SCI channel 0
H'B1	BRR	8									
H'B2	SCR	8	TIE	RIE	TE	RE	MPIE	TEIE	CKE1	CKE0	
H'B3	TDR	8									
H'B4	SSR	8	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	FER	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT	
H'B5	RDR	8									
H'B6	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'B7	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	

Note: * The address depends on the output trigger setting.

Legend
TPC: Programmable timing pattern controller
SCI: Serial communication interface

(Continued on next page)

(Continued from preceding page)

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'B8	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'B9	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'BA	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'BB	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'BC	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'BD	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'BE	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'BF	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C0	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C1	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C2	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C3	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C4	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C5	P4DDR	8	$P4_7$DDR	$P4_6$DDR	$P4_5$DDR	$P4_4$DDR	$P4_3$DDR	$P4_2$DDR	$P4_1$DDR	$P4_0$DDR	Port 4
H'C6	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C7	P4DR	8	$P4_7$	$P4_6$	$P4_5$	$P4_4$	$P4_3$	$P4_2$	$P4_1$	$P4_0$	Port 4
H'C8	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'C9	P6DDR	8	—	—	—	—	—	$P6_2$DDR	$P6_1$DDR	$P6_0$DDR	Port 6
H'CA	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'CB	P6DR	8	—	—	—	—	—	$P6_2$	$P6_1$	$P6_0$	Port 6
H'CC	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'CD	P8DDR	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	$P8_1$DDR	$P8_0$DDR	Port 8
H'CE	P7DR	8	—	—	—	—	$P7_3$	$P7_2$	$P7_1$	$P7_0$	Port 7
H'CF	P8DR	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	$P8_1$	$P8_0$	Port 8
H'D0	P9DDR	8	—	—	—	$P9_4$DDR	—	$P9_2$DDR	—	$P9_0$DDR	Port 9
H'D1	PADDR	8	PA_7DDR	PA_6DDR	PA_5DDR	PA_4DDR	PA_3DDR	PA_2DDR	PA_1DDR	PA_0DDR	Port A
H'D2	P9DR	8	—	—	—	$P9_4$	—	$P9_2$	—	$P9_0$	Port 9
H'D3	PADR	8	PA_7	PA_6	PA_5	PA_4	PA_3	PA_2	PA_1	PA_0	Port A
H'D4	PBDDR	8	—	—	—	—	PB_3DDR	PB_2DDR	PB_1DDR	PB_0DDR	Port B
H'D5	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'D6	PBDR	8	—	—	—	—	PB_3	PB_2	PB_1	PB_0	Port B
H'D7	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	

(Continued on next page)

(Continued from preceding page)

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'D8	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'D9	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'DA	P4PCR	8	$P4_7$PCR	$P4_6$PCR	$P4_5$PCR	$P4_4$PCR	$P4_3$PCR	$P4_2$PCR	$P4_1$PCR	$P4_0$PCR	Port 4
H'DB	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'DC	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'DD	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'DE	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'DF	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'E0	ADDRAH	8	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	A/D
H'E1	ADDRAL	8	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'E2	ADDRBH	8	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	
H'E3	ADDRBL	8	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'E4	ADDRCH	8	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	
H'E5	ADDRCL	8	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'E6	ADDRDH	8	AD9	AD8	AD7	AD6	AD5	AD4	AD3	AD2	
H'E7	ADDRDL	8	AD1	AD0	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'E8	ADCSR	8	ADF	ADIE	ADST	SCAN	CKS	CH2	CH1	CH0	
H'E9	ADCR	8	TRGE	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'EA	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'EB	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'EC	ABWCR	8	ABW7	ABW6	ABW5	ABW4	ABW3	ABW2	ABW1	ABW0	Bus controller
H'ED	ASTCR	8	AST7	AST6	AST5	AST4	AST3	AST2	AST1	AST0	
H'EE	WCR	8	—	—	—	—	WMS1	WMS0	WC1	WC0	
H'EF	WCER	8	WCE7	WCE6	WCE5	WCE4	WCE3	WCE2	WCE1	WCE0	

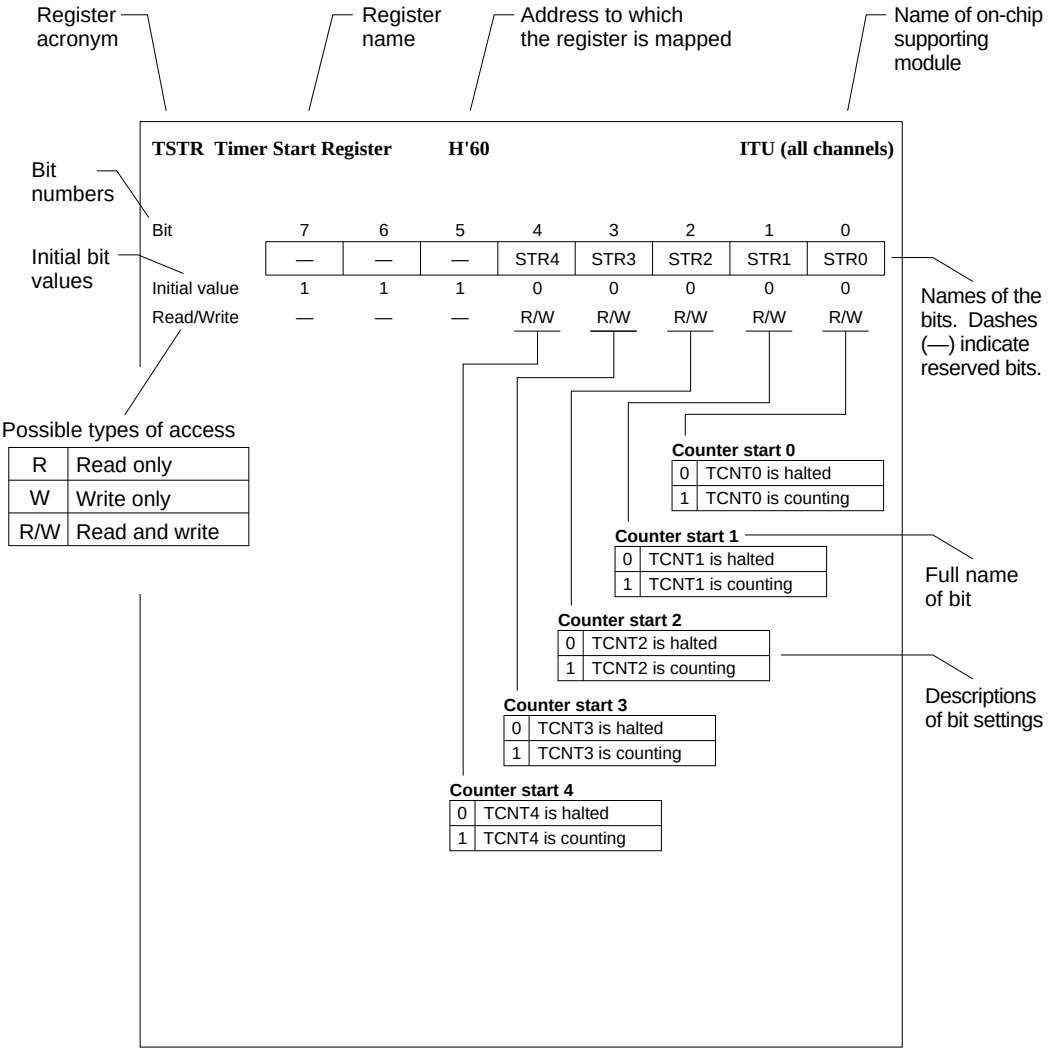
Legend
A/D: A/D converter

(Continued on next page)

(Continued from preceding page)

Address (low)	Register Name	Data Bus Width	Bit Names								Module Name
			Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
H'F0	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'F1	MDCR	8	—	—	—	—	—	MDS2	MDS1	MDS0	System control
H'F2	SYSCR	8	SSBY	STS2	STS1	STS0	UE	NMIEG	—	RAME	
H'F3	BRCR	8	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BRLE	Bus controller
H'F4	ISCR	8	—	—	—	IRQ4SC	—	—	IRQ1SC	IRQ0SC	Interrupt controller
H'F5	IER	8	—	—	—	IRQ4E	—	—	IRQ1E	IRQ0E	
H'F6	ISR	8	—	—	—	IRQ4F	—	—	IRQ1F	IRQ0F	
H'F7	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'F8	IPRA	8	IPRA7	IPRA6	—	IPRA4	—	IPRA2	IPRA1	IPRA0	Interrupt controller
H'F9	IPRB	8	IPRB7	IPRB6	—	—	IPRB3	—	IPRB1	—	
H'FA	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'FB	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'FC	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'FD	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'FE	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	
H'FF	—		—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	

B.2 Register Descriptions



TSTR—Timer Start Register **H'60** **ITU (all channels)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	STR4	STR3	STR2	STR1	STR0
Initial value	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Counter start 0

0	TCNT0 is halted
1	TCNT0 is counting

Counter start 1

0	TCNT1 is halted
1	TCNT1 is counting

Counter start 2

0	TCNT2 is halted
1	TCNT2 is counting

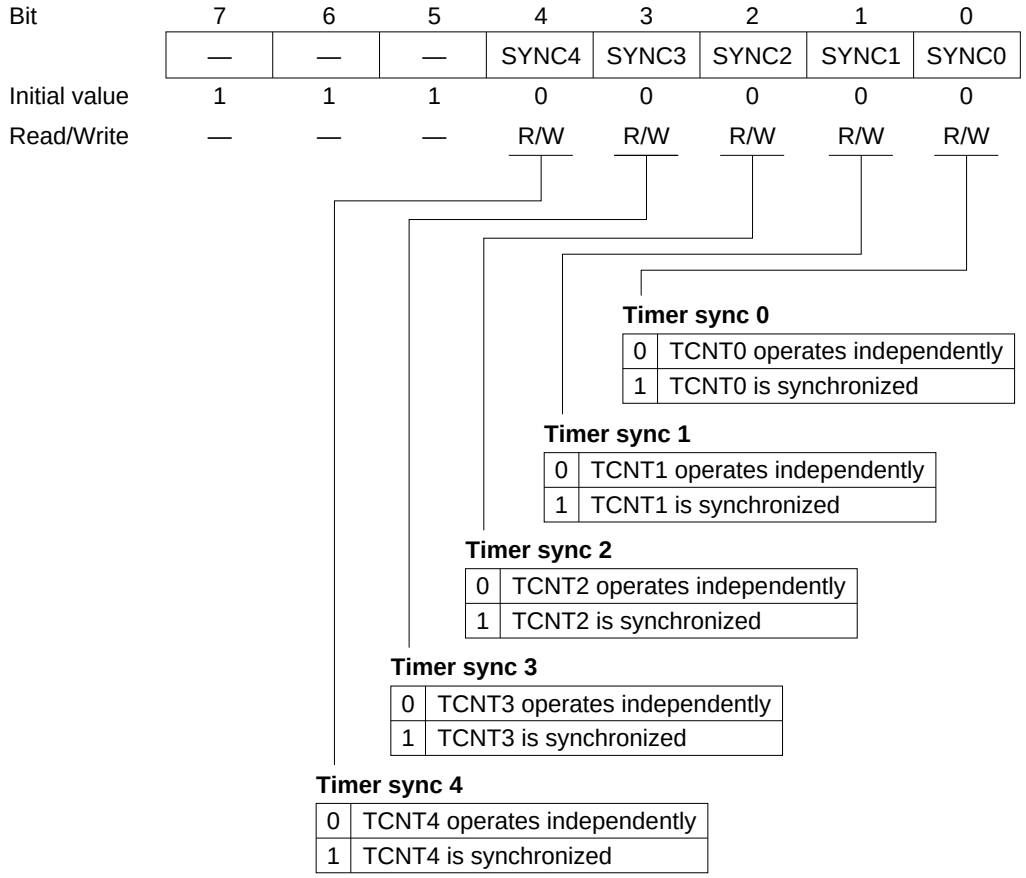
Counter start 3

0	TCNT3 is halted
1	TCNT3 is counting

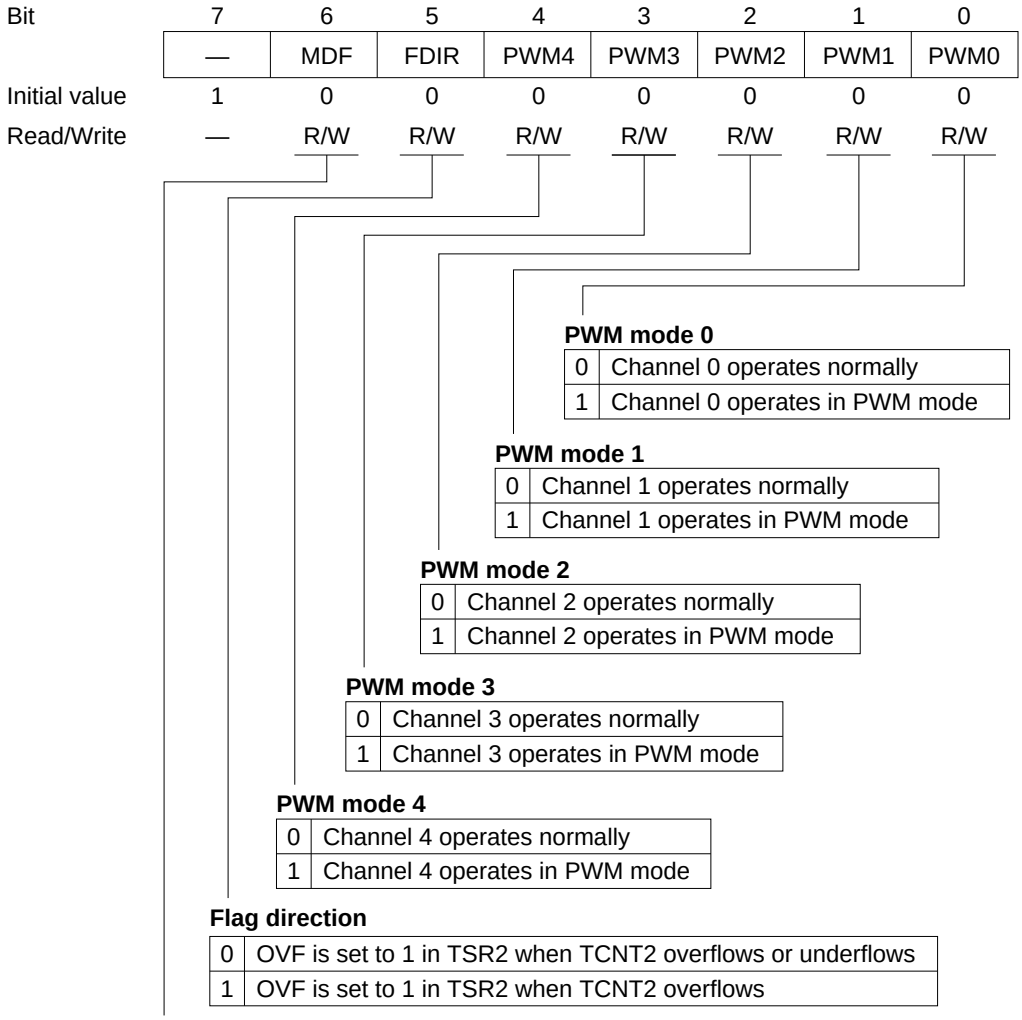
Counter start 4

0	TCNT4 is halted
1	TCNT4 is counting

TSNC—Timer Synchro Register **H'61** **ITU (all channels)**



TMDR—Timer Mode Register **H'62** **ITU (all channels)**



Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	MDF	FDIR	PWM4	PWM3	PWM2	PWM1	PWM0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

PWM mode 0

0	Channel 0 operates normally
1	Channel 0 operates in PWM mode

PWM mode 1

0	Channel 1 operates normally
1	Channel 1 operates in PWM mode

PWM mode 2

0	Channel 2 operates normally
1	Channel 2 operates in PWM mode

PWM mode 3

0	Channel 3 operates normally
1	Channel 3 operates in PWM mode

PWM mode 4

0	Channel 4 operates normally
1	Channel 4 operates in PWM mode

Flag direction

0	OVF is set to 1 in TSR2 when TCNT2 overflows or underflows
1	OVF is set to 1 in TSR2 when TCNT2 overflows

Phase counting mode flag

0	Channel 2 operates normally
1	Channel 2 operates in phase counting mode

TFCR—Timer Function Control Register **H'63** **ITU (all channels)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	BFB4	BFA4	BFB3	BFA3
Initial value	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Buffer mode A3

0	GRA3 operates normally
1	GRA3 is buffered by BRA3

Buffer mode B3

0	GRB3 operates normally
1	GRB3 is buffered by BRB3

Buffer mode A4

0	GRA4 operates normally
1	GRA4 is buffered by BRA4

Buffer mode B4

0	GRB4 operates normally
1	GRB4 is buffered by BRB4

TCR0—Timer Control Register 0 **H'64** **ITU0**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Timer prescaler 2 to 0

Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0	TCNT Clock Source
0	0	0	Internal clock: ø
		1	Internal clock: ø/2
	1	0	Internal clock: ø/4
		1	Internal clock: ø/8
1	0	0	External clock A: TCLKA input
		1	External clock B: TCLKB input
	1	0	External clock C: TCLKC input
		1	External clock D: TCLKD input

Clock edge 1 and 0

Bit 4	Bit 3	
CKEG1	CKEG0	Counted Edges of External Clock
0	0	Rising edges counted
	1	Falling edges counted
1	—	Both edges counted

Counter clear 1 and 0

Bit 6	Bit 5	
CCLR1	CCLR0	TCNT Clear Source
0	0	TCNT is not cleared
	1	TCNT is cleared by GRA compare match or input capture
1	0	TCNT is cleared by GRB compare match or input capture
	1	Synchronous clear: TCNT is cleared in synchronization with other synchronized timers

TIOR0—Timer I/O Control Register 0 **H'65** **ITU0**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

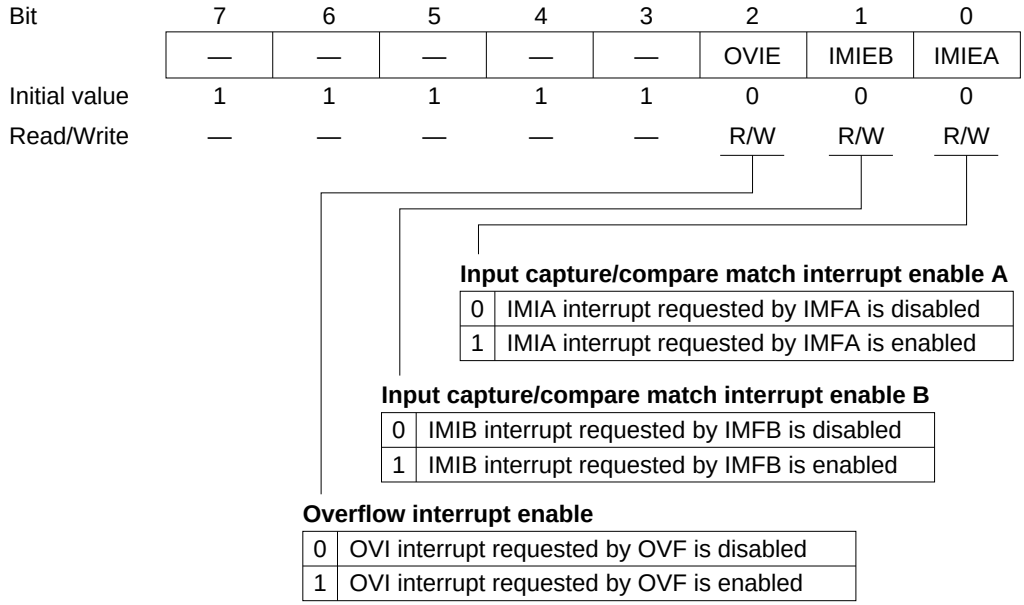
I/O control A2 to A0

Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0		
IOA2	IOA1	IOA0	GRA Function	
0	0	0	GRA is an output compare register	No output at compare match
		1		0 output at GRA compare match
	1	0		1 output at GRA compare match
		1		Output toggles at GRA compare match
1	0	0	GRA is an input capture register	GRA captures rising edge of input
		1		GRA captures falling edge of input
	1	0		GRA captures both edges of input
		1		

I/O control B2 to B0

Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4		
IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	GRB Function	
0	0	0	GRB is an output compare register	No output at compare match
		1		0 output at GRB compare match
	1	0		1 output at GRB compare match
		1		Output toggles at GRB compare match
1	0	0	GRB is an input capture register	GRB captures rising edge of input
		1		GRB captures falling edge of input
	1	0		GRB captures both edges of input
		1		

TIER—Timer Interrupt Enable Register **H'66** **ITU0**



TSR0—Timer Status Register 0 **H'67** **ITU0**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

Input capture/compare match flag A

0	[Clearing condition] Read IMFA when IMFA = 1, then write 0 in IMFA
1	[Setting conditions] TCNT = GRA when GRA functions as a compare match register. TCNT value is transferred to GRA by an input capture signal, when GRA functions as an input capture register.

Input capture/compare match flag B

0	[Clearing condition] Read IMFB when IMFB = 1, then write 0 in IMFB
1	[Setting conditions] TCNT = GRB when GRB functions as a compare match register. TCNT value is transferred to GRB by an input capture signal, when GRB functions as an input capture register.

Overflow flag

0	[Clearing condition] Read OVF when OVF = 1, then write 0 in OVF
1	[Setting condition] TCNT overflowed from H'FFFF to H'0000, or underflowed from H'0000 to H'FFFF

Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

TCNT0 H/L—Timer Counter 0 H/L **H'68, H'69** **ITU0**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Up-counter

GRA0 H/L—General Register A0 H/L **H'6A, H'6B** **ITU0**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Output compare or input capture register

GRB0 H/L—General Register B0 H/L **H'6C, H'6D** **ITU0**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Output compare or input capture register

TCR1—Timer Control Register 1 **H'6E** **ITU1**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TIOR1—Timer I/O Control Register 1 **H'6F** **ITU1**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TIER1—Timer Interrupt Enable Register 1 **H'70** **ITU1**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TSR1—Timer Status Register 1 **H'71** **ITU1**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

Notes: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.
* Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

TCNT1 H/L—Timer Counter 1 H/L **H'72, H'73** **ITU1**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

GRA1 H/L—General Register A1 H/L **H'74, H'75** **ITU1**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

GRB1 H/L—General Register B1 H/L **H'76, H'77** **ITU1**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TCR2—Timer Control Register 2 **H'78** **ITU2**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Notes: 1. Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.
2. When channel 2 is used in phase counting mode, the counter clock source selection by bits TPSC2 to TPSC0 is ignored.

TIOR2—Timer I/O Control Register 2 **H'79** **ITU2**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TIER2—Timer Interrupt Enable Register 2 **H'7A** **ITU2**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TSR2—Timer Status Register 2 **H'7B** **ITU2**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

Overflow flag

0	[Clearing condition] Read OVF when OVF = 1, then write 0 in OVF
1	[Setting condition] TCNT overflowed from H'FFFF to H'0000 or underflowed from H'0000 to H'FFFF

Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

TCNT2 H/L—Timer Counter 2 H/L **H'7C, H'7D** **ITU2**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Phase counting mode: up/down counter
Other modes: up-counter

GRA2 H/L—General Register A2 H/L **H'7E, H'7F** **ITU2**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

GRB2 H/L—General Register B2 H/L **H'80, H'81** **ITU2**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TCR3—Timer Control Register 3 **H'82** **ITU3**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TIOR3—Timer I/O Control Register 3 **H'83** **ITU3**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TIER3—Timer Interrupt Enable Register 3 **H'84** **ITU3**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TSR3—Timer Status Register 3 **H'85** **ITU3**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

Bit functions are the same as for ITU0

Overflow flag

0	[Clearing condition] Read OVF when OVF = 1, then write 0 in OVF
1	[Setting condition] TCNT overflowed from H'FFFF to H'0000 or underflowed from H'0000 to H'FFFF

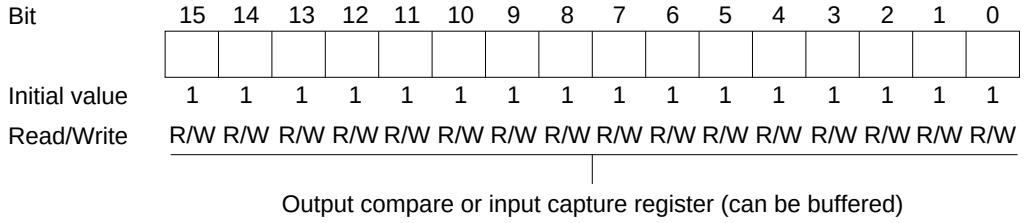
Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

TCNT3 H/L—Timer Counter 3 H/L **H'86, H'87** **ITU3**

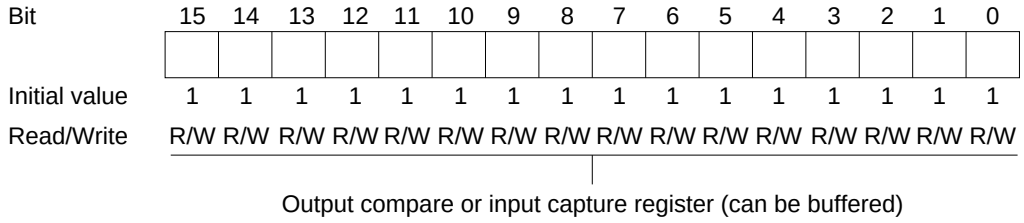
Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Complementary PWM mode: up/down counter
Other modes: up-counter

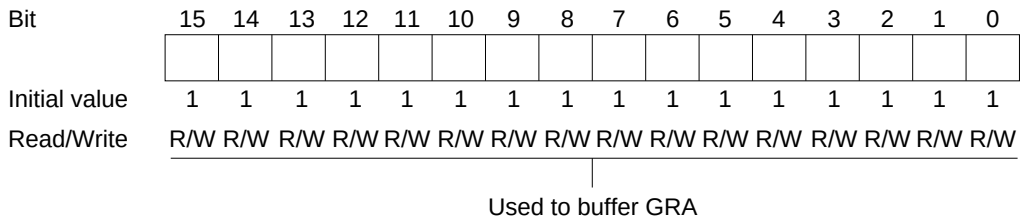
GRA3 H/L—General Register A3 H/L **H'88, H'89** **ITU3**



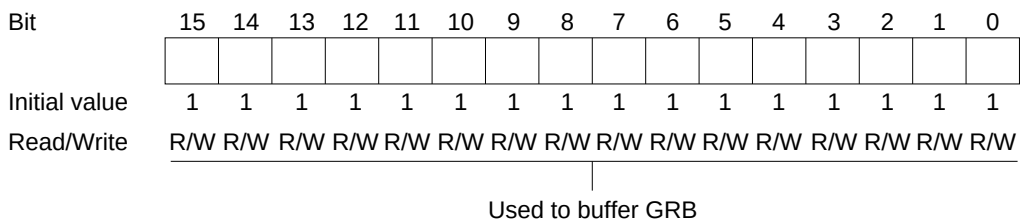
GRB3 H/L—General Register B3 H/L **H'8A, H'8B** **ITU3**



BRA3 H/L—Buffer Register A3 H/L **H'8C, H'8D** **ITU3**



BRB3 H/L—Buffer Register B3 H/L **H'8E, H'8F** **ITU3**



TOER—Timer Output Enable Register **H'90** **ITU (all channels)**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	EB3	EB4	EA4	EA3
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Master enable TIOCA3

0	$TIOCA_3$ output is disabled regardless of TIOR3, TMDR, and TFCR settings
1	$TIOCA_3$ is enabled for output according to TIOR3, TMDR, and TFCR settings

Master enable TIOCA4

0	$TIOCA_4$ output is disabled regardless of TIOR4, TMDR, and TFCR settings
1	$TIOCA_4$ is enabled for output according to TIOR4, TMDR, and TFCR settings

Master enable TIOCB4

0	$TIOCB_4$ output is disabled regardless of TIOR4 and TFCR settings
1	$TIOCB_4$ is enabled for output according to TIOR4 and TFCR settings

Master enable TIOCB3

0	$TIOCB_3$ output is disabled regardless of TIOR3 and TFCR settings
1	$TIOCB_3$ is enabled for output according to TIOR3 and TFCR settings

TCR4—Timer Control Register 4 **H'92** **ITU4**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	CCLR1	CCLR0	CKEG1	CKEG0	TPSC2	TPSC1	TPSC0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TIOR4—Timer I/O Control Register 4 **H'93** **ITU4**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	IOB2	IOB1	IOB0	—	IOA2	IOA1	IOA0
Initial value	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TIER4—Timer Interrupt Enable Register 4 **H'94** **ITU4**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVIE	IMIEB	IMIEA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.

TSR4—Timer Status Register 4 **H'95** **ITU4**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	OVF	IMFB	IMFA
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

Notes: Bit functions are the same as for ITU0.
* Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

TCNT4 H/L—Timer Counter 4 H/L **H'96, H'97** **ITU4**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU3.

GRA4 H/L—General Register A4 H/L **H'98, H'99** **ITU4**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU3.

GRB4 H/L—General Register B4 H/L **H'9A, H'9B** **ITU4**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU3.

BRA4 H/L—Buffer Register A4 H/L **H'9C, H'9D** **ITU4**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU3.

BRB4 H/L—Buffer Register B4 H/L **H'9E, H'9F** **ITU4**

Bit	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Note: Bit functions are the same as for ITU3.

TPMR—TPC Output Mode Register **H'A0** **TPC**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	G2NOV	G1NOV	G0NOV
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Group 0 non-overlap

0	Normal TPC output in group 0. Output values change at compare match A in the selected ITU channel.
1	Non-overlapping TPC output in group 0, controlled by compare match A and B in the selected ITU channel

Group 1 non-overlap

0	Normal TPC output in group 1. Output values change at compare match A in the selected ITU channel.
1	Non-overlapping TPC output in group 1, controlled by compare match A and B in the selected ITU channel

Group 2 non-overlap

0	Normal TPC output in group 2. Output values change at compare match A in the selected ITU channel.
1	Non-overlapping TPC output in group 2, controlled by compare match A and B in the selected ITU channel

TPCR—TPC Output Control Register **H'A1** **TPC**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	G3CMS1	G3CMS0	G2CMS1	G2CMS0	G1CMS1	G1CMS0	G0CMS1	G0CMS0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Group 0 compare match select 1 and 0

Bit 1	Bit 0	
G0CMS1	G0CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 0 (TP_3 to TP_0) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3

Group 1 compare match select 1 and 0

Bit 3	Bit 2	
G1CMS1	G1CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 1 (TP_7 to TP_4) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3

Group 2 compare match select 1 and 0

Bit 5	Bit 4	
G2CMS1	G2CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 2 (TP_{11} to TP_8) is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3

Group 3 compare match select 1 and 0

Bit 7	Bit 6	
G3CMS1	G3CMS0	Description
0	0	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 0
	1	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 1
1	0	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 2
	1	TPC output group 3 is triggered by compare match in ITU channel 3

NDERB—Next Data Enable Register B **H'A2** **TPC**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	NDER11	NDER10	NDER9	NDER8
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next data enable 11 to 8

Bits 3 to 0	
NDER11 to NDER8	Description
0	TPC outputs TP_{11} to TP_8 are disabled (NDR11 to NDR8 are not transferred to PB_3 to PB_0)
1	TPC outputs TP_{11} to TP_8 are enabled (NDR11 to NDR8 are transferred to PB_3 to PB_0)

NDERA—Next Data Enable Register A **H'A3** **TPC**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	NDER7	NDER6	NDER5	NDER4	NDER3	NDER2	NDER1	NDER0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next data enable 7 to 0

Bits 7 to 0	
NDER7 to NDER0	Description
0	TPC outputs TP_7 to TP_0 are disabled (NDR7 to NDR0 are not transferred to PA_7 to PA_0)
1	TPC outputs TP_7 to TP_0 are enabled (NDR7 to NDR0 are transferred to PA_7 to PA_0)

- Same output trigger for TPC output groups 2 and 3

Address H'FFA4

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	NDR11	NDR10	NDR9	NDR8
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next output data for TPC output group 2

Address H'FFA6

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

- Different output triggers for TPC output groups 2 and 3

Address H'FFA4

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Initial value	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—

Address H'FFA6

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	NDR11	NDR10	NDR9	NDR8
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next output data for TPC output group 2

NDRA—Next Data Register A **H'A5/H'A7** **TPC**

- Same output trigger for TPC output groups 0 and 1

Address H'FFA5

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	NDR7	NDR6	NDR5	NDR4	NDR3	NDR2	NDR1	NDR0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next output data for TPC output group 1

Next output data for TPC output group 0

Address H'FFA7

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—

- Different output triggers for TPC output groups 0 and 1

Address H'FFA5

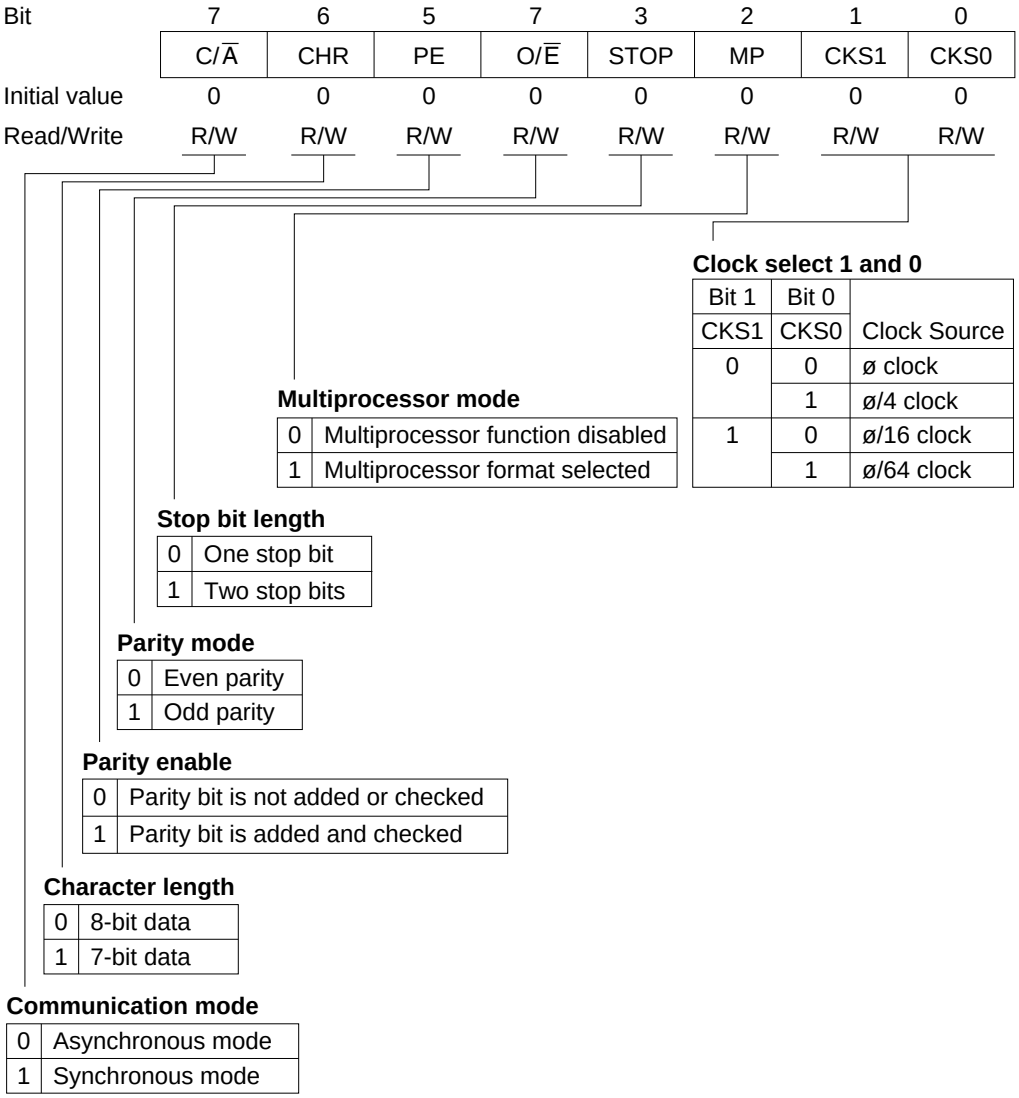
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	NDR7	NDR6	NDR5	NDR4	—	—	—	—
Initial value	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—

Next output data for TPC output group 1

Address H'FFA7

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	NDR3	NDR2	NDR1	NDR0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Next output data for TPC output group 0



Bit	7	6	5	7	3	2	1	0
	C/$\overline{A}$	CHR	PE	O/$\overline{E}$	STOP	MP	CKS1	CKS0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Clock select 1 and 0

Bit 1	Bit 0	
CKS1	CKS0	Clock Source
0	0	ø clock
	1	ø/4 clock
1	0	ø/16 clock
	1	ø/64 clock

Multiprocessor mode

0	Multiprocessor function disabled
1	Multiprocessor format selected

Stop bit length

0	One stop bit
1	Two stop bits

Parity mode

0	Even parity
1	Odd parity

Parity enable

0	Parity bit is not added or checked
1	Parity bit is added and checked

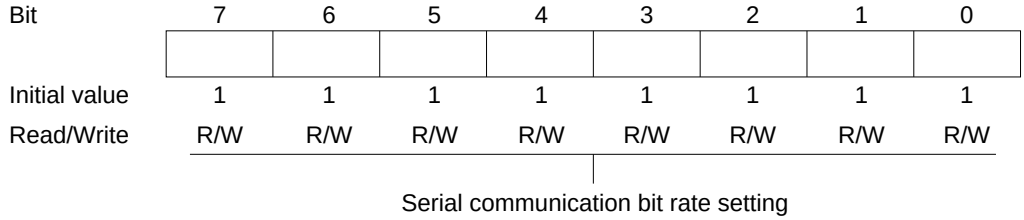
Character length

0	8-bit data
1	7-bit data

Communication mode

0	Asynchronous mode
1	Synchronous mode

BRR—Bit Rate Register **H'B1** **SCI**



Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	TIE	RIE	TE	RE	MPIE	TEIE	CKE1	CKE0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Clock enable 1 and 0

Bit 1	Bit 0		
CKE1	CKE0	Clock Selection and Output	
0	0	Asynchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin available for generic input/ output
		Synchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin used for serial clock output
	1	Asynchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin used for clock output
		Synchronous mode	Internal clock, SCK pin used for serial clock output
1	0	Asynchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for clock input
		Synchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for serial clock input
	1	Asynchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for clock input
		Synchronous mode	External clock, SCK pin used for serial clock input

Transmit-end interrupt enable

0	Transmit-end interrupt requests (TEI) are disabled
1	Transmit-end interrupt requests (TEI) are enabled

Multiprocessor interrupt enable

0	Multiprocessor interrupts are disabled (normal receive operation)
1	Multiprocessor interrupts are enabled

Receive enable

0	Transmitting is disabled
1	Transmitting is enabled

Transmit enable

0	Transmitting is disabled
1	Transmitting is enabled

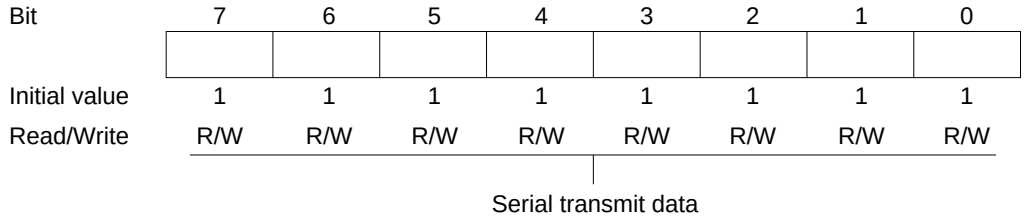
Receive interrupt enable

0	Receive-data-full (RXI) and receive-error (ERI) interrupt requests are disabled
1	Receive-data-full (RXI) and receive-error (ERI) interrupt requests are enabled

Transmit interrupt enable

0	Transmit-data-empty interrupt request (TXI) is disabled
1	Transmit-data-empty interrupt request (TXI) is enabled

TDR—Transmit Data Register **H'B3** **SCI**



Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	TDRE	RDRF	ORER	FER	PER	TEND	MPB	MPBT
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	1	0	0
Read/Write	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R/(W)*	R	R	R/W

Multiprocessor bit

0	Multiprocessor bit value in receive data is 0
1	Multiprocessor bit value in receive data is 1

Multiprocessor bit transfer

0	Multiprocessor bit value in transmit data is 0
1	Multiprocessor bit value in transmit data is 1

Transmit end

0	[Clearing conditions] Read TDRE when TDRE = 1, then write 0 in TDRE.
1	[Setting conditions] Reset or transition to standby mode. TE is cleared to 0 in SCR. TDRE is 1 when last bit of serial character is transmitted.

Parity error

0	[Clearing conditions] Reset or transition to standby mode. Read PER when PER = 1, then write 0 in PER.
1	[Setting condition] Parity error: (parity of receive data does not match parity setting of O/$\overline{E}$ in SMR)

Framing error

0	[Clearing conditions] Reset or transition to standby mode. Read FER when FER = 1, then write 0 in FER.
1	[Setting condition] Framing error (stop bit is 0)

Overrun error

0	[Clearing conditions] Reset or transition to standby mode. Read ORER when ORER = 1, then write 0 in ORER.
1	[Setting condition] Overrun error (reception of next serial data ends when RDRF = 1)

Receive data register full

0	[Clearing conditions] Reset or transition to standby mode. Read RDRF when RDRF = 1, then write 0 in RDRF.
1	[Setting condition] Serial data is received normally and transferred from RSR to RDR

Transmit data register empty

0	[Clearing conditions] Read TDRE when TDRE = 1, then write 0 in TDRE.
1	[Setting conditions] Reset or transition to standby mode. TE is 0 in SCR Data is transferred from TDR to TSR, enabling new data to be written in TDR.

Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

RDR—Receive Data Register **H'B5** **SCI**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

Serial receive data

P4DDR—Port 4 Data Direction Register **H'C5** **Port 4**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	$P4_7$DDR	$P4_6$DDR	$P4_5$DDR	$P4_4$DDR	$P4_3$DDR	$P4_2$DDR	$P4_1$DDR	$P4_0$DDR
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port 4 input/output select

0	Generic input pin
1	Generic output pin

P4DR—Port 4 Data Register **H'C7** **Port 4**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	$P4_7$	$P4_6$	$P4_5$	$P4_4$	$P4_3$	$P4_2$	$P4_1$	$P4_0$
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Data for port 4 pins

P6DDR—Port 6 Data Direction Register **H'C9** **Port 6**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	$P6_2DDR$	$P6_1DDR$	$P6_0DDR$
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port 6 input/output select

0	Generic input
1	Generic output

P6DR—Port 6 Data Register **H'CB** **Port 6**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	$P6_2$	$P6_1$	$P6_0$
Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Data for port 6 pins

P8DDR—Port 8 Data Direction Register **H'CD** **Port 8**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	$P8_1DDR$	$P8_0DDR$
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	W	W	W	W	W

Port 8_1 input/output select

0	Generic input
1	—

Port 8_0 input/output selec

0	Generic input
1	Generic output

P7DR—Port 7 Data Register **H'CE** **Port 7**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	$P7_3$	$P7_2$	$P7_1$	$P7_0$
Initial value	1*	1*	1*	1*	—*	—*	—*	—*
Read/Write	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

Data for port 7 pins

Note: * Determined by pins $P7_3$ to $P7_0$.

P8DR—Port 8 Data Register **H'CF** **Port 8**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	$P8_1$	$P8_0$
Initial value	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Data for port 8 pins

P9DDR—Port 9 Data Direction Register **H'D0** **Port 9**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	$P9_4$DDR	—	$P9_2$DDR	—	$P9_0$DDR
Initial value	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port 9 input/output select

0	Generic input
1	Generic output

PADDR—Port A Data Direction Register **H'D1** **Port A**

Bit		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		PA_7DDR	PA_6DDR	PA_5DDR	PA_4DDR	PA_3DDR	PA_2DDR	PA_1DDR	PA_0DDR
Modes 1, 2	Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W
Modes 3, 4	Initial value	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Read/Write	—	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port A input/output select

0	Generic input
1	Generic output

P9DR—Port 9 Data Register **H'D2** **Port 9**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	$P9_4$	—	$P9_2$	—	$P9_0$
Initial value	1	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Data for port 9 pins

PADR—Port A Data Register **H'D3** **Port A**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	PA_7	PA_6	PA_5	PA_4	PA_3	PA_2	PA_1	PA_0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Data for port A pins

PBDDR—Port B Data Direction Register **H'D4** **Port B**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	PB_3DDR	PB_2DDR	PB_1DDR	PB_0DDR
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	W	W	W	W	W	W	W	W

Port B input/output select

0	Generic input
1	Generic output

PBDR—Port B Data Register **H'D6** **Port B**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	PB_3	PB_2	PB_1	PB_0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Data for port B pins

P4PCR—Port 4 Input Pull-Up Control Register **H'DA** **Port 4**

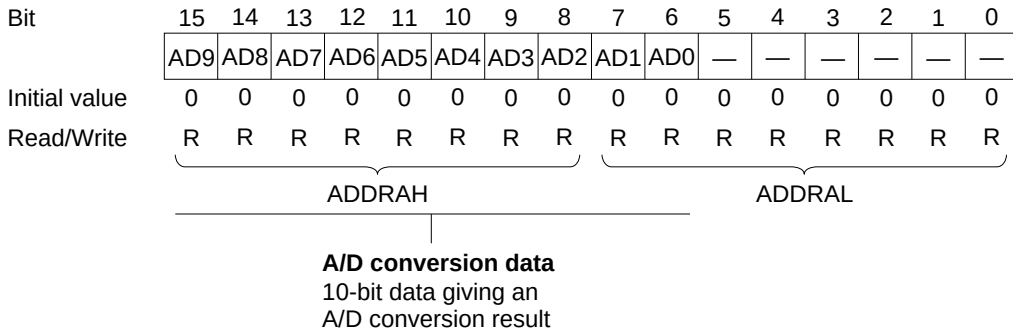
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	$P4_7PCR$	$P4_6PCR$	$P4_5PCR$	$P4_4PCR$	$P4_3PCR$	$P4_2PCR$	$P4_1PCR$	$P4_0PCR$
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Port 4 input pull-up control 7 to 0

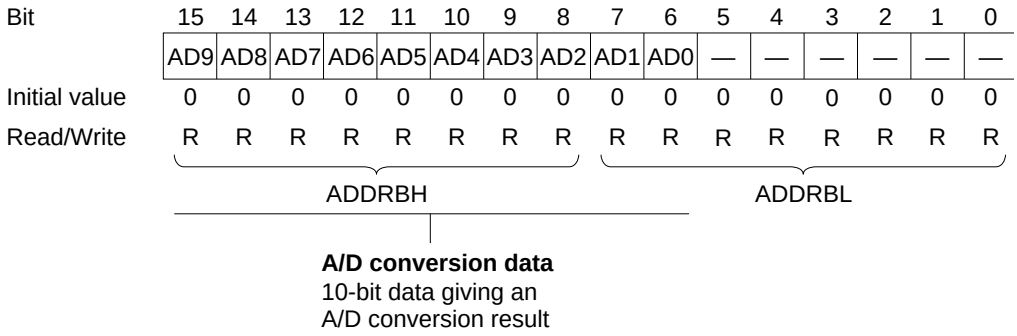
0	Input pull-up transistor is off
1	Input pull-up transistor is on

Note: Valid when the corresponding P4DDR bit is cleared to 0 (designating generic input).

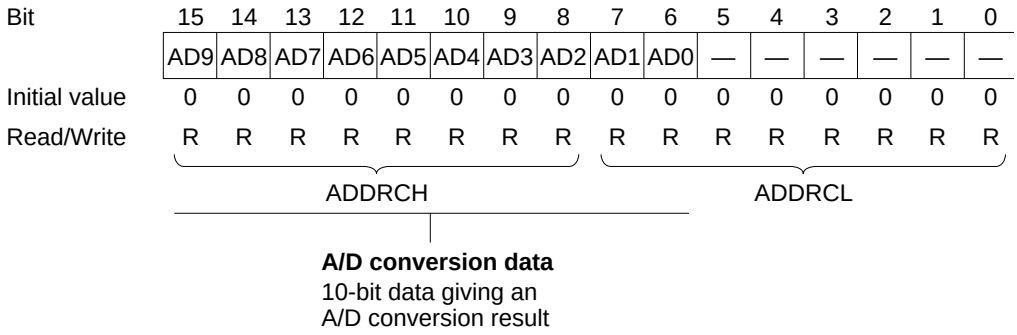
ADDRA H/L—A/D Data Register A H/L **H'E0, H'E1** **A/D**



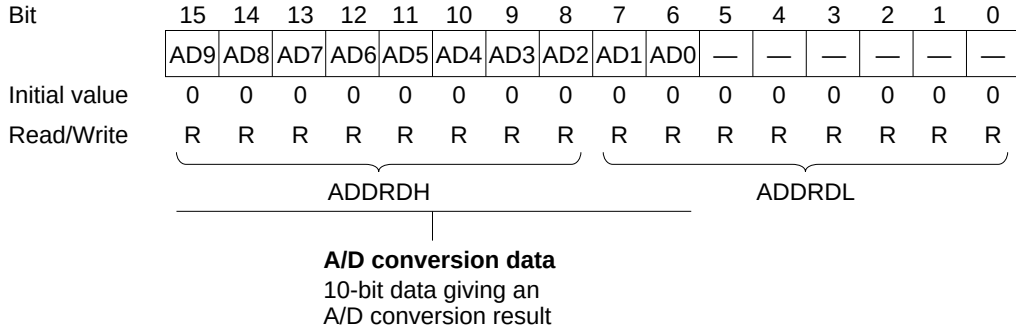
ADDRB H/L—A/D Data Register B H/L **H'E2, H'E3** **A/D**



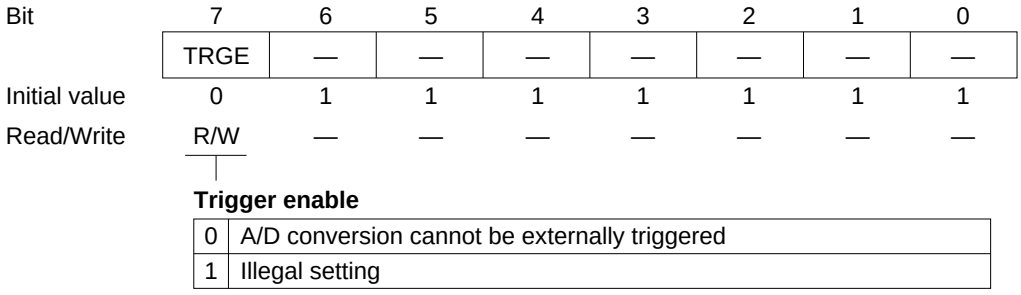
ADDRC H/L—A/D Data Register C H/L **H'E4, H'E5** **A/D**



ADDRD H/L—A/D Data Register D H/L **H'E6, H'E7** **A/D**



ADCR—A/D Control Register **H'E9** **A/D**



Trigger enable

0	A/D conversion cannot be externally triggered
1	Illegal setting

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	ADF	ADIE	ADST	SCAN	CKS	CH2	CH1	CH0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/(W)*	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Clock select

0	Conversion time = 266 states (maximum)
1	Conversion time = 134 states (maximum)

Channel select 2 to 0

Group Selection	Channel Selection		Description	
CH2	CH1	CH0	Single Mode	Scan Mode
0	0	0	AN_0	AN_0
		1	AN_1	AN_0, AN_1
	1	0	AN_2	AN_0 to AN_2
		1	AN_3	AN_0 to AN_3
1	—	—	Illegal setting	

Scan mode

0	Single mode
1	Scan mode

A/D start

0	A/D conversion is stopped
1	Single mode: A/D conversion starts; ADST is automatically cleared to 0 when conversion ends Scan mode: A/D conversion starts and continues, cycling among the selected channels, until ADST is cleared to 0 by software, by a reset, or by a transition to standby mode

A/D interrupt enable

0	A/D end interrupt request is disabled
1	A/D end interrupt request is enabled

A/D end flag

0	[Clearing condition] Read ADF while ADF = 1, then write 0 in ADF
1	[Setting conditions] Single mode: A/D conversion ends Scan mode: A/D conversion ends in all selected channels

Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear flag.

ABWCR—Bus Width Control Register **H'EC** **Bus controller**

Bit		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
		ABW7	ABW6	ABW5	ABW4	ABW3	ABW2	ABW1	ABW0
Initial value	Mode 1, 3	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	Mode 2, 4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write		R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Area 7 to 0 bus width control

Bits 7 to 0	
ABW7 to ABW0	Bus Width of Access Area
0	Areas 7 to 0 are 16-bit access areas
1	Areas 7 to 0 are 8-bit access areas

ASTCR—Access State Control Register **H'ED** **Bus controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	AST7	AST6	AST5	AST4	AST3	AST2	AST1	AST0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Area 7 to 0 access state control

Bits 7 to 0	
AST7 to AST0	Number of States in Access Cycle
0	Areas 7 to 0 are two-state access areas
1	Areas 7 to 0 are three-state access areas

WCR—Wait Control Register **H'EE** **Bus controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	WMS1	WMS0	WC1	WC0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	0	0	1	1
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Wait mode select 1 and 0

Bit 3	Bit 2	
WMS1	WMS0	Wait Mode
0	0	Programmable wait mode
	1	No wait states inserted by wait-state controller
1	0	Pin wait mode 1
	1	Pin auto-wait mode

Wait count 1 and 0

Bit 1	Bit 0	
WC1	WC0	Number of Wait States
0	0	No wait states inserted by wait-state controller
	1	1 state inserted
1	0	2 states inserted
	1	3 states inserted

WCER—Wait Controller Enable Register **H'EF** **Bus controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	WCE7	WCE6	WCE5	WCE4	WCE3	WCE2	WCE1	WCE0
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Wait state controller enable 7 to 0

0	Wait-state control is disabled (pin wait mode 0)
1	Wait-state control is enabled

MDCR—Mode Control Register **H'F1** **System control**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	MDS2	MDS1	MDS0
Initial value	1	1	0	0	0	—*	—*	—*
Read/Write	—	—	—	—	—	R	R	R

Mode select 2 to 0

Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	
MD_2	MD_1	MD_0	Operating mode
0	0	0	—
		1	Mode 1
	1	0	Mode 2
		1	Mode 3
1	0	0	Mode 4
		1	—
	1	0	—
		1	—

Note: * Determined by the state of the mode pins (MD_2 to MD_0).

SYSCR—System Control Register **H'F2** **System control**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	SSBY	STS2	STS1	STS0	UE	NMIEG	—	RAME
Initial value	0	0	0	0	1	0	1	1
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	R/W

RAM enable

0	On-chip RAM is disabled
1	On-chip RAM is enabled

NMI edge select

0	An interrupt is requested at the falling edge of NMI
1	An interrupt is requested at the rising edge of NMI

User bit enable

0	CCR bit 6 (UI) is used as an interrupt mask bit
1	CCR bit 6 (UI) is used as a user bit

Standby timer select 2 to 0

Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	
STS2	STS1	STS0	Standby Timer
0	0	0	Waiting time = 8192 states
		1	Waiting time = 16384 states
	1	0	Waiting time = 32768 states
		1	Waiting time = 65536 states
1	0	—	Waiting time = 131072 states
	1	—	Illegal setting

Software standby

0	SLEEP instruction causes transition to sleep mode
1	SLEEP instruction causes transition to software standby mode

BRCR—Bus Release Control Register **H'F3** **Bus controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	BRLE
Initial value	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0
Read/Write (Modes 1, 2)	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	R/W
Read/Write (Modes 3, 4)	R/W	R/W	R/W	—	—	—	—	R/W

Bus release enable

0	The bus cannot be released to an external device
1	The bus can be released to an external device

ISCR—IRQ Sense Control Register **H'F4** **Interrupt controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	IRQ4SC	—	—	IRQ1SC	IRQ0SC
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 sense control

0	Interrupts are requested when IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 inputs are low
1	Interrupts are requested by falling-edge input at IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0

IER—IRQ Enable Register **H'F5 Interrupt controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	IRQ4E	—	—	IRQ1E	IRQ0E
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/(W)	R/(W)	R/(W)	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 enable

0	IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 interrupts are disabled
1	IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 interrupts are enabled

ISR—IRQ Status Register **H'F6 Interrupt controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	—	—	—	IRQ4F	—	—	IRQ1F	IRQ0F
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	—	—	—	R/(W)*	—	—	R/(W)*	R/(W)*

IRQ_4, IRQ_1, IRQ_0 flags

Bit n IRQnF	Setting and Clearing Conditions
0	[Clearing conditions] Read IRQnF when IRQnF = 1, then write 0 in IRQnF. IRQnSC = 0, $\overline{IRQn}$ input is high, and interrupt exception handling is carried out. IRQnSC = 1 and IRQn interrupt exception handling is carried out.
1	[Setting conditions] IRQnSC = 0 and $\overline{IRQn}$ input is low. IRQnSC = 1 and $\overline{IRQn}$ input changes from high to low.

(n = 4, 1, 0)

Note: * Only 0 can be written, to clear the flag.

IPRA—Interrupt Priority Register A **H'F8 Interrupt controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	IPRA7	IPRA6	—	IPRA4	—	IPRA2	IPRA1	IPRA0
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Priority level A7, A6, A4, A2, A1, A0

0	Priority level 0 (low priority)
1	Priority level 1 (high priority)

- Interrupt sources controlled by each bit

	Bit 7 IPRA7	Bit 6 IPRA6	Bit 5 —	Bit 4 IPRA4	Bit 3 —	Bit 2 IPRA2	Bit 1 IPRA1	Bit 0 IPRA0
Interrupt source	IRQ_0	IRQ_1	—	IRQ_4	—	ITU channel 0	ITU channel 1	ITU channel 2

IPRB—Interrupt Priority Register B **H'F9 Interrupt controller**

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	IPRB7	IPRB6	—	—	IPRB3	—	IPRB1	—
Initial value	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Read/Write	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W	R/W

Priority level B7, B6, B3, B1

0	Priority level 0 (low priority)
1	Priority level 1 (high priority)

- Interrupt sources controlled by each bit

	Bit 7 IPRB7	Bit 6 IPRB6	Bit 5 —	Bit 4 —	Bit 3 IPRB3	Bit 2 —	Bit 1 IPRB1	Bit 0 —
Interrupt source	ITU channel 3	ITU channel 4	—	—	SCI	—	A/D converter	—

Appendix C I/O Port Block Diagrams

C.1 Port 4 Block Diagram

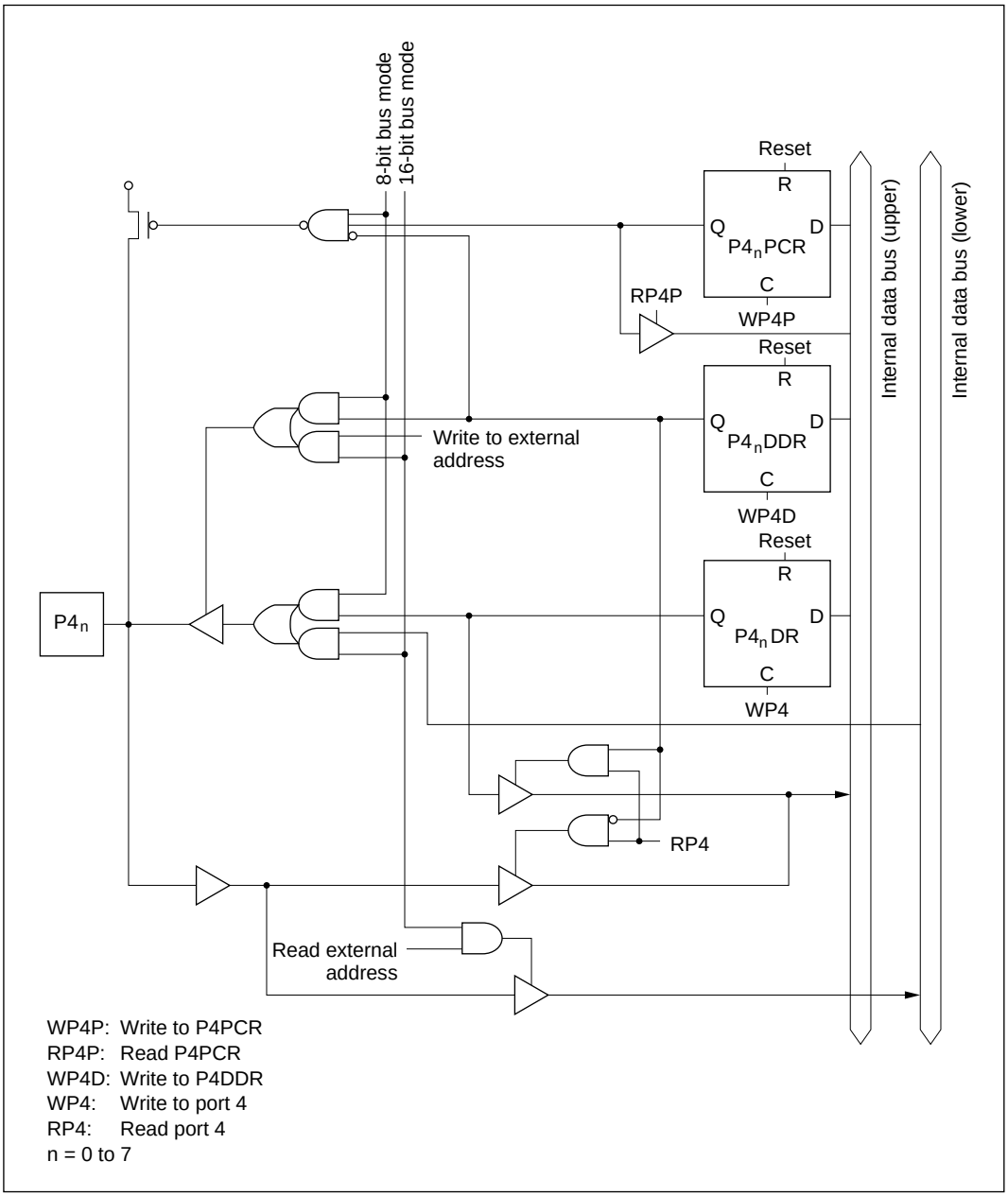


Figure C-1 Port 4 Block Diagram

C.2 Port 6 Block Diagrams

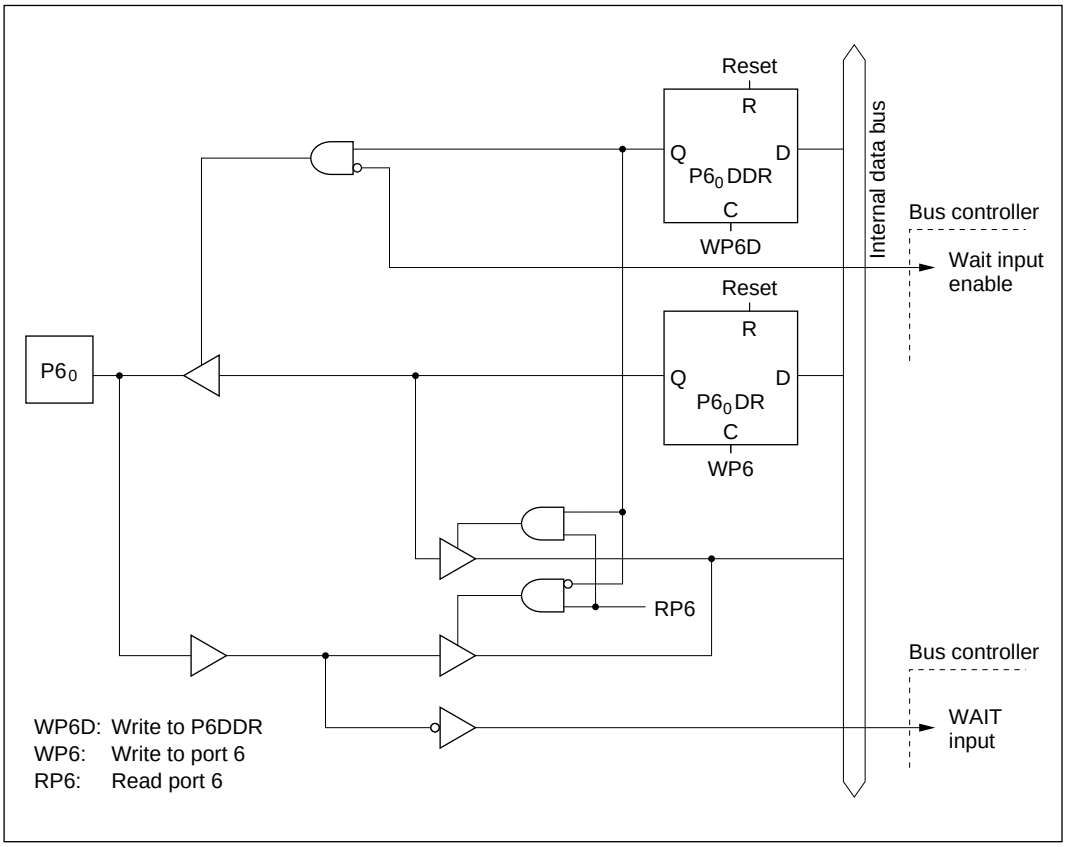


Figure C-2 (a) Port 6 Block Diagram (Pin P6$_0$)

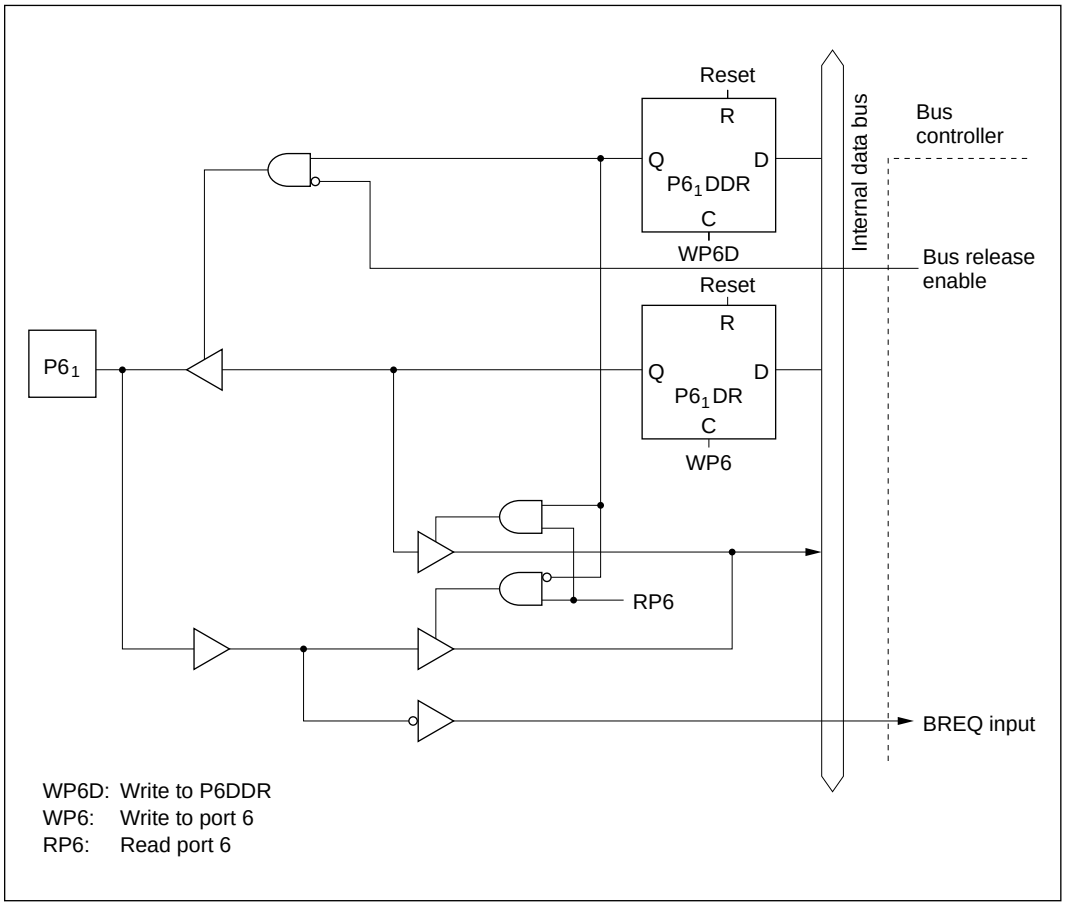


Figure C-2 (b) Port 6 Block Diagram (Pin $P6_1$)

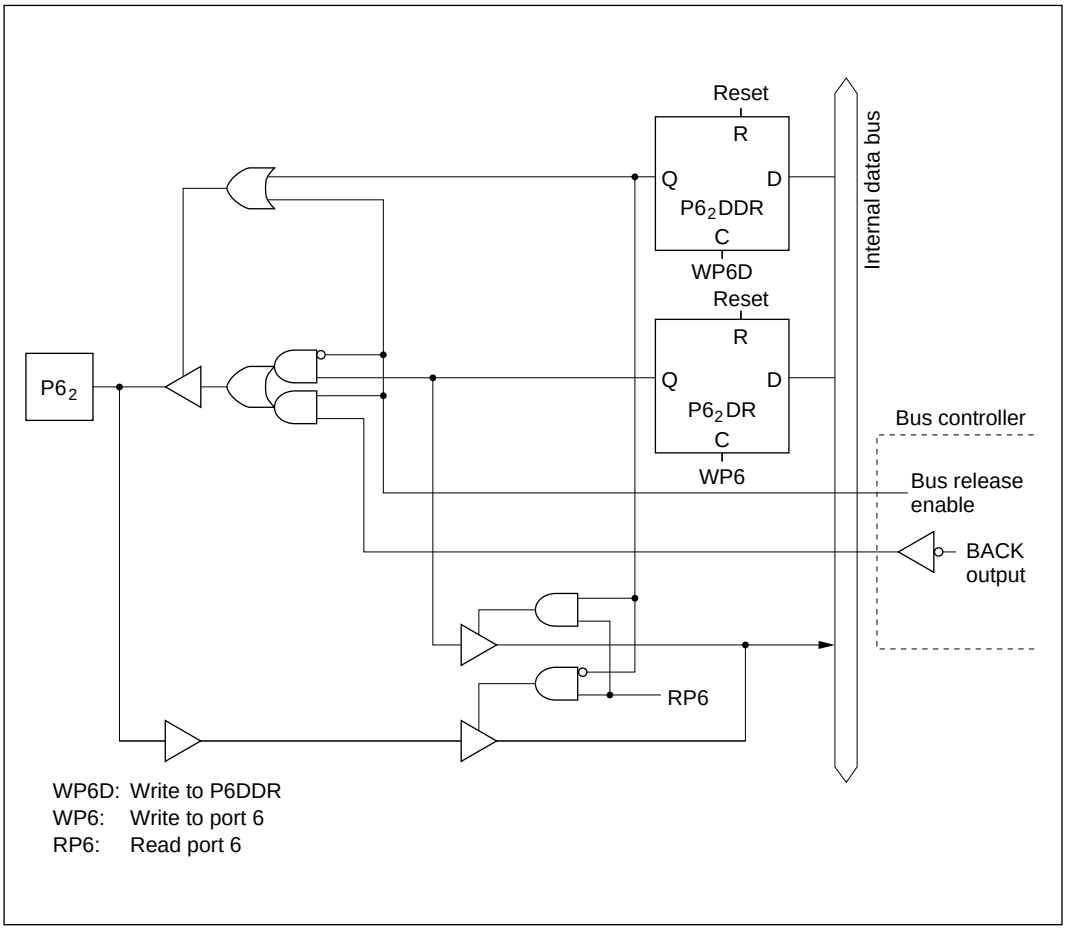


Figure C-2 (c) Port 6 Block Diagram (Pin P6$_2$)

C.3 Port 7 Block Diagram

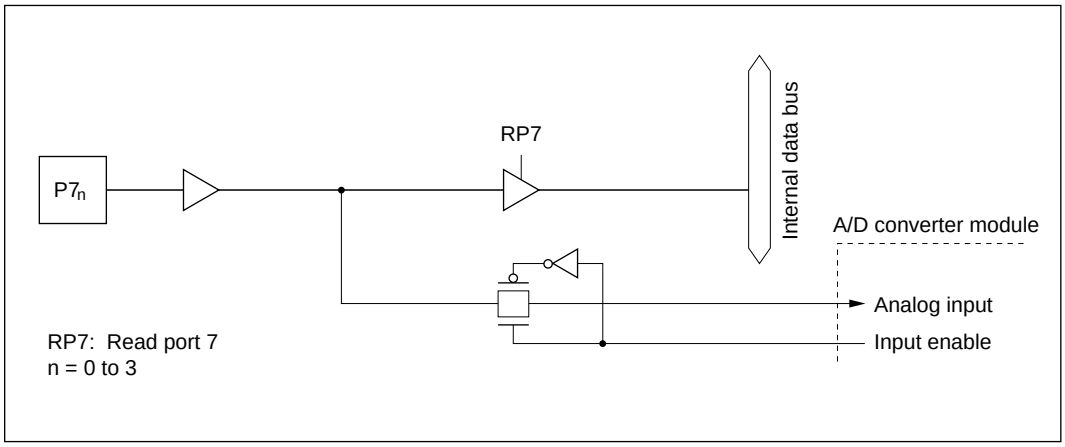


Figure C-3 Port 7 Block Diagram (Pin $P7_n$)

C.4 Port 8 Block Diagrams

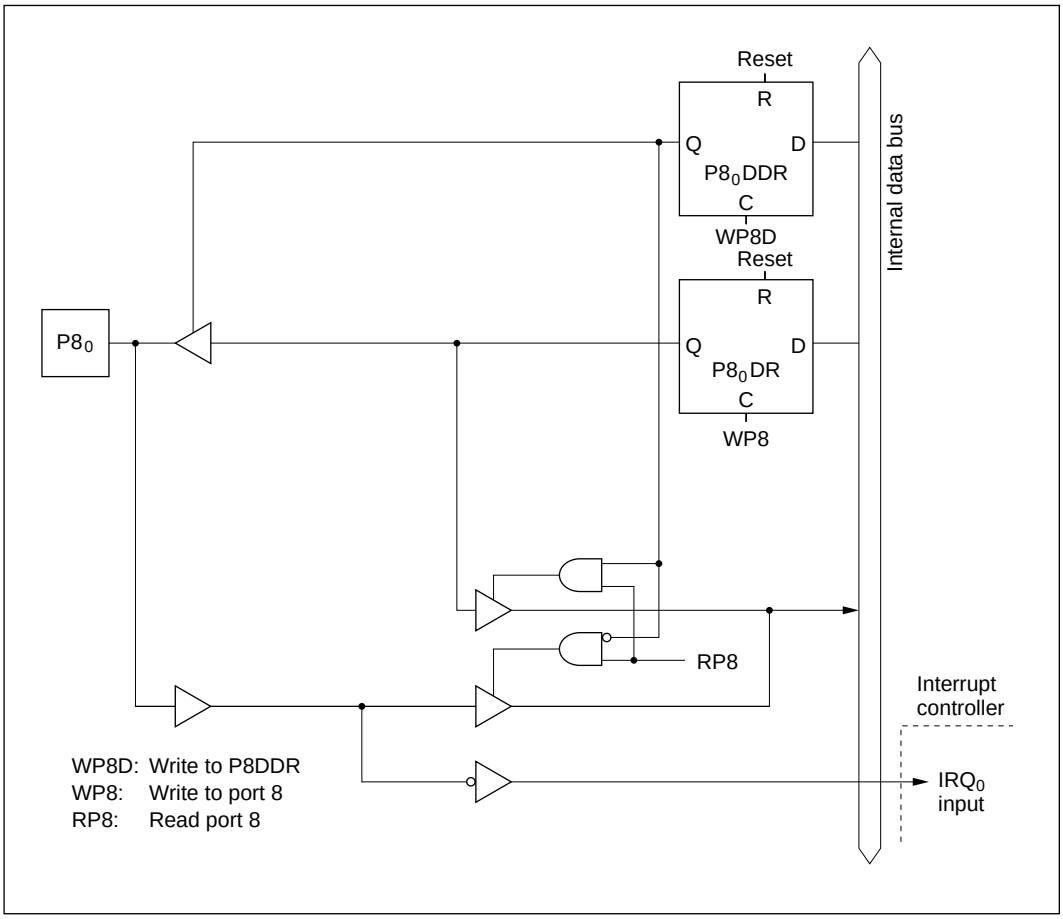


Figure C-4 (a) Port 8 Block Diagram (Pin P8$_0$)

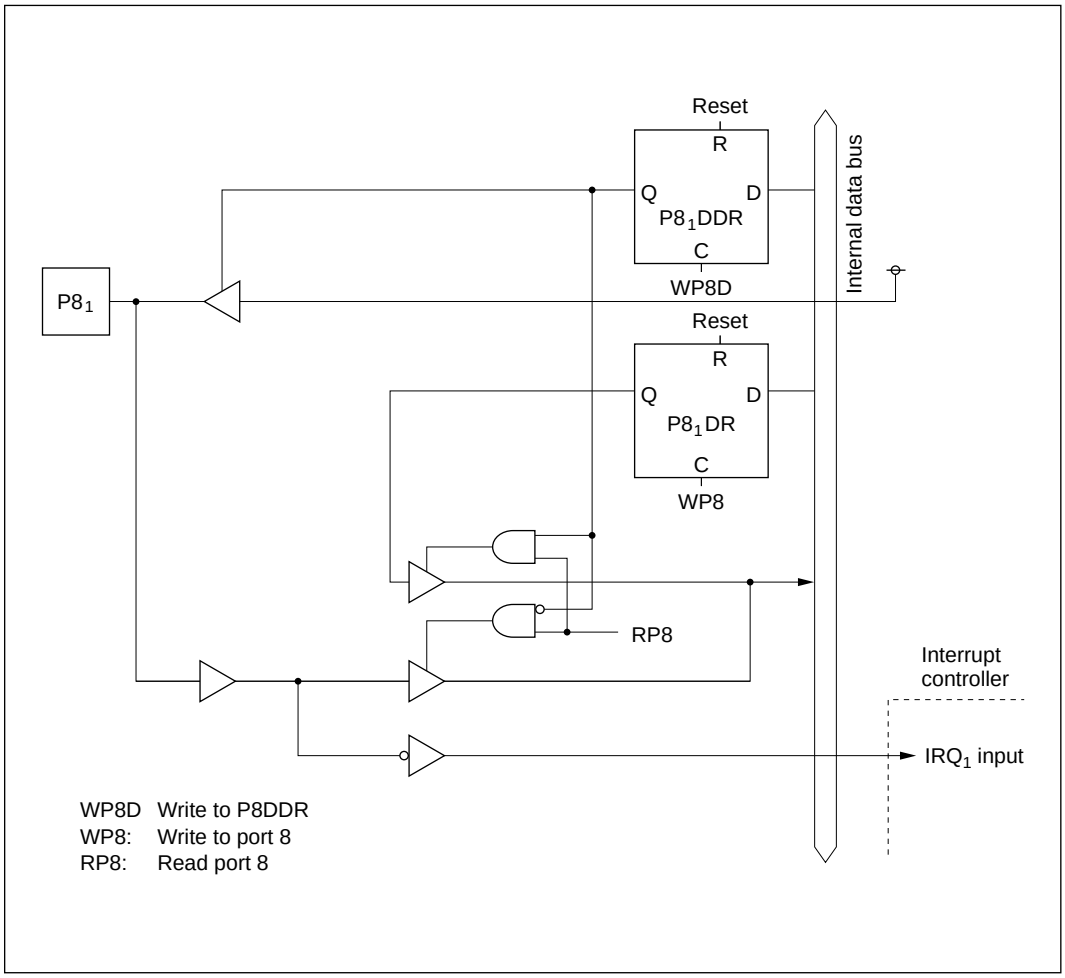


Figure C-4 (b) Port 8 Block Diagram (Pin P8$_1$)

C.5 Port 9 Block Diagrams

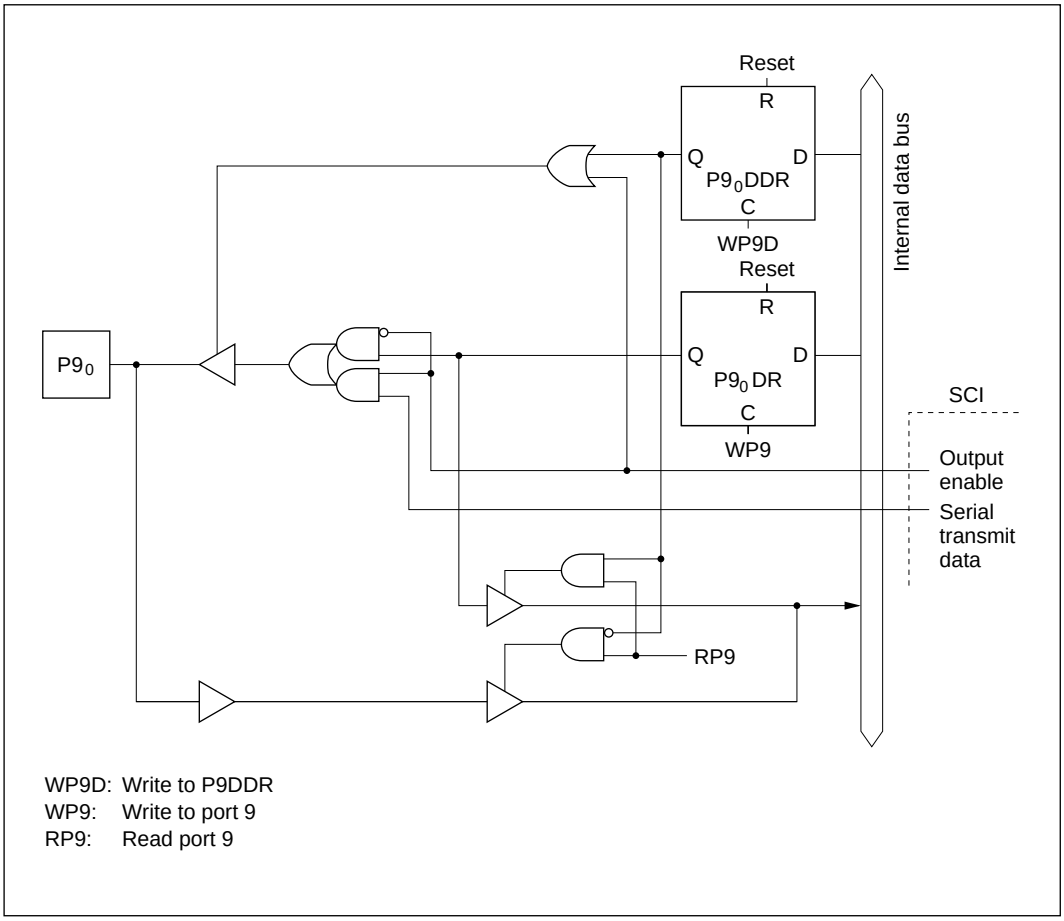


Figure C-5 (a) Port 9 Block Diagram (Pin P9$_0$)

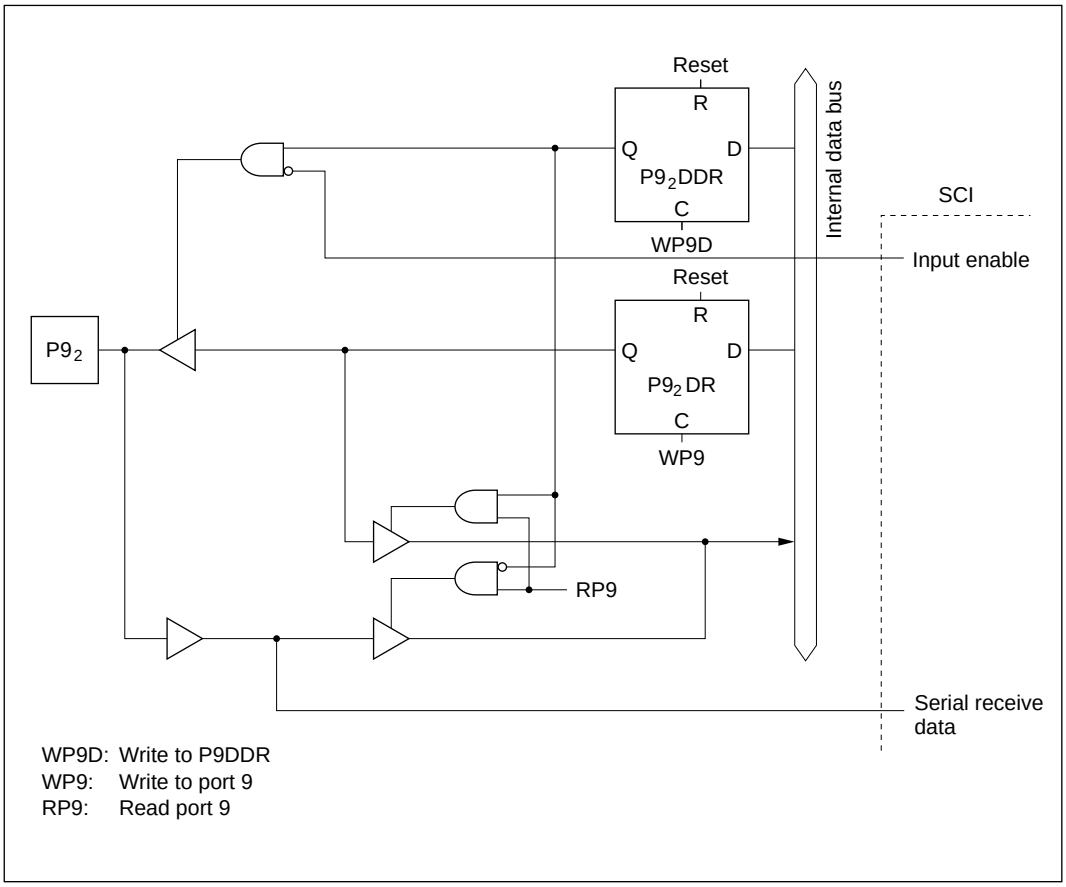


Figure C-5 (b) Port 9 Block Diagram (Pin P9$_2$)

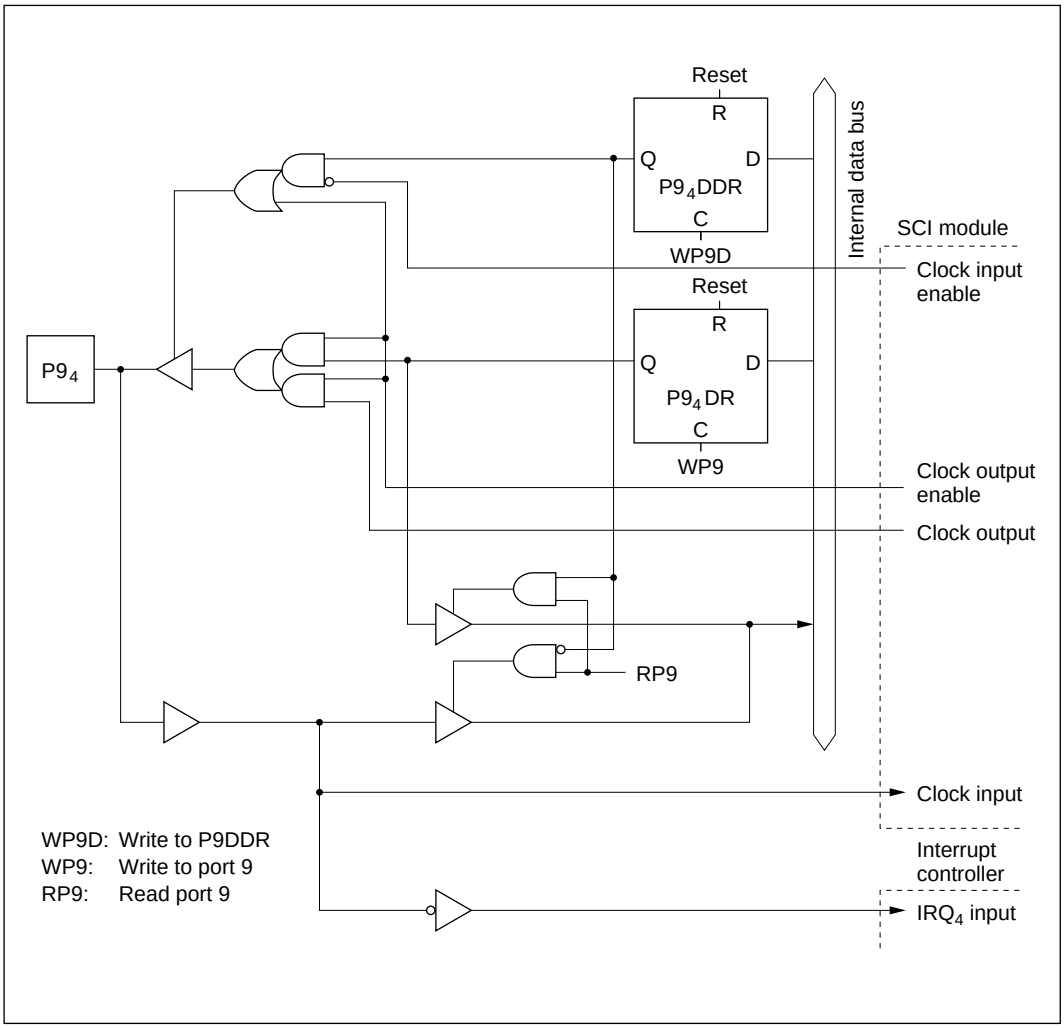


Figure C-5 (c) Port 9 Block Diagram (Pins P9$_4$)

C.6 Port A Block Diagrams

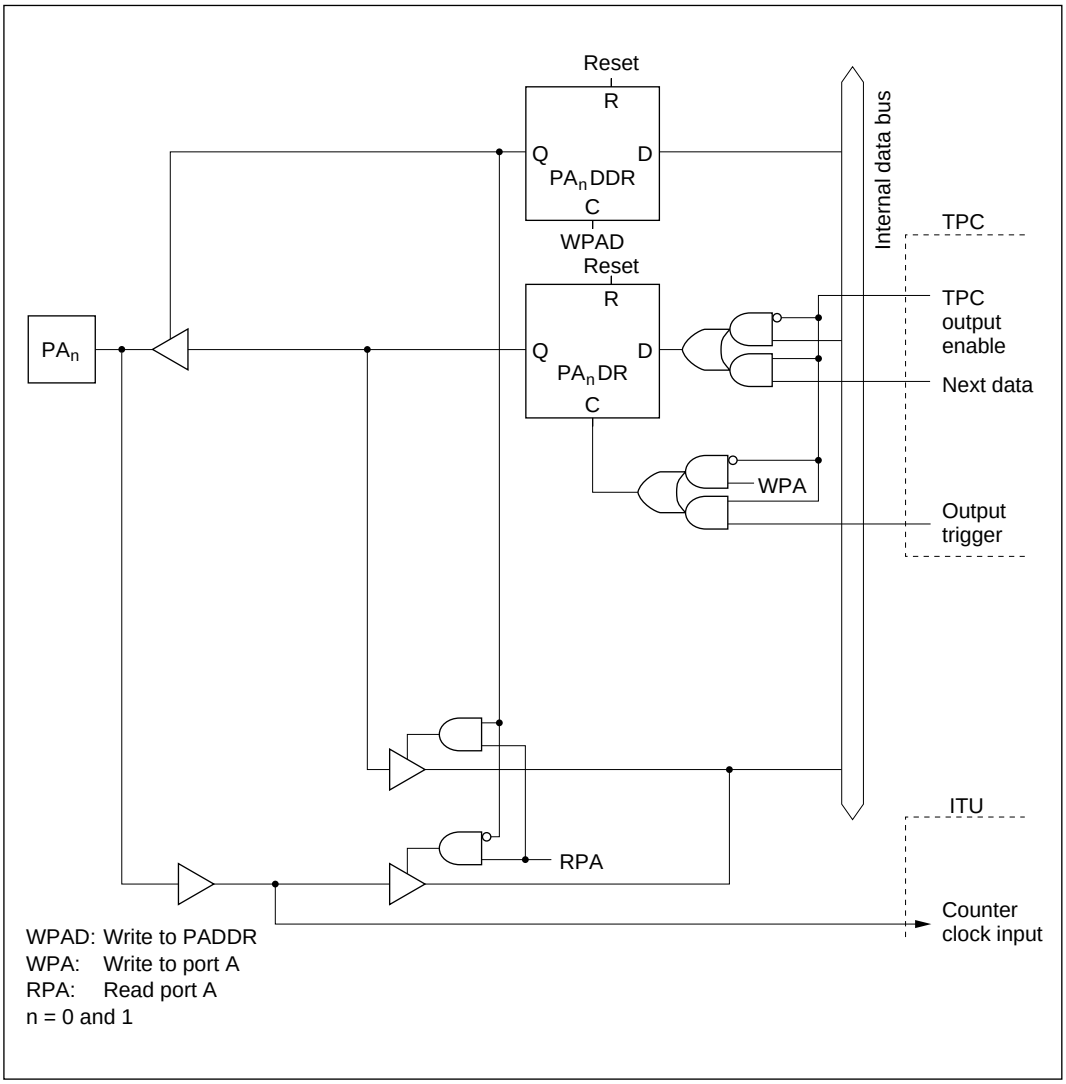


Figure C-6 (a) Port A Block Diagram (Pins PA_0, PA_1)

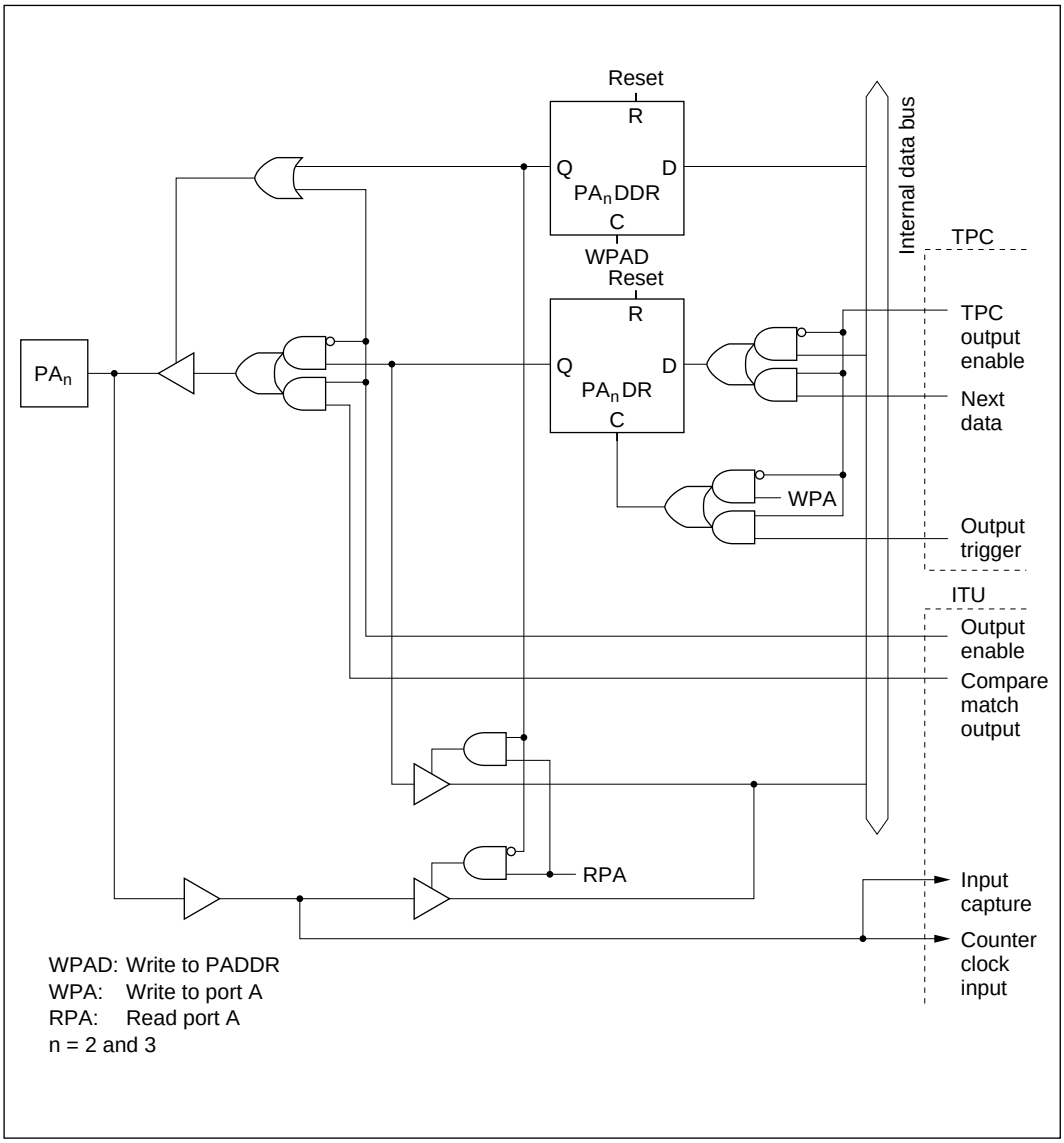


Figure C-6 (b) Port A Block Diagram (Pins PA_2, PA_3)

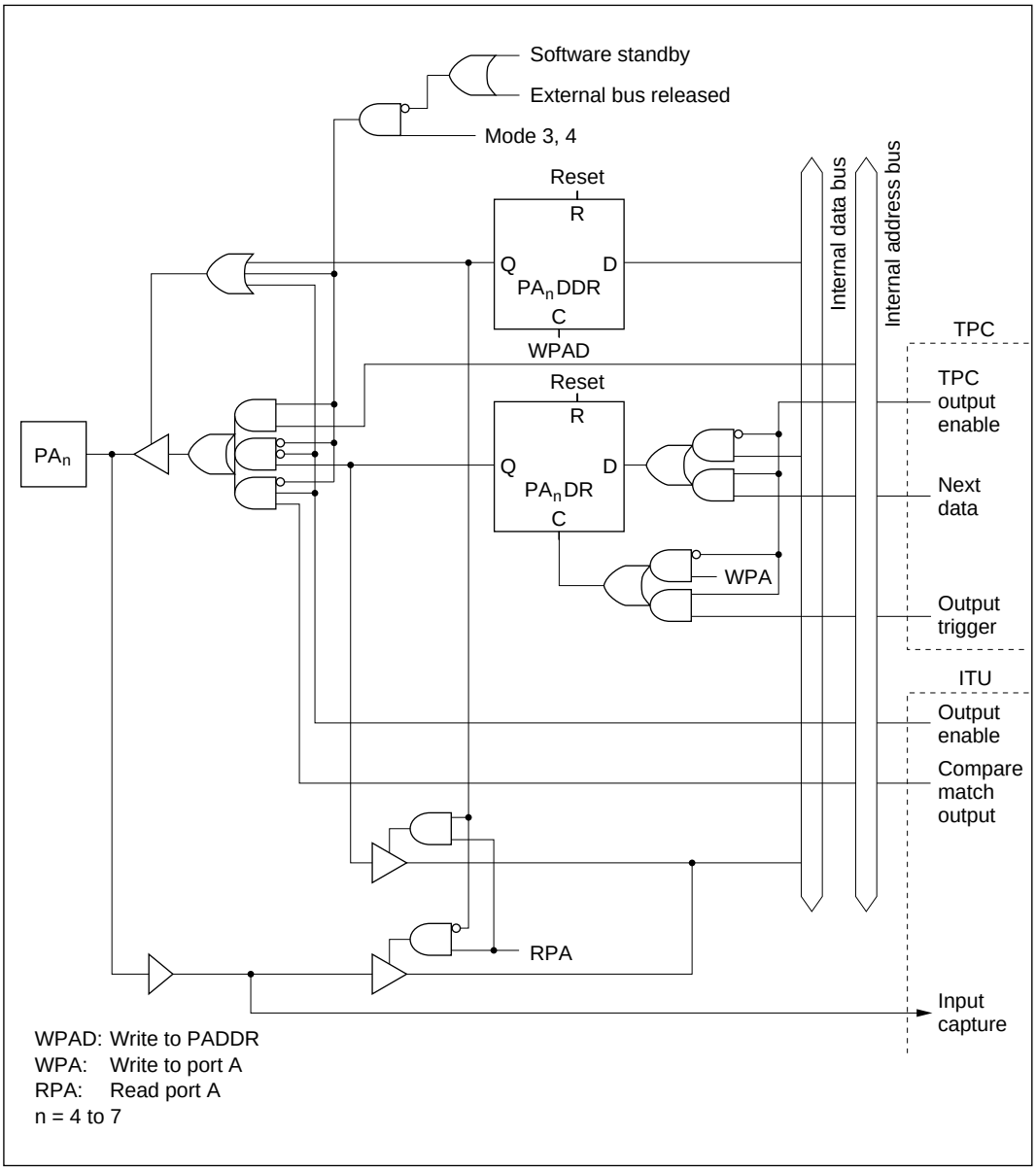


Figure C-6 (c) Port A Block Diagram (Pins PA_4 to PA_7)

C.7 Port B Block Diagrams

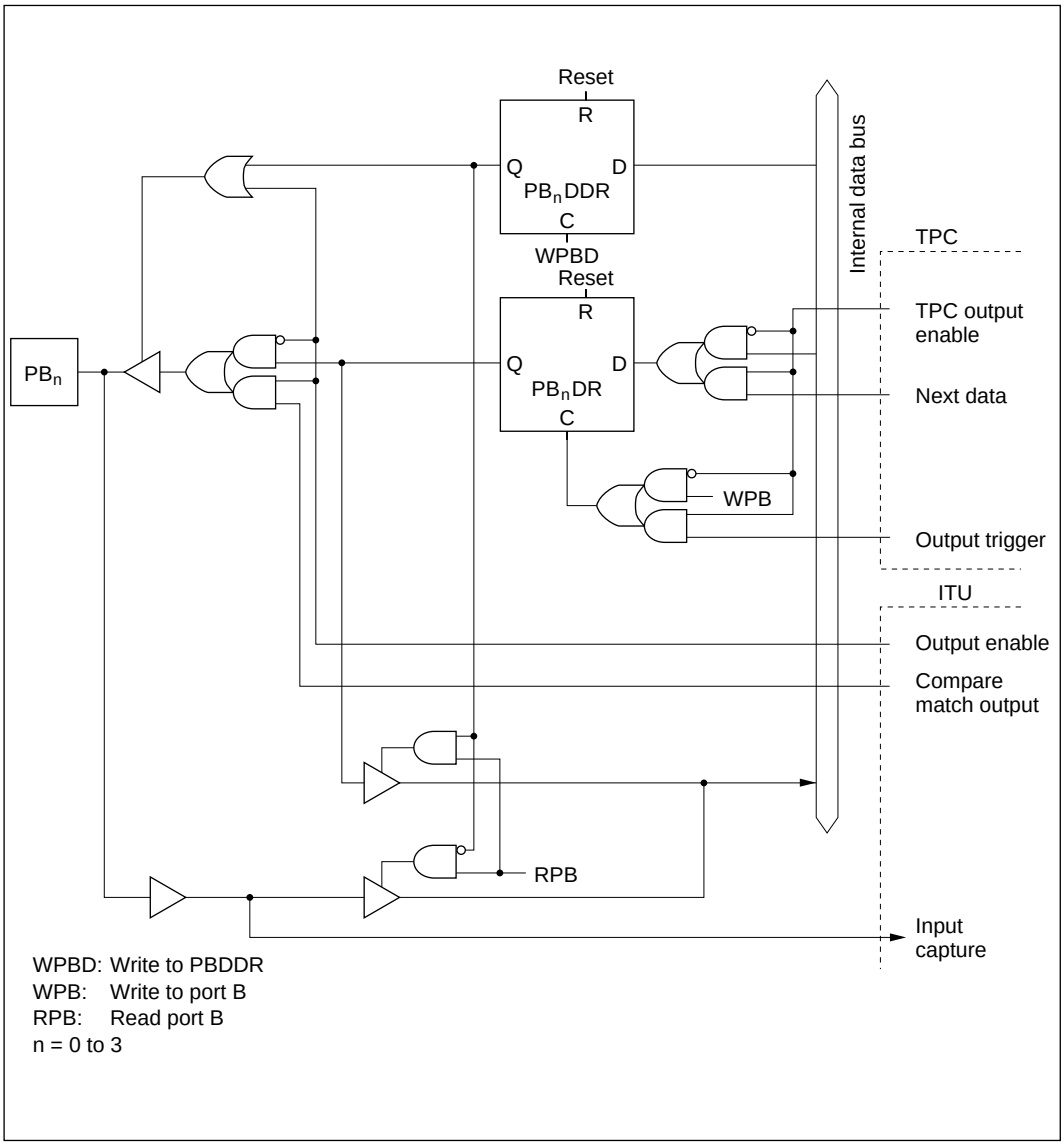


Figure C-7 Port B Block Diagram (Pins PB_0 to PB_3)